

THE BIG BOOK OF ENGLISH VERBS

Mark Lester, Ph.D. | Daniel Franklin | Terry Yokota, M.A.



New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

*With profound gratitude to our parents,
who taught us language and taught us to love it*

Beulah and Roy Lester
Agnes and Clyde Franklin
Ruby and George Yokota

Copyright © 2009 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved.
Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States
Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed
in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without
the prior written permission of the publisher.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 QPD/QPD 0 9

ISBN 978-0-07-160288-4 (book and CD set)
MHID 0-07-160288-7 (book and CD set)

ISBN 978-0-07-160290-7 (book)
MHID 0-07-160290-9 (book)

Interior design by Village Bookworks, Inc.

CD-ROM for Windows

To install: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. The CD-ROM will start automatically. If it does not, double-click on MY COMPUTER; find and open your CD-ROM disk drive, then double-click on the install.exe icon. The CD-ROM includes audio instructions to guide you in using this program effectively.

CD-ROM for Mac

To install: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. A window will open with the contents of the CD. Drag the program icon to your Applications folder. For easy access, create an alias of the program on your desktop or your dock.

Minimum System Requirements:

Computer: Windows 2000, XP, Vista / Mac OS X 10.3.9, 10.4.x, 10.5.x
Pentium II, AMD K6-2, or better / Power PC (G3 recommended) or better; any Intel processor
256 MB RAM
14" color monitor
8× or better CD-ROM
Sound card

Installation: Necessary free hard-drive space: 300 MB

Settings: 800 × 600 screen resolution

256 (8-bit) colors (minimum)

Thousands (24- or 32-bit) of colors (preferred)

Call 800-722-4726 if the CD-ROM is missing from this book.

For technical support go to <http://www.mhprofessional.com/support/technical/contact.php>

McGraw-Hill books are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative please e-mail us at bulksales@mcgraw-hill.com.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Contents

Preface v

The English Verb 1

- ▶ *Summaries of verb formation, tense usage, complementation, and phrasal verbs*

Verb Forms and Tense Usage 1

The Six Basic Verb Forms 1

Base Form 1

Present 2

Past 3

Infinitive 4

Present Participle 4

Past Participle 5

Tense Formation and Usage 5

The Three Simple Tenses 5

The Three Perfect Tenses 7

The Three Progressive Tenses 8

The Intensive Tenses 9

The Passive Voice 9

Guide to Conjugations 10

Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs 11

Verb Complements 12

Complement Types 13

Single Grammatical Element Complements 13

Multiple Grammatical Element Complements 14

Phrasal Verbs 14

Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs 15

The Most Common Phrasal Particles 17

Expressions 18

555 Conjugated Verbs 19

- ▶ *Alphabetically ordered, with complements, phrasal verbs, and expressions*

Top 40 Verbs: Full page of examples adjoining select conjugation/complement pages

Irregular Verb Form Index 616

- ▶ *Index showing the base form of all irregular verb forms in the book*

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

The Big Book of English Verbs provides more information on the most important verbs in the English language than any other book ever written. It contains basic conjugations and comprehensive usage patterns for 152 irregular verbs (all the irregular verbs that you will probably encounter), plus 403 of the most commonly used regular verbs: **555** verbs in all, with more than **14,000** example sentences.

No other book provides these unique features:

A complete listing of the complements for each verb

Verb complements are grammatical structures that verbs use to make correct, meaningful sentences. English has 18 basic complements, plus dozens of combinations of these. For instance, the verb *help*, when it means “assist, support,” may use two complements together: an object and an infinitive. The infinitive, however, must be in its base form, that is, used without the *to* that normally accompanies an infinitive.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE We helped **the staff answer the phones.**

Most English learners, even advanced ones, make the mistake of using *to* with the infinitive, because that is the more common complement. *The Big Book of English Verbs* is the only book that provides the correct complement in a useful format.

A listing of the important phrasal verb constructions for each verb

Phrasal verbs are idiomatic combinations of verbs plus adverbs or prepositions. For example, the phrasal verb *go off* can mean “to explode,” even though nothing in the meaning of *go* or *off* would lead you to expect this meaning.

Moreover, there are important grammatical differences between phrasal verbs that consist of a verb + an adverb (separable phrasal verbs) and those that consist of a verb + a preposition (inseparable phrasal verbs). If the second element in a phrasal verb is an adverb, the adverb can (and in some cases **MUST**) be placed after the object. If the second element is a preposition, however, it can **NEVER** be moved away from the verb. *The Big Book of English Verbs* not only gives the meaning of every phrasal verb, but also indicates which combinations are separable and which are inseparable.

We’ve also included a CD-ROM, which contains self-assessment tests on verb tenses, verb complements, and phrasal verbs, as well as five sets of exercises featuring verb use issues that are difficult for English learners.

We are pleased to provide the keys that unlock the English verb system for English learners worldwide.

Mark Lester
Daniel Franklin
Terry Yokota

This page intentionally left blank

The English Verb

VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

The Six Basic Verb Forms

Six basic verb forms are used to create the entire tense system of English: base form, present, past, infinitive, present participle, and past participle. These forms are illustrated in the following chart by the regular verb *walk* and the irregular verb *fly*.

BASE FORM	walk	fly
PRESENT	walk walks	fly flies
PAST	walked	flew
INFINITIVE	to walk	to fly
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	walking	flying
PAST PARTICIPLE	walked	flown

See “Guide to Conjugations” on page 10.

Base Form

The base form of a verb is its form in a dictionary entry. For example, if you looked up *sang*, the dictionary would refer you to the base form *sing*.

The base form is also the source (or base) for the present (with a few exceptions), infinitive, and present participle of the verb, whether the verb is regular or irregular.

The base form is used as a verb in three ways.

(1) It follows certain helping verbs, the most important being the **modal auxiliary verbs**, or **modals** for short: *can/could*, *may/might*, *will/would*, *shall/should*, and *must*. (Modal verbs themselves have no base form, infinitive, present participle, or past participle; they have only present and past forms.) Note the base form of the verb *be* in the following sentences.

I may **be** a little late.
He will **be** in New York all week.
You must **be** more careful.

Other verbs followed by the base form of a verb include *dare* (with *not*), *need* (with *not*), and *help*.

We need not **be** silent on the issue.

(2) The base form is used in imperatives (commands).

Be good!
Come here, please.
Oh, **stop** it!

(3) Less commonly, the base form is used as a complement of certain verbs.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE We made **them be** quiet.
My parents helped **me be** a success.

A base-form infinitive is an infinitive minus the *to*. If an infinitive including the word *to* were substituted for the base-form infinitive in the first example above, the resulting sentence would be ungrammatical.

X We made **them to be** quiet.

Present

With the sole exception of the verb *be*, the present form of all verbs is derived directly from the base form. The main difference between the present and base forms is that the third-person singular present form adds **-s** or **-es** to the base form of the verb; all other present forms are identical to the base form.

The base form of *be* is different from all of its present tense forms.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST PERSON	I am	we are
SECOND PERSON	you are	you are
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it is	they are

Both the pronunciation and the spelling of the third-person singular present ending are predictable. If the base form ends in a sibilant sound (*s*, *z*, *x*, *sh*, *ch*, *tch*, or *j* (as in *judge*)), the ending is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *buzz*. The ending is spelled **-es**, unless the base form already ends in *-e*, in which case only **-s** is added.

BASE FORM	THIRD-PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT FORM
cross	cross es
place	place s
buzz	buzz es
fix	fix es
wish	wish es
attach	attach es
budge	budge s

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than a sibilant, the ending is pronounced /s/ and is spelled **-es**. (The voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p*, *t*, *ck*, *k*, *f*, or *gh* (when pronounced /f/)).

help	help s
collect	collect s
back	back s
park	park s
scoff	scoff s
laugh	laugh s

If the base form ends in a voiced consonant other than a sibilant or in a pronounced vowel (as opposed to a silent final *-e*), the ending is pronounced /z/ and is spelled **-s**.

absorb	absorb s
forbid	forbid s
dig	dig s
love	love s
swim	swim s
join	join s
feel	feel s
pay	pay s
agree	agree s
cry	cri es
owe	ow es
argue	argu es

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the **-s** ending (see *cry* above).

A few verbs have irregular third-person singular present forms.

be	is
have	has

Two verbs have irregular pronunciations in the third-person singular present form.

do	does (rhymes with <i>buzz</i>)
say	says (rhymes with <i>fez</i>)

Past

There are two types of past forms: regular and irregular.

Regular verbs form the past tense by adding *-ed* to the base form (or simply *-d* if the base form already ends in *-e*).

BASE FORM	REGULAR PAST FORM
open	opened
need	needed
move	moved
place	placed

The regular past ending has three different, but completely predictable, pronunciations. If the base form ends in a /t/ or /d/ sound, the *-ed* is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *bud*.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS A SEPARATE SYLLABLE
adopt	adopt ed
vote	vot ed
decide	decid ed
depend	depend ed

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than /t/, the *-ed* is pronounced /t/. The final voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p*, *ck*, *k*, *s*, *sh*, *ch*, *tch*, *x*, *f*, or *gh* (when pronounced /f/).

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /t/
tap	tapp ed
attack	attack ed
miss	miss ed
wish	wish ed
match	match ed
mix	mix ed
cough	cough ed

Note that if the base form ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled to form the past: *permit* ~ *permitted*, *stop* ~ *stopped*.

If the base form ends in a pronounced vowel or in a voiced consonant sound other than /d/, the *-ed* is pronounced /d/. The voiced consonants are usually spelled with a *b*, *g*, *z*, *j*, *m*, *n*, *l*, or *r*.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /d/
tie	ti ed
enjoy	enjoy ed
judge	judg ed
kill	kill ed
care	car ed

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the *-d* ending (*cry* ~ *cried*). Also note the spellings of the past forms of *lay* and *pay*: *laid* and *paid*, respectively.

The past forms of irregular verbs reflect older patterns of forming the past tense. These patterns have merged to such an extent that it is not practical to learn the past forms of irregular verbs on the basis of their historical patterns. Similarities exist, however, in how some irregular verbs form the past tense.

VOWEL CHANGE	ring	rang	sing	sang		
VOWEL CHANGE + -d	sell	sold	tell	told		
NO CHANGE	bet	bet	put	put	rid	rid

Following are the past forms of the ten most common verbs in English, all irregular.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM
be	was were
have	had
do	did
say	said (rhymes with <i>fed</i>)
make	made
go	went
take	took
come	came
see	saw
know	knew

Infinitive

The infinitive of a verb consists of *to* + its base form. There are no exceptions—even the verb *be* is regular: *to be*.

BASE FORM	INFINITIVE
walk	to walk
fly	to fly
be	to be
do	to do

Infinitives are used as complements of certain verbs.

I would like **to meet** your friend.
They invited us **to stay** for dinner.

Present Participle

The present participle is formed by adding *-ing* to the base form.

BASE FORM	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
walk	walking
fly	flying
be	being
do	doing

Note that if a verb ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled: *bet* ~ *betting*, *dig* ~ *digging*, *drop* ~ *dropping*, *refer* ~ *referring*, *rid* ~ *ridding*. If a verb ends in silent *-e*, the *-e* is dropped before the *-ing* ending: *observe* ~ *observing*, *rule* ~ *ruling*, *write* ~ *writing*.

The present participle is used in two ways. By far the more common is after a form of the verb *be* in the progressive tenses.

The kids were **walking** to the beach.
I am **flying** to Chicago tomorrow.

Less common is the present participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

I hate **doing** the dishes every night.
I saw Holly **talking** to Christopher.

Past Participle

There are two types of past participles: regular and irregular.

Regular past participles are formed in exactly the same way as the regular past, that is, by adding *-ed* to the base form. To distinguish the two forms, remember that the past form can occur by itself, but the past participle almost always occurs after a form of *be* or *have*.

Like irregular past forms, irregular past participle forms are unpredictable. There is one generalization, however, we can make about them. In older periods of English, most irregular past participles ended in *-en*. Today, about one third of irregular past participles still retain this *-en* ending. Thus, if an irregular verb form has an *-en* (or *-n*) ending, we know it is a past participle.

BASE FORM	PAST PARTICIPLE
choose	chosen
eat	eaten
fly	flown
see	seen
speak	spoken

Past participles are used in three ways in English.

(1) They are used in the perfect tenses after the helping verb *have*.

They have **flown** in from Pittsburgh for the wedding.
 We had **walked** over to meet some friends.
 He will have **raised** \$200.

(2) Past participles are used in passive sentences after the helping verb *be*.

Motorists are being **stopped** at the border.
 Her play was **seen** by thousands of people.

(3) Much less common is the past participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

We need the car **taken** to the garage for an oil change.

Tense Formation and Usage

The term **tense** can have several different meanings, but we use **tense** to refer to any of the nine different verb constructions that result when the three logical time divisions (present, past, and future) are integrated with the three aspect categories of verbs (simple, perfect, and progressive—*simple* here means that it is not perfect or progressive). These nine tenses are illustrated in the following chart, with first-person singular forms of *walk* and *fly*.

	SIMPLE	PERFECT	PROGRESSIVE
PRESENT	I walk I fly	I have walked I have flown	I am walking I am flying
PAST	I walked I flew	I had walked I had flown	I was walking I was flying
FUTURE	I will walk I will fly	I will have walked I will have flown	I will be walking I will be flying

The Three Simple Tenses

PRESENT TENSE

The most confusing feature of the present tense for English learners is that the simple present tense does not actually signify present time. Its three main uses are the following: (1) making factual statements and generalizations, (2) describing habitual actions, and (3) describing predictable future events or actions.

(1) The simple present tense is used to state objective facts that are not restricted by time.

A mile **is** 5,280 feet.

The Mississippi River **drains** the center of the North American continent.

Similarly, the simple present tense is used to state facts that are true for the foreseeable future.

We **live** on Elm Street.

This sentence means, “We have not always lived on Elm Street, and at some point in the future, we may move. Nevertheless, it is our current intention to remain living on Elm Street indefinitely.” Contrast this sentence with the following one, which uses the present progressive tense.

We **are living** on Elm Street.

This sentence means, “We are only living on Elm Street temporarily, and we expect to move eventually.”

The simple present tense is also used to make generalizations that are considered valid for the foreseeable future.

I **hate** spinach.

Smoking **causes** cancer.

(2) The simple present tense is used to describe habitual actions.

Bob **checks** his e-mail first thing in the morning.

This sentence describes what Bob normally does first thing in the morning. It does not mean that Bob is checking his e-mail now, at this very moment. The sentence would still be valid if Bob were on vacation and hadn’t checked his e-mail in a week.

(3) The simple present tense is often used for near-future events or actions that one expects to happen.

Our flight **leaves** at nine.

I **return** home on Sunday.

Note that the simple present tense is not used for uncertain future events. For example, it is not used to describe future weather.

X It **rains** tomorrow.

PAST TENSE

The simple past tense describes an event or action that was completed before the present moment in time; that is, the event or action has already taken place. The past tense can refer to a single point in past time.

We **moved** into our house on September 5, 1980.

The past tense can also refer to a span of time in the past, as long as it was completed before the present.

Janet **worked** in sales for nearly ten years.

This sentence means that Janet is no longer working in sales at this time.

In addition, the simple past tense has inherited one of the functions of the subjunctive from older periods of English: indicating that the speaker is talking hypothetically or even contrary to fact. This hypothetical use of the past tense does NOT indicate past time. Its most common use is in IF-CLAUSES.

If I **were** you, I **would** be sure that I **was** finished on time.

The use of *were* rather than the expected *was* survives from an old subjunctive form. Notice also that the other two verbs in the sentence are in the past tense, even though the sentence does not refer to past time.

FUTURE TENSE

The simple future tense consists of the helping verb *will* followed by the base form of the main verb.

I **will take** a taxi to the airport.
They **will be** disappointed if you don't see them.

The helping verb *will* is one of the nine modal auxiliary verbs: *can/could*, *may/might*, *will/would*, *shall/should*, and *must*. Although *will* is used to form the future tense, any of the other eight modals can refer to future time.

I **can take** a cab to the airport.
I **could take** a cab to the airport.
I **may take** a cab to the airport.
I **must take** a cab to the airport.

Each of the nine modals has its own range of meanings, allowing English speakers to make a number of subtly different statements about the possibility, certainty, desirability, or necessity of a future action.

The Three Perfect Tenses

The three perfect tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The present tense form of *have* is used for the present perfect, the past tense form for the past perfect, and the future tense form for the future perfect.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The present perfect tense consists of *have* or *has* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense is used to describe an action that began in the past and has continued up to the present time, with the implication that it will continue into the future. The best way to understand the present perfect tense is to compare it to the past tense.

PAST TENSE	John lived in Los Angeles for five years.
PRESENT PERFECT TENSE	John has lived in Los Angeles for five years.

According to the past tense sentence, John no longer lives in Los Angeles; he has moved. According to the present perfect tense sentence, John still lives in Los Angeles and is expected to continue living there into the foreseeable future.

PAST PERFECT TENSE

The past perfect tense consists of *had* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The most common use of this tense is to emphasize that an event in the past was completed before a more recent event took place.

My parents **had left** for the airport before my plane landed.

This sentence describes two past-time events. The first event is the parents' leaving for the airport, and the second event is the plane landing. The use of the past perfect tense makes it clear that the first event was completed before the second one occurred. Note that the events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before my plane landed, my parents **had left** for the airport.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

The future perfect tense consists of *will have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense, which is rarely used, describes a future action or event that must be completed BEFORE a second future action, event, or time. The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an event completed before a second event.

The game **will have started** before we get to the stadium.

Note that the two events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before we get to the stadium, the game **will have started**.

The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an action completed before a specific time in the future.

They **will have finished** by noon.

The Three Progressive Tenses

The progressive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. The present progressive uses the present tense of *be*, the past progressive uses the past tense of *be*, and the future progressive uses the future tense of *be*.

The progressive tenses are used to describe an action in progress (hence the name **progressive**) at some present, past, or future time.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The present progressive tense consists of *am*, *are*, or *is* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense can describe an action at the precise moment that the sentence is spoken.

Turn the TV down! I **am talking** on the phone.

The present progressive tense can also refer to a span of time that includes the present.

Global warming **is causing** climate change.

In addition, the tense is often used to describe future plans or events.

We **are going** to Paris this June.

Hurry, the taxi **is coming** in 10 minutes.

PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The past progressive tense consists of *was* or *were* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense refers to an action that took place at or during some time in the past, whether it occurred at a specific moment or during a span of time in the past.

I **was working** at my desk by 9 o'clock.

During the game, he **was talking** on his cell phone.

The time in the past can be defined by another event.

We **were working** in the garden when we heard the news.

The past progressive tense can also be used in an adverbial clause.

We heard the news while we **were working** in the garden.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The future progressive tense consists of *will be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense describes an activity that will occur at some time in the future, whether it will occur at a specific moment or, more commonly, during a span of time in the future.

Their plane **will be landing** at 6:35.

During the school year, I **will be living** on campus.

Often, the future time is defined by a present tense adverbial clause.

We **will be staying** in a motel while they remodel the kitchen.

The Intensive Tenses

The so-called intensive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *do* followed by the base form of the main verb. The present intensive tense is formed with *do* or *does*, and the past intensive tense is formed with *did*. There is no future intensive tense, nor is the intensive used in the progressive tenses.

The intensive tenses are used in three ways.

- (1) They emphasize the fact that the action of the verb is or was actually performed.

She **does like** going to the opera.
I **did arrive** on time.

- (2) The intensive tenses are used with *not* to form the negative of the simple present and past tenses.

They **do not go** to the library anymore.
We **did not see** Larry at the mall.

- (3) The intensive tenses are used to ask simple yes/no questions.

Does the teacher **color** her hair?
Did all the children **finish** the assignment?

The Passive Voice

In traditional grammar, verbs have **voice**. Voice is determined by whether the subject is the performer of the action of the verb (**active voice**) or the receiver of the action (**passive voice**). Compare the following sentences.

ACTIVE VOICE	The dog bit the man.
PASSIVE VOICE	The man was bitten by the dog.

In the active voice sentence, the subject (the dog) performs the action of biting. In the passive voice sentence, the subject (the man) does not perform the action of biting; instead, he is the receiver of the action. The *by* phrase is not necessary and is, in fact, usually not used.

The passive voice is easily recognized, because it uses a form of the helping verb *be* immediately followed by the past participle form of the main verb—a combination found only in passive voice sentences.

PRESENT TENSE PASSIVE	Our flight is canceled .
PAST TENSE PASSIVE	Our flight was canceled .
FUTURE TENSE PASSIVE	Our flight will be canceled .

The progressive tenses may be used in the passive voice, although the future progressive tense usually sounds awkward.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	Our car is being washed .
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	Our car was being washed .
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	? Our car will be being washed .

The passive voice has two primary uses.

- (1) It is used to switch attention from the subject of an active voice sentence to another part of the sentence (usually, but not always, the direct object).

ACTIVE VOICE	The authors sent the manuscript to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	The manuscript was sent to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	Marisa was sent the manuscript.

- (2) The passive voice is used when the performer of the verb's action is not known.

This beer was brewed in St. Louis, Missouri.
The car was stolen yesterday afternoon.

GUIDE TO CONJUGATIONS

①
433②
send③
send | sends · sent · have sent④
✓ IRREGULAR

⑤ PRESENT

I send	we send
you send	you send
he/she/it sends	they send

⑦ • *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

PAST

I sent	we sent
you sent	you sent
he/she/it sent	they sent

• *They sent us a nice note.*

⑧ PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sent

PAST PERFECT ... had sent

⑥ PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sending	we are sending
you are sending	you are sending
he/she/it is sending	they are sending

• *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending	we were sending
you were sending	you were sending
he/she/it was sending	they were sending

• *They were sending their children to a private school.*

FUTURE ... will send

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sent

⑨ PAST PASSIVE

I was sent	we were sent
you were sent	you were sent
he/she/it was sent	they were sent

• *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

- This is the verb number.
- This is the base form of the verb. If this were a Top 40 Verb, there would be an additional page for Complements, Phrasal Verbs, and Expressions, and both pages would have a Top 40 Verb icon at the bottom.
- These are the principal parts of the verb: present | third-person singular present · past · past perfect (containing the past participle).
- This indicates whether a verb forms its past and past participle regularly. Some verbs, like *shine* (No. 443), have both regular and irregular forms.
- Five tense paradigms are shown in the table format familiar to most English learners, where row and column represent verb person and number, respectively. These five tenses were chosen because they are the most frequently used.
- Some verbs are never used in the progressive tenses, like *belong* (No. 58); others are rarely used in these tenses, like *prefer* (No. 353). For these verbs, the progressive forms are not given. We only show forms that an English learner might be expected to use in ordinary conversation or writing.
- An example sentence is supplied for each tense shown.
- The forms for these five tenses are displayed in single lines with no pronouns. Thus, all nine simple, progressive, and perfect tenses in the active voice are shown (see pages 5–9), plus the most frequently used passive tense.
- Some verbs are never used in the passive voice, like *amount* (No. 25); no forms are given for these. Other verbs cannot have a personal subject in the passive voice, like *achieve* (No. 8); only *it* and *they* forms are given for these. Some writers, of course, may use these personal passive forms in highly figurative or poetic senses. However, because an English learner might be led to use these forms incorrectly, we do not show them.

Some verbs are only used in the passive voice when they are part of a phrasal verb, like *dream* (No. 163). Because this is a valid use of the passive, all forms are shown for these verbs.

GUIDE TO COMPLEMENTS AND PHRASAL VERBS

- 1 This meaning of *pour* requires no complement.
- 2 The blank line indicates that this meaning of *pour* requires a complement. Either the single complement OBJECT or the double complement INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT may be used.
- 3 The object in the example sentence is bold.
- 4 One element in a double complement is italicized to distinguish the two complements. The INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT construction may have a *for* PARAPHRASE, as shown below.
- 5 The direct object is bold, and the indirect object is bold italic (corresponding to the italic in the complement name).
- 6 An example sentence in the passive voice uses bold italic to indicate the second element of a double complement.
- 7 This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires no complement. Several phrasal verb particles are possible in this construction.
- 8 This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The SEP on the blank line indicates that the phrasal verb is separable (see page 15).
- 9 This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The blank line without SEP indicates that the phrasal verb is inseparable (see page 15).

Complement types are not identified in the Phrasal Verbs section, since virtually every complement of a phrasal verb functions as an object of the verb, whether it is an OBJECT, REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, or PRESENT PARTICIPLE. Bold and bold italic are not used in examples sentences in the Phrasal Verbs section.

The Expressions section (not shown here) includes a blank line for a required complement.

COMPLEMENTS

① **pour** *fall/flow steadily* [OF A LIQUID]

It has been pouring all night.
The milk was pouring down the baby's chin.

pour ② *fill a glass/cup with [a liquid], serve [a liquid]* ③
OBJECT

Please pour **the wine**, will you?
Don't pour **the coffee** until the guests arrive.

④ INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We poured **the children some lemonade**. ⑤

for PARAPHRASE

The hostess poured **everyone a glass of wine**.

We poured **some lemonade for the children**.

The hostess poured **a glass of wine for everyone**.

pour _____ *dispense [a liquid]*
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I poured **the marinade over the meat**.

He poured **the water down the drain**.

She carefully poured **the medicine into the dispenser**.

⑥ PASSIVE

The unused olive oil was poured **back into the bottle**.

PHRASAL VERBS

⑦ **pour back/down/forth/in/out/through/**
etc. *flow in a specified direction*

The levee collapsed, and the
floodwater poured in.

⑧ **pour** SEP *away/back/in/out/etc.*
cause to flow in a specified direction

Pour the milk back into the jug.

⑨ **pour into / out of** _____ *enter/exit in*
large numbers

Fans poured into the stadium.

pour [oneself] into _____ *become very*
involved in

After being laid off, he poured himself into finding a new job.

pour SEP *out* *discard [a liquid]*

The milk is past its expiration date; we need to pour it out.

VERB COMPLEMENTS

We use the term **complement** as a collective word for all the different grammatical structures required by verbs to make a grammatical sentence. **Complement** is much broader than the term **transitive**. In traditional grammar, a transitive verb must be followed by a direct or indirect object. The term **complement**, however, includes not only objects, but predicate adjectives, predicate nouns, several types of infinitives and clauses, and several types of adverbs. A verb may require one complement or more than one complement to make a grammatical sentence. Many intransitive verbs require no complement at all, for example, the intransitive verb *cried* in *John cried*.

The verb *put* with the sense “place, set” takes the double complement OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE, illustrated by the following sentence.

I put **my keys on the dresser**.

If either complement is deleted, the sentence is ungrammatical.

✗ I put **on the dresser**.

✗ I put **my keys**.

When you use the verb *put* to mean “place, set,” you must put SOMETHING (an object) SOMEWHERE (an adverb of place).

Most English verbs may be used with more than one type of complement. The choice of complement type is determined by the particular meaning of a verb. If the meaning of the verb changes, the complement type(s) may change too, and vice versa: If the complement type changes, the verb’s meaning often changes.

To illustrate the interconnection between verb meaning and complement type, consider the complements for the verb *argue*.

argue <i>disagree, quarrel</i>	They argue all the time.
argue _____ <i>debate</i>	
OBJECT	The justices argued the issue .
argue _____ <i>assert, try to prove by giving reasons</i>	
OBJECT	Vince argued his case before the judge.
THAT-CLAUSE	Vince argued that he was innocent .

There are as many entries for a verb as there are distinct meanings, three in the case of *argue*. Each entry has its own group of complements that can be used with that particular meaning, including the possibility of no complement, as in the first entry for *argue*.

If a verb is followed by a blank line (_____), the verb with that particular meaning requires an actual complement to make the sentence grammatical. The types of complements that the meaning requires are given in small capital letters as subentries. For example, the third meaning of *argue* (*assert, try to prove by giving reasons*) can take either of two different complements: an OBJECT or a THAT-CLAUSE (a noun clause beginning with *that*). To the right of the complement type are one or more sentences illustrating use of the complement. The words of the sentence that correspond to the complement are in bold. Using the third entry for *argue*, **his case** is an example of an OBJECT complement and **that he was innocent** is an example of a THAT-CLAUSE complement. (See “Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs” on the previous page.)

If a verb is NOT followed by a blank line, it is **intransitive**, that is, it does not require an actual complement to make the sentence grammatical. In this book, the intransitive meanings of a verb are listed before the meanings that require actual complements. In the example of *argue*, the fact that the first meaning (*disagree, quarrel*) is not followed by a blank line means that the verb with this particular meaning is intransitive. In the example sentence *They argue all the time*, the adverbial expression *all the time* is not obligatory; the sentence would still be grammatical if we deleted it.

They argue.

Most of the complement types in this book will be familiar to you, but some may require further explanation. Following is a list of special terms that you will encounter in the description of complements.

THAT-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with *that*.

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE The verb in the THAT-CLAUSE is in its uninflected base form and does not need to agree with the subject. For example, *be* in the following THAT-CLAUSE does not agree with its subject *defendant*.

The court ordered **that the defendant be kept in jail**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE This term includes both present participles and gerunds (present participles modified by a possessive noun or pronoun).

I hated **leaving so early**. (PRESENT PARTICIPLE)

I hated **John's leaving so early**. (GERUND)

WH-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *what*, *which*, *when*, *where*, *why*, and *how* (which does not actually begin with *wh*)), as well as compounds of these words (*whoever*, *whomever*, *whatever*, etc.).

Did you hear **who won the game**?

We will grow **what sells the best**.

They will hire **whoever is the most qualified**.

WH-INFINITIVE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word followed by an infinitive.

Raymond asked him **what to do next**.

I told them **where to go**.

Complement Types

This book uses 18 basic, or single-element, complement types, which appear in bold in the example sentences. Many of these basic complement types can be combined and used together. If two complements are used, one complement (usually the first) is in bold and the other in bold italicic.

Single Grammatical Element Complements

ADVERB OF TIME	The presentation will last fifty minutes .
ADVERB OF PLACE	He always stays in town during the week.
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The refugees fled into the woods .
ADVERB OF MANNER	The children behaved badly .
OBJECT	I hurt my elbow .
<i>for/in/of/to/etc.</i> OBJECT	Haste always results in confusion . The bill amounted to \$137.50 .
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	I flung myself into jazz.
PREDICATE NOUN	Her father was a famous artist .
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The moon was bright .
INFINITIVE	We would like to meet your friends .
THAT-CLAUSE	We soon discovered that we had made a mistake .
BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE	The doctor recommended that Mr. Smith be kept overnight for observation .

WH-CLAUSE	We will soon know who will get the job . We will soon know where the new office will be .
WH-INFINITIVE	The teacher explained where to get the information . The teacher explained how to do it .
IF-CLAUSE	He asked if we were ready .
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I hate (our) leaving in the middle of a meeting .
PAST PARTICIPLE	We felt overwhelmed by the experience .
DIRECT QUOTATION	“Good morning,” she said. “We’re glad you’re here.”

Multiple Grammatical Element Complements

Fifteen multiple element complements are commonly used.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	We left the children at home .
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	He drove us to the station . A policeman directed the traffic onto a side street .
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The driver gave us directions . He did us a big favor .
to PARAPHRASE	The driver gave directions to us .
for PARAPHRASE	He did a big favor for us .
OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN	They called the idea a stroke of genius .
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	They called the idea silly .
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	They invited us to stay for dinner .
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	We helped them answer the phones .
OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE	He persuaded the jury that his client was innocent .
OBJECT + BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE	He urged John that he reconsider his decision .
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE	I told my friends what they should expect .
OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE	I told my friends what to expect .
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I hate him complaining about everything .
OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE	We need the filter changed in our furnace .

Other combinations may be used by certain verbs. Note that OBJECT is divided into INDIRECT OBJECT and DIRECT OBJECT complements for certain verbs, like *give* and *do* above.

PHRASAL VERBS

A **phrasal verb** is a verb + particle combination that has a meaning different from the combined meanings of the verb and particle (an adverb or preposition). For example, the verb *pick* means “choose, select” or “pluck, remove; gather, harvest.” When combined with *up*, it can have at least a dozen different meanings. Four of the meanings for *pick up* are given here with example sentences.

<i>increase, improve</i>	Business has picked up since Christmas.
<i>stop for and take along</i>	Would you pick us up at seven?
<i>learn easily</i>	I picked up Italian over the summer.
<i>make tidy</i>	You must pick up your room before going out to play.

None of the ordinary meanings of *pick* and *up* indicate that these words used together would have the meanings above. That is why we call phrasal verbs **idiomatic**.

English abounds with phrasal verbs. In fact, there are many more phrasal verbs in English than nonphrasal verbs. Because they are idiomatic, phrasal verbs can be difficult for English learners.

Not all verb + particle combinations are phrasal verbs. In some cases, the particle is used as a preposition that doesn't change the basic meaning of the verb. *Arrange for* is an example.

arrange _____	<i>plan, cause something to happen</i>	
(<i>for</i>) OBJECT		They will arrange (for) a celebration.
<i>for</i> OBJECT + INFINITIVE		He arranged for John to visit them in Chicago .

In the first sentence above, *for* is optional. In the second sentence, *for* is obligatory, but it doesn't change the meaning of *arrange*. For this reason, *arrange for* is not considered a phrasal verb, and it is included in the Complements section instead.

Some verbs must always be used with a particular preposition; for example, *amount* is always used with *to*.

amount _____	<i>add up</i>	
to OBJECT		The bill amounted to \$137.50.
to WH-CLAUSE		It amounted to however much you could afford .

Since *amount* must always be used with *to*, *amount to* is included in the Complements section.

Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs

Many phrasal verbs take no object.

settle down	<i>establish a home</i>	Our son eventually settled down in south St. Louis.
swim off	<i>swim in the opposite direction</i>	After we fed the dolphins, they swam off.

For these phrasal verbs, the particle must be placed immediately after the verb.

Most phrasal verbs, however, take an object. For some of these, the particle can be placed after the object—away from the verb—and for others, the particle must be placed after the verb. There are no simple rules for determining whether the particle is placed after the verb or after the object.

Generally, if the particle is considered a preposition, it must be placed after the verb; this type of phrasal verb is called **inseparable**. However, if the particle is considered an adverb, it can, and sometimes **MUST**, be placed after the object; this type of phrasal verb is called **separable**. Most phrasal verbs are separable.

INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB	My brother depended on his car. (“rely on”)
SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB	My brother turned on his car. (“switch on”)

In the first example, *on* is considered a preposition, and therefore it cannot be placed after the object *his car*.

✗ My brother **depended** his car **on**.

In the second example, *on* is considered an adverb, and therefore it can be placed after the object *his car*.

My brother **turned** his car **on**.

For separable phrasal verbs, the particle can be placed after the verb or after the object. There is an important exception, however: If the object is a pronoun, the particle **MUST** be placed after the object.

My brother turned it on .
✗ My brother turned on it.

You can test whether a phrasal verb is separable or inseparable by using a pronoun as its object: If the particle **MUST** be placed after the pronoun object, the phrasal verb is separable; otherwise, it is inseparable.

Note that if the object of a separable phrasal verb is a long noun phrase, it is better to place the particle after the verb.

- Don't **throw away** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing.
 ? Don't **throw** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing **away**.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In the preceding examples, *on* is used both as a preposition (*depend on*) and as an adverb (*turn on*). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

across	into
after	of
against	to
at	upon
between	with
for	

- The club **leaped at** Kyle's offer.
 X The club **leaped** Kyle's offer **at**.

- Acid was **eating into** the countertop.
 X Acid was **eating** the countertop **into**.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

ahead	forth
aside	in
away	off
back	out
down	up

- She **poured off** a little sauce before cooking.
 She **poured** a little sauce **off** before cooking.
 She **poured** it **off**.

- A young attorney **drew up** my will.
 A young attorney **drew** my will **up**.
 A young attorney **drew** it **up**.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

about	on
along	over
around	through
behind	under
by	

See the examples with *depend on* and *turn on* on the previous page.

To indicate a separable phrasal verb, a blank line with SEP is used for the complement (object).

- | | |
|--|--|
| figure <u>SEP</u> out solve, determine | Tim figured the crossword puzzle out in six minutes. |
| | Tim figured out the crossword puzzle in six minutes. |
| | Tim figured it out in six minutes. |

An inseparable phrasal verb is indicated by a blank line (without SEP) after the particle.

- figure on** _____ plan/count/depend on Let's figure on going to a movie after dinner.

A phrasal verb may have more than one particle. If there are two or more particles, the last particle is almost always a preposition with its own object.

beat _____ back to return to [a place] sooner than My sister beat her friend back to the station.

For phrasal verbs like this, the object is placed between the verb and its particle(s). In the sentence above, the object of the verb (*her friend*) is placed between *beat* and *back*, and the object of the preposition (*the station*) is placed after the preposition.

The Most Common Phrasal Particles

Following is a list, with examples, of the particles most commonly used in phrasal verbs.

across

come across _____ find by accident She **came across** her high school yearbook.

after

keep after _____ nag, harass Mom **keeps after** us about our homework.

along

pass SEP along transfer [a price change] The store **passed along** the price increase to its customers.

around

get around _____ avoid He **got around** the problem by installing new software.

aside

lay SEP aside save She **laid aside** \$100 a month for her son's college education.

at

leap at _____ accept eagerly The class **leaped at** Hilary's offer to bake a cake.

away

pack SEP away store Gene and Jan **packed** the baby clothes **away**.

back

cut SEP back shorten We must **cut** the shrubs **back** after they flower.

behind

fall behind (on _____) lag behind They **were falling behind on** the rent.

between

come between _____ cause trouble between We can't let a silly quarrel **come between** us.

down

knock SEP down demolish Workers **knocked** the vacant building **down**.

for

go for _____ be attracted by She **goes for** men with beards.

forth

put SEP forth propose, suggest Johanna **put forth** her plan to save the black-footed ferret.

in

hold SEP in suppress The candidate is good at **holding** his emotions **in**.

in on

move in on _____ get closer to The FBI is **moving in on** the counterfeiter.

into

marry into _____ become a member of by marrying someone who is a member Diana **married into** royalty.

<p>of complain of _____ <i>report the symptoms of</i></p>	<p>Rosemarie complains of arthritis and backache.</p>
<p>off run <u>SEP</u> off <i>print, make copies of</i></p>	<p>I ran several extra sets off for you.</p>
<p>on improve on _____ <i>make something better than</i></p>	<p>How could you improve on Post-it notes?</p>
<p>out hand <u>SEP</u> out <i>distribute</i></p>	<p>She handed out the schedule to reporters.</p>
<p>out of change out of _____ <i>replace [one set of clothing with another]</i></p>	<p>I'm all sweaty—I have to change out of these running clothes.</p>
<p>over make <u>SEP</u> over <i>change the appearance of</i></p>	<p>The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.</p>
<p>through carry <u>SEP</u> through <i>accomplish</i></p>	<p>She is determined to carry through her vision of a drug-free America.</p>
<p>to look to _____ <i>depend on</i></p>	<p>Students look to their teachers for help.</p>
<p>under fall under _____ <i>be influenced/controlled by</i></p>	<p>The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.</p>
<p>up mark <u>SEP</u> up <i>raise the price of</i></p>	<p>The art dealer marks paintings up 200%.</p>
<p>up on catch _____ up on <i>bring up-to-date about</i></p>	<p>The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.</p>
<p>upon hit upon _____ <i>discover</i></p>	<p>She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.</p>
<p>with live with _____ <i>endure, put up with</i></p>	<p>He lived with a limp for the rest of his life.</p>

Note the double particles *in on*, *out of*, and *up on* in the list above.

Verbs of Motion

Verbs of motion typically form many phrasal verbs with particles considered to be adverbs. This is listed as the first entry in the Phrasal Verbs section.

<p>pull away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. <i>move in a specified direction</i></p>	<p>The van pulled away slowly. We're lost. Let's pull over and look at a map.</p>
<p>pull <u>SEP</u> along/aside/away/over/under/up/etc. <i>cause to move in a specified direction</i></p>	<p>Can you pull the kids away from the TV? Sam pulled up a chair and sat down.</p>

EXPRESSIONS

An Expressions section is included on verb pages where space permits. The entries are common idiomatic set phrases that are useful to the English learner.

555

ENGLISH VERBS

Conjugations
Complements
Phrasal Verbs
Expressions

TOP 40 VERBS

The following forty verbs have been selected because of their semantic and syntactic richness, both in their basic meanings and complements and in their phrasal verbs. A full page of example sentences provides guidance on correct usage and immediately precedes or follows the conjugation/complements page.

	Verb no.
be	52
bear	53
blow	66
break	68
bring	69
call	75
carry	77
catch	79
come	95
cut	128
do	161
feel	201
find	206
get	226
give	227
go	228
have	239
hold	246
keep	273
lay	282
leave	287
look	300
make	304
move	316
pass	337
play	345
pull	370
put	374
read	381
run	421
see	428
set	436
show	446
slip	455
stand	470
strike	484
take	505
throw	515
turn	524
work	551

PRESENT

I abandon we abandon
you abandon you abandon
he/she/it abandons they abandon
• *He often abandons failing projects.*

PAST

I abandoned we abandoned
you abandoned you abandoned
he/she/it abandoned they abandoned
• *She abandoned any hope of succeeding.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has abandoned

PAST PERFECT ... had abandoned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am abandoning we are abandoning
you are abandoning you are abandoning
he/she/it is abandoning they are abandoning
• *We are abandoning our original plan.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was abandoning we were abandoning
you were abandoning you were abandoning
he/she/it was abandoning they were abandoning
• *They were abandoning the search.*

FUTURE ... will abandon

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be abandoning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have abandoned

PAST PASSIVE

I was abandoned we were abandoned
you were abandoned you were abandoned
he/she/it was abandoned they were abandoned
• *That mine was abandoned years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

abandon _____ give up completely

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

abandon _____ stop using, leave behind

OBJECT

abandon _____ give [oneself] over completely

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to WH-CLAUSE

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +
to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The soldiers have abandoned **their attack**.
Our neighbors abandoned **the cats to the snowstorm**.
We abandoned **what we were trying to do**.
They abandoned **trying to put out the fire**.

The captain is abandoning **the sinking ship**.
The villagers abandoned **their flooded houses**.
The immigrants will eventually abandon **their native language**.

John abandoned **himself to his work**.
She abandoned **herself to what she had always wanted to do**.

They abandoned **themselves to eating everything in the refrigerator**.

PRESENT

I absorb we absorb
 you absorb you absorb
 he/she/it absorbs they absorb
 • *Sand absorbs water rapidly.*

PAST

I absorbed we absorbed
 you absorbed you absorbed
 he/she/it absorbed they absorbed
 • *We absorbed severe financial losses.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has absorbed

PAST PERFECT ... had absorbed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am absorbing we are absorbing
 you are absorbing you are absorbing
 he/she/it is absorbing they are absorbing
 • *We are absorbing the new information.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was absorbing we were absorbing
 you were absorbing you were absorbing
 he/she/it was absorbing they were absorbing
 • *I was absorbing the bad news.*

FUTURE ... will absorb

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be absorbing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have absorbed

PAST PASSIVE

I was absorbed we were absorbed
 you were absorbed you were absorbed
 he/she/it was absorbed they were absorbed
 • *The gas was absorbed by charcoal.*

COMPLEMENTS

absorb _____ take in and make a part of oneself

OBJECT

The paper towels absorbed **the spilled milk**.
 Plants absorb **nourishment** through their roots.
 China has always absorbed **its invaders**.
 An acoustic ceiling will absorb **most of the sound**.
 The largest union absorbed **two others** into its organization.
 Alcohol is absorbed into the bloodstream quickly.
 We absorbed **what we needed to pass the course**.
 They absorbed **whatever they were taught**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

absorb _____ assume, take on

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

We will absorb **all the losses**.
 The company will absorb **whatever costs are incurred**.

PHRASAL VERBS

absorb in/into _____ pass through

Does lead absorb directly into the skin?

EXPRESSIONS

absorbed engaged entirely

Our professor is absorbed in thought—
 don't disturb her.

PRESENT

I accept we accept
 you accept you accept
 he/she/it accepts they accept
 • *I accept your generous offer.*

PAST

I accepted we accepted
 you accepted you accepted
 he/she/it accepted they accepted
 • *The court accepted our argument.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has accepted

PAST PERFECT ... had accepted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am accepting we are accepting
 you are accepting you are accepting
 he/she/it is accepting they are accepting
 • *Jane is accepting the award for all of us.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was accepting we were accepting
 you were accepting you were accepting
 he/she/it was accepting they were accepting
 • *They were accepting all valid receipts.*

FUTURE ... will accept

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be accepting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have accepted

PAST PASSIVE

I was accepted we were accepted
 you were accepted you were accepted
 he/she/it was accepted they were accepted
 • *The gifts were accepted gratefully by the hosts.*

COMPLEMENTS

accept _____ receive willingly

OBJECT

They accepted **the peace offering**.
 She accepted **my apology**.
 We should accept **the newspaper's offer of free publicity**.

accept _____ take as payment

OBJECT

The grocery store doesn't accept **personal checks**.

accept _____ agree to, believe to be valid/true

OBJECT

Everyone accepted **the dimensions of the problem**.
 Why won't she accept **my explanation**?

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

The board accepted **Tim as their spokesperson**.
 They will accept **Cleveland as the regional headquarters**.

PASSIVE

Cleveland was accepted **as the regional headquarters**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Should we accept **the company's offer as final**?

PASSIVE

Experts accept **the document as authentic**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The document was accepted **as authentic**.

WH-CLAUSE

I accepted **that the situation was quite unusual**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Everyone has accepted **what needs to be done**.

He will accept **Richard's naming his own successor**.

EXPRESSIONS

acceptable damage damage that is tolerable

Fewer than 20 flooded homes is acceptable damage.

acceptable loss(es) loss(es) that is/are tolerable

There is no acceptable loss of life in such a disaster.
 The president believes 4,000 combat deaths to be in the range of acceptable losses.

PRESENT

I accompany we accompany
 you accompany you accompany
 he/she/it accompanies they accompany
 • *The dog accompanies us everywhere.*

PAST

I accompanied we accompanied
 you accompanied you accompanied
 he/she/it accompanied they accompanied
 • *My parents accompanied us on the trip.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has accompanied

PAST PERFECT ... had accompanied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am accompanying we are accompanying
 you are accompanying you are accompanying
 he/she/it is accompanying they are accompanying
 • *Jane is accompanying us as far as Mexico City.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was accompanying we were accompanying
 you were accompanying you were accompanying
 he/she/it was accompanying they were accompanying
 • *I was accompanying them around the site.*

FUTURE ... will accompany

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be accompanying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have accompanied

PAST PASSIVE

I was accompanied we were accompanied
 you were accompanied you were accompanied
 he/she/it was accompanied they were accompanied
 • *The CEO was accompanied by the board.*

COMPLEMENTS

accompany _____ go with as a companion

OBJECT

Robert accompanied **the reporter**.

PASSIVE

All children must be accompanied by an adult.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We accompanied **them to the showroom**.

They will accompany **you back from the restaurant**.

Hermione will be accompanying **Harry Potter on his next adventure**.

accompany _____ be associated/included with

OBJECT

Color photographs accompany **the text**.

In the South, gravy often accompanies **biscuits**.

A glass of wine accompanied **each course**.

accompany _____ play an instrument in support of the musical performance of

OBJECT

Jan will accompany **the singers** on the piano.

PRESENT

I accomplish	we accomplish
you accomplish	you accomplish
he/she/it accomplishes	they accomplish

• *She accomplishes what she needs to.*

PAST

I accomplished	we accomplished
you accomplished	you accomplished
he/she/it accomplished	they accomplished

• *I accomplished everything I set out to do.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has accomplished

PAST PERFECT ... had accomplished

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am accomplishing	we are accomplishing
you are accomplishing	you are accomplishing
he/she/it is accomplishing	they are accomplishing

• *I am accomplishing a lot here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was accomplishing	we were accomplishing
you were accomplishing	you were accomplishing
he/she/it was accomplishing	they were accomplishing

• *We were accomplishing our goals.*

FUTURE

... will accomplish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be accomplishing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have accomplished

PAST PASSIVE

—

—

it was accomplished they were accomplished

• *Our goal was accomplished by hard work.*

COMPLEMENTS

accomplish _____ finish, complete successfully

OBJECT

I will accomplish **my goal**.
We accomplished **a lot** today.
We will accomplish **our task** soon.

WH-CLAUSE

They accomplished **what they set out to do**.
We will accomplish **whatever we promised to do**.

EXPRESSIONS

accomplished skillful, expert

Peter is an accomplished pianist.
Jessica is quite accomplished on the harpsichord.

PRESENT

I account we account
 you account you account
 he/she/it accounts they account

• *That accounts for everything!*

PAST

I accounted we accounted
 you accounted you accounted
 he/she/it accounted they accounted

• *Poor sales accounted for our losses.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has accounted

PAST PERFECT ... had accounted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Account is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Account is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will account

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have accounted

PAST PASSIVE

I was accounted we were accounted
 you were accounted you were accounted
 he/she/it was accounted they were accounted

• *All the keys were accounted for.*

COMPLEMENTS

account _____ consider

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PASSIVE

I accounted **myself (to be) an honest person.**

I accounted **Alex (to be) a good friend.**

Alex was accounted **(to be) a good friend.**

I accounted **myself (to be) lucky.**

I accounted **Jan (to be) reliable.**

Jan was accounted **(to be) reliable.**

PHRASAL VERBS

account for _____ explain

We still can't account for what happened to the money.

Can you account for their missing the train?

I had accounted for all the office computers.

account for _____ make sure of the whereabouts of

account for _____ be the sole/primary factor for

Albert Pujols accounted for all the Cardinals' runs.

Cars and trucks account for 18% of Germany's exports.

The recession accounted for our doing so badly recently.

EXPRESSIONS

take _____ into account take into consideration

Have you taken increased gas prices into account?

We took into account that most people are undecided.

PRESENT

I accuse we accuse
 you accuse you accuse
 he/she/it accuses they accuse
 • *He often accuses us of carelessness.*

PAST

I accused we accused
 you accused you accused
 he/she/it accused they accused
 • *The manager accused George at first.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has accused

PAST PERFECT ... had accused

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am accusing we are accusing
 you are accusing you are accusing
 he/she/it is accusing they are accusing
 • *They are accusing him of being negligent.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was accusing we were accusing
 you were accusing you were accusing
 he/she/it was accusing they were accusing
 • *The editor was accusing him of plagiarism.*

FUTURE ... will accuse

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be accusing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have accused

PAST PASSIVE

I was accused we were accused
 you were accused you were accused
 he/she/it was accused they were accused
 • *I was never accused of anything.*

COMPLEMENTS

accuse _____ charge with [a fault/offense]

OBJECT

The inspector accused **Frank**.

I am not accusing **anyone**.

OBJECT + of OBJECT

He accused **Frank of the crime**.

They accused **the company of fraud**.

PASSIVE

The company was accused **of fraud**.

OBJECT + of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He accused **Frank of doing it**.

They accused **the company of committing fraud**.

PASSIVE

The company was accused **of committing fraud**.

EXPRESSIONS

the accused the defendant(s) in a criminal case

The accused has a long list of prior arrests.

PRESENT

I achieve we achieve
 you achieve you achieve
 he/she/it achieves they achieve
 • *He usually achieves his goals.*

PAST

I achieved we achieved
 you achieved you achieved
 he/she/it achieved they achieved
 • *They achieved a fine record of safety.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has achieved

PAST PERFECT ... had achieved

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was achieved they were achieved
 • *Our goals were gradually achieved.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am achieving we are achieving
 you are achieving you are achieving
 he/she/it is achieving they are achieving
 • *We are achieving a high level of success.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was achieving we were achieving
 you were achieving you were achieving
 he/she/it was achieving they were achieving
 • *They were achieving record sales.*

FUTURE

... will achieve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be achieving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have achieved

COMPLEMENTS

achieve _____ attain, accomplish

OBJECT

We achieved **the results we had hoped for**.
 I have achieved **a high level of proficiency in French**.
 The company has achieved **a 10% increase in production**.
 The band achieved **overnight fame**.
 We will be achieving **a lot** this year.

WH-CLAUSE

She achieved **what she set out to do**.
 They always achieve **whatever they say they will**.

EXPRESSIONS

achiever *one who attains success*

Polly was a dreamer; Molly was
 an achiever.

PRESENT

I acquire we acquire
 you acquire you acquire
 he/she/it acquires they acquire
 • *I acquire a few extra pounds every winter.*

PAST

I acquired we acquired
 you acquired you acquired
 he/she/it acquired they acquired
 • *The band acquired a loyal following.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has acquired

PAST PERFECT ... had acquired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am acquiring we are acquiring
 you are acquiring you are acquiring
 he/she/it is acquiring they are acquiring
 • *They are acquiring an excellent reputation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was acquiring we were acquiring
 you were acquiring you were acquiring
 he/she/it was acquiring they were acquiring
 • *She was acquiring a first-class education there.*

FUTURE

... will acquire

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be acquiring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have acquired

PAST PASSIVE

I was acquired we were acquired
 you were acquired you were acquired
 he/she/it was acquired they were acquired
 • *Success was acquired one step at a time.*

COMPLEMENTS

acquire _____ get, obtain

OBJECT

Students must acquire **proficiency in math**.
 Pets help children acquire **immunity to allergies**.

acquire _____ take possession of

OBJECT

I acquired **100 shares of ABC Corporation**.
 The company will acquire **a new store in Brooklyn**.
 The museum acquired **an Albrecht Dürer watercolor**.
 He was acquired in a trade with the White Sox.
 I acquired **what I wanted** over the Internet.
 They acquired **whatever resources they needed**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

EXPRESSIONS

acquire a taste for _____ develop an appreciation for

She will never acquire a taste for coffee.

acquired taste appreciation developed after repeated experience

They acquired a taste for visiting exotic islands.

Beer is an acquired taste, like coffee and tea.

PRESENT

I act we act
 you act you act
 he/she/it acts they act
 • *John always acts as if he were the boss.*

PAST

I acted we acted
 you acted you acted
 he/she/it acted they acted
 • *They acted properly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has acted

PAST PERFECT ... had acted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was acted they were acted
 • *The role was acted by Jason Jones.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am acting we are acting
 you are acting you are acting
 he/she/it is acting they are acting
 • *The kids are acting pretty silly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was acting we were acting
 you were acting you were acting
 he/she/it was acting they were acting
 • *They were acting under my orders.*

FUTURE ... will act

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be acting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have acted

COMPLEMENTS

act *do something*act *have an effect*act _____ *behave*

ADVERB OF MANNER

act _____ *behave like, pretend to be*

PREDICATE NOUN

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

act _____ *play the role of*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Think before you act.

We must act now to stop global warming.

The sedative acted quickly.

He acted **foolishly**.He acted **like a fool**.They acted **like they didn't have a care in the world**.Politicians always act **in their own interests**.Please act **your age!**He acted **the fool**.He acted **dumb**.She acted **embarrassed**.Martin always acts **the expert on international trade**.Colin acted **the part of a visiting Englishman** in the play.

The part of a visiting Englishman was acted by Colin.

PHRASAL VERBS

act as _____ *perform the duty/function of*act for _____ *represent the interests of*act on _____ *take action on*act out *misbehave*act SEP out *put into action*act up *misbehave*act up *malfunction*act up *become troublesome*She acted as club president
for three years.

The realtor is acting for the homeowner.

The police acted on the anonymous tip.

Randy has been acting out in the classroom.

He's acting out his frustration.

She acted out her dream of being a ballerina.

The children were acting up at the school picnic.

My computer is acting up.

Grandpa's arthritis is acting up again.

PRESENT

I add we add
 you add you add
 he/she/it adds they add
 • *We add sales tax to every purchase.*

PAST

I added we added
 you added you added
 he/she/it added they added
 • *Poor weather added weeks to the job.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has added

PAST PERFECT ... had added

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am adding we are adding
 you are adding you are adding
 he/she/it is adding they are adding
 • *We are adding a new feature to the program.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was adding we were adding
 you were adding you were adding
 he/she/it was adding they were adding
 • *I was adding onto the garage.*

FUTURE ... will add

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be adding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have added

PAST PASSIVE

I was added we were added
 you were added you were added
 he/she/it was added they were added
 • *The dock was added on over the winter.*

COMPLEMENTS

add *perform addition*

The second grader adds very well.

add _____ *make an addition*

We added **to our retirement fund**.

to OBJECT

add _____ *combine to form a sum*

I added **the long column of numbers**.

OBJECT

add _____ *join so as to increase the size or quantity of something*

I added **too much water**.

OBJECT (+ to/into/onto OBJECT)

The lawyer added **another clause to the agreement**.

We will add **\$1,000 to our retirement fund**.

Add **a cup of milk to the dry ingredients**.

Add **the egg whites into the mixture**.

Our neighbors added **a second floor onto their garage**.

They added **whatever supplies they needed**.

WH-CLAUSE

add _____ *create as an improvement*

Framed photos add **a nice touch** to your office.

OBJECT

add _____ *say further*

The speaker added **a quote from Mark Twain**.

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

Bob added **that he fully supported the plan**.

DIRECT QUOTATION

Bob added, **"I fully support the plan."**

PHRASAL VERBS

add on *build an addition*

Unless we add on, we won't have enough space.

add SEP **on** *build [an addition] to an existing structure*

Let's add on a deck.

add SEP **together** *combine to form a sum*

Add together these three numbers.

If I add these CDs together with those, I'll have quite a collection.

add up *make sense*

These figures of yours don't add up.

His story about ghosts just doesn't add up.

add up to _____ *amount to*

Four quarters or two halves—it adds up to the same thing.

Coupons and advertised specials add up to big savings.

PRESENT

I address	we address
you address	you address
he/she/it addresses	they address

• *He addresses current issues in his talks.*

PAST

I addressed	we addressed
you addressed	you addressed
he/she/it addressed	they addressed

• *We addressed this problem last summer.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has addressed

PAST PERFECT ... had addressed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am addressing	we are addressing
you are addressing	you are addressing
he/she/it is addressing	they are addressing

• *I am addressing envelopes right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was addressing	we were addressing
you were addressing	you were addressing
he/she/it was addressing	they were addressing

• *He was addressing some visitors.*

FUTURE

... will address

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be addressing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have addressed

PAST PASSIVE

I was addressed	we were addressed
you were addressed	you were addressed
he/she/it was addressed	they were addressed

• *This concern was addressed in the proposal.*

NOTE: The verb *address* is always stressed on the second syllable.The noun *address* is usually stressed on the first syllable when it refers to a location.

COMPLEMENTS

address _____ speak to

OBJECT

He addressed **the waiting crowd**.

address _____ speak to, using a title or in a particular manner

OBJECT + AS OBJECT

You should address **the queen as "Your Majesty."**The politicians addressed **each other as equals**.

address _____ speak about, discuss

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Senator Blather addressed **the farm bill**.They addressed **what they should do next**.He addressed **how they could solve the problem**.He addressed **his voting on the issue**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

address _____ direct [one's words]

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

OBJECT + TO WH-CLAUSE

Address **your remarks to me**, please.You may address **your complaints to whoever will listen**.

address _____ direct one's attention/efforts to

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + TO OBJECT

The CEO will address **himself to workplace safety problems**.

address _____ write directions for delivery on

OBJECT

They addressed **all the envelopes and packages**.

PRESENT

I adjust we adjust
 you adjust you adjust
 he/she/it adjusts they adjust
 • *She adjusts well to new situations.*

PAST

I adjusted we adjusted
 you adjusted you adjusted
 he/she/it adjusted they adjusted
 • *We adjusted our budget plans.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has adjusted

PAST PERFECT ... had adjusted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am adjusting we are adjusting
 you are adjusting you are adjusting
 he/she/it is adjusting they are adjusting
 • *I am adjusting the children's seat belts.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was adjusting we were adjusting
 you were adjusting you were adjusting
 he/she/it was adjusting they were adjusting
 • *They were constantly adjusting the thermostat.*

FUTURE ... will adjust

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be adjusting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have adjusted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was adjusted they were adjusted
 • *The data were adjusted for inflation.*

COMPLEMENTS

adjust *adapt, conform*

He adjusts easily in strange surroundings.
 The cougar adjusted well in captivity.
 The monitor adjusts in height from 3 to 12 inches.

adjust _____ *adapt, conform*
 to OBJECT

He didn't adjust well **to early morning classes**.
 I will eventually adjust **to the change in schedule**.

adjust _____ *improve, make correct*
 OBJECT

We adjusted **the projections for future income**.
 Pat needs to adjust **his attitude**.
 I adjusted **the car seat and the rearview mirror**.
 The car seat and the rearview mirror were adjusted.
 I adjusted **what we had previously forecast**.
 They adjusted **how they had previously measured growth**.

PASSIVE
 WH-CLAUSE

EXPRESSIONS

adjustable rate mortgage *a mortgage whose interest rate is periodically adjusted*

If you plan to keep your home for less than five years, get an adjustable rate mortgage.

PRESENT

I admit we admit
 you admit you admit
 he/she/it admits they admit

• *Harry admits doing it.*

PAST

I admitted we admitted
 you admitted you admitted
 he/she/it admitted they admitted

• *He admitted that he was wrong.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has admitted

PAST PERFECT ... had admitted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am admitting we are admitting
 you are admitting you are admitting
 he/she/it is admitting they are admitting

• *Brad is finally admitting his mistake.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was admitting we were admitting
 you were admitting you were admitting
 he/she/it was admitting they were admitting

• *They were admitting more international students.*

FUTURE ... will admit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be admitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have admitted

PAST PASSIVE

I was admitted we were admitted
 you were admitted you were admitted
 he/she/it was admitted they were admitted

• *John was admitted to graduate school.*

COMPLEMENTS

admit _____ acknowledge as true

(to) OBJECT

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

(to) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Allen admitted **(to) the mistake.**

Allen admitted **the mistake** to the teacher.

Rodney admits **his claims to be false.**

They admitted **that they had goofed.**

Sam admits **(to) his taking the money.**

Sam admits **(to) taking the money.**

Zack admits **(to) being inconsiderate sometimes.**

admit _____ permit

of OBJECT

The poem admits **of two different interpretations.**

admit _____ permit to enter

OBJECT

The guards admitted **us.**

The school only admits **in-state applicants.**

One ticket admits **four adults.**

OBJECT + to/into OBJECT

UCLA admitted **Lou to its MBA program.**

The judge admitted **the videotape into evidence.**

The manager admitted **us into the secure area.**

admit _____ have space/seating for

OBJECT

The concert hall admits **750 people.**

admit _____ accept [into a hospital as a patient]

OBJECT

The hospital admitted **17 new patients** yesterday.

PASSIVE

I was admitted to the hospital for surgery.

PRESENT

I adopt we adopt
 you adopt you adopt
 he/she/it adopts they adopt
 • *The actor adopts the lifestyle of a monk.*

PAST

I adopted we adopted
 you adopted you adopted
 he/she/it adopted they adopted
 • *The company adopted a new logo.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has adopted

PAST PERFECT ... had adopted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am adopting we are adopting
 you are adopting you are adopting
 he/she/it is adopting they are adopting
 • *They are adopting a child in July.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was adopting we were adopting
 you were adopting you were adopting
 he/she/it was adopting they were adopting
 • *They were adopting an aggressive attitude.*

FUTURE ... will adopt

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be adopting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have adopted

PAST PASSIVE

I was adopted we were adopted
 you were adopted you were adopted
 he/she/it was adopted they were adopted
 • *The messaging system was adopted recently.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Adopt* is often confused with *adapt*, which means “to modify/adjust.” Compare the following sentences.

We adopted the plan. (*took and used*)

We adapted the plan to fit within the budget. (*adjusted*)

adopt *legally take another person’s child as one’s own* Our neighbors hope to adopt.

adopt _____ *legally take [another person’s child] as one’s own*

OBJECT

They have adopted **three children**.

adopt _____ *take and use [ideas, suggestions] as one’s own*

OBJECT

We have adopted **your approach to the problem**.

They will adopt **the format that you developed**.

Plato adopted **Socrates’ philosophy** as his own.

WH-CLAUSE

The company will adopt **whichever plan the committee recommends**.

adopt _____ *take and follow [a course of action]*

OBJECT

After his setback, John adopted **a very different tone**.

adopt _____ *approve, accept*

OBJECT

The committee adopted **the amendment**.

Professor Jones adopted **the book** as the required text.

WH-CLAUSE

The Senate adopted **what the subcommittee recommended**.

PRESENT

I advance we advance
you advance you advance
he/she/it advances they advance
• *He advances the interests of his company.*

PAST

I advanced we advanced
you advanced you advanced
he/she/it advanced they advanced
• *I advanced equal opportunity hiring.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has advanced

PAST PERFECT ... had advanced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am advancing we are advancing
you are advancing you are advancing
he/she/it is advancing they are advancing
• *They are advancing the date of the meeting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was advancing we were advancing
you were advancing you were advancing
he/she/it was advancing they were advancing
• *We were advancing all along the front.*

FUTURE

... will advance

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be advancing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have advanced

PAST PASSIVE

I was advanced we were advanced
you were advanced you were advanced
he/she/it was advanced they were advanced
• *The timetable was advanced by two weeks.*

COMPLEMENTS

advance *move forward in space/time/ value/status*

The army is advancing on the town from the southeast.

The hours were steadily advancing.

The euro advanced against the dollar on the news of a slower economy.

Ray slowly advanced from rank to rank.

advance _____ *bring forward in space/time*

OBJECT

The Seahawks advanced **the football** six yards on first down.

The general advanced **the infantry**.

I advanced **the time of the meeting**.

advance _____ *advocate, propose*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

George is always advancing **his own causes**.

He advances **whatever will do him the most good**.

advance _____ *give a promotion to*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

We advanced **Alice** from clerk to assistant manager.

They will advance **whoever they think is most qualified**.

advance _____ *loan, pay ahead of time*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

PASSIVE

I advanced **him a week's salary**.

I advanced **a week's salary to him**.

He was advanced a week's salary.

EXPRESSIONS

advanced *higher-level*

The professor assigned an advanced text in astronomy.

advanced *far along in time*

My cousin was diagnosed with an advanced stage of cancer.

Ruth took up knitting at an advanced age.

advanced *progressive*

The politician's advanced ideas met a lot of resistance.

advanced degree *a university degree higher than a bachelor's*

Sam decided to pursue an advanced degree at Eastern State University.

PRESENT

I advertise we advertise
you advertise you advertise
he/she/it advertises they advertise
• *The company advertises only on the Web.*

PAST

I advertised we advertised
you advertised you advertised
he/she/it advertised they advertised
• *They advertised frequently in the Times.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has advertised
PAST PERFECT ... had advertised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am advertising we are advertising
you are advertising you are advertising
he/she/it is advertising they are advertising
• *They are advertising several new jobs.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was advertising we were advertising
you were advertising you were advertising
he/she/it was advertising they were advertising
• *We were advertising the product on TV.*

FUTURE ... will advertise
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be advertising
FUTURE PERFECT ... will have advertised

PAST PASSIVE

I was advertised we were advertised
you were advertised you were advertised
he/she/it was advertised they were advertised
• *The job opening was widely advertised.*

COMPLEMENTS

advertise *solicit business in the media* They advertise in the New York metropolitan area.

advertise _____ *solicit applicants in the media*
for OBJECT The church advertised **for a new administrator.**

advertise _____ *publicize/promote [a product/service]*
OBJECT We usually advertise **new products** heavily.
Chris doesn't advertise **his lawnmowing business.**
We only advertise **whatever we need to sell quickly.**

WH-CLAUSE

advertise _____ *make publicly known*
OBJECT Their announcement just advertised **their failures.**
We advertised **the rollout of the new models** nationally.
Donald advertised **himself as an expert.**
They advertised **the school as the only totally green institution on the East Coast.**

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE I was advertised **as the youngest competitor in the meet.**
OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE Willie advertised **himself as fluent in Russian.**
THAT-CLAUSE They advertised **that they were an equal opportunity employer.**
The negotiators advertised **that they were open to new proposals.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE The company advertised **their opening a new plant in China.**

EXPRESSIONS

as advertised *according to published claims* This spyware performs as advertised.
The job was not quite as advertised.

PRESENT

I advise we advise
 you advise you advise
 he/she/it advises they advise
 • *The consultant advises us to reduce costs.*

PAST

I advised we advised
 you advised you advised
 he/she/it advised they advised
 • *John advised us against renewing.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has advised

PAST PERFECT ... had advised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am advising we are advising
 you are advising you are advising
 he/she/it is advising they are advising
 • *The TV is advising us to stay off the roads.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was advising we were advising
 you were advising you were advising
 he/she/it was advising they were advising
 • *I was advising my clients to sell.*

FUTURE ... will advise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be advising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have advised

PAST PASSIVE

I was advised we were advised
 you were advised you were advised
 he/she/it was advised they were advised
 • *We were advised to be very cautious.*

NOTE: The verb *advise* is spelled with an *s*, pronounced /z/.
 The related noun *advice* is spelled with a *c*, pronounced /s/.

COMPLEMENTS

advise *counsel*

This expert only advises on economic matters.

advise _____ *counsel*

OBJECT

I advise **caution**.OBJECT + *about/on* OBJECTThe company advises **large corporations**.OBJECT + *against* PRESENT PARTICIPLEThe art department can advise **you about website design**.
 Rebecca will advise **Raymond on which computer to buy**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The accountant advised **me against taking out a loan**.

PASSIVE

The doctor advised **me to get X-rays of my elbow**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The company was advised **to diversify its product lines**.advise _____ *warn, suggest*

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

We advise **that you be careful driving in this weather**.advise _____ *notify about*OBJECT + *of* OBJECTHe advised **us that we might need to sell the stock**.The judge advised **them of their rights**.The director advised **them of the consequences of being late**.

PRESENT

I affect we affect
 you affect you affect
 he/she/it affects they affect
 • *John affects an interest in opera.*

PAST

I affected we affected
 you affected you affected
 he/she/it affected they affected
 • *The loss affected us greatly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has affected

PAST PERFECT ... had affected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am affecting we are affecting
 you are affecting you are affecting
 he/she/it is affecting they are affecting
 • *The bad weather is affecting sales.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was affecting we were affecting
 you were affecting you were affecting
 he/she/it was affecting they were affecting
 • *The recession was affecting everyone.*

FUTURE

... will affect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be affecting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have affected

PAST PASSIVE

I was affected we were affected
 you were affected you were affected
 he/she/it was affected they were affected
 • *Everyone was affected by the tragedy.*

NOTE: The verb *affect* is often confused with the noun *effect*. (They are usually pronounced the same way.) Visualize the two *e*'s in the expression *the effect*: The word *the* is never used before the verb *affect*.

COMPLEMENTS

affect _____ have an effect on

OBJECT

John affected **everyone he met** for the better.
 Exercise affects **both blood pressure and pulse**.

WH-CLAUSE

It really affected **what we could do**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Exercise affects **how well your brain functions**.

affect _____ put on a false/pretentious show of

OBJECT

The cutbacks affected **our doing the job properly**.

WH-CLAUSE

Cal was affecting an **upper-class British accent**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Dick affected **an air of superiority**.

He affected **whatever was fashionable at the moment**.

He affected **being a citizen of the world**.

PRESENT

I afford	we afford
you afford	you afford
he/she/it affords	they afford

• *It affords you a wonderful opportunity.*

PAST

I afforded	we afforded
you afforded	you afforded
he/she/it afforded	they afforded

• *The vacation afforded us time to read.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has afforded

PAST PERFECT ... had afforded

PAST PASSIVE

I was afforded	we were afforded
you were afforded	you were afforded
he/she/it was afforded	they were afforded

• *No opportunity to congregate was afforded the protesters.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am affording	we are affording
you are affording	you are affording
he/she/it is affording	they are affording

• *We are affording you one last chance.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was affording	we were affording
you were affording	you were affording
he/she/it was affording	they were affording

• *The salesperson was affording me a good deal.*

FUTURE ... will afford

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be affording

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have afforded

COMPLEMENTS

afford _____ have enough money for

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

afford _____ bear without serious risk

OBJECT

INFINITIVE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

afford _____ spare

OBJECT

afford _____ provide

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

They can afford **a new car**.We couldn't afford **what they were asking**.We can afford **patience in the negotiations**.I can't afford **to make the same mistake again**.We can't afford **his making the same mistake again**.We can only afford **half an hour** for lunch.The porch afforded **a wonderful view of the valley**.The sun affords **warmth and life**.It afforded **me a wonderful opportunity**.It afforded **a wonderful opportunity for me**.

EXPRESSIONS

affordable housing *dwelling units whose total cost is within the means of a particular group of people*

Affordable housing is essential to the health of a community.

PRESENT

I agree we agree
 you agree you agree
 he/she/it agrees they agree
 • *She agrees that we should do it.*

PAST

I agreed we agreed
 you agreed you agreed
 he/she/it agreed they agreed
 • *We agreed to a new contract.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has agreed

PAST PERFECT ... had agreed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am agreeing we are agreeing
 you are agreeing you are agreeing
 he/she/it is agreeing they are agreeing
 • *You are always agreeing with them!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was agreeing we were agreeing
 you were agreeing you were agreeing
 he/she/it was agreeing they were agreeing
 • *They were agreeing with each other.*

FUTURE ... will agree

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be agreeing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have agreed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was agreed they were agreed
 • *The plan was finally agreed to.*

COMPLEMENTS

agree come to an understanding,
 be in accord

The two sides finally agreed.
 We agree in our choice for president.
 Our tastes in music agree.

agree _____ be in accord, consent
 on/upon OBJECT
 PASSIVE
 to OBJECT
 with OBJECT (+ on/upon OBJECT)

They agreed **on the solution to the problem.**
 The price was agreed upon at the last minute.
 They agreed **to the plan.**
 I'm sorry, but I don't agree **with you.**
 They agree **with us on all important points.**
 They agreed **to cooperate on the project.**
 I agree **that we should go ahead.**
 They agreed **about what they should do.**
 They agreed **to what the board had recommended.**

PHRASAL VERBS

agree with _____ be healthful for,
 be acceptable to
agree with _____ be compatible with
agree with _____ correspond in
 grammatical features

Garlic doesn't agree with me.
 The dry climate agrees with us.
 Your shirt doesn't agree with your slacks.
 Your copy doesn't agree with the original manuscript.
 The verb must agree with the subject in person
 and number.

EXPRESSIONS

agree to disagree conclude that the
 parties to a discussion don't concur
 about something

We've argued for two hours;
 let's just agree to disagree.

PRESENT

I aim we aim
 you aim you aim
 he/she/it aims they aim
 • *Our staff aims to please the customer.*

PAST

I aimed we aimed
 you aimed you aimed
 he/she/it aimed they aimed
 • *We aimed to be the best in the field.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has aimed

PAST PERFECT ... had aimed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am aiming we are aiming
 you are aiming you are aiming
 he/she/it is aiming they are aiming
 • *We are aiming at setting a new record.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was aiming we were aiming
 you were aiming you were aiming
 he/she/it was aiming they were aiming
 • *I was aiming for a new personal best.*

FUTURE

... will aim

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be aiming

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have aimed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was aimed they were aimed
 • *The gun was aimed right at my head.*

COMPLEMENTS

aim _____ direct/point [something at a target]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The boxer aimed **his punch at his opponent's head**.
 I aimed **the car away from oncoming traffic**.
 He aimed **the boat back toward the dock**.
 The sheriff aimed **his pistol at Black Bart**.
 We aimed **all our efforts at the new goal**.

aim _____ aspire, have as a goal

for OBJECT

I was aiming **for a position on the team**.
 Now that she's turned 90, she's aiming **for 100**.

INFINITIVE

I aimed **to do my best**.
 They are aiming **to finish by 5 o'clock**.

at PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I aimed **at doing my best**.
 They aimed **at finishing by 5 o'clock**.
 As a young girl, I aimed **at playing Juliet on stage**.

EXPRESSIONS

aim for the sky set one's goals
 very high

If you aim for the sky, you'll land in
 a tree. If you aim for a tree, you'll land
 on the ground.

PRESENT

I allow	we allow
you allow	you allow
he/she/it allows	they allow

• *He allows extra time when it rains.*

PAST

I allowed	we allowed
you allowed	you allowed
he/she/it allowed	they allowed

• *The board allowed the project to proceed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has allowed

PAST PERFECT ... had allowed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am allowing	we are allowing
you are allowing	you are allowing
he/she/it is allowing	they are allowing

• *They are allowing us to board the aircraft.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was allowing	we were allowing
you were allowing	you were allowing
he/she/it was allowing	they were allowing

• *We were allowing for some delays.*

FUTURE ... will allow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be allowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have allowed

PAST PASSIVE

I was allowed	we were allowed
you were allowed	you were allowed
he/she/it was allowed	they were allowed

• *Pets weren't allowed in the hotel.*

COMPLEMENTS

allow _____ permit

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

of OBJECT

allow _____ schedule

OBJECT

allow _____ admit, concede

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

They allow **left turns onto one-way streets**.

Smoking is not allowed in restaurants.

He allowed **us to start early**.

They allowed **them what they had requested**.

They allowed **Bob some extra time**.

They allowed **some extra time for Bob**.

This note allows **of interpretation**.

You must allow **plenty of time to get there**.

They allowed **his claim for \$50 in damages**.

They allowed **that we were right after all**.

PHRASAL VERBS

allow (_____) **for** make provision for, allocate for

allow _____ **in/into** permit to enter

allow SEP **up** permit to rise

We must allow for traffic delays.

Allow \$20 for taxes and fees.

They don't allow dogs in their home.

They pushed him down and wouldn't allow him up.

EXPRESSIONS

Allow me. Please let me help you.

Lucas opened the door, stepped back, and said, "Allow me."

PRESENT

I alter	we alter
you alter	you alter
he/she/it alters	they alter

• *He alters meeting times without notice.*

PAST

I altered	we altered
you altered	you altered
he/she/it altered	they altered

• *I never altered any data.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has altered

PAST PERFECT ... had altered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am altering	we are altering
you are altering	you are altering
he/she/it is altering	they are altering

• *I'm altering the beginning of the report.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was altering	we were altering
you were altering	you were altering
he/she/it was altering	they were altering

• *They were altering the dress when I walked in.*

FUTURE

... will alter

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be altering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have altered

PAST PASSIVE

I was altered	we were altered
you were altered	you were altered
he/she/it was altered	they were altered

• *His itinerary was altered at the last minute.*

COMPLEMENTS

alter *become different*

The situation has altered recently.
Jack had altered greatly over the years.
His expression altered.

alter _____ *change*

OBJECT

I altered **my exercise routine**.
The store altered **the pants** for me.
We must alter **our plans**.

WH-CLAUSE

They altered **what they were originally doing**.
We altered **how we should approach the problem**.

PRESENT

I amount we amount
 you amount you amount
 he/she/it amounts they amount
 • *It amounts to very little.*

PAST

I amounted we amounted
 you amounted you amounted
 he/she/it amounted they amounted
 • *The dividends never amounted to much.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has amounted

PAST PERFECT ... had amounted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am amounting we are amounting
 you are amounting you are amounting
 he/she/it is amounting they are amounting
 • *The sales aren't amounting to much.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was amounting we were amounting
 you were amounting you were amounting
 he/she/it was amounting they were amounting
 • *It wasn't amounting to anything.*

FUTURE ... will amount

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be amounting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have amounted

PAST PASSIVE

Amount is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *amount* is always used with *to*.

amount _____ *add up*
 to OBJECT

The bill amounted **to \$137.50**.
 The closing costs amounted **to a small fortune**.
 The bill amounted **to less than I thought it would be**.
 It amounted **to little**.
 The insurance amounted **to more than it was worth**.
 The rental amounts **to whatever the contract calls for**.
 It amounted **to however much you could afford**.

to WH-CLAUSE

amount _____ *be equivalent*
 to OBJECT

His actions amounted **to treason**.
 The decision amounted **to a huge defeat**.
 Being laid off or being fired—it amounts **to the same thing**.
 It amounted **to what I would consider a failure**.
 The case against him amounts **to his being in the wrong place at the wrong time**.

to WH-CLAUSE

to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

EXPRESSIONS

amount to something *become very good/important*

We hope that Garrett amounts to something someday.

PRESENT

I announce we announce
 you announce you announce
 he/she/it announces they announce
 • *She usually announces the winners.*

PAST

I announced we announced
 you announced you announced
 he/she/it announced they announced
 • *They announced the lineup this morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has announced

PAST PERFECT ... had announced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am announcing we are announcing
 you are announcing you are announcing
 he/she/it is announcing they are announcing
 • *We are announcing the new CEO soon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was announcing we were announcing
 you were announcing you were announcing
 he/she/it was announcing they were announcing
 • *He was announcing the finalists.*

FUTURE

... will announce

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be announcing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have announced

PAST PASSIVE

I was announced we were announced
 you were announced you were announced
 he/she/it was announced they were announced
 • *The winner was announced afterward.*

COMPLEMENTS

announce _____ make publicly known

OBJECT

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They just announced **the winner**.The judges announced **her as the winner**.CNN announced **her to be the winner**.We announced **to the press that the company was going public**.Sam announced **that he was getting married**.He announced **what the prize would be**.The teacher is announcing **how the test will be scored**.I will announce **Jane's winning the contest**.

announce _____ give notice of the arrival of, foretell

OBJECT

The emcee announced **the bride and groom**.The hostess announced **dinner**.Shorter days announce **the coming of winter**.

announce _____ act as a broadcast announcer of

OBJECT

I used to announce **baseball games**.

PHRASAL VERBS

announce for _____ declare one's
candidacy forThree candidates have already
announced for Congress.announce for _____ declare one's
support forHe told reporters, "Today I'm announcing for Lynn Davis,
our next senator."

PRESENT

I answer we answer
 you answer you answer
 he/she/it answers they answer
 • *An intern answers customer inquiries.*

PAST

I answered we answered
 you answered you answered
 he/she/it answered they answered
 • *I finally answered all my e-mails.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has answered

PAST PERFECT ... had answered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am answering we are answering
 you are answering you are answering
 he/she/it is answering they are answering
 • *Rob is answering the reporters' questions.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was answering we were answering
 you were answering you were answering
 he/she/it was answering they were answering
 • *The entire staff was answering the phones.*

FUTURE

... will answer

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be answering

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have answered

PAST PASSIVE

I was answered we were answered
 you were answered you were answered
 he/she/it was answered they were answered
 • *All my questions were answered by the candidate.*

COMPLEMENTS

answer speak/write in reply

answer act in response

answer _____ speak/write in reply

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

DIRECT QUOTATION

answer _____ speak/write in rebuttal

OBJECT

answer _____ act in response to

OBJECT

answer _____ fulfill

OBJECT

He answered in a friendly manner.

The visiting team quickly answered with a three-pointer.

I answered **the question** as best I could.

He will answer **his critics** in an op-ed article.

I answered **that I hadn't decided yet**.

I answered, **"I haven't decided yet."**

The defendant answered **all of the prosecutor's accusations**.

The country answered **the president's call to arms**.

The microwave answers **our need for fast food**.

PHRASAL VERBS

answer SEP **back** reply to, usually rudely

answer for _____ be accountable for

answer to _____ be subordinate to

answer to _____ match, correspond to

Ben's mother became angry when he answered her back.

Teenagers must answer for their behavior.

I answer to the deputy prime minister.

My neighbor answers to the suspect's description.

PRESENT

I appear we appear
 you appear you appear
 he/she/it appears they appear
 • *It appears that you are right after all.*

PAST

I appeared we appeared
 you appeared you appeared
 he/she/it appeared they appeared
 • *The ghost appeared to Jayne once before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has appeared

PAST PERFECT ... had appeared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am appearing we are appearing
 you are appearing you are appearing
 he/she/it is appearing they are appearing
 • *She is appearing in three performances.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was appearing we were appearing
 you were appearing you were appearing
 he/she/it was appearing they were appearing
 • *The reporter was appearing at every meeting.*

FUTURE

... will appear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be appearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have appeared

PAST PASSIVE

Appear is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

appear *come into sight/existence*

The sun appeared on the horizon.
 Hamlet's father's ghost appears before him.
 The ghost only appears in the first and third acts.
 Dinosaurs first appeared in the Triassic period.

appear *come before the public*

The candidates will appear together on TV this Sunday.
Harper's magazine appears monthly.

appear *go before an official body*

I must appear in traffic court on Tuesday.

appear _____ *seem*

to be + ADVERB OF TIME

to be + ADVERB OF PLACE

(to be) PREDICATE NOUN

(to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

it + appear + THAT-CLAUSE

Our train appears **to be on time.**Our train appears **to be on Track 9.**Jack appeared **(to be) a complete fool.**Jack appears **(to be) angry.**It appeared **that we made a mistake.**It appears **that it is going to rain this afternoon.**There appears **to be a mistake on my bill.**There appeared **to have been an error.**

there + appear + to be PREDICATE NOUN

appear _____ *go [before an official body]*

before OBJECT

I have to appear **before Judge Perry** next week.

PHRASAL VERBS

appear as _____ *play the role of*

Jennifer Ehle appeared as Miss
 Elizabeth Bennet in the BBC's 1995
 production of *Pride and Prejudice*.

appear at _____ *perform at*

Cellist Yo-Yo Ma will appear at Carnegie Hall.

appear for _____ *represent [someone
 who is absent]*

Barry appeared for Matt at the council meeting.

appear in _____ *perform in*

Sean Connery appeared in seven James Bond movies.

EXPRESSIONS

appear out of nowhere *come into
 sight suddenly and without warning*

The two robbers appeared out of
 nowhere and demanded our wallets.
 A car appeared out of nowhere and struck a pedestrian.

PRESENT

I apply we apply
 you apply you apply
 he/she/it applies they apply
 • *She applies logic to solve all her problems.*

PAST

I applied we applied
 you applied you applied
 he/she/it applied they applied
 • *Tony really applied himself to his work.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has applied

PAST PERFECT ... had applied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am applying we are applying
 you are applying you are applying
 he/she/it is applying they are applying
 • *I am applying to half a dozen schools.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was applying we were applying
 you were applying you were applying
 he/she/it was applying they were applying
 • *He was applying glue to the broken chair leg.*

FUTURE

... will apply

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be applying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have applied

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was applied they were applied
 • *The grant was first applied for back in 2006.*

COMPLEMENTS

apply *be pertinent/relevant*

apply *request admission*

apply _____ *have to do with*
 to OBJECT

apply _____ *put into action, put to some practical use*
 OBJECT

OBJECT + to OBJECT

OBJECT + to WH-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE + to OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE + to WH-CLAUSE

apply _____ *request admission*
 to OBJECT

to WH-CLAUSE

apply _____ *request formally*
 for OBJECT

apply _____ *spread (on)*
 OBJECT

The usual conditions apply.

He applied last fall.

This law applies **to all citizens**.

I applied **the brakes**.

They must apply **the rule of law**.

We applied **the money to the mortgage**.

We applied **the money to whichever bill was the most urgent**.

He applied **what he had learned**.

We applied **what we had saved to the mortgage**.

We applied **what we had saved to whatever needed paying first**.

He applied **to UCLA** last fall.

I will apply **to whatever schools give full scholarships**.

I have applied **for a tax exemption**.

I am applying **for the bookkeeping job**.

I will apply **for whatever grants are available**.

Apply **two coats of varnish**.

PHRASAL VERBS

apply [oneself] to _____ *devote oneself to* Let's apply ourselves to our English studies.

EXPRESSIONS

apply within *request [something] inside* Job seekers should apply within.

PRESENT

I appoint we appoint
 you appoint you appoint
 he/she/it appoints they appoint
 • *He only appoints people he knows.*

PAST

I appointed we appointed
 you appointed you appointed
 he/she/it appointed they appointed
 • *Tanya appointed me to fill the position.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has appointed

PAST PERFECT ... had appointed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am appointing we are appointing
 you are appointing you are appointing
 he/she/it is appointing they are appointing
 • *They are appointing several new judges to the court.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was appointing we were appointing
 you were appointing you were appointing
 he/she/it was appointing they were appointing
 • *She was appointing new members to the committee.*

FUTURE

... will appoint

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be appointing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have appointed

PAST PASSIVE

I was appointed we were appointed
 you were appointed you were appointed
 he/she/it was appointed they were appointed
 • *I was appointed to the commission.*

COMPLEMENTS

appoint _____ designate for an office/position

OBJECT + (as) PREDICATE NOUN

He appointed **her (as) attorney general**.
 They have appointed **me (as) secretary**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

He appointed **her (to be) attorney general**.
 They have appointed **me (to be) secretary**.

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

The president appoints **all cabinet heads**.
 He appointed **himself**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

She appointed **six policemen to the task force**.
 She appointed **me to serve out the term**.

The court appointed **Jason to serve as executor of the estate**.

EXPRESSIONS

appointed *nicely furnished*

The condo is spacious and beautifully
 appointed.

The bedrooms are small but stylishly appointed.

PRESENT

I approach we approach
you approach you approach
he/she/it approaches they approach
• *He never approaches strangers.*

PAST

I approached we approached
you approached you approached
he/she/it approached they approached
• *The boat never approached the bay.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has approached

PAST PERFECT ... had approached

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am approaching we are approaching
you are approaching you are approaching
he/she/it is approaching they are approaching
• *The train is approaching the station.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was approaching we were approaching
you were approaching you were approaching
he/she/it was approaching they were approaching
• *He was approaching middle age.*

FUTURE ... will approach

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be approaching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have approached

PAST PASSIVE

I was approached we were approached
you were approached you were approached
he/she/it was approached they were approached
• *I was approached several times by major universities.*

COMPLEMENTS

approach *come near(er)*

Take cover. A storm is approaching.
It is getting lighter—dawn must be approaching.

approach _____ *come near(er) to*
OBJECT

The train is approaching **the station**.
The robber had approached **his victim** twice before.
We are approaching **our project deadline**.

approach _____ *make a proposal to*
OBJECT

Larry approached **a group of venture capitalists**
about investing.
He will approach **whoever he thinks will listen to him**.

approach _____ *be almost the same as*
OBJECT

His philosophical ideas approach **mysticism**.
Senator Blather's speech approaches **slander**.
Bobby's golf swing approaches **perfection**.
This shade of red approaches **what we want**.

approach _____ *begin to deal with, begin to work on*
OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

Let's approach **the subject with an open mind**.
Our class is approaching **the project with enthusiasm**.

PRESENT

I approve we approve
 you approve you approve
 he/she/it approves they approve
 • *He approves of your approach.*

PAST

I approved we approved
 you approved you approved
 he/she/it approved they approved
 • *They approved your recommendation.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has approved

PAST PERFECT ... had approved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am approving we are approving
 you are approving you are approving
 he/she/it is approving they are approving
 • *I am approving your loan.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was approving we were approving
 you were approving you were approving
 he/she/it was approving they were approving
 • *They were approving most applications.*

FUTURE

... will approve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be approving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have approved

PAST PASSIVE

I was approved we were approved
 you were approved you were approved
 he/she/it was approved they were approved
 • *The plan was approved unanimously.*

COMPLEMENTS

approve _____ accept as satisfactory

OBJECT

I can't approve **such careless work.**

WH-CLAUSE

Both of us approved **our son's choice.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He won't approve **what he doesn't like.**They will approve **whatever course of action you decide on.**We can't approve **adding 15 more employees to the payroll.**I couldn't approve **their taking such a risk.**

approve _____ take a favorable view

of OBJECT

They approved **of his actions.**

of WH-CLAUSE

You can't approve **of what they were doing.**

of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I don't approve **of their acting that way.**

approve _____ give consent to

OBJECT

The Senate finally approved **the treaty.**

WH-CLAUSE

My boss has approved **my application for a transfer.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They will approve **whomever we recommend.**Will voters approve **taking bids from private firms?**The CEO approved **our taking them to court.**

PRESENT

I argue we argue
 you argue you argue
 he/she/it argues they argue
 • *John argues about everything.*

PAST

I argued we argued
 you argued you argued
 he/she/it argued they argued
 • *I argued against the proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has argued

PAST PERFECT ... had argued

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arguing we are arguing
 you are arguing you are arguing
 he/she/it is arguing they are arguing
 • *We are arguing over nothing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arguing we were arguing
 you were arguing you were arguing
 he/she/it was arguing they were arguing
 • *Our cousins were arguing again.*

FUTURE ... will argue

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arguing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have argued

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was argued they were argued
 • *The case was argued by Margaret White.*

COMPLEMENTS

argue *disagree, quarrel*

They argue all the time.

argue _____ *debate*

The justices argued **the issue**.

OBJECT

argue _____ *assert, try to prove by giving reasons*

Vince argued **his case** before the judge.

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

Vince argued **that he was innocent**.

PHRASAL VERBS

argue about/over _____ *quarrel about*

They argued about what they should do.

We argued about their going to Chicago.

They have always argued over money.

We argued over going to Chicago.

argue back *quarrel in rebuttal*

They argued back every time I told them to do something.

argue SEP down *defeat in a debate/discussion*

She argued the manager down every time.

He argued the proposal down at the meeting.

argue for/against _____ *give reasons in favor of / against*

He had argued for the proposal.

She argued for accepting the bid.

I argued against what they had proposed.

She argued against their accepting the bid.

argue _____ into *persuade to do*

I argued him into going with us.

argue _____ out *settle by full discussion*

Let's argue this out when we have more time.

argue _____ out of *dissuade [someone] from*

I argued him out of his silly plan.

I argued him out of going ahead with his plan.

argue with _____ *quarrel with, challenge*

I don't want to argue with Audrey anymore.

Face it, you can't argue with the facts.

PRESENT

I arise we arise
 you arise you arise
 he/she/it arises they arise
 • *He arises every morning at the same time.*

PAST

I arose we arose
 you arose you arose
 he/she/it arose they arose
 • *I always arose before seven on school days.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has arisen

PAST PERFECT ... had arisen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arising we are arising
 you are arising you are arising
 he/she/it is arising they are arising
 • *George is slowly arising from the sofa.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arising we were arising
 you were arising you were arising
 he/she/it was arising they were arising
 • *He was just arising when the phone rang.*

FUTURE ... will arise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have arisen

PAST PASSIVE

Arise is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *arise* is interchangeable with *rise* in most meanings and uses. See verb No. 418.

arise *get out of bed*

I usually arise around six.
 Nobody arises early on weekends.

arise *stand/spring up, move upward*

The audience always arises when the president enters the room.
 Rebecca arose from the sofa gracefully.
 The dolphins arose from the water.
 A cloud of dust arose from the ruins.

arise *come into being*

He arose out of inner-city poverty to become mayor.

arise _____ *originate*

The rumor arose when Rob had to appear in court.
 A new controversy about ethanol has arisen since the meeting.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The spring arises **behind our house**.
 These glaciers arise **in the Alps**.
 Birds arose **from small specialized dinosaurs**.
 Prejudice arises **from ignorance and unfamiliarity**.

PRESENT

I arm	we arm
you arm	you arm
he/she/it arms	they arm

• *We arm ourselves against violent crime.*

PAST

I armed	we armed
you armed	you armed
he/she/it armed	they armed

• *They armed the civilian defense force.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has armed

PAST PERFECT ... had armed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arming	we are arming
you are arming	you are arming
he/she/it is arming	they are arming

• *We are arming ourselves as best we can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arming	we were arming
you were arming	you were arming
he/she/it was arming	they were arming

• *They were arming the National Guard.*

FUTURE ... will arm

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have armed

PAST PASSIVE

I was armed	we were armed
you were armed	you were armed
he/she/it was armed	they were armed

• *The submarine was armed with acoustic torpedoes.*

COMPLEMENTS

arm _____ equip with weapons

OBJECT

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

The police armed **the guards**.

Be careful—the hijacker is armed.

The soldiers were all armed with rifles.

They armed **whoever was capable of firing weapons**.

We will arm **whatever force we can scrape together**.

arm _____ prepare for use, activate

OBJECT

The sailors armed **the torpedoes**.

We have armed **the alarm system**.

PHRASAL VERBS

arm _____ **with** furnish [someone] with [weapons, some kind of protection]

I armed myself with a flashlight and extra batteries.

I armed myself with a stiff drink.

The courts armed citizens with the right of habeas corpus.

EXPRESSIONS

armed to the teeth very heavily armed

Captain Jack Sparrow was armed to the teeth.

PRESENT

I arrange we arrange
 you arrange you arrange
 he/she/it arranges they arrange
 • *Susan arranges everybody's schedule.*

PAST

I arranged we arranged
 you arranged you arranged
 he/she/it arranged they arranged
 • *They arranged to see you yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has arranged

PAST PERFECT ... had arranged

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was arranged they were arranged
 • *A meeting was arranged by the secretary.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arranging we are arranging
 you are arranging you are arranging
 he/she/it is arranging they are arranging
 • *I am arranging some appointments for you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arranging we were arranging
 you were arranging you were arranging
 he/she/it was arranging they were arranging
 • *They were arranging the final details.*

FUTURE

... will arrange

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arranging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have arranged

COMPLEMENTS

arrange _____ put in a certain order

OBJECT

I arranged **the books** in alphabetical order.
 We arranged **the flowers** for the reception.

arrange _____ plan, cause something to happen

OBJECT

(for) OBJECT

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

(it) for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

WH-CLAUSE

(for) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They arranged **the conference on China**.
 They will arrange **(for) a celebration**.
 He arranged **for John to visit them in Chicago**.
 I arranged **(it) for him to tour the plant in Japan**.
 He arranged **to visit them in Chicago**.
 He arranged **what you had asked for**.
 She will arrange **whatever they need**.
 Frank arranged **(for) my interviewing them**.

arrange _____ adapt a musical composition for other voices or instruments

OBJECT

He arranged **a Bach fugue** for a modern orchestra.

PRESENT

I arrive we arrive
 you arrive you arrive
 he/she/it arrives they arrive
 • *Our guests arrive on Tuesday.*

PAST

I arrived we arrived
 you arrived you arrived
 he/she/it arrived they arrived
 • *She arrived at her destination late.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has arrived

PAST PERFECT ... had arrived

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was arrived they were arrived
 • *An agreement was arrived at.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arriving we are arriving
 you are arriving you are arriving
 he/she/it is arriving they are arriving
 • *We are arriving soon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arriving we were arriving
 you were arriving you were arriving
 he/she/it was arriving they were arriving
 • *The speaker was finally arriving at his conclusion.*

FUTURE ... will arrive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arriving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have arrived

COMPLEMENTS

arrive reach a destination

arrive make an appearance

arrive come finally

arrive achieve success/fame

arrive _____ reach by traveling
 at OBJECT

We will arrive before dark.

They arrived there just minutes ago.

The guests have arrived in their car.

The train has just arrived from Chicago.

The moment has arrived to turn words into action.

George has really arrived.

The train arrived **at the station** early.

PHRASAL VERBS

arrive at _____ reach by effort/thought

We arrived at an agreement.

We will arrive at whatever agreement is possible.

EXPRESSIONS

arrive at the scene (of _____) reach the location of

The cops arrived at the scene of the burglary.

arrive in force reach a location in full strength

Winter arrived in force yesterday.

The National Guard arrived in force to quell the riot.

arrive in the (very) nick of time reach a location just in time

The doctor arrived in the nick of time to save the child.

PRESENT

I ask we ask
 you ask you ask
 he/she/it asks they ask
 • *He always asks for tea for breakfast.*

PAST

I asked we asked
 you asked you asked
 he/she/it asked they asked
 • *You already asked me that.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has asked

PAST PERFECT ... had asked

PAST PASSIVE

I was asked we were asked
 you were asked you were asked
 he/she/it was asked they were asked
 • *I was asked to say a few words.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am asking we are asking
 you are asking you are asking
 he/she/it is asking they are asking
 • *They are asking about tonight's menu.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was asking we were asking
 you were asking you were asking
 he/she/it was asking they were asking
 • *I was asking for a second opinion.*

FUTURE ... will ask

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be asking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have asked

COMPLEMENTS

ask _____ inquire about

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

of PARAPHRASE

(OBJECT +) if CLAUSE

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE

ask _____ request

(OBJECT +) for OBJECT

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

ask _____ invite

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The detective asked **his whereabouts last night**.They are asking **everyone the same question**.They are asking **the same question of everyone**.The pilot asked **if everyone was on board**.He asked **us if we were ready**.The waiter asked **which of us was vegetarian**.He asked **us who was coming**.She is asking **for help from her brother**.I will ask **the boss for a raise** tomorrow morning.I have asked **them to go home early today**.We should ask **how to turn the lights on**.Raymond asked **him what to do next**.She had asked **to see the manager**.She asked **that he reschedule the meeting**.The U.N. asked **China to the conference**.I asked **Mary to the party**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ask after _____ inquire about someone's health/well-being

She asked after my mother.

ask around request information from different sources

She asked around about the missing necklace.

ask _____ back invite again to one's home

We will never ask the Smiths back.

ask _____ down/over/up invite to one's home

We asked Jim and Lara down for the weekend.

Let's ask Bill and Fran over Friday night.

ask _____ in/into invite inside

Please ask the applicant in.

They asked us into the house.

ask _____ of request/demand from

You'll have to ask that of your supervisor.

ask _____ out invite on a date

I'd like to ask Gretchen out to dinner.

PRESENT

I assist we assist
 you assist you assist
 he/she/it assists they assist
 • *He assists the vet with large animals.*

PAST

I assisted we assisted
 you assisted you assisted
 he/she/it assisted they assisted
 • *She assisted at four operations yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has assisted

PAST PERFECT ... had assisted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am assisting we are assisting
 you are assisting you are assisting
 he/she/it is assisting they are assisting
 • *He is assisting Bob right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was assisting we were assisting
 you were assisting you were assisting
 he/she/it was assisting they were assisting
 • *They were assisting us onto the bus.*

FUTURE ... will assist

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be assisting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have assisted

PAST PASSIVE

I was assisted we were assisted
 you were assisted you were assisted
 he/she/it was assisted they were assisted
 • *I was assisted by Mrs. Laurent.*

COMPLEMENTS

assist help out

assist _____ provide support/aid to

OBJECT

OBJECT + with OBJECT

OBJECT + (in) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

OBJECT + (with) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I am assisting at the information desk.
 They will assist wherever they are needed.

The new coach assists **the junior basketball team**.
 He assists **the drivers** when they unload the trucks.
 The makeup artist assisted **the actor with his costume**.
 They assisted **him (in) painting the deck**.
 Emily will assist **Matt (with) tying down the kayak**.

EXPRESSIONS

assisted living housing and care for senior citizens who need limited assistance in day-to-day living

Assisted living is the perfect solution for your dad.

PRESENT

I associate we associate
 you associate you associate
 he/she/it associates they associate
 • *He associates with some strange people.*

PAST

I associated we associated
 you associated you associated
 he/she/it associated they associated
 • *I always associated Greece with sunshine.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has associated

PAST PERFECT ... had associated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am associating we are associating
 you are associating you are associating
 he/she/it is associating they are associating
 • *They are associating with the wrong people.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was associating we were associating
 you were associating you were associating
 he/she/it was associating they were associating
 • *I was mistakenly associating Jack with Ernest.*

FUTURE ... will associate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be associating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have associated

PAST PASSIVE

I was associated we were associated
 you were associated you were associated
 he/she/it was associated they were associated
 • *Stratford was always associated with Shakespeare.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *associate* is always used with *with*.associate _____ *be friendly, spend time*

with OBJECT

He only associates **with other lawyers.**Donald is associating **with drug users and gang members.**

with WH-CLAUSE

I will associate **with whomever I want to.**associate _____ *form an alliance*

(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) with OBJECT

They are associating **with a new advertising agency.**They are associating ***themselves* with a new advertising agency.**associate _____ *make a connection between*

OBJECT + with OBJECT

We associate **robins with spring.**Everyone associates **pineapple with Hawaii.**

PASSIVE

President Theodore Roosevelt was associated ***with the conservation movement in the United States.***The swelling was associated ***with chills and fever.***be associated _____ *be caused by* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

with OBJECT

Memory loss is associated with vitamin B-12 deficiency.

PRESENT

I assume we assume
 you assume you assume
 he/she/it assumes they assume
 • *He always assumes that he is right.*

PAST

I assumed we assumed
 you assumed you assumed
 he/she/it assumed they assumed
 • *They assumed a lot of responsibility.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has assumed

PAST PERFECT ... had assumed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am assuming we are assuming
 you are assuming you are assuming
 he/she/it is assuming they are assuming
 • *I am assuming the worst.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was assuming we were assuming
 you were assuming you were assuming
 he/she/it was assuming they were assuming
 • *He was assuming a high interest rate.*

FUTURE ... will assume

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be assuming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have assumed

PAST PASSIVE

I was assumed we were assumed
 you were assumed you were assumed
 he/she/it was assumed they were assumed
 • *The problem was assumed to be under control.*

COMPLEMENTS

assume _____ take [responsibility for]

OBJECT

He assumed **responsibility** for the mortgage.
 The new captain assumed **control of the ship**.
 She will assume **her new husband's debt**.

assume _____ pretend to have

OBJECT

He assumed **an air of total confidence**.
 They assumed **a level of knowledge he did not have**.

assume _____ suppose [something] to be true, take for granted

OBJECT

We assumed **the worst**.
 You're assuming **too much**.
 We assumed **the plane to be on time**.
 We assumed **the plane to be a jet**.
 We assumed **the plane to be ready**.
 We assumed **that the worst had happened**.

OBJECT + to be ADVERB OF TIME

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE NOUN

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

EXPRESSIONS

assumed name *an adopted name, often to deceive others*

The holding company transacts business under several assumed names.
 Samuel Clemens wrote under the assumed name of Mark Twain.
 She uses an assumed name when she posts a comment to a blog.

PRESENT

I assure we assure
 you assure you assure
 he/she/it assures they assure
 • *He assures us that it will be done on time.*

PAST

I assured we assured
 you assured you assured
 he/she/it assured they assured
 • *The inspection assured 100% compliance.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has assured

PAST PERFECT ... had assured

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am assuring we are assuring
 you are assuring you are assuring
 he/she/it is assuring they are assuring
 • *They are assuring us that it will be okay.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was assuring we were assuring
 you were assuring you were assuring
 he/she/it was assuring they were assuring
 • *We were assuring complete satisfaction.*

FUTURE ... will assure

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be assuring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have assured

PAST PASSIVE

I was assured we were assured
 you were assured you were assured
 he/she/it was assured they were assured
 • *I was assured that it would be ready.*

COMPLEMENTS

assure _____ guarantee

OBJECT

Double-checking assures **accuracy**.
 Mutual interest assures **cooperation**.

assure _____ cause to feel sure, promise

OBJECT + of OBJECT

I assured **him of our continuing support**.
 They assured **us of his full recovery**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

I assured **him that the plane was on time**.
 He assured **us that he could do it**.
 Sam assured **them that no one was watching**.
 I looked in the rearview mirror to assure **myself that I wasn't being followed**.

EXPRESSIONS

(self-)assured showing confidence

It is important to act in a professional
 and (self-)assured manner.

PRESENT

I attach we attach
 you attach you attach
 he/she/it attaches they attach
 • *He attaches himself to losing causes.*

PAST

I attached we attached
 you attached you attached
 he/she/it attached they attached
 • *I attached comments to the essay.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has attached

PAST PERFECT ... had attached

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am attaching we are attaching
 you are attaching you are attaching
 he/she/it is attaching they are attaching
 • *We are attaching the memo.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was attaching we were attaching
 you were attaching you were attaching
 he/she/it was attaching they were attaching
 • *They were attaching name tags to the bags.*

FUTURE ... will attach

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be attaching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have attached

PAST PASSIVE

I was attached we were attached
 you were attached you were attached
 he/she/it was attached they were attached
 • *She was attached to her family.*

COMPLEMENTS

attach _____ *fasten*
 OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

I attached **a self-addressed, stamped envelope**.
 I attached **the new legs to the table**.
 They attached **labels to all the packages**.

attach _____ *form an emotional link*
 REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT

Children quickly attach **themselves to their caregivers**.
 He attached **himself to the green movement**.

attach _____ *attribute*
 OBJECT + to OBJECT
 OBJECT + to WH-CLAUSE

Politicians attach **a lot of importance to polling**.
 They attached **great significance to what he said**.

attach _____ *assign temporarily*
 OBJECT + to OBJECT
 PASSIVE

The captain attached **two platoons to Company B**.
 The corporal was attached **to our platoon**.

attach _____ *take by legal authority*
 OBJECT
 PASSIVE

The bank attached **the property**.
 His salary was attached for nonpayment of child support.

EXPRESSIONS

be attached to _____ *be fond of*

Greg was really attached to his dad.
 Little Lisa has gotten attached to her blanket.

PRESENT

I attack we attack
 you attack you attack
 he/she/it attacks they attack
 • *A cobra attacks when it is surprised.*

PAST

I attacked we attacked
 you attacked you attacked
 he/she/it attacked they attacked
 • *They attacked the enemy fleet.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has attacked

PAST PERFECT ... had attacked

PAST PASSIVE

I was attacked we were attacked
 you were attacked you were attacked
 he/she/it was attacked they were attacked
 • *His ideas were attacked by his co-workers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am attacking we are attacking
 you are attacking you are attacking
 he/she/it is attacking they are attacking
 • *We are attacking with all our might.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was attacking we were attacking
 you were attacking you were attacking
 he/she/it was attacking they were attacking
 • *They were attacking all of their opponents.*

FUTURE ... will attack

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be attacking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have attacked

COMPLEMENTS

attack *make an assault*attack _____ *assault physically/verbally*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

attack _____ *begin to work on vigorously*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Mosquitoes attack at dusk.

The soldiers attacked **the guard post**.Aphids were attacking **the roses**.They bitterly attacked **the new plan**.He attacks **whatever I propose to do**.I attacked **John's doing nothing about the situation**.Our team will attack **the problem** with gusto.They attacked **whatever problems we had to solve**.

EXPRESSIONS

attack in force *attack in full strength*After massing troops for weeks,
the general attacked in force.

PRESENT

I attempt we attempt
 you attempt you attempt
 he/she/it attempts they attempt
 • *Jim always attempts to do too much.*

PAST

I attempted we attempted
 you attempted you attempted
 he/she/it attempted they attempted
 • *They attempted everything without success.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has attempted

PAST PERFECT ... had attempted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am attempting we are attempting
 you are attempting you are attempting
 he/she/it is attempting they are attempting
 • *I am attempting to do something new.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was attempting we were attempting
 you were attempting you were attempting
 he/she/it was attempting they were attempting
 • *They were attempting to do too much.*

FUTURE

... will attempt

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be attempting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have attempted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was attempted they were attempted
 • *A prison break was attempted several times.*

COMPLEMENTS

attempt _____ try to do/accomplish

OBJECT

They attempted **the impossible**.

The climbers attempted **the north side**.

Let's attempt **the crossword puzzle** and see how far we get.

INFINITIVE

They will attempt **to finish the job on time**.

He will attempt **to run the Boston Marathon**.

WH-CLAUSE

We attempted **what had never been done before**.

I attempted **whatever was asked of me**.

PRESENT

I attend we attend
 you attend you attend
 he/she/it attends they attend
 • *She attends City College.*

PAST

I attended we attended
 you attended you attended
 he/she/it attended they attended
 • *I attended to the situation promptly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has attended

PAST PERFECT ... had attended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am attending we are attending
 you are attending you are attending
 he/she/it is attending they are attending
 • *Dr. Maret is attending to the new patients.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was attending we were attending
 you were attending you were attending
 he/she/it was attending they were attending
 • *I was attending high school at the time.*

FUTURE ... will attend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be attending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have attended

PAST PASSIVE

I was attended we were attended
 you were attended you were attended
 he/she/it was attended they were attended
 • *The problem was attended to.*

COMPLEMENTS

attend *be present at a meeting/program*

I hope we can attend.

Will both parents be able to attend?

attend _____ *be present at [a meeting, program]*

OBJECT

I attended **all those PowerPoint presentations.**They always attend **their children's recitals.**Everyone has attended **the required safety class.**attend _____ *be present as an enrollee at [a school, program]*

OBJECT

She attended **the University of Denver.**We attended **the American Red Cross CPR classes.**Bart will attend **whatever college he can get into.**attend _____ *assist, care for*

OBJECT

She attended **old Mrs. Moore.**This department attends only **emergency patients.**attend _____ *take care of, apply oneself*

to OBJECT

Attend **to your own problems** first.Is anyone attending **to you?**I'll attend **to that** as soon as I can.I will attend **to whoever needs care.**They attend **to whatever has to be done.**Please attend **to finishing your job.**I attended **to filling out the paperwork.**

to WH-CLAUSE

to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

attend _____ *pay attention*

to OBJECT

Children should attend **to the teacher's presentation.**attend _____ *accompany as a result*

OBJECT

Enthusiastic applause attended **the candidate's speech.**

The candidate's speech was attended by enthusiastic applause.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I attract we attract
 you attract you attract
 he/she/it attracts they attract
 • *John always attracts a crowd.*

PAST

I attracted we attracted
 you attracted you attracted
 he/she/it attracted they attracted
 • *The sale attracted a lot of attention.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has attracted

PAST PERFECT ... had attracted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am attracting we are attracting
 you are attracting you are attracting
 he/she/it is attracting they are attracting
 • *The teens are attracting unwanted attention.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was attracting we were attracting
 you were attracting you were attracting
 he/she/it was attracting they were attracting
 • *We were attracting new investors.*

FUTURE ... will attract

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be attracting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have attracted

PAST PASSIVE

I was attracted we were attracted
 you were attracted you were attracted
 he/she/it was attracted they were attracted
 • *I was attracted by the bright lights.*

COMPLEMENTS

attract _____ cause to come nearer

OBJECT

Magnets attract **iron filings**.
 The flowers are attracting **a lot of bees**.
 Her presentations always attract **a large audience**.

to OBJECT [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

I was really attracted to Jack.
 People are attracted to his philosophy.
 Everyone is attracted to effortless diet programs.

WH-CLAUSE

His crazy schemes attract **whoever wants to get rich quick**.

attract _____ arouse by appeal to interest/emotion

OBJECT

Their ideas attract **a great deal of attention**.
 Advertising attracts **interest in the product**.

PRESENT

I avoid we avoid
 you avoid you avoid
 he/she/it avoids they avoid

• *Nathan avoids crowds.*

PAST

I avoided we avoided
 you avoided you avoided
 he/she/it avoided they avoided

• *We avoided the morning rush.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has avoided

PAST PERFECT ... had avoided

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am avoiding we are avoiding
 you are avoiding you are avoiding
 he/she/it is avoiding they are avoiding

• *She is avoiding me.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was avoiding we were avoiding
 you were avoiding you were avoiding
 he/she/it was avoiding they were avoiding

• *They were avoiding the topic.*

FUTURE

... will avoid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be avoiding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have avoided

PAST PASSIVE

I was avoided we were avoided
 you were avoided you were avoided
 he/she/it was avoided they were avoided

• *The problem was avoided by careful planning.*

COMPLEMENTS

avoid _____ keep away from

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

avoid _____ refrain from

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I am avoiding **my boss**.

Everyone avoids **crowds** during flu season.

You are just avoiding **the problem**.

A politician avoids **whatever gets voters upset**.

I avoid **overeating at holidays**.

He avoids **flying through Chicago**.

He is avoiding **finishing his thesis**.

I avoided **making a big mistake**.

EXPRESSIONS

avoid _____ like the plague stay away from
 completely

He is obnoxious, and everyone
 avoids him like the plague.

PRESENT

I awake we awake
 you awake you awake
 he/she/it awakes they awake
 • *He awakes every morning at seven.*

PAST

I awoke we awoke
 you awoke you awoke
 he/she/it awoke they awoke
 • *It awoke bad memories for me.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has awoken

PAST PERFECT ... had awoken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am awaking we are awaking
 you are awaking you are awaking
 he/she/it is awaking they are awaking
 • *He is awaking to the danger.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was awaking we were awaking
 you were awaking you were awaking
 he/she/it was awaking they were awaking
 • *They were awaking to a hot morning.*

FUTURE ... will awake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be awaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have awoken

PAST PASSIVE

I was awoken we were awoken
 you were awoken you were awoken
 he/she/it was awoken they were awoken
 • *We were awoken by the storm.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Awake* and *awaken* have the same meanings and uses. They are similar to *wake/waken* (verb No. 536), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake*, *awaken*, and *waken* are not.

awake quit sleeping

The children awoke early.

awake become aroused

The crowd's anger suddenly awoke.
Excitement awoke in everyone.

awake _____ arouse from sleeping

OBJECT

The storm awoke **the children** early.

WH-CLAUSE

He will awake **everybody in the house** with his snoring.

The commotion awoke **whoever was still asleep**.

awake _____ stir up

OBJECT

The crisis has awoken **memories of the 1960s**.

Sam awoke **Stella's interest in China**.

WH-CLAUSE

It awoke **what had been long forgotten**.

I awoke **whatever concern he had felt**.

PHRASAL VERBS

awake from _____ wake up out of

Ned awoke from a sound sleep.

awake to _____ wake up to

Patsy awoke to the aroma of freshly brewed coffee.
The corporal awoke to the sound and fury of battle.

awake to _____ become aware of

She awoke to the possibilities that technology offered.
Dad awoke to the reality of the moment.

PRESENT

I back we back
 you back you back
 he/she/it backs they back
 • *He always backs into parking places.*

PAST

I backed we backed
 you backed you backed
 he/she/it backed they backed
 • *I backed the car out of the garage.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has backed

PAST PERFECT ... had backed

PAST PASSIVE

I was backed we were backed
 you were backed you were backed
 he/she/it was backed they were backed
 • *The candidate was backed by her party.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am backing we are backing
 you are backing you are backing
 he/she/it is backing they are backing
 • *He is backing the desk against the wall.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was backing we were backing
 you were backing you were backing
 he/she/it was backing they were backing
 • *The newspapers were backing the incumbent.*

FUTURE ... will back

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be backing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have backed

COMPLEMENTS

back go backward

back _____ cause something to go backward

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

back _____ support

OBJECT

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

back _____ put [something] on the back of

OBJECT + with OBJECT

back _____ bet on

OBJECT

The car backed into the street.

Back **the riding mower off the driveway.**Can you back **the car into this narrow parking space?**I will back **your proposal.**We are backing **John** for the Senate.They back **the product** with a one-year warranty.

The product is backed with a one-year warranty.

I will back **whatever proposal you make.**He backs **John's running for the Senate.**The mill backs **the carpet with nonslip rubber.**I'm backing **Sky's Limit** in the third race.

PHRASAL VERBS

back away/down/in/out/up/etc.

go backward in a specified direction

back SEP away/down/in/out/up/etc.

cause to go backward in a specified direction

back away/down/off (from _____)

withdraw (from [a position, commitment])

back onto _____ have one's back facing

back out (of _____) withdraw (from

[a commitment, contest])

back up accumulate in a clogged state

back SEP up supportback SEP up make a copy of [COMPUTER]

Jeff backed down the ladder slowly.

We backed up when we saw the snarling dog.

Back the car away from the curb.

The carpenter backed the screw out.

The supervisors backed away from the original proposal.

The president backed down from a fight with the Senate.

The hotel backs onto a lovely park.

The contractor backed out of the deal.

She backed out of the track meet because of a sore ankle.

The sewer backed up again.

The traffic was backed up for three miles.

I'll back you up when you go to court.

Studies back up the recommendation for more exercise.

Be sure to back up your files tonight.

Tom backs his files up twice a day.

PRESENT

I base we base
 you base you base
 he/she/it bases they base

• *He bases his plans on economic models.*

PAST

I based we based
 you based you based
 he/she/it based they based

• *They based their tactics on polling data.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has based

PAST PERFECT ... had based

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am basing we are basing
 you are basing you are basing
 he/she/it is basing they are basing

• *We are basing everything on the election outcome.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was basing we were basing
 you were basing you were basing
 he/she/it was basing they were basing

• *I was basing it on what I knew at the time.*

FUTURE

... will base

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be basing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have based

PAST PASSIVE

I was based we were based
 you were based you were based
 he/she/it was based they were based

• *His decisions were based on misinformation.*

COMPLEMENTS

base _____ establish [a decision/course of action/opinion]

OBJECT + on OBJECT

I based **my decision on your recommendation.**

We based **our plan on the information we had.**

They based **their love on mutual respect.**

PASSIVE

Their love was based **on mutual respect.**

OBJECT + on WH-CLAUSE

I based **my decision on what you recommended to me.**

We based **it on what information we had.**

WH-CLAUSE + on OBJECT

I based **what I decided to do on your recommendation.**

We based **what we did on your information.**

WH-CLAUSE + on WH-CLAUSE

I based **what I did on what you told me to do.**

We based **what we did on what information we had.**

base _____ locate the headquarters of

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The board based **the new company in Albuquerque.**

base _____ station [MILITARY]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The army based **three regiments in Spain.**

PASSIVE

Three regiments were based **in Spain.**

NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be down *be depressed*

be down on _____ *be angry with*

be down with _____ *be sick due to*

be for _____ *support*

be in *be in one's home/office*

be in *be in fashion*

be in on _____ *share in*

be into _____ *be interested/involved in*

be off *not be at work*

be off *not be operating*

be off *be less*

be off *be wrong*

be off *not be taking place*

be on *be operating*

be on *be in effect*

be onto _____ *be aware of*

be onto _____ *be about to discover*

be out *not be inside*

be out *be made public*

be out *be out of fashion*

be out *be asleep/unconscious*

be out *not be permitted*

be out and about *travel around*

be out of _____ *no longer possess*

be out (with _____) *be absent (due to [an illness])*

be out (with _____) *be unable to play/work (due to [an injury, illness])*

be over *be finished*

be through (with _____) *be finished (with [something])*

be up *be finished*

be up *be more/greater*

be up *be risen, be put up*

be up and about/around *be out of bed and moving around*

be up for _____ *be a candidate for*

be up for _____ *be available for*

be up for _____ *be ready and willing for*

be up for _____ *be on trial for [a crime]*

be up on _____ *be knowledgeable about*

be up to _____ *be able to*

I asked her why she was down.

Why are you always down on your brother?

Ellery is down with the flu.

I was for Robert in the last election.

I am for renovating the building, not demolishing it.

The doctor is in.

Ruffles are in, pleats are out.

Four seniors were in on the prank.

Katrina was into gymnastics in a big way.

The workers will be off for the next three days.

The lights were off in the auditorium.

Sales are off for the third month in a row.

These estimates are off by 50%.

Tomorrow's meeting is off.

The television is on.

I hope Saturday's party is still on.

Oscar is onto your tricks.

The detective was onto something.

You can lock the doors after everyone is out.

The family was out for a stroll along the river.

The news is out that Alison broke her engagement.

Sitcoms are out, documentaries are in.

He went to bed and was out within two minutes.

You can eat apples, but chocolate is out.

Philip is out and about with his friends.

We're out of coffee—would you like tea?

Half of the third graders are out with the flu.

He was out for two weeks with a bruised elbow.

The baseball game is finally over.

We were through with our homework by 7 o'clock.

Turn in the exam—your time is up.

Food prices are up seven percent.

We'll leave for Kentucky once the sun is up.

The for sale sign has been up for six months.

I had a cold, but I was up and about on the third day.

Samantha is up for class president.

George is up for re-election.

The neighbor's house is up for sale again.

Are you up for a game of cards?

Tori is up for armed robbery.

Veronica is up on all the latest CD releases.

Are you up to cleaning your room today?

PRESENT

I am we are
 you are you are
 he/she/it is they are
 • *William is here.*

PAST

I was we were
 you were you were
 he/she/it was they were
 • *He was the manager for eight years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has been

PAST PERFECT ... had been

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am being we are being
 you are being you are being
 he/she/it is being they are being
 • *You are being very difficult.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was being we were being
 you were being you were being
 he/she/it was being they were being
 • *They were only being helpful.*

FUTURE ... will be

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be being

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have been

PAST PASSIVE

Be is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Be* is also used as a helping verb

- to form the progressive tenses

be + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They were driving down the wrong street.

- to form the passive voice

be + PAST PARTICIPLE

You will be arrested if you drive drunk.

be exist

"I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES]

Oh, let it be.

be ____ exist

there + **be** + PREDICATE NOUN

There was a **policeman** on the corner.

be ____ *have the identity, a property, or a characteristic of*

ADVERB OF TIME

The meeting is **at ten**.

My birthday is **in September**.

The time is **now**.

ADVERB OF PLACE

The principal is **out of the office**.

My parents have never been **to Singapore**.

PREDICATE NOUN

Greg is a **bachelor**.

It is a **streetcar**.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

It is **I**, Mother. [FORMAL] / It's **me**, Mom. [INFORMAL]

Everett is **handsome and rich**.

The school is **excellent**.

be ____ *must*

INFINITIVE

You are **to report to the office**.

Gary is **to be ready at seven**.

PHRASAL VERBS

NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be against ____ *oppose*

The group is against gun control.

be along *arrive* [USED ONLY IN THE FUTURE TENSE]

Fred will be along any minute now.

be around *exist*

Dinosaurs were around for 150 million years.

be around ____ *be located*

The keys are around here somewhere.

be away *be absent*

The sales clerk is away for a moment.

be behind *lag*

He's behind in his studies.

be down *not be operating*

The server is down, and I can't get my files.



bear _____ give birth to

OBJECT

PASSIVE

bear _____ have as a characteristic

OBJECT

bear _____ have as an identification

OBJECT

bear _____ behave

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + ADVERB OF MANNER

bear _____ take care of, pay for

OBJECT

bear _____ call for, require

OBJECT

She bore **a son** in 1982.

Lois has borne **three children**.

Three children have been born to Lois.

Rory bears **a scar** on his left arm.

Sasha bears **a strong resemblance** to her mother.

All three wills bore **Uncle Leland's signature**.

He's bearing **himself with dignity**.

My parents bore **all the expenses of my college education**.

The committee bears **watching**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bear down try hard

bear down on _____ press down on

bear off _____ turn off

bear on _____ have to do with

bear **SEP** **out** prove right

bear up survive, endure

bear with _____ be patient with

If you bear down, you'll get an "A" in the course.

Bear down on the pen—you're making four copies.

Bear off the gravel road when you see a large barn.

These observations don't bear on the matter at all.

The testimony will bear this out.

Lila bore up well in spite of the criticism.

The bridge couldn't bear up under such heavy traffic.

Please bear with us while we discuss the matter.

EXPRESSIONS

bear arms possess a weapon

bear fruit yield satisfactory results

bear _____ **in mind** consider, remember

bear [one's] cross endure one's troubles

bear the brunt of _____ endure the worst part of

grin and bear it endure an unpleasant surprise with good humor

A citizen may bear arms to protect himself.

The discussions will hopefully bear fruit soon.

Our representatives should bear in mind that their decisions affect millions of people.

The cancer took its toll, but Nick bore his cross bravely.

The walnut trees bore the brunt of the storm.

We got laid off, and all we can do is grin and bear it.

PRESENT

I bear we bear
 you bear you bear
 he/she/it bears they bear

• *Alice bears a lot of responsibility for this.*

PAST

I bore we bore
 you bore you bore
 he/she/it bore they bore

• *The monk bore his suffering in silence.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has borne

PAST PERFECT ... had borne

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bearing we are bearing
 you are bearing you are bearing
 he/she/it is bearing they are bearing

• *They are bearing up well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bearing we were bearing
 you were bearing you were bearing
 he/she/it was bearing they were bearing

• *We were bearing a heavy load.*

FUTURE ... will bear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have borne

PAST PASSIVE

I was borne/born we were borne/born
 you were borne/born you were borne/born
 he/she/it was borne/born they were borne/born

• *The charges were borne out in today's testimony.*
 • *I was born in Richland.*

NOTE: *Born* is the past participle in the sense "give birth to" in the passive voice. *Borne* is used in all other senses.

COMPLEMENTS

bear *produce fruit*

In Ecuador, apple trees bear twice a year.

bear _____ *produce*

OBJECT

These apple trees won't bear **fruit** for three years.

bear _____ *go*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

This road bears **to the left**.
 Bear **right** at the next stoplight.

bear _____ *carry*

OBJECT

"Beware of Greeks who bear **gifts**." [VERGIL]

bear _____ *carry/move along*

OBJECT

A strong current bore **the ship** out to sea.

bear _____ *support*

OBJECT

The pillars bear **the weight of the roof**.

bear _____ *be accountable for*

OBJECT

The engineers bear **a heavy responsibility for the disaster**.

bear _____ *endure*

OBJECT

He can't bear **the pain**.
 He will bear **a substantial financial loss**.

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

I can't bear **for you to leave so soon**.

(*it*) THAT-CLAUSE

I can't bear **to hear such a sad story**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can't bear (*it*) **that you have to leave so soon**.

I can't bear **hearing such a sad story**.

bear _____ *carry in one's mind*

OBJECT

He bears **a real grudge** against them.
 I bear **no hard feelings** toward them.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

against PARAPHRASE

I bear **him no malice**.

I bear **no malice against him**.



PRESENT

I beat we beat
 you beat you beat
 he/she/it beats they beat

• *In the long run, you never beat the odds.*

PAST

I beat we beat
 you beat you beat
 he/she/it beat they beat

• *He beat the rugs outside.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has beaten

PAST PERFECT ... had beaten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beating we are beating
 you are beating you are beating
 he/she/it is beating they are beating

• *I am beating some eggs.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beating we were beating
 you were beating you were beating
 he/she/it was beating they were beating

• *He was beating back a nasty infection.*

FUTURE ... will beat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be beating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have beaten

PAST PASSIVE

I was beaten we were beaten
 you were beaten you were beaten
 he/she/it was beaten they were beaten

• *The record was beaten by three of the swimmers.*

COMPLEMENTS

beat *pulsate, throb*

My pulse was beating rapidly.
 The drums were beating again.

beat _____ strike repeatedly
 OBJECT

I beat **the drum** in time to the music.
 The jockeys beat **their horses** in the final lap.
 The blacksmith beat **the iron** into swords.
 The sergeant beat **the recruits** into submission.

beat _____ mix by stirring
 OBJECT

Beat **the batter** with a wooden spoon.

beat _____ defeat, win
 OBJECT

The Phillies have beaten **the Red Sox**.
 You beat **the record** easily.

beat _____ be better than
 OBJECT
 WH-CLAUSE
 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Good home cooking always beats **restaurant food**.
 Your idea beats **what I was trying to do**.
 Nothing beats **having lots of money in your wallet**.
 That beats **my trying to do it myself**.

beat _____ confuse, puzzle
 OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

It beats **me how anyone can understand these instructions**.

beat _____ flap
 OBJECT

A hummingbird beats **its wings** up to 70 times per second.

PHRASAL VERBS

beat _____ back/down/up/in/out/etc.
arrive at a specified location sooner than

My sister beat me back to the station.
 They raced to the top of the hill, and Ben beat the others up.

beat SEP back *drive back*

Our platoon beat back the enemy's attack.

beat SEP down *cause to collapse*

The warriors beat the doors down with clubs.

beat down (on _____) *fall (on)*

A driving rain beat down on the stadium crowd.
 A blazing sun beat down on the spectators.

beat SEP off *drive away*

She beat the would-be robbers off with pepper spray.

beat SEP up *attack savagely*

Gang members beat the man up and took his car.

PRESENT

I become we become
 you become you become
 he/she/it becomes they become
 • *Jackson becomes cross when he's hungry.*

PAST

I became we became
 you became you became
 he/she/it became they became
 • *The situation became a real mess.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has become

PAST PERFECT ... had become

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am becoming we are becoming
 you are becoming you are becoming
 he/she/it is becoming they are becoming
 • *The kids are becoming tired.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was becoming we were becoming
 you were becoming you were becoming
 he/she/it was becoming they were becoming
 • *His old jokes were becoming quite tiresome.*

FUTURE

... will become

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be becoming

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have become

PAST PASSIVE

Become is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

become _____ *grow/come to be*

PREDICATE NOUN

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

WH-CLAUSE

The recording became a **huge success**.

Alice became **chair of the department**.

Robert became **quite friendly**.

The weather became **stormy**.

It became **what we feared the most**.

He will become **whoever he needs to be**.

become _____ *enhance the appearance of, look good on*

OBJECT

Moonlight becomes **her**.

His sneering attitude really doesn't become **him**.

PHRASAL VERBS

become of _____ *happen to*

Whatever **became of** your plan to start your own business?

I don't know what has **become of** Mary.

EXPRESSIONS

be becoming on _____ *look good on*

becoming *attractive*

This shade of blue is very **becoming on** you.

Your dress is very **becoming**.

That is a most **becoming** dress you are wearing.

becoming *suitable to*

She gave a eulogy **becoming** the occasion of her father's funeral.

PRESENT

I begin we begin
 you begin you begin
 he/she/it begins they begin
 • *He always begins breakfast with coffee.*

PAST

I began we began
 you began you began
 he/she/it began they began
 • *I began to feel uneasy.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has begun

PAST PERFECT ... had begun

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was begun they were begun
 • *Therapy was begun immediately.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beginning we are beginning
 you are beginning you are beginning
 he/she/it is beginning they are beginning
 • *It is beginning to rain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beginning we were beginning
 you were beginning you were beginning
 he/she/it was beginning they were beginning
 • *We were beginning to get worried.*

FUTURE ... will begin

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be beginning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have begun

COMPLEMENTS

begin start

His meetings never begin on time.
 Meetings always begin with the reading of the minutes.
 The trouble began when Mack called Thack a fool.
 When does the parade begin?

begin _____ start [an activity, event, process]

OBJECT

The chairperson began **the meeting** promptly at 2 o'clock.
 He began **the discussion** with a joke.

INFINITIVE

I began **to fall asleep** during the long lecture.
 The orchestra began **to play**.

WH-CLAUSE

We only began **what absolutely had to be finished**.
 They began **whatever they needed to do**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I began **falling asleep** during the long lecture.
 The orchestra began **playing**.

PHRASAL VERBS

begin by/with _____ start a sequence/
process with

The new owners began by firing
 all the managers.
 Career planning begins with assessing your strengths.

begin _____ by/with start [a process,
event] by [doing something first]

Let's begin the meeting with a big thank-you to the
 organizers.
 The song begins with a reference to fields of strawberries.

EXPRESSIONS

beginner one who is starting to learn
something

He's a beginner when it comes to
 woodworking.

beginner's luck luck of an inexperienced
person

Winning my very first case was just beginner's luck.

to begin with first of all

To begin with, there were no eyewitnesses.

PRESENT

I believe we believe
 you believe you believe
 he/she/it believes they believe
 • *I believe that you are right.*

PAST

I believed we believed
 you believed you believed
 he/she/it believed they believed
 • *I believed her side of the story.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has believed

PAST PERFECT ... had believed

PAST PASSIVE

I was believed we were believed
 you were believed you were believed
 he/she/it was believed they were believed
 • *His story was believed by everyone.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Believe is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Believe is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will believe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have believed

COMPLEMENTS

believe *have religious faith*

believe _____ *accept as true/real/truthful*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

believe _____ *have an opinion, guess*

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

Do you believe?

They have believed for years.

The police believe **George's story**.

They believe **George**.

We believe **what they have told us**.

I believed **him (to be) a complete fool**.

We believe **the project (to be) a done deal**.

I believed **the proposal (to be) dead**.

We believed **the will (to be) valid**.

We believe **her to be dead**.

They believe **the recession to have run its course**.

I believe **that it is going to rain**.

We believe **that the dollar will strengthen**.

You won't believe **whom we met**.

PHRASAL VERBS

believe in _____ *accept the existence of*

believe in _____ *be convinced of the merits of*

They believe in ghosts.

I believe in hard work.

We believe in exercise.

We believe in exercising every day.

They believe in doing their best.

EXPRESSIONS

believe it of _____ *accept as true a statement about*

believe it or not *it may be unlikely, but it's true*

believe you me! *take my word for it!*

not believe [one's] ears/eyes *not trust what one has heard/seen*

Vera stole the money? I can't believe it of her.

Believe it or not, Margaret won the spelling bee.

I'm going to sue those scoundrels, believe you me!

He used lots of profanity—I couldn't believe my ears. When I got the electric bill, I couldn't believe my eyes.

PRESENT

I belong we belong
 you belong you belong
 he/she/it belongs they belong

• *All these CDs belong to me.*

PAST

I belonged we belonged
 you belonged you belonged
 he/she/it belonged they belonged

• *The house belonged to my family once.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has belonged

PAST PERFECT ... had belonged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Belong is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Belong is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will belong

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

—

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have belonged

PAST PASSIVE

Belong is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

belong _____ *be properly placed*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The lamp belongs **here**.

The recycle bin belongs **under the stairs**.

The Dreyfus documents belong **under the letter "D."**

belong _____ *be suitable [in an occupation/activity]*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Tim belongs **in engineering**.

Ralph belongs **at the FBI**.

PHRASAL VERBS

belong to _____ *be the property of*

The book belongs to Alice.

That dog belongs to me.

belong to _____ *be a member of*

We have belonged to a book club for 19 years.

They belong to the Republican Party.

belong to _____ *be a part/component of*

Those wheels belong to the lawn mower.

Guam belongs to the United States.

Tomatoes belong to the nightshade family.

PRESENT

I bend we bend
 you bend you bend
 he/she/it bends they bend

• *He always bends the rules.*

PAST

I bent we bent
 you bent you bent
 he/she/it bent they bent

• *I bent my fishhook.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bent

PAST PERFECT ... had bent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bending we are bending
 you are bending you are bending
 he/she/it is bending they are bending

• *He is bending over backward to help you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bending we were bending
 you were bending you were bending
 he/she/it was bending they were bending

• *The kids were bending clay into shapes.*

FUTURE ... will bend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bent

PAST PASSIVE

I was bent we were bent
 you were bent you were bent
 he/she/it was bent they were bent

• *The minister's head was bent in sorrow.*

COMPLEMENTS

bend *become curved/crooked*

The road bends to the right.
 The trees bent in the wind.

bend *stoop, dip*

I bent to pick up the cat's water bowl.
 The rod bent under the heavy load.

bend *distort*

His smile bent into an ugly leer.

bend _____ *cause to curve, change the shape of*

OBJECT

The archers bent **their bows**.
 The wind was bending **the trees**.
 I bent **the wire** into a hook.
 The magnets bend **the beam of electrons**.
 The rocks bend **the stream** to the far bank.

bend _____ *distort, cheat*

OBJECT

The storm bent **the windmill** out of shape.
 Politicians bend **the rules** to suit themselves.
 They bent **the truth** in the run-up to war.

PHRASAL VERBS

bend backward/down/forward/etc.
lean in a specified direction

Brad bent backward to dodge the ball.
 She bent down to pet the dog.
 The girl bent forward to get a better look.

bend SEP back/down/over/up/etc.
change the shape of in a specified direction

Norvel bent the pins back into place.
 Adrian bent the corner of the page over.

bend over *lean down at the waist*

The class bent over to touch their toes.

bend over backward *do more than required*

The store bends over backward to please its customers.

bend to _____ *concentrate on*

After a break, Jasper bent to his studies.

bend to _____ *give in to*

He bent to the will of the voters and endorsed the plan.

bend _____ **to** *cause to give in*

Cleopatra bent Antony to her will.

be bent on _____ *be determined [to do]*

Helen was bent on going to law school.

EXPRESSIONS

bend [someone's] ear *talk excessively to*

The stranger bent my ear for 45 minutes.

PRESENT

I bet we bet
 you bet you bet
 he/she/it bets they bet
 • *Floyd always bets on the Yankees.*

PAST

I bet we bet
 you bet you bet
 he/she/it bet they bet
 • *She bet \$20 on Breezy Summit to win.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bet

PAST PERFECT ... had bet

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was bet they were bet
 • *A fortune was bet by professional gamblers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am betting we are betting
 you are betting you are betting
 he/she/it is betting they are betting
 • *I'm betting that you are right.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was betting we were betting
 you were betting you were betting
 he/she/it was betting they were betting
 • *They were all betting that he would win.*

FUTURE ... will bet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be betting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bet

COMPLEMENTS

bet *make a wager*

I never bet.
 They are always betting.

bet _____ *place as a wager*

OBJECT

Jason bet **a fortune**.
 They are betting **a lot of money**.
 We bet **five dollars** *that you can't eat the entire cake*.
 They will bet **whatever they can afford to lose**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

bet _____ *wager [something] with [someone]*

OBJECT + OBJECT

I bet **Floyd 10 dollars**.
 He bet **me dinner at a nice restaurant**.
 We bet **Robert** *that his team would finish last*.
 I bet **you** *that you can't do it*.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

bet _____ *assert [that something will/won't happen]*

THAT-CLAUSE

The company bet **that consumers would like the new design**.
 Marisa bet **that the Dodgers wouldn't win**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bet on _____ *place a wager on [a contestant]*

I'm betting on the gray stallion.
 I'm betting on St. Louis for the convention site.
 I'm betting on St. Louis to be the convention site.

EXPRESSIONS

You bet! *Certainly!* [INFORMAL]

"Can you help me move this sofa?"
 "You bet!"

PRESENT

I bid we bid
 you bid you bid
 he/she/it bids they bid
 • *He always bids the limit.*

PAST

I bade/bid we bade/bid
 you bade/bid you bade/bid
 he/she/it bade/bid they bade/bid
 • *I bid \$200 for the painting.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bidden/bid

PAST PERFECT ... had bidden/bid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bidding we are bidding
 you are bidding you are bidding
 he/she/it is bidding they are bidding
 • *We are bidding on a vacation condo.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bidding we were bidding
 you were bidding you were bidding
 he/she/it was bidding they were bidding
 • *They were bidding more than they could afford.*

FUTURE ... will bid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bidding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bidden/bid

PAST PASSIVE

I was bidden/bid we were bidden/bid
 you were bidden/bid you were bidden/bid
 he/she/it was bidden/bid they were bidden/bid
 • *Twenty-five dollars was just bid.*

COMPLEMENTS

bid offer to pay a particular price

I never bid at auctions.
 John will bid when it comes on the market.

bid _____ offer [a price] for
 OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)

When bidding began on the dollhouse, Dave bid **\$200**.
 He bid **\$25 for the rocking chair**.

ON OBJECT
 WH-CLAUSE

We are bidding **on a first edition of Jane Austen's Emma**.
 They will bid **whatever is necessary**.

NOTE: Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense "offer as a price."

bid _____ declare one's intention to take [tricks in a card game]
 OBJECT

I bid **two spades**.

NOTE: Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense "declare one's intention to take."

bid _____ tell [a greeting]
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

We bade **them farewell**.
 We bade **farewell to them**.

bid _____ urge/ask
 OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The butler bid **the guests to enter**.
 He bid **them to be careful**.

PASSIVE

The guests were bidden **to enter**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bid SEP **out** offer [work] for bids from outside contractors

The army bid out the construction of four new barracks.
 The ad agency bids out the production of TV commercials.

bid SEP **up** raise [an auction price] by offering more and more money

Luana bid the price up on the antique lamp.

EXPRESSIONS

outbid _____ offer more than
underbid _____ offer to do something for less than

Laura outbid four other people for the rug.
 The new firm underbid the others by \$5,000.

PRESENT

I bind we bind
 you bind you bind
 he/she/it binds they bind
 • *Duct tape binds the parts together.*

PAST

I bound we bound
 you bound you bound
 he/she/it bound they bound
 • *I bound the essays before shelving them.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bound

PAST PERFECT ... had bound

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am binding we are binding
 you are binding you are binding
 he/she/it is binding they are binding
 • *We are binding the reports with staples and tape.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was binding we were binding
 you were binding you were binding
 he/she/it was binding they were binding
 • *The gears were binding against each other.*

FUTURE ... will bind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be binding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bound

PAST PASSIVE

I was bound we were bound
 you were bound you were bound
 he/she/it was bound they were bound
 • *They were bound by their promises.*

COMPLEMENTS

bind stick, become stuck

The pulley was binding.

bind be uncomfortably tight

This dress is binding.

NOTE: The verb *bind*, when it takes an object, is often used with *together*.

bind _____ wrap, cover, bandage

OBJECT

We bound **the package** with tape.
 The printer bound **the books** in red leather.
 The doctor bound **my ankle**.

bind _____ fasten together

OBJECT

The secretary bound **the pages** with a clip.

bind _____ cause to stick together

OBJECT

The glue binds **the fibers** together.
 The enzyme binds **the calcium ions**.

bind _____ put an edge/border on

OBJECT

He bound **the rug** with cotton tape to keep the edges from raveling.

bind _____ legally/morally obligate

OBJECT

My promise binds **me**.
 His father's will binds **the use of the property**.

bind _____ cause to have an emotional attachment

OBJECT

Duty and honor bound **the company of soldiers** together.

PHRASAL VERBS

bind SEP off cast off [KNITTING]

Be sure to bind off the scarf loosely.

bind SEP over hold on bail

The judge will bind the suspect over for trial.

bind SEP up tie up

The medics bound up the soldiers' wounds.
 The old issues were bound up with twine.

EXPRESSIONS

be bound to _____ be certain to [do something]

It's bound to snow this afternoon.
 Erin is bound to be a great lawyer someday.
 East Junior High is bound to win the math contest.

PRESENT

I bite we bite
 you bite you bite
 he/she/it bites they bite

• *Be careful—the dog bites.*

PAST

I bit we bit
 you bit you bit
 he/she/it bit they bit

• *He looks like he bit into a sour lemon.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bitten

PAST PERFECT ... had bitten

PAST PASSIVE

I was bitten we were bitten
 you were bitten you were bitten
 he/she/it was bitten they were bitten

• *I was bitten by dozens of mosquitoes last night.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am biting we are biting
 you are biting you are biting
 he/she/it is biting they are biting

• *The fish are biting this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was biting we were biting
 you were biting you were biting
 he/she/it was biting they were biting

• *They were biting off more than they could chew.*

FUTURE ... will bite

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be biting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bitten

COMPLEMENTS

bite cut with the teeth

bite sting

bite be annoying/objectionable

bite take the bait, be tricked/cheated

bite _____ seize/wound with the teeth

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Does your dog bite?

The mosquitoes are biting tonight.

Ouch, that ointment bites.

His criticisms really bite!

The fish are biting in Big Moose Lake.

Do you think the customers will bite?

I just bit **my tongue**.

The neighbor's dog bit **Thomas**.

The puppy was biting **whatever it could reach**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bite into _____ sink one's teeth into

bite (into) _____ hurt in a stinging way

bite SEP **off** remove with the teeth

bite on _____ chew on

bite on _____ be tricked by

Sammy bit into the orange
 and got juice all over his face.

The icy wind was biting into my face.

Susan bit off only a morsel.

Wade bit on his lip as he decided what to do.

Did Dennis bite on your latest ruse?

EXPRESSIONS

be bitten by the _____ **bug** be obsessed with

bite off more than [one] can chew
 undertake more than one can handle

bite [one's] tongue hold back from saying
 something offensive

bite [someone's] head off speak very
 angrily to someone

bite the bullet be brave in a painful situation

bite the dust die, be defeated

Jayne was bitten by the tennis
 bug: She spent \$400 on a racket.

By opening five stores last year, the owners bit off
 more than they could chew.

Sheila had to bite her tongue to keep from calling
 her boyfriend a stupid idiot.

I broke the copier, and my boss bit my head off.

I bit the bullet and attended my ex-girlfriend's wedding.

How old was the cowboy when he bit the dust?

My first laptop finally bit the dust.

PRESENT

I bleed we bleed
 you bleed you bleed
 he/she/it bleeds they bleed
 • *His nose bleeds at high altitudes.*

PAST

I bled we bled
 you bled you bled
 he/she/it bled they bled
 • *His wound bled for quite some time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bled

PAST PERFECT ... had bled

PAST PASSIVE

I was bled we were bled
 you were bled you were bled
 he/she/it was bled they were bled
 • *He was bled dry by the blackmailers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bleeding we are bleeding
 you are bleeding you are bleeding
 he/she/it is bleeding they are bleeding
 • *I'm bleeding onto my shirt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bleeding we were bleeding
 you were bleeding you were bleeding
 he/she/it was bleeding they were bleeding
 • *The company was bleeding money.*

FUTURE ... will bleed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bleeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bled

bleed *lose blood*bleed *seep, ooze*bleed *lose money*bleed *feel sympathy*bleed _____ *draw blood/fluid from*

OBJECT

bleed _____ *extort money from over time*

OBJECT

bleed _____ *lose rapidly*

OBJECT

Her hands and knees were bleeding.

The cut plants bled onto the rug.

The newsprint is bleeding onto my hands.

The automobile industry is bleeding at an unsustainable rate.

My heart bleeds for the widow.

Her heart bleeds at her neighbor's misfortune.

Doctors used to bleed **their patients** regularly.The mechanic bled **the brake line**.Blackmailers bleed **their victims** of all their money.Newspapers are bleeding **money** at an amazing rate.

COMPLEMENTS

bleed off _____ *be printed so the image goes off the edge of [a page, sheet]*bleed off _____ *remove the contents of*bleed through _____ *show through [a layer]*

The photo of the wolf bleeds off the page.

Irene bled off the air compressor.

The dark blue is bleeding through the coat of white paint.

PHRASAL VERBS

bleed _____ **dry/white** *drain of resources*bleed money *lose money rapidly*bleed to death *die from loss of blood*bleeding heart *one who is exceptionally sympathetic toward the underprivileged*

Legal fees will bleed you dry.

The rock star's entourage bled him white.

The entire industry is bleeding money.

If the doctors can't stop the bleeding, the boy will bleed to death.

George is a bleeding heart for the homeless.

EXPRESSIONS

PRESENT

I blend	we blend
you blend	you blend
he/she/it blends	they blend

• *The repainted section blends in well.*

PAST

I blended	we blended
you blended	you blended
he/she/it blended	they blended

• *The two families blended perfectly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has blended

PAST PERFECT ... had blended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am blending	we are blending
you are blending	you are blending
he/she/it is blending	they are blending

• *We are blending red and white to make pink.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was blending	we were blending
you were blending	you were blending
he/she/it was blending	they were blending

• *They were blending in as best they could.*

FUTURE

... will blend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be blending

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have blended

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was blended	they were blended

• *Their voices were blended in song.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *blend* is often used with *together*.

blend mingle socially

The participants blended nicely with each other.
He never blends well in a crowd.

blend go well together

Her odd clothing choices actually blended rather well.
The food and wine blended beautifully.

blend _____ mix together
OBJECT

Blend **the sugar and butter** until smooth.
We deliberately blended **the freshmen and seniors** together.
Blend **the ingredients** together and pour the batter into an 8-inch square baking pan.

PHRASAL VERBS

blend in (with _____) mix well (with)

Darin doesn't blend in with his co-workers.
The gray color blends in with the concrete sidewalk.

EXPRESSIONS

blended family family that includes children of a previous marriage of one or both spouses

The blended family will soon be the most common type of family unit in the country.

PHRASAL VERBS

blow away/off/out/etc. *be carried by a current of air in a specified direction*

blow SEP away *defeat soundly*

blow SEP away *affect intensely*

blow SEP away *kill with a gun*

blow down *collapse due to a strong current of air*

blow SEP down *cause to collapse due to a strong current of air*

blow in / (into _____) *arrive unexpectedly (at)*

blow SEP off *ignore, choose not to deal with*

blow out *be extinguished*

blow out *burst suddenly*

blow SEP out *extinguish with a gust of air*

blow SEP out *damage severely*

blow SEP out *defeat soundly*

blow [oneself] out *subside*

blow over *subside*

blow up *arrive with wind*

blow up *explode*

blow up *lose one's temper*

blow SEP up *fill with air*

blow SEP up *cause to explode*

blow SEP up *enlarge*

Janet's hat blew off.

The visitors blew the home team away.

This new poem of yours blows me away.

The gangsters blew the guard away.

The shed blew down in the storm.

The storm blew the shed down.

Well, look who just blew in!

Three strangers blew into town on Saturday night.

Lanny blew off the assignment.

Ramona blew off her friends and left town.

The candle blew out because of the open windows.

The tire blew out, sounding like a gunshot.

Blow the candle out and go to sleep.

Chuck blew out his knee in the first game.

The Cougars blew the Tigers out in an exhibition game.

The guests left after the storm blew itself out.

The storm blew over almost as quickly as it arrived.

This crisis will blow over soon.

A storm blew up out of the southwest.

The truck blew up on contact with a mine.

The teacher will blow up if you don't be quiet.

The clown blew up 20 balloons.

The soldiers blew the headquarters up with mortars.

Let's blow the map up to 400%.

EXPRESSIONS

blow a fuse/gasket *become extremely angry*

blow off (some) steam *release a pent-up emotion*

blow [one's] cool *lose one's composure*

blow [someone's] mind *affect intensely*

blow [one's] (own) horn *praise oneself*

blow [one's] top/stack *speak/act very angrily*

blow _____ out of the water *destroy completely*

blow [someone] a kiss *indicate a kiss by pantomime*

Natalie blew a fuse when her secretary lost the files.

The players went to a bar to blow off some steam.

I know you're frustrated, but don't blow your cool.

The revelation really blows my mind.

Rebecca is talented, but she never blows her own horn.

The candidate blew his top at the nosy reporter.

The new motorcycle will blow its competition out of the water.

Renni blew him a kiss from the platform.

blow the whistle (on _____) *report wrongdoing to authorities (about)*

blow _____ to bits/pieces/smithereens *blow completely apart*

A secretary blew the whistle on the accountant.

A single mortar round blew the police station to pieces.

PRESENT

I blow we blow
 you blow you blow
 he/she/it blows they blow

• *The wind always blows in the wintertime.*

PAST

I blew we blew
 you blew you blew
 he/she/it blew they blew

• *He blew up all the balloons himself.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has blown

PAST PERFECT ... had blown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am blowing we are blowing
 you are blowing you are blowing
 he/she/it is blowing they are blowing

• *The wind is blowing my hair.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was blowing we were blowing
 you were blowing you were blowing
 he/she/it was blowing they were blowing

• *The fans were blowing the gas out of the chamber.*

FUTURE ... will blow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be blowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have blown

PAST PASSIVE

I was blown we were blown
 you were blown you were blown
 he/she/it was blown they were blown

• *The boat was blown off course.*

COMPLEMENTS

blow move with force

The wind was blowing softly.

blow force air out

The fans were blowing at low speed.

blow produce a sound by having air forced through it

The horns were all blowing.

blow explode, erupt

The volcano blew with a huge roar.

blow abruptly fail

The tire blew when we were going 55 miles an hour.

The fuse blew when I turned on the iron.

blow _____ move/carry away with a current of air

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The fans were blowing **the stale air outside**.

The wind was blowing **dirt in my eyes**.

The breeze blew **the boat onto the rocks**.

blow _____ force air at/into/through, fill with air

OBJECT

John blew **his nose**.

The kids were blowing **bubbles** all afternoon.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Compressed air blew **the pipes clear**.

She blew **her hair dry**.

blow _____ produce a sound by forcing air through

OBJECT

The jazzman blew **the trumpet** with all his might.

The referee blew **his whistle** before the ball was thrown.

blow _____ cause to explode

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He blew **the safe open**.

blow _____ botch, fail to keep

OBJECT

I blew **the exam**.

The actors blew **their lines** repeatedly.

The Giants blew **a 14-point lead**.

blow _____ waste [money]

OBJECT

Zack blew **his money** on gambling.

blow _____ leave hurriedly

OBJECT

I'm bored—let's blow **this joint**.



PRESENT

I bother we bother
 you bother you bother
 he/she/it bothers they bother
 • *He rarely bothers to answer his phone.*

PAST

I bothered we bothered
 you bothered you bothered
 he/she/it bothered they bothered
 • *He never bothered my family.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bothered**PAST PERFECT** ... had bothered**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am bothering we are bothering
 you are bothering you are bothering
 he/she/it is bothering they are bothering
 • *The loud music isn't bothering me.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bothering we were bothering
 you were bothering you were bothering
 he/she/it was bothering they were bothering
 • *The dog was bothering the children.*

FUTURE ... will bother**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be bothering**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have bothered**PAST PASSIVE**

I was bothered we were bothered
 you were bothered you were bothered
 he/she/it was bothered they were bothered
 • *I was bothered by what he said.*

COMPLEMENTS**bother** _____ annoy, pester

OBJECT

His negative attitude really bothers **me**.
 Paul's little sister is always bothering **him**.

bother _____ cause pain/anxiety/concern for

OBJECT

My knee is bothering **me**.
 His proposal bothers **all of us**.
 This analysis bothers **me**.

bother _____ make an effort

INFINITIVE

He never bothers **to knock**.
 He won't bother **to do the job correctly**.
 Will they bother **to reply**?

NOTE: In conversation, the infinitive is often understood: "Don't bother (to get it). I'll get it."

PHRASAL VERBS**bother about/with** _____ concern oneself with

Don't bother about the misspellings—
 the computer will fix them.
 Dixie never bothers with details.

bother _____ about/with annoy with

Don't bother yourself about the missing money—
 I'll replace it.
 Charlene was always bothering Otto with jokes
 she had read.

EXPRESSIONS**bother [one's] (pretty little) head about/with** _____ worry about

Don't bother your pretty little head
 about the cost of the dress.

PRESENT

I break we break
 you break you break
 he/she/it breaks they break
 • *He never breaks his word.*

PAST

I broke we broke
 you broke you broke
 he/she/it broke they broke
 • *They broke every single agreement.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has broken

PAST PERFECT ... had broken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am breaking we are breaking
 you are breaking you are breaking
 he/she/it is breaking they are breaking
 • *We are breaking for lunch now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was breaking we were breaking
 you were breaking you were breaking
 he/she/it was breaking they were breaking
 • *The company was just breaking even.*

FUTURE ... will break

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be breaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have broken

PAST PASSIVE

I was broken we were broken
 you were broken you were broken
 he/she/it was broken they were broken
 • *The window was already broken.*

COMPLEMENTS

break *fragment, shatter*

The delicate cup broke into pieces.
 The waves were breaking close to the shore.

break *fail in strength/resolve/control/ usability*

His health broke.
 His voice broke with emotion.
 The criminals broke under questioning.
 The replacement parts broke too.

break *begin/appear suddenly*

When the storm broke, I was on my bicycle.
 Dawn is breaking.

break *become publicly known*

The news broke this morning.

break *end suddenly*

Jasmine's fever broke last night.

break *become clear*

I hope the weather breaks soon.

break _____ *fracture, render inoperable*
 OBJECT

He broke **his left wrist**.
 They broke **my cell phone**.

break _____ *violate [a rule, agreement]*
 OBJECT

They broke **the rules**.
 We broke **our promise to them**.

break _____ *exceed, surpass*
 OBJECT

He was arrested because he broke **the speed limit**.
 They broke **the old record** by four seconds.

break _____ *make publicly known*
 OBJECT

The reporters broke **the news** this morning.

break _____ *disrupt, make ineffective*
 OBJECT

The soldiers broke **formation**.
 The noise broke **my concentration**.
 She broke **the spell**.

break _____ *stop, interrupt*
 OBJECT

The net broke **the trapeze artist's fall**.
 Esther broke **the silence** with a scream.
 The deadlock was broken at 3 A.M.

PASSIVE



break _____ solve, figure out

OBJECT

The police broke **the case**.

The scientists broke **the code**.

break _____ give the equivalent of in smaller monetary units

OBJECT

Can you break a **twenty-dollar bill**?

break _____ ruin financially

OBJECT

One more financial setback will break **the company**.

break _____ tame, train to obey

OBJECT

The cowboys broke **the wild horses**.

PHRASAL VERBS

break away leave suddenly

Helene broke away from the rest of the sprinters.

break down become inoperative/ineffective

My car broke down at Sixth and Pine.

Negotiations broke down after three days.

break down become upset

Seth broke down and cried at the news.

break down give in

Lonnie broke down and bought an MP3 player.

break SEP **down** divide into [pieces]

Let's break the sentence down into subject and predicate.

break for _____ interrupt one's activities for

Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.

break SEP **in** train [an employee]

Has Marilyn broken Mary in yet?

break SEP **in** use [something] until it functions well

I have to break in a new pair of shoes.

break into _____ enter, usually by force

Thieves broke into the pharmacy.

break into _____ begin suddenly

When she's really happy, Gretchen breaks into song.

break into _____ become engaged in

Bert broke into show business at the age of four.

break into / in on _____ interrupt

I'm sorry to break in on your conversation, but I must go.

break _____ **into** divide [something] into [pieces]

We should break the project into individual tasks.

break off stop suddenly

Aaron's voice broke off in mid-sentence.

break SEP **off** discontinue

The two nations have broken off diplomatic relations.

break out develop

Fire broke out in the kitchen area.

break out be covered with

Dave broke out in a sweat.

break out (of _____) escape (from)

The prisoners broke out of jail in the early morning.

break up fall apart, scatter

The partnership broke up on amicable terms.

break up laugh hard

Every time I hear this monologue, I break up.

break up (with _____) end a romance (with)

Have you heard? Alison broke up with Todd.

break SEP **up** cause to laugh hard

This monologue just breaks me up.

break SEP **up** put an end to

The FBI tried to break up the drug cartel.

Two students broke the fight up.

EXPRESSIONS

break even achieve a balance between income and expenses

The firm broke even in 2008.

break the ice overcome awkwardness/formality

The president broke the ice with a couple of jokes.

PRESENT

I bring we bring
 you bring you bring
 he/she/it brings they bring
 • *April showers bring May flowers.*

PAST

I brought we brought
 you brought you brought
 he/she/it brought they brought
 • *They brought us some good news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has brought

PAST PERFECT ... had brought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bringing we are bringing
 you are bringing you are bringing
 he/she/it is bringing they are bringing
 • *We are bringing the books with us.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bringing we were bringing
 you were bringing you were bringing
 he/she/it was bringing they were bringing
 • *They were bringing the dessert.*

FUTURE ... will bring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have brought

PAST PASSIVE

I was brought we were brought
 you were brought you were brought
 he/she/it was brought they were brought
 • *This message was brought to you by our sponsor.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *bring* generally indicates movement toward the speaker or toward the focus of attention; compare with *take* (verb No. 505).

bring _____ carry, lead

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

Who will bring **dessert**?
 Bring **the book here**, please.
 I brought **the visitors to their hotel**.
 The coupons really brought **a crowd to the store**.
 You should bring **them back**.
 He brought **me my dinner**.
 She brought **us the new account**.
 The sale brought **them a small fortune**.
 He brought **my dinner to me**.
 She brought **the new account to us**.
 The sale brought **a small fortune to them**.
 She brought **us whatever she could**.
 Bring **whomever you want**.
 Bring **whatever you can to the picnic**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

bring _____ cause to be in a particular state/condition

OBJECT + to OBJECT

I brought **the water to a boil**.
 They brought **the meeting to a conclusion**.

bring _____ bear as an attribute

OBJECT

He brought **lots of experience** to the table.

bring _____ result in

OBJECT

The storm brought **ten inches of rain**.
 The drug will bring **nearly immediate relief**.

bring _____ cause

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

What brought **you to apply to 13 colleges**?

bring _____ sell for

OBJECT

Our old used car brought **\$350**.
 The sale will bring **a lot of money**.

bring _____ file in court

OBJECT

He brought **charges** against the owners.



PHRASAL VERBS

- bring SEP **about** *cause to happen*
 bring SEP **along** *have [someone] come along*
 bring SEP **around** *cause to regain consciousness*
 bring SEP **around** *persuade*
 bring SEP **away** *come away with [information]*
 bring SEP **back** *recall*
 bring _____ **before** *cause to appear before*
[an authority]
 bring _____ **before** *introduce for consideration by*
 bring SEP **down** *cause to fall*
 bring SEP **forth** *give birth to, produce*
 bring SEP **forth** *make known*
 bring SEP **in** *produce, earn*
 bring _____ **in on** *include [someone] in [an activity]*
 bring SEP **off** *make happen, accomplish*
 bring SEP **on** *cause to appear*
 bring SEP **out** *cause to emerge*
 bring SEP **out** *publish, issue*
 bring SEP **over** *persuade*
 bring _____ **through** *help to endure*
 bring _____ **to** *cause to regain consciousness*
 bring SEP **together** *cause to gather*
 bring SEP **up** *mention*
 bring SEP **up** *raise [a child]*
 bring _____ **up on** *provide in [someone's] childhood*
 bring _____ **up on / up-to-date on / up to speed**
on *inform [someone] about*

- How can we bring about change?
 Be sure to bring a friend along on the tour.
 The medic brought the injured man around.
 They brought Andy around on going to Cancun.
 We bring valuable insights away from the meeting.
 These photographs bring back lots of memories.
 The guards brought the defendant before
 Judge Flynn.
 I brought the zoning issue before the city council.
 His own mistakes brought him down.
 Amy expects to bring forth a healthy son.
 Reinforcements brought forth the historic victory.
 The accountant brought forth two good arguments.
 The subsidiary brought in \$30 million last year.
 The president brought them in on the decision.
 He brought off one of the biggest upsets in history.
 It's time to bring on the clowns.
 A police siren will bring people out into the street.
 The novelist brings out a new book every two years.
 Alexandra brought Gil over to our side.
 My sister brought her husband through.
 We brought Anne to before the medics arrived.
 We brought the class together for one last party.
 Jackie brought up the idea of having more parties.
 It's not easy to bring up twins.
 Camelia's parents brought her up to be nice.
 Mom brought us up on the Beatles.
 Would you like to bring us up on the latest
 developments?

EXPRESSIONS

- bring _____ **into play** *cause to be a factor*
 bring _____ **into question** *cause to be doubted*
 bring _____ **into service** *begin to use*
 bring _____ **into view** *cause to be seen*
 bring _____ **to a head** *cause to reach a crisis*
 bring _____ **to an end / a close / a climax** *end*
 bring _____ **to life** *give vitality to*
 bring _____ **to light** *reveal*
 bring _____ **to mind** *recall*
 bring _____ **to [someone's]**
attention *make aware of*
 bring _____ **to terms** *force to*
agree

- The campaign is bringing
 Internet strategies into play.
 Reports have brought his character into question.
 The company will bring 30 wind farms into service.
 The viewfinder brought the mountain into view.
 The theft brought the question of security to a head.
 My new book will bring the case to a close.
 The children want to bring the puppet to life.
 The journalist brought the corruption to light.
 The reunion brought to mind all the good times
 we had.
 Citizens have brought the issue to our attention.
 Her persuasiveness brought the opposing sides
 to terms.

PRESENT

I broadcast we broadcast
 you broadcast you broadcast
 he/she/it broadcasts they broadcast
 • *He broadcasts all of their games.*

PAST

I broadcast we broadcast
 you broadcast you broadcast
 he/she/it broadcast they broadcast
 • *The station broadcast the show for 50 years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has broadcast

PAST PERFECT ... had broadcast

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am broadcasting we are broadcasting
 you are broadcasting you are broadcasting
 he/she/it is broadcasting they are broadcasting
 • *They are broadcasting the debate live.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was broadcasting we were broadcasting
 you were broadcasting you were broadcasting
 he/she/it was broadcasting they were broadcasting
 • *We were broadcasting from Los Angeles then.*

FUTURE

... will broadcast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be broadcasting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have broadcast

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was broadcast they were broadcast
 • *The news was broadcast in high definition.*

COMPLEMENTS

broadcast transmit programming
via radio/TV

They broadcast in Latin America.
 They broadcast in Spanish.
 We broadcast on the FM dial in stereo.
 Shhh! They're broadcasting.

broadcast participate in a broadcast
program

She broadcasts live from Rockefeller Center.

broadcast _____ transmit via radio/TV

OBJECT

They broadcast **news about Asia**.
 We broadcast **college football games**.

broadcast _____ communicate via radio/TV

OBJECT

The police broadcast **a description of the suspect**.
 The weather bureau broadcast **a storm warning for the region**.
 The networks broadcast **that Senator Blather was the likely winner**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The radio broadcast **that all the major downtown freeways were closed**.

WH-CLAUSE

The stations only broadcast **what they think the public wants to hear**.

broadcast _____ make widely known

OBJECT

I'll broadcast **my marriage proposal** on the stadium scoreboard.

THAT-CLAUSE

Please don't broadcast **the rumor** to everyone you see.

WH-CLAUSE

I model part-time. But I don't go broadcasting **that I do**.

Don't go broadcasting **why we split up**.

PRESENT

I build we build
 you build you build
 he/she/it builds they build
 • *He builds custom-made furniture.*

PAST

I built we built
 you built you built
 he/she/it built they built
 • *They just built a house near us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has built**PAST PERFECT** ... had built**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am building we are building
 you are building you are building
 he/she/it is building they are building
 • *They are building a new house.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was building we were building
 you were building you were building
 he/she/it was building they were building
 • *They were building passenger cars on truck frames.*

FUTURE

... will build

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be building**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have built**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was built they were built
 • *Our house was built in 1996.*

COMPLEMENTS**build** increase in size/intensity

The waves were building ever higher.
 Our debt was building to scary levels.
 Excitement is building over who will be elected.

build _____ construct

OBJECT

Tommy built **the wagon** out of parts he found in the garage.
 We built **a deck** this summer.
 They are building **a communications network**.
 We have built **a good plan**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The prosecutor built **a strong case** against the suspect.

for PARAPHRASE

They built **us a two-car garage**.We built **them a new investment package**.

WH-CLAUSE

They **built a two-car garage for us**.We built **a new investment package for them**.We can only build **what we can afford**.They will build **whatever the marketplace wants**.**build** _____ increase

OBJECT

The campaign built **support** by offering free T-shirts.
 The company is building **their business** one store at a time.

PHRASAL VERBS**build** _____ **in/into** make [something] an integral part of

We will build cabinets into the laundry room.
 The programmers built security into the server software.

build _____ **on/onto** construct [something] as an addition to

We built a deck onto the house this summer.

build SEP **up** increase

The politicians built up hope among poor people.
 Steven is building up leg strength by running five miles a day.

build SEP **up** promote

The agency built Eileen up as a pop singer.

EXPRESSIONS**build** _____ **to order** construct to individual specifications

The woodworker builds bookcases to order.
 Every computer is built to order.

PRESENT

I burn we burn
 you burn you burn
 he/she/it burns they burn
 • *He really burns me up.*

PAST

I burned/burnt we burned/burnt
 you burned/burnt you burned/burnt
 he/she/it burned/burnt they burned/burnt
 • *We burned oak firewood last winter.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has burned/burnt
 PAST PERFECT ... had burned/burnt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am burning we are burning
 you are burning you are burning
 he/she/it is burning they are burning
 • *She is burning loveletters from her ex-husband.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was burning we were burning
 you were burning you were burning
 he/she/it was burning they were burning
 • *A light was burning in the window.*

FUTURE ... will burn
 FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be burning
 FUTURE PERFECT ... will have burned/burnt

PAST PASSIVE

I was burned/burnt we were burned/burnt
 you were burned/burnt you were burned/burnt
 he/she/it was burned/burnt they were burned/burnt
 • *My hand was burned by the hot plate.*

COMPLEMENTS

burn *be on fire*

burn *be destroyed by fire*

burn *give off light*

burn *be/feel hot/painful*

burn *become sunburned*

burn _____ *set fire to, destroy by fire*
OBJECT

burn _____ *damage/injure by heat/fire*
OBJECT

burn _____ *use as fuel/energy*
OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

burn _____ *cause to feel hot*
OBJECT

burn _____ *record data on*
OBJECT

burn _____ *defeat, trick, cheat*
OBJECT
PASSIVE

Get out—the building is burning!
 A small fire was burning in the fireplace.
 Our apartment building burned last night.
 The paper and kindling burned quickly.
 Every lamp in the house was burning.
 Her forehead was burning.
 My ears were burning from the cold.
 With her fair complexion, she burns easily.

We burned **the trash** in the fireplace.

A spark burned **a hole** in my pants.
 I burned **my fingers**.
 I burned **myself** on the stove.

Most cars can burn **regular gas**.
 Soccer players burn **more calories** than golfers.
 We burned **whatever we could get our hands on**.

The salsa burned **my mouth**.

We burned **some new CDs**.

The quarterback burned **the defense** on that play.
 I got burned by the dot-com crash in 2000.
 We were burned in the commodities market.

PHRASAL VERBS

burn down *burn smaller and smaller*

burn SEP up *make very angry*

The candle burned down and went out.

That nasty remark really burns me up.

PRESENT

I burst we burst
 you burst you burst
 he/she/it bursts they burst
 • *He always bursts into tears.*

PAST

I burst we burst
 you burst you burst
 he/she/it burst they burst
 • *He burst all of our hopes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has burst**PAST PERFECT** ... had burst**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was burst they were burst

• *The dam was burst by the heavy rains.***PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am bursting we are bursting
 you are bursting you are bursting
 he/she/it is bursting they are bursting
 • *I'm bursting to tell you what happened.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bursting we were bursting
 you were bursting you were bursting
 he/she/it was bursting they were bursting
 • *We were just bursting after Thanksgiving dinner.*

FUTURE ... will burst**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be bursting**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have burst**burst** *break, rupture***burst** *be filled to the breaking point***burst** *explode***burst** *give way to sudden emotion***burst** _____ *cause to break/explode*

OBJECT

burst _____ *be very eager*

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

burst in on _____ *interrupt suddenly***burst in/into** _____ *enter suddenly***burst onto** _____ *emerge suddenly in a location***burst out** *explode outward***burst out** _____ *begin suddenly [to do]***burst (out) into** _____ *begin [an activity] suddenly***burst out of** _____ *be too big for***burst out of** _____ *leave quickly***burst through** _____ *break through with force*

The balloons all burst.

I was afraid that my eardrums would burst from the sudden pressure change.

The auditorium was bursting with students.

The rocket burst above the spectators' heads.

The bushes are just bursting with blossoms.

I felt like my heart would burst.

I was bursting with pride.

The explosion burst **the windows**.The older kids burst **all the balloons**.The hurricane burst **the retaining walls**.We are bursting **for him to tell us**.I am bursting **for Mary to see what we have done**.I'm bursting **to know what happened**.The kids are bursting **to open their presents**.**burst in on** _____ *interrupt suddenly***burst in/into** _____ *enter suddenly***burst onto** _____ *emerge suddenly in a location***burst out** *explode outward***burst out** _____ *begin suddenly [to do]***burst (out) into** _____ *begin [an activity] suddenly***burst out of** _____ *be too big for***burst out of** _____ *leave quickly***burst through** _____ *break through with force*

The secretary burst in on the private meeting.

The children burst into the room.

The singer burst onto the stage.

When the glass burst out, I was cut by flying shards.

We all burst out laughing at the joke.

After the accident, Kathleen burst into tears.

When I hear bongo drums, I burst out into song.

She was embarrassed to be bursting out of her dress.

At midnight, the partygoers burst out of the hall.

The troops burst through the enemy line.

COMPLEMENTS**PHRASAL VERBS**

PRESENT

I buy we buy
 you buy you buy
 he/she/it buys they buy
 • *He always buys locally.*

PAST

I bought we bought
 you bought you bought
 he/she/it bought they bought
 • *We bought a new car last week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bought

PAST PERFECT ... had bought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am buying we are buying
 you are buying you are buying
 he/she/it is buying they are buying
 • *We are buying a new TV.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was buying we were buying
 you were buying you were buying
 he/she/it was buying they were buying
 • *They were buying it on credit.*

FUTURE

... will buy

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be buying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have bought

PAST PASSIVE

I was bought we were bought
 you were bought you were bought
 he/she/it was bought they were bought
 • *The house was bought in 1982.*

COMPLEMENTS

buy _____ purchase

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

buy _____ accept, believe, agree to/with

OBJECT

I bought **take-out** for dinner.
 We will buy **500 shares of Apex Corporation**.
 A dollar buys **less** than a euro does.
 I bought **the kids some new toys**.
 They bought **us dinner**.
 I bought **some new toys for the kids**.
 They bought **dinner for us**.
 Mom buys **whichever brand is cheapest**.

They bought **our proposal**.
 Will the students buy **the idea**?
 I don't buy **that** at all.

PHRASAL VERBS

buy into _____ purchase shares of

buy into _____ agree with, believe in

buy SEP off bribe

buy SEP out purchase all assets/interests of [a business]

buy SEP up purchase all of

Our investment club bought into the Triangle Corporation.
 I don't buy into his money-making scheme.
 The candidate changed positions; lobbyists bought him off.
 We bought out our competitors.
 We bought up every copy of the *Times* that had Tim's crossword puzzle in it.

EXPRESSIONS

buy _____ for a song purchase cheaply

buy _____ on credit/time purchase now and pay later for

buy _____ sight unseen purchase without looking at first

buy (some) time delay an action/decision in hopes that a situation will improve

She bought this new rocking chair for a song.
 Can we buy this refrigerator on credit?
 My parents bought a condo in Florida sight unseen.
 The owner wants to buy some time while he considers all his options.

PHRASAL VERBS

call around *telephone several people about something*

call back *telephone someone who telephoned earlier*

call _____ back *telephone [someone who telephoned earlier]*

call for _____ *arrive to pick up*

call for _____ *demand, require*

call _____ forward *call to the front*

call SEP off *cancel [an event]*

call on _____ *make a brief visit to*

call on _____ *ask to speak*

call _____ on *challenge about*

call out *shout*

call SEP up *telephone*

call SEP up *recall*

call SEP up *summon to active military duty*

call upon/on _____ *order, require*

She called around to find out where her son was.

I hope that the doctor calls back soon.

No message—I'll call her back later.

Hello, Mrs. Smith. I'm calling for Emily.

Good morning, sir. I'm calling for the package.

The crowd is calling for the prisoner.

The protesters are calling for lower taxes.

He called the student forward to receive an award.

The organizers called off the concert.

I will call on my grandmother tomorrow morning.

The teacher called on Jamie for the answer.

The speaker told a lie, and Randy called him on it.

Betty called out to Jody from across the street.

Let's call Mom up and ask her to bake brownies.

This postcard calls up memories of the Depression.

They called up 100 guardsmen in the first month.

The mayor called upon the citizens to remain calm.

EXPRESSIONS

call a spade a spade *speak frankly*

call a halt to _____ *stop*

call (all) the shots *be in charge*

call _____ by [a name] *address by [a particular name]*

call in sick *telephone one's place of work to report that one is sick and cannot come to work*

call _____ into question *cast doubt on*

call it a day, call it quits *stop what one has been doing*

call _____ names *speak insultingly to*

call _____ on the carpet *reprimand*

call ([someone]'s) attention to _____ *cause to be noticed (by someone)*

call [someone's] bluff *challenge a false claim by [someone]*

on call *ready when summoned*

In her speeches, the candidate calls a spade a spade.

The general called a halt to the bombing.

Everyone knows that his wife calls the shots.

The teacher calls us by our first names.

I woke up with the flu and called in sick.

The new data call our conclusions into question.

I'm worn out! Let's call it a day.

Jimmy's classmates called him names.

Because Ira arrived late, the boss called him on the carpet.

Alyssa likes to call attention to herself.

May I call your attention to the latest report?

The teacher said he would quit, but the school board called his bluff.

The resident doctor is on call 24/7.

PRESENT

I call we call
 you call you call
 he/she/it calls they call
 • *She always calls at dinnertime.*

PAST

I called we called
 you called you called
 he/she/it called they called
 • *I called the office twice.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has called

PAST PERFECT ... had called

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am calling we are calling
 you are calling you are calling
 he/she/it is calling they are calling
 • *I'm calling everyone on the list.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was calling we were calling
 you were calling you were calling
 he/she/it was calling they were calling
 • *We were just calling to say hello.*

FUTURE ... will call

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be calling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have called

PAST PASSIVE

I was called we were called
 you were called you were called
 he/she/it was called they were called
 • *The meeting was called for tomorrow.*

COMPLEMENTS

call telephone

call shout

call _____ telephone
 OBJECT

call _____ announce, read loudly
 OBJECT

call _____ address as, name, label
 OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

call _____ bring together people for
 OBJECT

call _____ summon
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 for PARAPHRASE

call _____ stop
 OBJECT

call _____ predict
 OBJECT

Did he call?

Please call when you get a chance.

Someone was calling in the darkness.

I called **my sister** last night.
 Call **the doctor!**

The teacher called **the roll**.
 She called **the winning number**.

They called **us their best friends**.
 Let's call **the baby Linda**.
 She called **him a fool**.
 He was called **a fool** to his face.
 She called **him foolish**.
 They called **us lucky**.

The chairman called **a meeting**.
 The union called **a strike**.

She called **him a taxi**.
 She called **a taxi for him**.

The umpire called **the game** because of rain.

William called **the election** for the TV network.

PRESENT

I care we care
 you care you care
 he/she/it cares they care

• *She cares about her work.*

PAST

I cared we cared
 you cared you cared
 he/she/it cared they cared

• *I cared for them all week long.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cared

PAST PERFECT ... had cared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am caring we are caring
 you are caring you are caring
 he/she/it is caring they are caring

• *One nurse is caring for the whole ward.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was caring we were caring
 you were caring you were caring
 he/she/it was caring they were caring

• *He was caring for his disabled wife.*

FUTURE ... will care

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be caring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cared

PAST PASSIVE

I was cared we were cared
 you were cared you were cared
 he/she/it was cared they were cared

• *The children were cared for by their grandparents.*

COMPLEMENTS

care *feel concern/interest*

care _____ *feel concern/interest*

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

care _____ *like, choose, be inclined*

INFINITIVE

I don't care.

They act like they don't care.

I care **that we are going to be late.**

Don't you care **that we missed the train?**

They won't care **that we left early.**

He doesn't care **who will be there.**

I don't care **what people think.**

Do they care **how late we stay out?**

Would you care **to dance?**

I don't care **to do it.**

You wouldn't care **to say that again**, would you?

PHRASAL VERBS

care about _____ *cherish, value*

Joanne cares very much about
her invalid sister.

Lori only cares about animals.

care for _____ *be responsible for, watch over*

A nurse cared for Mom after her stroke.

Hilary cared for Ashley's cats when she was gone.

care for _____ *like, want*

George doesn't care for broccoli.

Would you care for another cup of coffee?

EXPRESSIONS

care nothing about _____ *have no interest in*

I care nothing about your CD
collection.

care nothing for _____ *not like*

I care nothing for horror films.

could care less, couldn't care less
have no interest at all

She could care less about the prom.

She couldn't care less about the prom.

NOTE: These seemingly contradictory expressions mean the same thing.

PRESENT

I carry we carry
 you carry you carry
 he/she/it carries they carry
 • *He carries a heavy burden.*

PAST

I carried we carried
 you carried you carried
 he/she/it carried they carried
 • *They carried their own weight.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has carried

PAST PERFECT ... had carried

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am carrying we are carrying
 you are carrying you are carrying
 he/she/it is carrying they are carrying
 • *I'm already carrying too many credit hours.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was carrying we were carrying
 you were carrying you were carrying
 he/she/it was carrying they were carrying
 • *Their voices were not carrying very far.*

FUTURE ... will carry

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be carrying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have carried

PAST PASSIVE

I was carried we were carried
 you were carried you were carried
 he/she/it was carried they were carried
 • *The kitten was carried to its mother.*

COMPLEMENTS

carry reach over a distance, travel far

Voices carry well over water.
 The balls didn't carry very far against the wind.

carry win adoption

The resolution carried unanimously.

carry _____ transport, hold while moving
 OBJECT

The fireman carried **the child** to safety.
 That pipe carries **water**.

carry _____ bear, support
 OBJECT

Those beams carry **the main load of the house**.
 The pillars carry **the weight of the arch**.

carry _____ bear responsibility for
 OBJECT

I am carrying **20 credit hours** this fall.
 We carry **150 people** on the payroll.
 The firm carries **five full-time and three part-time employees**.

carry _____ have on one's person
 OBJECT

Are you carrying **much cash**?

carry _____ have space for
 OBJECT

Our car only carries **four people**.

carry _____ have for sale
 OBJECT

Do you carry **straw hats**?

carry _____ make available to the public
 OBJECT

Most newspapers carry **a listing of TV programs**.
 Channel 28 is carrying **the game**.

carry _____ win
 OBJECT

Senator Blather has carried **Ohio**.
 They carried **the election**.

carry _____ be pregnant with
 OBJECT

She is carrying **her second child**.

carry _____ sing on key
 OBJECT

None of my brothers can carry **a tune**.



carry _____ involve, imply

OBJECT

The crime carried **a sentence of 10 years in prison.**

carry _____ transfer a figure from one column to the next [MATHEMATICS]

OBJECT

Add 6 and 7, write 3, and carry **the 1.**

carry _____ sit/stand/walk in a particular way

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The First Lady carries **herself** with dignity.

PHRASAL VERBS

carry SEP **along/around/in/out/etc.**
transport / hold while moving in a specified
direction

Be sure to carry along extra batteries.
It's not easy to carry the baby around with you.

carry SEP **away** cause to lose emotional
control

The speaker carried the audience away with
her forcefulness.

carry _____ **back** remind of an earlier time

This song carries me back to my childhood.

carry _____ **forward** advance [USUALLY
PASSIVE]

She was carried forward on a wave of popular support.

carry SEP **off** kill

The 1918 flu epidemic carried off 20 million people
worldwide.

carry on (_____) continue

Grandma was carried off by a heart attack.

carry on (about _____) behave in a silly
manner, talk at length, make a fuss (about
[someone/something])

Let's carry on as if nothing has happened.

carry on (with _____) flirt, have a love affair
(with [someone])

Darren carried on a long conversation with his teacher.
We hope our children carry on the family business.

carry SEP **out/through** accomplish

Watch how those two boys carry on when their parents
are gone.

carry over continue (to a later time/location)

The comic carried on about his next-door neighbors.

carry _____ **through** help survive

Jamal and Brittany have been carrying on for six months.

The biologist carried out a series of experiments.
Will the candidate carry out his economic plan?
She is determined to carry through her vision of
a drug-free America.

Will their enthusiasm carry over to next week?
Their great hitting should carry over into the postseason.
The article carries over onto page 18.

These pills will carry you through the week.

EXPRESSIONS

be/get carried away lose control of one's
emotions

I got carried away and forgot what
I was doing.

carry (a lot of) weight (with _____)
be influential (with [someone])

Your opinion carries a lot of weight with my family.

carry it off manage something successfully

I hope they can carry it off at tomorrow's meeting.

carry [one's] own weight do one's share

We'll win first place if all the students carry their
own weight.

carry the ball
be primarily responsible

Volunteers carried the ball to get the candidate elected.

carry the day win

The game was hard fought, but our team carried the day.

carry-on luggage allowed
to be taken aboard an
aircraft

Passengers are limited to two carry-ons.

PRESENT

I cast we cast
 you cast you cast
 he/she/it casts they cast
 • *The statue casts a long shadow.*

PAST

I cast we cast
 you cast you cast
 he/she/it cast they cast
 • *He cast me in the role of the duke.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cast

PAST PERFECT ... had cast

PAST PASSIVE

I was cast we were cast
 you were cast you were cast
 he/she/it was cast they were cast
 • *The dice were cast.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am casting we are casting
 you are casting you are casting
 he/she/it is casting they are casting
 • *I am casting the play this week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was casting we were casting
 you were casting you were casting
 he/she/it was casting they were casting
 • *We were casting off by 6 A.M.*

FUTURE ... will cast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be casting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cast

COMPLEMENTS

cast *throw a fishing line/net into the water*

cast _____ *throw*

OBJECT

He cast wherever he could see fish.

The fishermen cast **their nets** off their boats.

I cast **a line** to the children in the boat.

The boys cast **stones** into the pond.

cast _____ *direct, focus*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The fireplace cast **a cheerful light into the room.**

He cast **a quick glance at his audience.**

The moon cast **its light on the shimmering lake.**

cast _____ *convey*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Recent events cast **doubt on our decision.**

His actions cast **suspicion on his motives.**

cast _____ *choose actors for*

OBJECT

Roberta has already cast **the play.**

cast _____ *assign a role to*

OBJECT + AS OBJECT

We cast **him as the hero's father.**

Senator Blather cast **his opponent as a reckless spender.**

OBJECT + in OBJECT

He cast **her in the leading role.**

Sally cast **Harry in the role of best friend.**

cast _____ *form by pouring liquid into a mold*

OBJECT

The foundry casts **brass bells.**

We cast **wax candles** with the children.

cast _____ *deposit [a ballot, vote]*

OBJECT

Samuel cast **his ballot** for the liberal candidate.

PHRASAL VERBS

cast SEP **aside/away/off** *discard, throw away*

Lisa cast aside her winter clothes.

The boss cast off all his doubts about the new salesperson.

cast SEP **back** *direct to the past*

The retired teacher cast his thoughts back to happier times.

cast off *push away from the dock*

The cruise ship cast off at 0900 hours.

cast SEP **out** *expel*

The club cast Ollie out for failure to pay dues.

catch _____ draw even with, overtake

OBJECT

catch _____ take/get quickly

OBJECT

catch _____ attract and hold

OBJECT

catch _____ **from** get [a disease] from
[someone/something]

catch on become popular

catch on (to _____) figure out, learn

catch [someone]'s eye get [someone's] attention

catch SEP **up in** interest/involve [someone] in

catch _____ **up (on)** bring up-to-date about

catch up on _____ / **get caught up on** _____
make oneself current about

catch up (to/with _____) get even (with
[someone/something])

be caught short be without money when one
needs it

catch a whiff of _____ smell

catch _____ **at it** discover [someone doing
something wrong]

catch _____ **dead** see at any time
[USUALLY NEGATIVE]

catch _____ **napping** surprise [someone who
is unprepared]

catch _____ **off balance/guard** surprise

catch (on) fire become ignited

catch [one's] breath rest after intense activity

catch [one's] death of cold become sick with
a severe cold

catch _____ **red-handed** discover [someone]
doing something wrong

catch _____ **with [someone's]
pants down** discover [someone]
in an embarrassing situation

catch wind of _____ hear about

Their Gross Domestic Product is catching **Spain's**.
I tried to catch **him** on the last lap.

Norvel caught a **glimpse of himself** in the mirror.
I caught **sight of Cary** on the subway platform.
Try to catch **some sleep** before you leave.

Lori's poster will catch **everybody's attention**.
The new employee caught **her eye**.

PHRASAL VERBS

The whole class caught
the flu from Jimmy.

The Beatles caught on after *The Ed Sullivan Show*.
Dexter finally caught on to what Delia had meant.
Cal is new at the job, but he's catching on quickly.

I caught her eye from across the room.

Her husband caught her up in his latest scheme.
The crowd was caught up in all the excitement.

The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.

I hope to catch up on my reading when I retire.
Tonight we can get caught up on our sleep.

Will supply ever catch up to demand?

The taxi caught up with the bus at Skinker Blvd.

EXPRESSIONS

Bill was caught short today
and couldn't pay for his lunch.

I caught a whiff of sweet perfume.

They were sneaking cookies, and Mother caught
them at it.

You wouldn't catch me dead in that place.
I wouldn't be caught dead in that place.

The enemy caught our platoon napping.

The question caught Senator Blather off balance.

The kindling finally caught fire.

I just ran four miles—let me catch my breath!

Put on a sweater or you'll catch your death of cold.

The police caught the thief red-handed.

They were taking bribes, and investigators caught
them with their pants down.

We just caught wind of the new energy proposal.

PRESENT

I catch we catch
 you catch you catch
 he/she/it catches they catch
 • *The basin catches rainwater.*

PAST

I caught we caught
 you caught you caught
 he/she/it caught they caught
 • *I caught a cold over the weekend.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has caught

PAST PERFECT ... had caught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am catching we are catching
 you are catching you are catching
 he/she/it is catching they are catching
 • *I am catching the last train.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was catching we were catching
 you were catching you were catching
 he/she/it was catching they were catching
 • *The kids were catching minnows in the pond.*

FUTURE ... will catch

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be catching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have caught

PAST PASSIVE

I was caught we were caught
 you were caught you were caught
 he/she/it was caught they were caught
 • *The burglar was finally caught by the police.*

COMPLEMENTS

catch *begin to burn/operate*

The leaves and twigs finally caught.
 The engine coughed twice and caught.

catch *become entangled*

My sleeve caught on a hook.

catch *act as a catcher [BASEBALL]*

Molina caught in all four games of the series.

catch _____ *capture, seize, trap, snag, entangle*

OBJECT

They caught **the thief**.
 We caught **some trout** for dinner.
 The bushes caught **my jacket**.

PASSIVE

I was caught in traffic for 45 minutes.
 Basil was caught in a hailstorm.

catch _____ *grasp and hold onto (physically)*

OBJECT

I caught **the ball**.

catch _____ *understand, comprehend*

OBJECT

I caught **the joke**.
 Sorry, I didn't catch **your name**.

catch _____ *discover [someone doing something wrong]*

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I caught **them sleeping on the job**.
 We caught **the kids smoking in the garage**.
 Zack was caught **breaking into a car**.

PASSIVE

catch _____ *board [a vehicle]*

OBJECT

I have to catch **a plane**.
 I'll catch **a taxi** at the hotel.

catch _____ *become sick with*

OBJECT

Everyone caught **a cold**.

catch _____ *go to see*

OBJECT

We caught **the last performance of the night**.

catch _____ *watch, listen to*

OBJECT

Did you catch **the game** on TV?

catch _____ *meet with*

OBJECT

I'll catch **you** later.
 We will catch **him** at the meeting tomorrow.



PRESENT

I cause we cause
 you cause you cause
 he/she/it causes they cause

• *He always causes trouble.*

PAST

I caused we caused
 you caused you caused
 he/she/it caused they caused

• *He caused problems on the last trip.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has caused

PAST PERFECT ... had caused

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am causing we are causing
 you are causing you are causing
 he/she/it is causing they are causing

• *Their presence is causing difficulties.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was causing we were causing
 you were causing you were causing
 he/she/it was causing they were causing

• *The situation was causing me to lose sleep.*

FUTURE

... will cause

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be causing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have caused

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was caused they were caused

• *The fire was caused by faulty wiring.*

COMPLEMENTS

cause _____ make happen

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

He caused **an accident**.

The short circuit caused **a fire**.

His carelessness caused **what happened**.

It must have caused **whatever went wrong**.

cause _____ compel, force

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

WH-CLAUSE + INFINITIVE

The scandal caused **him to resign**.

The rain caused **the river to flood**.

They caused **whoever came next to miss their turn**.

Hearing the fax tone caused **whoever it was to hang up**.

EXPRESSIONS

cause (a lot of) hard feelings make
 people angry/upset

cause (some) eyebrows to raise
 shock people

cause (some) tongues to wag make
 people gossip

Greta's remarriage caused a lot of
 hard feelings.

Her short skirt caused some eyebrows to raise.

His outrageous behavior at the reception caused
 tongues to wag.

PRESENT

I change we change
 you change you change
 he/she/it changes they change
 • *He changes sides whenever it suits him.*

PAST

I changed we changed
 you changed you changed
 he/she/it changed they changed
 • *I changed my mind about the candidates.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has changed

PAST PERFECT ... had changed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am changing we are changing
 you are changing you are changing
 he/she/it is changing they are changing
 • *I'm changing Internet service providers.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was changing we were changing
 you were changing you were changing
 he/she/it was changing they were changing
 • *The weather was changing rapidly.*

FUTURE ... will change

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be changing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have changed

PAST PASSIVE

I was changed we were changed
 you were changed you were changed
 he/she/it was changed they were changed
 • *The contract was changed by mutual consent.*

COMPLEMENTS

change *become different*

The weather changed overnight.
 The mood of the party changed abruptly.
 Please change before dinner.
 We changed in the locker room at school.
 Will you change with me?

change *put on different clothes*

change *trade places*

change _____ *make different, alter*

OBJECT

We changed **all of our plans**.
 He's always changing **his mind**.
 I changed **what I was going to do**.
 We changed **where the meeting was going to be**.

WH-CLAUSE

change _____ *switch [one thing with another]*

OBJECT

Let's change **the subject**.
 We need to change **rooms**.
 The union has changed **its position**.
 We change **to daylight saving time** in the spring.
 The sleet changed **to snow** at noon.

to OBJECT

change _____ *transfer [from one bus/plane/train to another]*

OBJECT

Passengers will change **trains** at Union Station.
 We change **planes** in Hong Kong.

change _____ *replace [old with new]*

OBJECT

We need to change **the sheets** today.
 It's your turn to change **the baby's diaper**.

change _____ *give the equivalent of in smaller monetary units*

OBJECT

Can you change a **twenty-dollar bill**?

PHRASAL VERBS

change back (in/into _____) *return to one's original form/state*

The werewolves changed back into humans at dawn.

change into _____ *put on [clothing]*

Feel free to change into something more comfortable.

change into _____ *transform oneself into*

The frog changed into a handsome prince.

change out of _____ *replace [one set of clothing with another]*

I'm all sweaty—I have to change out of these running clothes.

PRESENT

I charge we charge
 you charge you charge
 he/she/it charges they charge
 • *The psychiatrist charges by the hour.*

PAST

I charged we charged
 you charged you charged
 he/she/it charged they charged
 • *I charged it to my business account.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has charged

PAST PERFECT ... had charged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am charging we are charging
 you are charging you are charging
 he/she/it is charging they are charging
 • *I'm charging the suit to my credit card.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was charging we were charging
 you were charging you were charging
 he/she/it was charging they were charging
 • *They were charging him with reckless driving.*

FUTURE

... will charge

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be charging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have charged

PAST PASSIVE

I was charged we were charged
 you were charged you were charged
 he/she/it was charged they were charged
 • *The battery was charged two days ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

charge *rush, attack*charge *bill*charge _____ *rush at, attack*

OBJECT

charge _____ *set as a price, bill*

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

charge _____ *pay for by credit*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

charge _____ *power [an electric device]*

OBJECT

charge _____ *claim, accuse*

OBJECT

OBJECT + with OBJECT

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

charge _____ *make responsible for*

OBJECT + with OBJECT

charge _____ *excite*

OBJECT

charge _____ *attribute*

OBJECT + to OBJECT

charge _____ *give instructions to [LEGAL]*

OBJECT

The crowd was charging forward.

The store doesn't charge for gift wrapping.

The soldiers suddenly charged **the enemy lines**.He charges **45 dollars an hour** for design work.We must charge **enough** to cover our costs.He charged **us \$250** for the job.They charge **users \$20 an hour**.I charged **all my purchases**.

Will you pay cash or charge it?

I charged **what I had purchased**.They charged **whatever they could**.I need to charge **my cell phone**.You must charge **your electric drill** every night.The police charged **the suspect**.They charged **him with foul play**.My classmate was charged **with petty theft**.The police charged **that he fled the scene of the crime**.He charged **that his opponent was incompetent**.The boss charged **Edmund with inventory control**.The violinist charged **the concert hall** with excitement.Kimberly charged **her election loss to bad publicity**.The circuit court judge charged **the jury**.

PRESENT

I check we check
 you check you check
 he/she/it checks they check
 • *He checks his e-mail all the time.*

PAST

I checked we checked
 you checked you checked
 he/she/it checked they checked
 • *We checked all the facts yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has checked

PAST PERFECT ... had checked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am checking we are checking
 you are checking you are checking
 he/she/it is checking they are checking
 • *I'm checking on it now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was checking we were checking
 you were checking you were checking
 he/she/it was checking they were checking
 • *The police were checking his alibi.*

FUTURE ... will check

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be checking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have checked

PAST PASSIVE

I was checked we were checked
 you were checked you were checked
 he/she/it was checked they were checked
 • *My bags were checked by the airline.*

COMPLEMENTS

check *agree point by point*

Jack's account checks with Jill's.

check _____ *examine in order to confirm/verify*

OBJECT

We checked **all the information**.

I checked **the ropes**.

THAT-CLAUSE

He checked **that the luggage was securely tied down**.

WH-CLAUSE

We checked **what they told us**.

check _____ *deposit/consign for temporary safekeeping*

OBJECT

She checked **her coat** in the lobby.

I need to check **two bags**.

WH-CLAUSE

The hotel will check **whatever you need to leave here**.

check _____ *restrain, block, stop*

OBJECT

The fallen branch checked **the flow of the little stream**.

I had to check **the impulse to go too fast**.

PHRASAL VERBS

check back (with _____) *inquire (of) again*

I'll check back with you later.

check in *register at a hotel/conference*

Let's check in before we go sightseeing.

check SEP **in** *record the return/receipt of*

Did Leon check the book in before it was due?

The clerk checked the order in.

check into _____ *investigate*

The police will check into the suspect's past.

check into _____ *register at [a hotel, etc.]*

Brian and Allison checked into a hotel near Philadelphia.

check SEP **off** *mark as completed / accounted for*

Hal checked the last four items off.

Someone needs to check off the people as they register.

check out *appear to be true*

The suspect's story checks out.

check out *settle one's bill [at a hotel, store]*

We need to check out by 10 A.M.

The Andersons filled two grocery carts and checked out.

check SEP **out** *record the withdrawal of*

Tim checked out six books on astronomy.

check SEP **out/over** *examine, look at appraisingly*

Hey! Check out the guy in the tweed sweater!

Check the apartment over before you sign the lease.

check (up) on _____ *evaluate*

Would you check up on Jody's performance?

The nurse checked on the patient in Room 325.

PRESENT

I choose we choose
 you choose you choose
 he/she/it chooses they choose
 • *He always chooses to take Amtrak.*

PAST

I chose we chose
 you chose you chose
 he/she/it chose they chose
 • *They chose a new president.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has chosen

PAST PERFECT ... had chosen

PAST PASSIVE

I was chosen we were chosen
 you were chosen you were chosen
 he/she/it was chosen they were chosen
 • *My candidate was chosen.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am choosing we are choosing
 you are choosing you are choosing
 he/she/it is choosing they are choosing
 • *They are choosing someone right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was choosing we were choosing
 you were choosing you were choosing
 he/she/it was choosing they were choosing
 • *They were choosing a new secretary.*

FUTURE ... will choose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be choosing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have chosen

COMPLEMENTS

choose *make a selection*

You need to choose.
 They are still choosing.
 You may choose between lemon and cherry Danish.

choose _____ *select, opt for, prefer*

OBJECT

Giuseppe chose **the toasted ravioli**.
 The delegates chose **Senator Blather**.
 The residents chose **pumpkin pie** over cheesecake.
 The bride chose **satın** for her wedding dress.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I chose **myself a new computer**.
 My son chose **his mother a present**.
 I chose **a new computer for myself**.
 My son chose **a present for his mother**.

for PARAPHRASE

He chose **Ralph as his partner**.
 They chose **Sue as captain**.

OBJECT + as PREDICATE NOUN

We will choose **Meg for treasurer**.
 She chose **Sarah for her maid of honor**.

OBJECT + for PREDICATE NOUN

They chose **him to be secretary**.
 They chose **her to give the keynote address**.

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE NOUN

He chose **Larry to be his best man**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

You should choose **Kay to design your book**.

INFINITIVE

We chose **to fly to Denver**.

WH-CLAUSE

He is choosing **what to take**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We chose **where we would go on vacation**.

We chose **flying to Denver** over driving there.

EXPRESSIONS

choose (up) sides *form opposing teams by having captains alternately select players*

Once they chose up sides, they had to decide which team would bat first.

pick and choose *select carefully*

Shoppers can pick and choose from a wide variety of produce.

PRESENT

I cite we cite
 you cite you cite
 he/she/it cites they cite
 • *He always cites* The New York Times.

PAST

I cited we cited
 you cited you cited
 he/she/it cited they cited
 • *The police cited them several times.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cited

PAST PERFECT ... had cited

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am citing we are citing
 you are citing you are citing
 he/she/it is citing they are citing
 • *I'm citing all my sources.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was citing we were citing
 you were citing you were citing
 he/she/it was citing they were citing
 • *He was always citing obscure references.*

FUTURE ... will cite

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be citing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cited

PAST PASSIVE

I was cited we were cited
 you were cited you were cited
 he/she/it was cited they were cited
 • *He was cited for contempt.*

COMPLEMENTS

cite _____ quote as an authority

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Always cite **your sources**.
 The lawyers cited **the Constitution**.
 I cited **what I considered reliable sources**.
 He cited **whoever would help his cause**.

cite _____ mention as support/proof

OBJECT

The company cited **bad weather** for its decreased sales.

cite _____ formally honor

OBJECT

The general cited **the entire unit**.
 The committee cited **Jayne** for her volunteer work.

cite _____ charge [with breaking the law]

OBJECT

The policeman cited **Sam** for parking illegally.
 The judge cited **the entire group of belligerents**.

PRESENT

I claim we claim
 you claim you claim
 he/she/it claims they claim
 • *He claims that he was interfered with.*

PAST

I claimed we claimed
 you claimed you claimed
 he/she/it claimed they claimed
 • *She claimed five victories in a row.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has claimed

PAST PERFECT ... had claimed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am claiming we are claiming
 you are claiming you are claiming
 he/she/it is claiming they are claiming
 • *They are claiming that they didn't do anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was claiming we were claiming
 you were claiming you were claiming
 he/she/it was claiming they were claiming
 • *We were claiming compensation.*

FUTURE ... will claim

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be claiming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have claimed

PAST PASSIVE

I was claimed we were claimed
 you were claimed you were claimed
 he/she/it was claimed they were claimed
 • *The title was claimed by his evil twin brother.*

COMPLEMENTS

claim _____ assert as true

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

The company claimed a **spotless environmental record**.He claimed **that his team would win**.She claims **that polar bears are not endangered**.

claim _____ profess

INFINITIVE

He claimed **to be the first one to climb to the top**.They claimed **to be the original owners**.

claim _____ achieve, win

OBJECT

He claimed **three gold medals** at the meet.

claim _____ destroy, kill

OBJECT

The fire claimed **four houses**.The accident claimed **three victims**.The tornado claimed **the lives of six residents**.

claim _____ call for, require

OBJECT

The report claimed **my full attention**.The situation claimed **our utmost efforts**.

claim _____ ask for, take as one's own/right

OBJECT

Has anyone claimed **the necklace in the lost and found?**The children claimed **their inheritance** immediately.Each tribe claims **the territory** for itself.

PRESENT

I clean we clean
 you clean you clean
 he/she/it cleans they clean
 • *The janitor cleans the offices every night.*

PAST

I cleaned we cleaned
 you cleaned you cleaned
 he/she/it cleaned they cleaned
 • *I cleaned out my locker.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cleaned

PAST PERFECT ... had cleaned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cleaning we are cleaning
 you are cleaning you are cleaning
 he/she/it is cleaning they are cleaning
 • *I am cleaning the bathrooms this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cleaning we were cleaning
 you were cleaning you were cleaning
 he/she/it was cleaning they were cleaning
 • *The kids were cleaning up their rooms.*

FUTURE ... will clean

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be cleaning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cleaned

PAST PASSIVE

I was cleaned we were cleaned
 you were cleaned you were cleaned
 he/she/it was cleaned they were cleaned
 • *The rugs were cleaned by a carpet specialist.*

COMPLEMENTS

clean *get rid of dirt/trash/impurities*

The new brush cleans well.
 The boys clean rather carelessly.

clean _____ *rid [something] of dirt/trash/impurities*

OBJECT

I will clean **the oven**.
 We cleaned **the house** thoroughly.
 The nurse cleaned **the wound** with peroxide.
 We cleaned **the bathroom** before our guests arrived.
 They cleaned **the basement** in a single day.
 He only cleaned **what was going to be sold**.
 They cleaned **whatever needed it**.

WH-CLAUSE

clean _____ *eat all the food on*

OBJECT

The kids need to clean **their plates**.

clean _____ *remove the innards of [fish, fowl]*

OBJECT

We cleaned **the fish**.

PHRASAL VERBS

clean SEP **off** *get rid of, remove*

Rory cleaned the graffiti off.

clean SEP **out** *remove the occupants/ contents of*

The ushers cleaned the auditorium out.
 She needs to clean out her desk.

clean SEP **out** *deprive of money/ possessions [INFORMAL]*

His roommates cleaned him out in a poker game.

clean up *make oneself presentable*

It's time to clean up for the party.

clean up *make a lot of money*

Langdon really cleaned up on the stock transactions.

clean SEP **up** *rid [something] of dirt/trash*

It took us two hours to clean up the living room.

clean SEP **up** *rid [something] of corruption*

The candidate promised he would clean up City Hall.

EXPRESSIONS

clean house *get rid of what is undesirable*

When I'm president, I'm going to clean house: No one's job will be safe.

clean up [one's] act / clean [one's] act up *begin to behave better*

The boss gave Darrell one last chance to clean up his act.

PRESENT

I clear we clear
 you clear you clear
 he/she/it clears they clear
 • *He clears his throat before he speaks.*

PAST

I cleared we cleared
 you cleared you cleared
 he/she/it cleared they cleared
 • *The check cleared this morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cleared

PAST PERFECT ... had cleared

PAST PASSIVE

I was cleared we were cleared
 you were cleared you were cleared
 he/she/it was cleared they were cleared
 • *The channel was cleared by the Coast Guard.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clearing we are clearing
 you are clearing you are clearing
 he/she/it is clearing they are clearing
 • *He is clearing the kitchen drain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clearing we were clearing
 you were clearing you were clearing
 he/she/it was clearing they were clearing
 • *We were clearing some brush in the backyard.*

FUTURE ... will clear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be clearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cleared

COMPLEMENTS

clear *be credited to a bank account*clear *become transparent*clear *become free of clouds*clear *become free of objects/obstructions*clear _____ *make free of objects/obstructions*

OBJECT

clear _____ *remove*

OBJECT

clear _____ *pass over/under/by without touching*

OBJECT

clear _____ *remove the occupants of*

OBJECT

clear _____ *free from accusation/blame*

OBJECT

clear _____ *be approved by*

OBJECT

clear _____ *make as a profit*

OBJECT

clear _____ *submit for approval*

OBJECT

Your check will clear tomorrow.

The air in the shop cleared.

The sky cleared before sunset.

The drain finally cleared by itself.

I cleared **the driveway** after the storm.The boys will clear **the table**.The soldiers cleared **the mine field**.Please clear **the snow** off the sidewalk.The jumper cleared **the bar** at six feet six inches.The truck cleared **the overpass** by eight inches.The guards cleared **the hall** because of the bomb threat.DNA evidence cleared **the suspect** of the crime.The shipment cleared **customs**.We cleared **security** 40 minutes before departure.We cleared **\$2000** in the sale.Be sure to clear **the budget** with me beforehand.

PHRASAL VERBS

clear out *go away*When do you think the crowd
will clear out?clear up *become cured, disappear*

I hope my acne clears up before the party.

clear SEP up *cure, make disappear*

This ointment will clear up your heat rash.

clear SEP up *explain, solve*

The detective will clear up the mystery.

PRESENT

I climb we climb
 you climb you climb
 he/she/it climbs they climb
 • *He always climbs alone.*

PAST

I climbed we climbed
 you climbed you climbed
 he/she/it climbed they climbed
 • *The plane climbed to 30,000 feet.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has climbed

PAST PERFECT ... had climbed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was climbed they were climbed
 • *Mera Peak was first climbed in 1953.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am climbing we are climbing
 you are climbing you are climbing
 he/she/it is climbing they are climbing
 • *I'm climbing Mt. Hood this summer.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was climbing we were climbing
 you were climbing you were climbing
 he/she/it was climbing they were climbing
 • *Vines were climbing up the porch railing.*

FUTURE

... will climb

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be climbing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have climbed

COMPLEMENTS

climb go upward, rise

The plane was climbing.
 Interest rates are climbing.
 His approval rate climbed steadily in September.

climb _____ go upward on
 OBJECT

The kids were climbing **the apple tree**.
 Can you climb **the stairs**?

WH-CLAUSE

He climbed **whatever he could get access to**.

climb _____ grow up/over
 OBJECT

Ivy was climbing **the walls of the cottage**.

PHRASAL VERBS

climb up/down/through/etc.
 climb in a specified direction

He climbed up two steps at a time.
 The fireman climbed down holding the kitten.
 Open the window and let me climb through.

EXPRESSIONS

climb all over _____ reprimand, scold

The boss climbed all over me for the missing reports.

climb on the bandwagon join the popular side of an issue

Once recycling became popular, everyone climbed on the bandwagon.

climb the wall(s) be very anxious

Before the verdict was returned, Tammy was climbing the walls.

PRESENT

I cling	we cling
you cling	you cling
he/she/it clings	they cling

• *We cling to our beliefs as long as we can.*

PAST

I clung	we clung
you clung	you clung
he/she/it clung	they clung

• *He clung to them throughout the ordeal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has clung

PAST PERFECT ... had clung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clinging	we are clinging
you are clinging	you are clinging
he/she/it is clinging	they are clinging

• *He is clinging to life by a thread.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clinging	we were clinging
you were clinging	you were clinging
he/she/it was clinging	they were clinging

• *The passengers were clinging to the handrails.*

FUTURE ... will cling

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be clinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have clung

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was clung	they were clung

• *The story was clung to desperately.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *cling*, when not used with an object, is always followed by *together*.cling *hold on tightly to each other*

The twins clung together under the umbrella.
The socks were clinging together when I removed them from the dryer.

cling _____ *adhere, hold on tightly*
to OBJECT

He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued.
The climbers were clinging **to the rope**.
The girl clung **to her father's hand**.
The ivy was clinging **to the wall**.
The price stickers always cling **to the fruit**.
The molecules cling **to each other**.
The office was clinging **to outdated software**.

cling _____ *have a strong emotional attachment*
to OBJECT

Believers cling **to their faith**.
Elvis's fans always clung **to him** no matter what.
They will cling **to whoever their prophet is**.
They clung **to whatever their leader told them**.

to WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT

I close we close
 you close you close
 he/she/it closes they close
 • *He closes his shop at six every day.*

PAST

I closed we closed
 you closed you closed
 he/she/it closed they closed
 • *The auctioneer closed the bidding at \$30.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has closed

PAST PERFECT ... had closed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am closing we are closing
 you are closing you are closing
 he/she/it is closing they are closing
 • *I'm closing the door now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was closing we were closing
 you were closing you were closing
 he/she/it was closing they were closing
 • *We were closing in on the solution.*

FUTURE ... will close

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be closing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have closed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was closed they were closed
 • *The gates were closed at dusk.*

NOTE: The verb *close* is pronounced with a /z/, rhyming with *nose*.
 The adjective *close* is pronounced with an /s/, rhyming with *dose*.

COMPLEMENTS

close *become shut*

The door closed slowly.
 Daisies close at sunset.

close *come to an end*

The play will close next week.

close *cease operation temporarily/permanently*

The store will close in 15 minutes.
 The plant will close next month.

close *end the day's business*

The markets closed lower today.

close _____ shut, block

OBJECT

Please close **the windows**.
 They closed **the street** for repairs.
 We closed **the plant in Singapore**.

close _____ bring to an end

OBJECT

She closed **her savings account**.
 Her solo closed **the performance**.
 He closed **the letter** with "XXOO."
 The college closed **registration** to out-of-state students.

close _____ settle, come to terms on

OBJECT

We finally closed **the deal**.

close _____ make [an electrical circuit] continuous

OBJECT

The lever closed **the circuit**.

PHRASAL VERBS

close SEP down/up shut/stop permanently/ completely

The health department closed the restaurant down last week.

close in (on _____) draw near (to [someone/ something]) to attack/arrest/overwhelm

Our platoon closed in on the enemy's ammunition dump.

The police are closing in on the killer.
 Mary's financial problems are closing in on her.

close SEP off block

Construction crews closed the area off to tourists.

close SEP out sell cheaply in order to dispose of the stock of

The department store is closing out its entire line of designer shoes.

PRESENT

I collect we collect
 you collect you collect
 he/she/it collects they collect

• *He collects foreign stamps.*

PAST

I collected we collected
 you collected you collected
 he/she/it collected they collected

• *I collected all the dirty dishes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has collected

PAST PERFECT ... had collected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am collecting we are collecting
 you are collecting you are collecting
 he/she/it is collecting they are collecting

• *I am collecting for Special Olympics.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was collecting we were collecting
 you were collecting you were collecting
 he/she/it was collecting they were collecting

• *He was collecting a sizable pension.*

FUTURE

... will collect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be collecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have collected

PAST PASSIVE

I was collected we were collected
 you were collected you were collected
 he/she/it was collected they were collected

• *Taxes were collected by the local governments.*

COMPLEMENTS

collect _____ accumulate, gather

ADVERB OF PLACE

Dust always collects **on the bookshelves**.

Rain collects **on the window ledges**.

A crowd was collecting **outside the station**.

The students collected **around the professor** after class.

collect _____ gather as a hobby

OBJECT

He collects **books about the Civil War**.

They collect **classical LPs**.

I collect **whatever World War Two items I can find**.

WH-CLAUSE

collect _____ gather together, pick up

OBJECT

Please collect **the ballots**.

I collected **all the used paper plates and cups**.

They collect **the trash** on Tuesday.

Dark clothes really collect **lint**.

He collects **whatever refuse gets left behind**.

WH-CLAUSE

collect _____ call for and receive [money, contributions]

OBJECT

The IRS collects **taxes** quarterly.

We are collecting **canned goods** for the food bank.

collect _____ seek and bring back

OBJECT

The kids were collecting **eggs** in the barn.

I will collect **the passengers** at the station.

collect _____ regain control of [one's thoughts, emotions]

OBJECT

He took a minute to collect **himself**.

I need to collect **my thoughts** before speaking.

PHRASAL VERBS

collect on _____ take as payment on

His agency collects on overdue accounts.

EXPRESSIONS

cool, calm, and collected relaxed and self-assured

My opponent ranted and raved, and

I just sat there cool, calm, and collected.

PRESENT

I color we color
 you color you color
 he/she/it colors they color
 • *He always colors his skies dark gray.*

PAST

I colored we colored
 you colored you colored
 he/she/it colored they colored
 • *She colored in all the background.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has colored

PAST PERFECT ... had colored

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am coloring we are coloring
 you are coloring you are coloring
 he/she/it is coloring they are coloring
 • *I'm coloring it yellow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was coloring we were coloring
 you were coloring you were coloring
 he/she/it was coloring they were coloring
 • *The kids were coloring in their workbooks.*

FUTURE ... will color

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be coloring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have colored

PAST PASSIVE

I was colored we were colored
 you were colored you were colored
 he/she/it was colored they were colored
 • *His story was colored by personal experience.*

COMPLEMENTS

color engage in coloring

He always colors outside the lines.

color blush

The little girl colored as she talked.

color _____ apply color to, change the color of

OBJECT

Do you want to color **the cards**?

She is coloring **her hair** now.

The kids love to color **Easter eggs**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

We colored the **porch ceiling light blue**.

I colored **my egg purple**.

WH-CLAUSE

We colored **whatever we could reach**.

color _____ influence, affect, distort

OBJECT

His unhappy childhood colored **his adult life**.

Your hostile attitude colored **the judge's decision**.

The years since the accident have colored **the facts**.

WH-CLAUSE

The criticism colored **what he did later**.

His controversial topics colored **how his audience viewed his paintings**.

PHRASAL VERBS

color SEP in fill in the outline of [something] with color

Why don't you color in the man's coat?

PRESENT

I combine	we combine
you combine	you combine
he/she/it combines	they combine

• *Oxygen combines with most elements.*

PAST

I combined	we combined
you combined	you combined
he/she/it combined	they combined

• *I combined the first two ingredients.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has combined

PAST PERFECT ... had combined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am combining	we are combining
you are combining	you are combining
he/she/it is combining	they are combining

• *We are combining our forces.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was combining	we were combining
you were combining	you were combining
he/she/it was combining	they were combining

• *They were combining red and white to make pink.*

FUTURE ... will combine

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be combining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have combined

PAST PASSIVE

I was combined	we were combined
you were combined	you were combined
he/she/it was combined	they were combined

• *The two proposals were combined into a single plan.*

NOTE: The verb *combine* is stressed on the second syllable, like *refine*.
The noun *combine* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

combine *mix, act together*

The two gases readily combine.
Iron and oxygen combine to form rust.
The chocolate and peanut butter combined nicely.

combine *merge*

The two armies combined to produce a powerful force.
The liberal and moderate members combined to form a new party.

NOTE: *Combine* is often used with *and* or *with*.

combine _____ join [two or more elements] together

OBJECT

The recipe combines **several ingredients**.
The recipe combines **peppers and tomatoes**.
The recipe combines **peppers with tomatoes**.

combine _____ possess in combination

OBJECT

He combines **many good qualities**.
He combines **speed and strength**.
He combines **speed with strength**.

PRESENT

I come we come
 you come you come
 he/she/it comes they come
 • *He comes here on weekends.*

PAST

I came we came
 you came you came
 he/she/it came they came
 • *They came to see you.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has come

PAST PERFECT ... had come

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am coming we are coming
 you are coming you are coming
 he/she/it is coming they are coming
 • *I'm coming as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was coming we were coming
 you were coming you were coming
 he/she/it was coming they were coming
 • *The ships were just coming into view.*

FUTURE ... will come

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be coming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have come

PAST PASSIVE

Come is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

come *move toward the speaker*

Please come here.

Don't come too close—I have a cold.

come *fare, get along*

How's Harry coming in his new job?

come _____ *arrive/appear in space/time*

ADVERB OF TIME

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

(+ ADVERB OF TIME)

The deadline has come **all too soon**.

The car came **over the hill** at 60 miles an hour.

The class came **to the chapter on ancient Rome**.

They come **home once a week**.

come _____ *extend, reach*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Her skirt comes **below her knees**.

His property comes **as far as this fence**.

come _____ *originate*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Doris comes **from a large family**.

Most malware comes **from China**.

come _____ *be available*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The new model comes **in three colors**.

The DVD player comes **ready to use**.

The computer comes **without a keyboard**.

come _____ *reach a state/conclusion*

to OBJECT

INFINITIVE

The two sides came **to an understanding**.

Barney came **to his senses** at last.

I came **to like him** after all.

We came **to enjoy walking to school**.

The time has come **to say good-bye**.

come _____ *arrive in a particular condition*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He came **ready to work**.

They came **eager for the show to begin**.

come _____ *become*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The steering wheel came **loose** and he lost control of the car.

Stella's dream of becoming an astronaut came **true**.

PHRASAL VERBS

come away/forward/in/out/up/etc.
approach in a specified direction

come about *happen*

come across/upon _____ *find/meet
by accident*

come along *appear*

come along *make progress*

come (along) with _____ *accompany*

come around *recover*

come around (to _____) *agree finally (to)*

come at _____ *attack*

come back *be popular again*

come between _____ *cause trouble between*

come down *decrease [OF PRICES]*

come down *be demolished*

come down *be handed down by tradition*

come down to _____ *be a matter of*

come down with _____ *become sick with*

come from _____ *be caused by*

come in *become available, arrive*

come in _____ *finish a contest*

come of _____ *result from*

come off _____ *become separated from*

come off *happen*

come on *be illuminated*

come on *begin to be broadcast*

come out *be made public*

come out *declare oneself*

come out *turn out, end up, do*

come (out) to _____ *amount to*

come out with _____ *introduce [a product]*

come through _____ *survive*

come to *regain consciousness*

come to _____ *be a matter of*

come up *increase [OF PRICES]*

come up *appear for consideration*

come up against _____
encounter, confront

come up for _____
be in line for

come up with _____
find, produce

Marcy came up from the basement.

Melinda came in through the back door.

How did the agreement come about?

She came across her high school yearbook.

We'll ask the first person who comes along.

The project is coming along fairly well.

Jayne may come along with us to the grocery.

These instructions came with the new monitor.

He was knocked unconscious, but he soon came around.

He eventually came around to my point of view.

Rudy came at the burglar with his fists flying.

Smaller cars are coming back.

We can't let a silly quarrel come between us.

Gasoline prices are coming down.

The historic inn will come down for urban renewal.

Western philosophy came down to us from the Greeks.

The debate comes down to money.

A third of my classmates came down with a cold.

John's problems come from his lack of control.

The election results are coming in now.

The new encyclopedias will come in tomorrow.

Carrie came in second in the 100-meter dash.

Nothing came of my complaint to the board.

A fender came off my bike today.

The dinner party came off just as we expected.

The streetlights come on at dusk.

When does *Countdown* come on tonight?

The facts came out at the afternoon meeting.

Senator Blather came out in favor of wind farms.

Everything came out fine in the end.

Your repair bill comes out to \$227.46.

All of Ellery's efforts came to nothing.

The company came out with three new workstations.

Randall came through the ordeal of boot camp.

Gertie came to before the medics arrived.

When it comes to idioms, we are the experts.

Stock prices have come up over the past week.

The issue comes up every few months.

Did the issue of slavery come up in history class?

The activists came up against a lot of opposition.

These antique lamps don't come up for sale very often.

The position comes up for election every four years.

Alicia came up with two quarters for the parking meter.

Has the detective come up with a motive yet?

PRESENT

I command we command
you command you command
he/she/it commands they command
• *I command the Third Infantry Division.*

PAST

I commanded we commanded
you commanded you commanded
he/she/it commanded they commanded
• *He commanded them to stop.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has commanded

PAST PERFECT ... had commanded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am commanding we are commanding
you are commanding you are commanding
he/she/it is commanding they are commanding
• *They are commanding us to leave.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was commanding we were commanding
you were commanding you were commanding
he/she/it was commanding they were commanding
• *He was commanding three regiments at the time.*

FUTURE

... will command

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be commanding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have commanded

PAST PASSIVE

I was commanded we were commanded
you were commanded you were commanded
he/she/it was commanded they were commanded
• *The ships were commanded to return to port.*

COMPLEMENTS

command *be in authority*

General Brown is commanding.

You have commanded with great effectiveness.

command _____ *have control of*

OBJECT

She commands **a large fortune**.

He commands **a Navy battle group**.

They no longer command **many resources**.

command _____ *order*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The teacher commanded **the class to be silent**.

The sergeant commanded **his men to attack**.

She commanded **the dog to sit**.

The dog was commanded **to sit**.

command _____ *demand/receive as one's due*

OBJECT

The law firm commands **huge fees**.

The professor commands **a great deal of respect**.

Their leader commanded **instant obedience**.

command _____ *dominate, overlook*

OBJECT

The guns command **the entrance to the port**.

The fortress commands **the entire valley**.

PRESENT

I commit we commit
 you commit you commit
 he/she/it commits they commit
 • *He commits himself to do too much.*

PAST

I committed we committed
 you committed you committed
 he/she/it committed they committed
 • *They committed the suicide attacks.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has committed

PAST PERFECT ... had committed

PAST PASSIVE

I was committed we were committed
 you were committed you were committed
 he/she/it was committed they were committed
 • *A crime was committed in my neighborhood.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am committing we are committing
 you are committing you are committing
 he/she/it is committing they are committing
 • *I'm committing myself to this project.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was committing we were committing
 you were committing you were committing
 he/she/it was committing they were committing
 • *The witness was committing perjury.*

FUTURE

... will commit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be committing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have committed

COMPLEMENTS

commit _____ obligate, devote

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

He committed **the reserves to the attack**.We must commit **more resources to the problem**.John committed **himself to public service**.More resources were committed **to the project**.Our group is committing **itself to buy toys for needy children**.They committed **a tenth of their income to fund homeless shelters**.

commit _____ place in a prison / mental institution

OBJECT

The court committed **Harry** for three years.The state cannot commit **people** without a hearing.

commit _____ reveal one's views/plans

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The senator never committed **himself**.You shouldn't commit **yourself** too early.

commit _____ perform [an illegal/wrong action]

OBJECT

They had committed **a crime**.The accountant had committed **forgery**.He was committing **bigamy**.

commit _____ set apart [for a particular purpose]

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

Tasha commits **much of her time to volunteer work**.

commit _____ refer for consideration

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

They committed **the bill to the Foreign Relations Committee**.

EXPRESSIONS

commit _____ to memory memorize

Telford committed the entire poem to memory.

PRESENT

I compare we compare
you compare you compare
he/she/it compares they compare
• *They always compare themselves to us.*

PAST

I compared we compared
you compared you compared
he/she/it compared they compared
• *I compared the questionnaires.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has compared

PAST PERFECT ... had compared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am comparing we are comparing
you are comparing you are comparing
he/she/it is comparing they are comparing
• *We are comparing results.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was comparing we were comparing
you were comparing you were comparing
he/she/it was comparing they were comparing
• *He was comparing apples and oranges.*

FUTURE ... will compare

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be comparing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have compared

PAST PASSIVE

I was compared we were compared
you were compared you were compared
he/she/it was compared they were compared
• *The drugs were compared with each other.*

COMPLEMENTS

compare *be evaluated against others*

The new phone compares pretty well.
The trainees compare favorably.

compare *be equal/alike*

Nothing compares with you.
He can't compare with the others.
The two novels don't really compare.

compare _____ *examine in order to find similarities and differences in*

OBJECT + to/and/with OBJECT

She compared **the carnivores to herbivores**.
I compared **this year's results and last year's**.
He compared **Christian and Enlightenment ideas of marriage**.

WH-CLAUSE + to/and/with WH-CLAUSE

We compared **job losses with job creation**.
I compared **what we had gained to what we had lost**.
We will compare **how much you made and how much everybody else made**.
They compared **how the Jets played with how the Giants played**.

compare _____ *consider as alike*

OBJECT + to OBJECT

"Shall I compare **thee to a summer's day**?" [SHAKESPEARE]
The author compares **the United States to imperial Rome**.

EXPRESSIONS

compare notes on _____ *share observations about*

The students compared notes on their teachers.

PRESENT

I complain we complain
 you complain you complain
 he/she/it complains they complain
 • *Jerry always complains about the food.*

PAST

I complained we complained
 you complained you complained
 he/she/it complained they complained
 • *I complained until I was blue in the face.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has complained

PAST PERFECT ... had complained

PAST PASSIVE

I was complained we were complained
 you were complained you were complained
 he/she/it was complained they were complained
 • *The phone service was complained about.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am complaining we are complaining
 you are complaining you are complaining
 he/she/it is complaining they are complaining
 • *I'm complaining to the boss.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was complaining we were complaining
 you were complaining you were complaining
 he/she/it was complaining they were complaining
 • *They were complaining about their long hours.*

FUTURE ... will complain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be complaining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have complained

COMPLEMENTS

complain express dissatisfaction/annoyance

He is always complaining.
 The children were complaining loudly.
 The old chair complained when I sat down in it.

complain _____ express dissatisfaction/annoyance

to OBJECT (+ about OBJECT)

He complained **to the customer service representative**.
 We complained **to the manager about the terrible service**.

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The kids complained **that there was nothing to do**.
 She complained **to me that the meeting had started an hour late**.

about OBJECT

I complained **to anyone who would listen that our air conditioning wasn't working**.

about WH-CLAUSE

I complained **about my job assignment**.
 Everyone complains **about the weather**.
 We complained **about the terrible service**.
 He complained **about what he had been promised**.
 They complained **about how much they were being paid**.

complain _____ make a formal accusation

to OBJECT

I complained **to the police**.
 The prosecutor complained **to the judge**.
 The judge was complained to.
 The prosecutor complained **that the defense witness was not answering his questions**.
 The defense attorney complained **to the judge that the prosecution witness had perjured himself**.

PASSIVE

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

complain of _____ report the symptoms of

Rosemarie complains of arthritis and backache.

PRESENT

I complete we complete
you complete you complete
he/she/it completes they complete
• *He always completes what he starts.*

PAST

I completed we completed
you completed you completed
he/she/it completed they completed
• *I completed the form in 10 minutes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has completed

PAST PERFECT ... had completed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am completing we are completing
you are completing you are completing
he/she/it is completing they are completing
• *I'm just completing the inventory now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was completing we were completing
you were completing you were completing
he/she/it was completing they were completing
• *We were completing the agenda when you called.*

FUTURE ... will complete

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be completing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have completed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was completed they were completed
• *The job was completed by the entire team.*

COMPLEMENTS

complete _____ *finish*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

complete _____ *mark the end of*

OBJECT

complete _____ *make whole*

OBJECT

The painters completed **the living room**.
The orchestra completed **the piece** with a flourish.
You must complete **what you begin**.
They will complete **whatever needs to be done**.
They will complete **sanding the floors** today.
I have completed **sending out all the invitations**.

This number completes **our program** tonight.
The film completes **his epic trilogy**.

A plaid vest completes **the outfit**.
This shipment completes **your order**.

PRESENT

I conceive we conceive
 you conceive you conceive
 he/she/it conceives they conceive
 • *He conceives a quite different approach.*

PAST

I conceived we conceived
 you conceived you conceived
 he/she/it conceived they conceived
 • *They conceived their third child.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has conceived

PAST PERFECT ... had conceived

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am conceiving we are conceiving
 you are conceiving you are conceiving
 he/she/it is conceiving they are conceiving
 • *We are conceiving an ambitious marketing plan.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was conceiving we were conceiving
 you were conceiving you were conceiving
 he/she/it was conceiving they were conceiving
 • *During the war, women were conceiving less.*

FUTURE ... will conceive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be conceiving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have conceived

PAST PASSIVE

I was conceived we were conceived
 you were conceived you were conceived
 he/she/it was conceived they were conceived
 • *The project was conceived by the CEO.*

COMPLEMENTS

conceive *become pregnant*

She hopes to conceive soon.
 Jane has finally conceived after two years of trying.

conceive _____ *become pregnant with*

OBJECT

Jane has conceived **a child**.
 She has conceived **twins**.

conceive _____ *understand*

OBJECT

Ray cannot conceive **their reasoning**.
 I can't conceive **the appeal of his approach**.

WH-CLAUSE

I can't conceive **what the problem is**.

WH-INFINITIVE

We can easily conceive **how to improve the situation**.conceive _____ *think of, imagine*

(of) OBJECT

I conceived **(of) the idea** this morning.(of) OBJECT + *as* OBJECTThey conceived **(of) a whole new approach to the problem**.They couldn't conceive **(of) me as a college professor**.I can conceive **(of) this abandoned church as a microbrewery**.conceive _____ *consider*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

They conceived **Jackson to be at fault**.I conceived **it to be a hopeless situation**.conceive _____ *believe*

THAT-CLAUSE

I can conceive **that he might be right**.He can't conceive **that they did it intentionally**.

PRESENT

I concentrate we concentrate
you concentrate you concentrate
he/she/it concentrates they concentrate
• *He only concentrates on one thing at a time.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am concentrating we are concentrating
you are concentrating you are concentrating
he/she/it is concentrating they are concentrating
• *I am concentrating on the problem.*

PAST

I concentrated we concentrated
you concentrated you concentrated
he/she/it concentrated they concentrated
• *We concentrated the solution of cells.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was concentrating we were concentrating
you were concentrating you were concentrating
he/she/it was concentrating they were concentrating
• *They were concentrating all their efforts on it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has concentrated

PAST PERFECT ... had concentrated

FUTURE ... will concentrate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be concentrating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have concentrated

PAST PASSIVE

I was concentrated we were concentrated
you were concentrated you were concentrated
he/she/it was concentrated they were concentrated
• *Wealth was concentrated in only a few hands.*

COMPLEMENTS

concentrate *draw together, become denser*

Dust always seems to concentrate in the corners.

Birds concentrate before they migrate in the fall.

Mercury concentrates higher up the food chain.

Fluid is concentrating in the lungs.

concentrate _____ *bring together in a single body*

OBJECT

The general concentrated **his forces** in the capital.

We will concentrate **our IT services** in Chicago.

The government has concentrated **more and more power** in the executive branch.

concentrate _____ *make denser/thicker*

OBJECT

We concentrated **the solution** in a beaker.

They concentrate **the sugar syrup** into a semisolid mass.

concentrate _____ *focus [one's thoughts/efforts]*

OBJECT + ON OBJECT

You must concentrate **your thinking on the problem at hand.**

We concentrated **our efforts on new product development.**

I concentrated **my energy on solving the problem.**

OBJECT + ON PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Holmes was concentrating **on the puzzle** when Watson walked in.

ON OBJECT

ON PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The boys were concentrating **on getting the lawn mower running.**

PRESENT

I concern we concern
 you concern you concern
 he/she/it concerns they concern
 • *He only concerns himself with philosophy.*

PAST

I concerned we concerned
 you concerned you concerned
 he/she/it concerned they concerned
 • *They concerned themselves in these issues.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has concerned**PAST PERFECT** ... had concerned**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am concerning we are concerning
 you are concerning you are concerning
 he/she/it is concerning they are concerning
 • *I am concerning myself with developing alternatives.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was concerning we were concerning
 you were concerning you were concerning
 he/she/it was concerning they were concerning
 • *We were concerning ourselves with homeless people.*

FUTURE

... will concern

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be concerning**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have concerned**PAST PASSIVE**

I was concerned we were concerned
 you were concerned you were concerned
 he/she/it was concerned they were concerned
 • *We were concerned by the test results.*

COMPLEMENTS**concern** _____ *be about*

OBJECT

The movie concerns **the cold war**.The memo concerns **next year's budget**.

WH-CLAUSE

The speech concerns **what we should do next year**.The report concerns **where we should locate the new plant**.**concern** _____ *be important to, involve*

OBJECT

This discussion concerns **you**.The election concerns **everyone**.**concern** _____ *make anxious*

OBJECT

Her poor health concerns **us all**.Don't let the grammatical errors concern **you**.**concern** _____ *concentrate on*REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *in/with* OBJECTThe king concerns **himself in the welfare of his subjects**.His daughter concerns **herself with every aspect of the business**.**EXPRESSIONS****be concerned about/for** _____*be worried/anxious about*

We were concerned about Dad's health.

The pilot was concerned for the passengers' safety.

PRESENT

I conclude we conclude
you conclude you conclude
he/she/it concludes they conclude
• *My run always concludes with stretching.*

PAST

I concluded we concluded
you concluded you concluded
he/she/it concluded they concluded
• *I concluded that we should switch plans.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has concluded

PAST PERFECT ... had concluded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am concluding we are concluding
you are concluding you are concluding
he/she/it is concluding they are concluding
• *I am concluding with an appeal for support.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was concluding we were concluding
you were concluding you were concluding
he/she/it was concluding they were concluding
• *The team was concluding its final home series.*

FUTURE ... will conclude

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be concluding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have concluded

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was concluded they were concluded
• *The session was concluded at 9:30.*

COMPLEMENTS

conclude _____ *come to an end*

ADVERB OF TIME

ADVERB OF MANNER

I am concluding promptly **at noon**.

The series concludes **Tuesday**.

The seminar will conclude **with a party at the professor's home**.

conclude _____ *bring to an end*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

An argument concluded **the roundtable discussion**.

Scheduling next week's meeting concluded **the meeting for this week**.

The president concluded **his speech** with a call for unity.

We concluded **what we had planned to cover**.

They concluded **whatever discussion they were having**.

conclude _____ *decide on the basis of reason/evidence*

THAT-CLAUSE

I concluded **that we should not go ahead**.

We concluded **that their offer was acceptable**.

They concluded **that they could wait three more days**.

conclude _____ *settle, arrange*

OBJECT

We finally concluded **the sale**.

PRESENT

I conduct we conduct
 you conduct you conduct
 he/she/it conducts they conduct
 • *Water conducts electricity.*

PAST

I conducted we conducted
 you conducted you conducted
 he/she/it conducted they conducted
 • *He conducted many of the sessions.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has conducted

PAST PERFECT ... had conducted

PAST PASSIVE

I was conducted we were conducted
 you were conducted you were conducted
 he/she/it was conducted they were conducted
 • *The class was conducted by a visiting professor.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am conducting we are conducting
 you are conducting you are conducting
 he/she/it is conducting they are conducting
 • *The drain is conducting the water away.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was conducting we were conducting
 you were conducting you were conducting
 he/she/it was conducting they were conducting
 • *We were conducting an experiment.*

FUTURE

... will conduct

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be conducting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have conducted

NOTE: The verb *conduct* is stressed on the second syllable.
 The noun *conduct* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

conduct *lead a musical group*

He conducts with flair.
 She conducts all over the world.

conduct *transmit electricity/heat/light/sound*

Wood conducts very poorly.
 Metal usually conducts well.

conduct _____ *lead, direct*
OBJECT

Slatkin conducted **the symphony orchestra** for 17 years.
 Who will conduct **the Medieval Latin class**?

conduct _____ *manage, carry out*
OBJECT

They conducted **the whole operation**.
 The detectives conducted **an investigation**.
 The EPA conducted **the removal of the contaminated soil**.

conduct _____ *guide, convey*
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The guide conducted **the tourists back to the bus**.
 These pipes conduct **water to the tank**.

conduct _____ *transmit*
OBJECT

Copper conducts **electricity** very well.
 The heat sink conducts **heat** away from the CPU.
 The optical fiber conducts **light** from a laser.
 Cold air conducts **sound** more slowly than warm air.

conduct _____ *behave*
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

He conducted **himself** admirably.
 They conducted **themselves** quite well.

PRESENT

I confirm we confirm
you confirm you confirm
he/she/it confirms they confirm
• *They confirm each nominee separately.*

PAST

I confirmed we confirmed
you confirmed you confirmed
he/she/it confirmed they confirmed
• *She confirmed the rumor.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has confirmed

PAST PERFECT ... had confirmed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am confirming we are confirming
you are confirming you are confirming
he/she/it is confirming they are confirming
• *Her secretary is confirming the reservation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was confirming we were confirming
you were confirming you were confirming
he/she/it was confirming they were confirming
• *The police were confirming his story.*

FUTURE

... will confirm

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be confirming

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have confirmed

PAST PASSIVE

I was confirmed we were confirmed
you were confirmed you were confirmed
he/she/it was confirmed they were confirmed
• *The information was confirmed by two sources.*

COMPLEMENTS

confirm _____ formally approve, ratify

OBJECT

The board will confirm **my nomination** soon.
The Senate must confirm **all cabinet appointees**.
All cabinet appointees must be confirmed by the Senate.
The panel confirmed **her as acting chair**.
They are confirming **him as company treasurer**.
He was confirmed **as secretary of state**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE

confirm _____ prove to be true, verify

OBJECT

The new research confirms **the original findings**.
Can anyone confirm **these rumors**?
The police are trying to confirm **his alibi**.
The coroner confirmed **the death to be an accident**.
The judge confirmed **the election to be valid**.
I can't confirm **the statement to be either true or false**.
I confirmed **that the meeting was still on**.
Can we confirm **that the government has fallen**?
The X-rays confirmed **that the bone was cracked**.
It only confirmed **what we had expected**.
The candidate confirmed **what had been leaked to the press**.
The report confirmed **why the accident had happened**.

OBJECT + *to be* PREDICATE NOUN

OBJECT + *to be* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

confirm _____ strengthen

OBJECT

The setback only confirmed **our resolve to succeed**.
The project's failure confirmed **our doubts about it**.
Her win confirmed **our confidence in her ability**.

PRESENT

I confront we confront
 you confront you confront
 he/she/it confronts they confront
 • *He never confronts his opponents.*

PAST

I confronted we confronted
 you confronted you confronted
 he/she/it confronted they confronted
 • *I confronted my worst fears.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has confronted

PAST PERFECT ... had confronted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am confronting we are confronting
 you are confronting you are confronting
 he/she/it is confronting they are confronting
 • *I'm confronting my fear of flying.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was confronting we were confronting
 you were confronting you were confronting
 he/she/it was confronting they were confronting
 • *We were confronting them at every turn.*

FUTURE ... will confront

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be confronting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have confronted

PAST PASSIVE

I was confronted we were confronted
 you were confronted you were confronted
 he/she/it was confronted they were confronted
 • *I was confronted with a terrible choice.*

COMPLEMENTS

confront _____ oppose, challenge

OBJECT

The ships confronted **each other** with guns blazing.We confronted **their absurd claims**.Marcos confronted **the pollsters** about their shoddy techniques.

WH-CLAUSE

They confronted **whomever the defense tried to use as an expert witness**.

confront _____ meet face to face

OBJECT

You must confront **your problems**.He confronted **his children's bad behavior**.

WH-CLAUSE

I confronted **what I most feared**.He confronted **why he kept gaining weight**.

confront _____ bring face to face

OBJECT + with OBJECT

Nate confronted **the pundits with lots of statistics**.Police confronted **the suspect with his partner's confession**.

PASSIVE

The suspect was confronted **with his partner's confession**.

PRESENT

I confuse we confuse
 you confuse you confuse
 he/she/it confuses they confuse
 • *He always confuses his audiences.*

PAST

I confused we confused
 you confused you confused
 he/she/it confused they confused
 • *You confused me with your new proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has confused

PAST PERFECT ... had confused

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am confusing we are confusing
 you are confusing you are confusing
 he/she/it is confusing they are confusing
 • *I'm sorry, I'm only confusing you more.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was confusing we were confusing
 you were confusing you were confusing
 he/she/it was confusing they were confusing
 • *We were confusing each other.*

FUTURE ... will confuse

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be confusing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have confused

PAST PASSIVE

I was confused we were confused
 you were confused you were confused
 he/she/it was confused they were confused
 • *I was confused by what he said.*

COMPLEMENTS

confuse _____ perplex, bewilder

OBJECT

Stop! You're confusing **us**.
 The governor's speech totally confused **her audience**.
 Bonnie confused **me** with her weird behavior.
 The sign in the window will confuse **whoever walks by**.

WH-CLAUSE

confuse _____ make unclear, make a mess of

OBJECT

You're trying to confuse **the issue**.
 Her amendments confused **what I was proposing**.
 The discussion confused **what was being recommended**.

WH-CLAUSE

confuse _____ fail to distinguish between

OBJECT + with/and OBJECT

I'm sorry. I confused **you with your sister**.
 He confuses **money with wealth**.
 You are confusing **Alice and Mary**.

PRESENT

I connect we connect
 you connect you connect
 he/she/it connects they connect
 • *He always connects with his audiences.*

PAST

I connected we connected
 you connected you connected
 he/she/it connected they connected
 • *I connected the two wires.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has connected

PAST PERFECT ... had connected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am connecting we are connecting
 you are connecting you are connecting
 he/she/it is connecting they are connecting
 • *I'm connecting you now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was connecting we were connecting
 you were connecting you were connecting
 he/she/it was connecting they were connecting
 • *We were connecting to a flight in Detroit.*

FUTURE

... will connect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be connecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have connected

PAST PASSIVE

I was connected we were connected
 you were connected you were connected
 he/she/it was connected they were connected
 • *Finally, I was connected to the Internet.*

COMPLEMENTS

connect *be joined/linked*

Our two hotel rooms connected.
 Most computer peripherals easily connect.
 The proposals all connect with each other.
 Your flights connect in Chicago.

connect *link to the Internet*

Are you connected?
 I'll connect once I'm in my hotel room.
 I'm not connected when I travel.

connect *establish rapport*

Fortunately, our families connected well.
 Harry and Sally really connected.
 The speaker failed to connect with the audience.

connect *hit a baseball* [INFORMAL]

Albert connected for a three-run homer.

connect _____ *join together, unite*

OBJECT

A skyway connected **the two towers**.
 We connected **the people requesting information**.
 Would you please connect **me with the customer service department**?

OBJECT + with OBJECT

connect _____ *associate, consider related*

OBJECT

I finally connected **their names**.
 We connected **all the pieces of the puzzle**.
 The detective connected **all the clues**.
 Did you connect **Bing's silence with Frank's arrival**?

OBJECT + with OBJECT

connect _____ *link physically*

OBJECT (+ into/to OBJECT)

We can connect **the server now**.
 Connect **the monitor into the surge protector**.
 The nurse connected **her to a heart monitor**.
 How can I connect **my computer to the Internet**?
 Can my computer be connected **to the Internet**?

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

connect up with _____ *meet with*

I hope to connect up with my cousins
 in Atlanta.

PRESENT

I consider we consider
you consider you consider
he/she/it considers they consider
• *He considers John a good friend.*

PAST

I considered we considered
you considered you considered
he/she/it considered they considered
• *I considered all the options.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has considered

PAST PERFECT ... had considered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am considering we are considering
you are considering you are considering
he/she/it is considering they are considering
• *I'm considering quitting my job.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was considering we were considering
you were considering you were considering
he/she/it was considering they were considering
• *We were considering what we should do.*

FUTURE ... will consider

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be considering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have considered

PAST PASSIVE

I was considered we were considered
you were considered you were considered
he/she/it was considered they were considered
• *Every possibility was considered.*

COMPLEMENTS

consider *think carefully*

Stop and consider before you do something you will regret.
Take a moment to consider.

consider _____ *think about before making a decision / taking action, contemplate*

OBJECT

The judge considered **the defendant's motion for acquittal**.
You must consider **your options**.
He should consider **the family's reaction**.
They considered **him** for the job.
He considered **himself** in the mirror.
They considered **the appalling scene** in front of them.

WH-CLAUSE

I considered **what my next move should be**.

WH-INFINITIVE

We considered **how much it would cost**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The boys considered **what to charge for the lemonade**.

The teacher considered **how to make the students behave**.

I considered **taking out a new loan**.

We considered **moving to Colorado**.

consider _____ *regard as*

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

We considered **the movie (to be) a great success**.

They considered **Allen (to be) a natural leader**.

PASSIVE

The movie was considered **(to be) a great success**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

They considered **the plan (to be) badly flawed**.

Everyone considered **George (to be) strange**.

PASSIVE

The plan was considered **(to be) badly flawed**.

George was considered **(to be) strange**.

consider _____ *take into account*

OBJECT

Grandpa is fairly active, considering **his age**.

In sentencing, the judge considered **the defendant's history of abuse**.

consider _____ *treat kindly/attentively*

OBJECT

The students should consider **the teacher's feelings**.

PRESENT

I consist we consist
 you consist you consist
 he/she/it consists they consist

• *His breakfast consists of a sweet roll.*

PAST

I consisted we consisted
 you consisted you consisted
 he/she/it consisted they consisted

• *The plan consisted of wishful thinking.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has consisted

PAST PERFECT ... had consisted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Consist is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Consist is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will consist

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have consisted

PAST PASSIVE

Consist is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *consist* is always used with *of* or *in*.

consist _____ *be made up*
of OBJECT

The book consists **of three parts**.

The city consists **of ten districts**.

The plan mainly consists **of a series of budget recommendations**.

I consist **of ten trillion cells organized into tissue and organs**.

We consist **of eight distribution centers and 200 retail outlets**
 worldwide.

consist _____ *have a basis*
in OBJECT

The beauty of the plan consists **in its simplicity**.

A citizen's rights consist **in individual responsibility**.

The prosecutor's reputation consists **in always being honest**.

PRESENT

I constitute we constitute
you constitute you constitute
he/she/it constitutes they constitute
• *His actions constitute fraud.*

PAST

I constituted we constituted
you constituted you constituted
he/she/it constituted they constituted
• *We constituted a new policy last month.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has constituted

PAST PERFECT ... had constituted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am constituting we are constituting
you are constituting you are constituting
he/she/it is constituting they are constituting
• *The legislature is constituting new campaign laws.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was constituting we were constituting
you were constituting you were constituting
he/she/it was constituting they were constituting
• *We were constituting a new criminal code.*

FUTURE

... will constitute

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be constituting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have constituted

PAST PASSIVE

—
—

—
—

it was constituted they were constituted

• *The court was constituted in 1982.*

COMPLEMENTS

constitute _____ establish legally

OBJECT

The law duly constitutes **a new division** within the department.

The board constituted **a review process**.

constitute _____ make up, be the equivalent of

OBJECT

Sixteen ounces constitutes **an American pint**.

Eight board members constitute **a quorum**.

What he did constitutes **treason**.

Any illegal action constitutes **a crime**.

WH-CLAUSE

That area constitutes **what I would call a slum**.

His words constitute **what could be called slander**.

PRESENT

I construct we construct
 you construct you construct
 he/she/it constructs they construct
 • *He constructs architectural models.*

PAST

I constructed we constructed
 you constructed you constructed
 he/she/it constructed they constructed
 • *They constructed a clever argument.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has constructed**PAST PERFECT** ... had constructed**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was constructed they were constructed
 • *Our house was constructed in 1888.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am constructing we are constructing
 you are constructing you are constructing
 he/she/it is constructing they are constructing
 • *I am constructing a shed in our backyard.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was constructing we were constructing
 you were constructing you were constructing
 he/she/it was constructing they were constructing
 • *They were constructing a new piece of equipment.*

FUTURE ... will construct**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be constructing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have constructed**COMPLEMENTS****construct** _____ *build physically*

OBJECT

I constructed **a birdhouse** when I was in seventh grade.
 The engineers constructed **a new transformer**.

WH-CLAUSE

We will only construct **what we can guarantee**.
 They will construct **whatever the customer asks for**.

construct _____ *create by arranging ideas*

OBJECT

They constructed **an elaborate theory**.
 He constructed **intricate plots** for all his movies.
 I constructed **a convincing case against the development**.

PRESENT

I consult we consult
 you consult you consult
 he/she/it consults they consult
 • *She consults with me on a regular basis.*

PAST

I consulted we consulted
 you consulted you consulted
 he/she/it consulted they consulted
 • *I consulted a specialist.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has consulted

PAST PERFECT ... had consulted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am consulting we are consulting
 you are consulting you are consulting
 he/she/it is consulting they are consulting
 • *I'm consulting at Mercy Hospital all week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was consulting we were consulting
 you were consulting you were consulting
 he/she/it was consulting they were consulting
 • *Our company was consulting in the Middle East.*

FUTURE ... will consult

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be consulting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have consulted

PAST PASSIVE

I was consulted we were consulted
 you were consulted you were consulted
 he/she/it was consulted they were consulted
 • *All the usual experts were consulted.*

COMPLEMENTS

consult provide professional advice

I consult for the state of New Jersey.
 Dr. Smith consults in all the area hospitals.

consult confer

Good practitioners consult frequently.

consult _____ seek advice/information from

OBJECT

We consulted **every doctor in town**.

I consulted **the dictionary**.

You must consult **your own conscience**.

WH-CLAUSE

I will consult **whoever can offer the best advice**.

He will consult **whichever specialist his doctor recommends**.

consult _____ confer

(with) OBJECT

I will consult **(with) my colleagues** about your recommendation.

We must consult **(with) the president** before we make a decision.

PRESENT

I contain we contain
 you contain you contain
 he/she/it contains they contain
 • *The book contains a lot of new data.*

PAST

I contained we contained
 you contained you contained
 he/she/it contained they contained
 • *He barely contained himself.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has contained**PAST PERFECT** ... had contained**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am containing we are containing
 you are containing you are containing
 he/she/it is containing they are containing
 • *The levee is barely containing the floodwater.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was containing we were containing
 you were containing you were containing
 he/she/it was containing they were containing
 • *We were containing the leaks with duct tape.*

FUTURE

... will contain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be containing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have contained**PAST PASSIVE**

I was contained we were contained
 you were contained you were contained
 he/she/it was contained they were contained
 • *The epidemic was finally contained.*

COMPLEMENTS**contain** _____ hold, include

OBJECT

This beaker contains **hydrochloric acid**.
 The legislation contains **some surprises**.
 The movie contains **some pretty amusing scenes**.
 The book contained **a reference to Darwin**.
 His speeches contain **what you would expect from a conservative**.
 The fall fashion show contained **whatever was hot at the moment**.

WH-CLAUSE

contain _____ hold back, restrain

OBJECT

The police contained **the rioters**.
 The firewalls contained **the spread of the blaze**.
 I couldn't contain **myself** from laughing.
 Please contain **your dogs**.
 Their policy was to contain **communism**.

PRESENT

I continue we continue
you continue you continue
he/she/it continues they continue
• *The schedule continues as originally set.*

PAST

I continued we continued
you continued you continued
he/she/it continued they continued
• *He continued to oppose the plan.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has continued

PAST PERFECT ... had continued

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am continuing we are continuing
you are continuing you are continuing
he/she/it is continuing they are continuing
• *I'm continuing on to Paris.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was continuing we were continuing
you were continuing you were continuing
he/she/it was continuing they were continuing
• *They were continuing to look very puzzled.*

FUTURE ... will continue

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be continuing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have continued

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was continued they were continued
• *The trial was continued by the judge.*

COMPLEMENTS

continue *persist, last, stay*

The rain continued all afternoon.
Our New Year's Eve tradition continues unbroken.
The play continues until next Sunday.
We will continue here for a while longer.
The treasurer will continue in office for six months.

continue *resume [after an interruption]*

We will continue after lunch.
The session continues at four.

continue *extend*

The highway continues all the way to Springfield.

continue _____ *extend, persist in*

OBJECT

They continued **their discussion** during dinner.
They continued **the presentation** despite the interruptions.

INFINITIVE

I will continue **to support the plan**.
He continued **to snore loudly**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I will continue **supporting the plan**.
He continued **snoring loudly**.

continue _____ *postpone formally*

OBJECT

The defendant's lawyer asked to continue **the deposition**.
The judge continued **the trial** until January 15.
The trial was continued until January 15 by the judge.

PASSIVE

continue _____ *keep on [doing]*

(with) OBJECT

May I continue **(with) my piano playing** while you read the newspaper?
Please continue **(with) the rest of the tutorial**.

PRESENT

I contribute we contribute
 you contribute you contribute
 he/she/it contributes they contribute
 • *He always contributes to appeals.*

PAST

I contributed we contributed
 you contributed you contributed
 he/she/it contributed they contributed
 • *I contributed twenty-five dollars.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has contributed

PAST PERFECT ... had contributed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was contributed they were contributed

• *The money was contributed by an anonymous donor.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am contributing we are contributing
 you are contributing you are contributing
 he/she/it is contributing they are contributing
 • *I'm already contributing to that charity.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was contributing we were contributing
 you were contributing you were contributing
 he/she/it was contributing they were contributing
 • *We were contributing what we could afford.*

FUTURE

... will contribute

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be contributing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have contributed

COMPLEMENTS

contribute *give along with others, donate*

We all contribute in our own ways.
 I'm sorry, but I can't contribute any longer.

contribute _____ *help to bring about*

to OBJECT

She really contributed **to our success**.
 The employees have contributed **to our reputation**.

contribute _____ *give along with others, donate*

OBJECT

I usually contribute **a hundred dollars**.
 They contributed **a great deal of time**.

to OBJECT

I contributed **to Senator Blather's campaign**.
 I always contribute **to the Boy Scouts**.

OBJECT + to OBJECT

I contributed **ten dollars to the office collection**.
 They will contribute **something to the fund drive**.

WH-CLAUSE

I contribute **what I can**.

to WH-CLAUSE

We will contribute **whatever we can afford**.

We contribute **to whoever is most in need**.

People contribute **to whatever causes they feel most strongly about**.

contribute _____ *provide for publication*

OBJECT

She regularly contributes **feature stories**.
 I contribute **local news items**.

PRESENT

I control we control
 you control you control
 he/she/it controls they control
 • *She controls a large number of shares.*

PAST

I controlled we controlled
 you controlled you controlled
 he/she/it controlled they controlled
 • *I controlled for gender and age.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has controlled

PAST PERFECT ... had controlled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am controlling we are controlling
 you are controlling you are controlling
 he/she/it is controlling they are controlling
 • *I'm controlling for all the variables.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was controlling we were controlling
 you were controlling you were controlling
 he/she/it was controlling they were controlling
 • *We were controlling the infection.*

FUTURE ... will control

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be controlling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have controlled

PAST PASSIVE

I was controlled we were controlled
 you were controlled you were controlled
 he/she/it was controlled they were controlled
 • *The robot was controlled by a computer.*

COMPLEMENTS

control _____ regulate, direct, have power over

OBJECT

This lever controls **the speed**.
 The hormone controls **the level of calcium in the blood**.
 He controls **the entire operation**.
 The president controls **Supreme Court nominations**.
 The dictator controls **what citizens say and do**.
 They control **whoever reports to this office**.
 He controls **whatever resources they still have**.

WH-CLAUSE

control _____ hold back, restrain

OBJECT

Brandy doesn't control **her temper** very well.
 The new owner couldn't control **the dog**.

control _____ prevent the spread of

OBJECT

Health workers controlled **the smallpox epidemic**
 by quarantine and vaccination.
 The herbicide controls **leaf mold**.

PHRASAL VERBS

control for _____ test for [variables]
 in a scientific experiment

You must control for nutrition and
 lifestyle.

PRESENT

I convince we convince
 you convince you convince
 he/she/it convinces they convince
 • *He always convinces his audiences.*

PAST

I convinced we convinced
 you convinced you convinced
 he/she/it convinced they convinced
 • *She convinced me to read the book.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has convinced

PAST PERFECT ... had convinced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am convincing we are convincing
 you are convincing you are convincing
 he/she/it is convincing they are convincing
 • *I'm convincing the panelists with fancy charts.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was convincing we were convincing
 you were convincing you were convincing
 he/she/it was convincing they were convincing
 • *He was convincing them to invest.*

FUTURE ... will convince

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be convincing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have convinced

PAST PASSIVE

I was convinced we were convinced
 you were convinced you were convinced
 he/she/it was convinced they were convinced
 • *I was convinced by the critic's argument.*

COMPLEMENTS

convince _____ persuade

OBJECT

He even convinces **himself**.
 His job is to convince **the jury**.
 I finally convinced **my boss**.

OBJECT + of OBJECT

They convinced **the mayor of the need for a new sewer plant**.
 You can't convince **the owner of the importance of decent wages**.
 They convinced **themselves of the righteousness of their cause**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I convinced **him to do something about the situation**.
 We convinced **them to leave**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

The failure convinced **us to change course**.
 He convinced **us that we should reconsider the project**.
 We convinced **them that they were wrong**.
 His behavior convinces **us that he is crazy**.
 She convinced **herself that she would win the lottery**.

WH-CLAUSE

He convinces **whomever he talks to**.
 They will convince **whomever they need to**.

EXPRESSIONS

convincing believable

The spy wore a convincing disguise.
 "The dog ate my homework" is not a convincing excuse.

PRESENT

I cook we cook
 you cook you cook
 he/she/it cooks they cook
 • *He cooks over 60 meals a day.*

PAST

I cooked we cooked
 you cooked you cooked
 he/she/it cooked they cooked
 • *I cooked for years before my marriage.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cooked

PAST PERFECT ... had cooked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cooking we are cooking
 you are cooking you are cooking
 he/she/it is cooking they are cooking
 • *I'm cooking some pasta for lunch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cooking we were cooking
 you were cooking you were cooking
 he/she/it was cooking they were cooking
 • *They were cooking on their gas grill.*

FUTURE ... will cook

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be cooking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cooked

PAST PASSIVE

I was cooked we were cooked
 you were cooked you were cooked
 he/she/it was cooked they were cooked
 • *Dinner was cooked by Donna.*

COMPLEMENTS

cook *prepare food by heating*

cook *undergo the process of food preparation*

cook *happen* [INFORMAL]

cook *perform very well* [INFORMAL]

cook _____ *prepare [food] by heating*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

cook _____ *cause to be overheated*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

cook _____ *falsify* [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

My father is cooking tonight.

You have to cook every day.

Dinner is cooking right now.

The oatmeal is cooking at too high a temperature.

What's cooking in technology stocks today?

"What's cooking?" "Nothing."

That band really cooks.

I cook **Chinese and Italian food**.

They cooked **steaks** for everyone.

Cook only **what you can eat**.

Anita will cook **whatever you would like**.

The sun really cooked **us** this afternoon.

We were really cooked out there.

Did the analysts cook **the data**?

PHRASAL VERBS

cook out *prepare food out of doors*

cook SEP **up** *prepare a batch of [food] by heating*

cook SEP **up** *devise, plan*

We cook out almost every night in the summer.

We'll cook up some spaghetti for our guests.

Lenny and Mike cooked up a scheme to raise money for their new business.

Let's cook up an excuse for skipping the exam.

EXPRESSIONS

cook [someone's] goose *cause damage to [someone]*

cook the books *falsify financial records*

cook _____ **to perfection** *cook perfectly*

cook up a storm *prepare a lot of food*

Sending obscene e-mails from work really cooked Paul's goose.

The department had cooked the books for years.

My 13-year-old son cooked the lasagna to perfection.

On Saturdays, Dad always cooked up a storm.

PRESENT

I cost	we cost
you cost	you cost
he/she/it costs	they cost

• *The scarves cost more than 50 dollars.*

PAST

I cost	we cost
you cost	you cost
he/she/it cost	they cost

• *That mistake cost us dearly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cost

PAST PERFECT ... had cost

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am costing	we are costing
you are costing	you are costing
he/she/it is costing	they are costing

• *The delay is costing us a fortune.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was costing	we were costing
you were costing	you were costing
he/she/it was costing	they were costing

• *You were costing the company a lot of money.*

FUTURE ... will cost

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be costing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cost

PAST PASSIVE

Cost is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

cost *be expensive*

Going to college really costs.
Hybrid cars cost, but so does gasoline.
Lack of training costs dearly.
Cheap mattresses cost in the long run.

cost _____ *have a price of*

OBJECT

The new house cost **half a million dollars**.
My books cost **\$200 a semester**.

cost _____ *cause the loss of*

OBJECT

Starvation costs **25,000 lives** a day.
It cost **my job**.
It cost **his self-respect**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The battle cost **the army a lot of good soldiers**.
The accident cost **me a fortune**.
The mistake cost **us the contract**.

cost _____ *cause suffering/loss to*

OBJECT

My hesitation certainly cost **me**.

PHRASAL VERBS

cost SEP **out** *estimate, set a value on/for*

I will cost the entire project out.
We were costing out the Johnston contract.

EXPRESSIONS

cost **a fortune** *be very expensive*

It would cost a fortune to move that printing press.

cost **a pretty penny** *be very expensive*

I'll bet that car cost a pretty penny.

cost **an arm and a leg** *be very expensive*

This watch cost me an arm and a leg.

PRESENT

I count we count
 you count you count
 he/she/it counts they count
 • *Neatness counts.*

PAST

I counted we counted
 you counted you counted
 he/she/it counted they counted
 • *I counted a dozen trucks in two minutes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has counted

PAST PERFECT ... had counted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am counting we are counting
 you are counting you are counting
 he/she/it is counting they are counting
 • *I'm counting to ten.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was counting we were counting
 you were counting you were counting
 he/she/it was counting they were counting
 • *We were counting all the birds on the wire.*

FUTURE ... will count

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be counting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have counted

PAST PASSIVE

I was counted we were counted
 you were counted you were counted
 he/she/it was counted they were counted
 • *Some people were counted twice.*

COMPLEMENTS

count name numbers in a sequence

I counted by fives.
 Saxton counted from 2 to 100 by twos.
 She counted out loud.

count be valuable/significant

Her opinions count.
 Their efforts didn't really count.
 Loyalty really counts with the president.

count _____ add to get a total, tally

OBJECT

He counted **the crew members** in a loud voice.
 We must count **all the phone jacks in the office**.
 I had the musicians count **the beats**.

count _____ consider, regard

OBJECT

I count **David** among my best friends.
 Don't count **his youth** against him.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

She counted **them as her best friends**.
 I counted **Jimmy as a neutral observer**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Sarah counted **the neighbors as very friendly**.
 He counted **the voters as uncommitted**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

I counted **Felipe (to be) a real friend**.
 John counted **his father (to be) a genuine hero**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I counted **the survivors (to be) lucky**.
 He always counted **his daughter (to be) fortunate in love**.

count _____ take into account

OBJECT

Did you count **Ovid** in your list of poets?
 There are seven sisters, counting **Agnes**.

PHRASAL VERBS

count for _____ have a value of

A touchdown counts for six points.
 Experience counts for something.

count _____ in include

"Who wants to play soccer?" "Count me in."

count on _____ depend on

I counted on Mom and Dad to pay for my college education.

count _____ out exclude, disregard

"Who wants to shovel the snow?" "Count me out."
 Tanya wasn't interested, so we counted her out.

PRESENT

I cover we cover
 you cover you cover
 he/she/it covers they cover
 • *His area covers northern California.*

PAST

I covered we covered
 you covered you covered
 he/she/it covered they covered
 • *She covered many important stories.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has covered

PAST PERFECT ... had covered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am covering we are covering
 you are covering you are covering
 he/she/it is covering they are covering
 • *I'm covering for a friend.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was covering we were covering
 you were covering you were covering
 he/she/it was covering they were covering
 • *We were covering the furniture with plastic.*

FUTURE ... will cover

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be covering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have covered

PAST PASSIVE

I was covered we were covered
 you were covered you were covered
 he/she/it was covered they were covered
 • *His back was covered in red spots.*

COMPLEMENTS

cover _____ place/spread something over

OBJECT

I covered **the pan** with aluminum foil.We covered **the floors** before we started painting.

cover _____ spread over [a surface]

OBJECT

Snow covered **the fields**.Water covered **the road** for miles.Lakes cover **the whole region**.

cover _____ lay over, conceal

OBJECT

The towel covered **my bare legs**.A scarf covered **her face**.

cover _____ deal with, discuss

OBJECT

That about covers **everything**.We will cover **the budget** in today's meeting.

cover _____ be responsible for

OBJECT

My job covers **retail sales**.We will cover **any damage that results**.The department only covers **incorporated areas of the city**.

cover _____ have sufficient funds for

OBJECT

Your balance doesn't cover **this check**.Can you cover **the restaurant bill**?

cover _____ protect from harm/loss, insure

OBJECT

Does the insurance cover **your husband** too?The policy even covers **cosmetic surgery**.

cover _____ report news about

OBJECT

The television stations covered **the traffic accident**.

cover _____ travel [a certain distance]

OBJECT

We covered **15 miles** today.

PHRASAL VERBS

cover for _____ be a replacement for

Hilary covered for Candi when she was sick.

cover SEP up hide

The politicians tried to cover up the scandal.

cover up for _____ make excuses for

Rich was always covering up for his cubicle mate.

PRESENT

I create we create
 you create you create
 he/she/it creates they create
 • *Prosperity creates new markets.*

PAST

I created we created
 you created you created
 he/she/it created they created
 • *She created a masterpiece.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has created

PAST PERFECT ... had created

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am creating we are creating
 you are creating you are creating
 he/she/it is creating they are creating
 • *I am creating a new ad.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was creating we were creating
 you were creating you were creating
 he/she/it was creating they were creating
 • *They were creating a whole new marketing plan.*

FUTURE ... will create

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be creating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have created

PAST PASSIVE

I was created we were created
 you were created you were created
 he/she/it was created they were created
 • *Seventy new jobs were created this month.*

COMPLEMENTS

create _____ bring into being, produce, cause

OBJECT

The cyclotron created **new elements**.
 Computer technology has created **thousands of new jobs**.
 The artist created **a limited edition of silkscreen prints**.
 The kids created **a terrible mess in the kitchen**.
 Their behavior created **a huge scandal**.
 Scarcity creates **shortages**.
 They created **what can only be called a disaster**.
 We will create **whatever you need**.

WH-CLAUSE

create _____ design

OBJECT

Her assistants created **a new line of clothing**.

EXPRESSIONS

create a scene cause a public disturbance

Tom created a scene when his fiancée
 kissed her ex-boyfriend.

create a stink about/over _____
 complain strongly about

My wife created a stink about our guests' untidy habits.

PRESENT

I creep	we creep
you creep	you creep
he/she/it creeps	they creep

• *Time creeps by when you're bored.*

PAST

I crept	we crept
you crept	you crept
he/she/it crept	they crept

• *Old age crept up on us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has crept

PAST PERFECT ... had crept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am creeping	we are creeping
you are creeping	you are creeping
he/she/it is creeping	they are creeping

• *The fog is creeping into the hollow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was creeping	we were creeping
you were creeping	you were creeping
he/she/it was creeping	they were creeping

• *The soldiers were creeping past the guards.*

FUTURE ... will creep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be creeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have crept

PAST PASSIVE

Creep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

creep *move along close to the ground***creep** *move cautiously/stealthily***creep** *grow along a surface***creep** *shiver from fear/dread***creep** _____ *advance slowly*
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**creep** _____ *appear gradually*
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**creep by** *pass slowly***creep in/into** _____ *enter inconspicuously***creep up on** _____ *advance slowly and imperceptibly toward***creep out of the woodwork** *appear after being gone for a long time*

Bob crept away from his pursuers.

The lion crept toward the antelope.

We crept down the stairs.

I crept into the kids' room, trying not to wake them.

Weeds were creeping into the flower beds.

The scream made my flesh creep.

Daylight crept **in through the windows**.Water from the clogged drain crept **across the floor**.A sense of urgency crept **through the crowd**.

PHRASAL VERBS

The years crept by when Lawrence was in prison.

A note of resentment crept into his voice.

Negativity crept into his later writing.

The cat crept up on the mouse.

EXPRESSIONS

Well, look who's crept out of the woodwork—it's Percy!

PRESENT

I cross we cross
 you cross you cross
 he/she/it crosses they cross
 • *The trails cross in that valley.*

PAST

I crossed we crossed
 you crossed you crossed
 he/she/it crossed they crossed
 • *He crossed his legs and began to whistle.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has crossed

PAST PERFECT ... had crossed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am crossing we are crossing
 you are crossing you are crossing
 he/she/it is crossing they are crossing
 • *We are crossing the Atlantic now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was crossing we were crossing
 you were crossing you were crossing
 he/she/it was crossing they were crossing
 • *He was crossing the street.*

FUTURE ... will cross

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be crossing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have crossed

PAST PASSIVE

I was crossed we were crossed
 you were crossed you were crossed
 he/she/it was crossed they were crossed
 • *His name was crossed out.*

COMPLEMENTS

cross intersect

Parallel lines never cross.
 Eventually Highways 120 and 337 cross.

cross go past each other in opposite directions

We must have crossed on the highway.
 Our letters must have crossed in the mail.

cross _____ extend across/over

OBJECT

The road crosses **the river** at Glenwood.
 I-94 crosses **the entire width of North Dakota**.

cross _____ go across/over

OBJECT

We crossed **the Mississippi** at Hannibal.
 I finally crossed **the finish line**.
 Blacks crossed **the color line** after World War II.

cross _____ place crosswise one over the other

OBJECT

He crossed **his arms**.
 I crossed **my fingers** for luck.

cross _____ mix [breeds of plants or animals]

OBJECT (+ with OBJECT)

The gardener crossed **two varieties of daylilies**.
 If you cross **a donkey with a horse**, you get a mule.

cross _____ combine elements of

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The movie crosses **horror with mystery**.

cross _____ draw a line across

OBJECT

Dot your i's and cross **your t's**.

cross _____ obstruct, betray

OBJECT

Never cross **your boss**.
 You deliberately crossed **me!**

PHRASAL VERBS

cross SEP **off** draw a line through, eliminate [from a list]

Don't cross my name off the list of volunteers.

cross SEP **out** draw a line through the name of [on a list]

Don't cross me off the list of volunteers.

cross SEP **up** confuse, deceive

You can cross the first three items out.

They crossed us up by going home early.

PRESENT

I cry	we cry
you cry	you cry
he/she/it cries	they cry

• *The baby always cries when he is hungry.*

PAST

I cried	we cried
you cried	you cried
he/she/it cried	they cried

• *I cried my eyes out.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cried

PAST PERFECT ... had cried

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am crying	we are crying
you are crying	you are crying
he/she/it is crying	they are crying

• *I'm crying because I am upset.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was crying	we were crying
you were crying	you were crying
he/she/it was crying	they were crying

• *They were crying about nothing.*

FUTURE ... will cry

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be crying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cried

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was cried	they were cried

• *The alarm was cried out up and down the street.*

COMPLEMENTS

cry *sob, weep*All the children were crying.
Please don't cry.cry *shout, call loudly*The news vendors were crying as loudly as they could.
The frightened animals were all crying.

cry _____ utter loudly

OBJECT

I cried **a warning** to them.
The soldier cried **a challenge** as I came closer.

THAT-CLAUSE

He cried **that he had been robbed**.

DIRECT QUOTATION

A sailor cried **that he could see land**.The wounded man cried, "**Help! Help!**"

PHRASAL VERBS

cry **out** *scream, shout*

The victim cried out in pain.

cry **SEP out** *shout*

Penfeld cried out a warning to the people passing by.

cry **out for** _____ *demand/require*
[an immediate solution]This economic recession cries out for government
intervention.cry **over** _____ *weep because of*

She's still crying over losing her job.

EXPRESSIONS

cry **in [one's] beer** *be sorry for oneself*After he lost the election, Jack spent
several days crying in his beer.cry **on [someone's] shoulder** *tell one's*
*problems to [someone] to be comforted*My parakeet died. Can I cry on your shoulder?
Her boyfriend left, and she needed a shoulder to cry on.cry **[one's] eyes out** *weep inconsolably*

When Ed broke off the engagement, she cried her eyes out.

cry **[oneself] to sleep** *weep until one*
*falls asleep*After watching the movie, Cynthia cried herself to sleep.
Bruno cried himself to sleep every night.cry **over spilled milk** *regret something*
that cannot be undone

Life is too short; don't cry over spilled milk.

cry **wolf** *give a false alarm*Billy Joe cried wolf once too often, and no one believed
him after that.

PRESENT

I cut we cut
 you cut you cut
 he/she/it cuts they cut
 • *He cuts the lawn every weekend.*

PAST

I cut we cut
 you cut you cut
 he/she/it cut they cut
 • *I cut myself shaving.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cut

PAST PERFECT ... had cut

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cutting we are cutting
 you are cutting you are cutting
 he/she/it is cutting they are cutting
 • *I'm cutting class today.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cutting we were cutting
 you were cutting you were cutting
 he/she/it was cutting they were cutting
 • *We were cutting the staff by ten percent.*

FUTURE ... will cut

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be cutting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cut

PAST PASSIVE

I was cut we were cut
 you were cut you were cut
 he/she/it was cut they were cut
 • *Our budget was cut substantially.*

COMPLEMENTS

cut hurt someone's feelings

His criticisms really cut.
 He really knows how to cut.

cut _____ make an incision, separate

ADVERB OF MANNER

A sharp knife cuts **safely**.
 His ax cuts **like a razor**.

cut _____ undergo an incision/separation

ADVERB OF MANNER

The dried wood cuts **easily**.

cut _____ penetrate with a sharp object

OBJECT

Jill cut **her finger** on a knife.

cut _____ sever, separate into pieces (slice, mow, pare, trim, dig, etc.)

OBJECT

I cut **the cake**.
 My husband cut **the grass** this morning.
 I need to cut **my fingernails**.
 The new barber cut **my hair**.
 The backhoe cut **a trench** for a new waterline.

cut _____ make by chopping/hacking

OBJECT

We cut **a path** through the dense woods.

cut _____ reduce the size/number of

OBJECT

They will cut **my hours** after Christmas.
 We have to cut **the budget**.
 The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.

cut _____ remove [from a group]

OBJECT

The coach cut **three players** from the squad.
 The director cut **five scenes** from the movie.

cut _____ change direction suddenly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Cut **to the right** just before the railroad tracks.

cut _____ go directly, take a shortcut

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We can cut **across Mr. Applegate's property**.
 The highway cuts **through a national park**.
 The seniors cut **to the front of the line**.

cut _____ dilute

OBJECT

That bartender cuts **whiskey** with tap water.



cut _____ break, stop

OBJECT

cut _____ skip without permission

OBJECT

cut _____ record

OBJECT

cut _____ fill out and issue

OBJECT

cut _____ handle [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The storm cut **the telephone lines**.Please cut **all the noise**.He cut **the engine**.We cut **class** to watch the inauguration.She is cutting **a new album**.The secretary cut **a check for \$50.23**.I can't cut **the 45-minute drive to work** anymore.Tom can't cut **being a police officer** anymore.

PHRASAL VERBS

cut across _____ transcend

cut back reverse direction

cut SEP back shorten

cut back (on) _____ reduce

cut SEP down chop/saw and cause to fall

cut down (on) _____ reduce

cut in begin operating

cut in interrupt

cut in move into a line out of turn

cut SEP in mix in

cut in on _____ interrupt

cut SEP off interruptcut SEP off move suddenly in front of, blockcut SEP off shortencut SEP off shut off

cut off/out stop suddenly, shut off

cut out go away quickly

cut SEP out eliminate

cut up joke, clown, behave wildly

cut SEP up separate into sections with a sharp object

The president's economic proposal cuts across party lines.

The receiver cut back to the middle of the field.

We must cut back the shrubs after they flower.

The department cut back spending in April.

Our neighbors cut two elm trees down.

The doctor told Ed to cut down on caffeine.

We pulled the crank six times before the motor cut in.

The reporter cut in before I finished my first sentence.

The motorist cut in just before his lane ended.

Cut in the shortening with a pastry blender.

The actress cut in on the director.

The protester cut me off in mid-sentence.

A driver cut me off at the curve.

The policeman cut the robbers off at the bridge.

Gerry cut off the knotty end of the board.

When his car overheated, the driver cut off the engine.

The water heater cuts off at 120 degrees.

This party is boring; let's cut out.

I will cut out afternoon snacks for two weeks.

Ken always cuts up when the teacher leaves the room.

Cut the mushrooms up, and then we'll add them to the sauce.

EXPRESSIONS

cut _____ down to size humiliate

cut _____ some slack make an allowance for

cut _____ to the quick/bone badly hurt the feelings of

cut [one's] teeth on _____ learn/do as a beginner

cut SEP short stop suddenly

His opponent cut him down to size.

He wasn't feeling well, so the boss cut him some slack.

Your nasty remarks cut me to the quick.

The journalist cut her teeth on writing obituaries.

The president cut the press conference short.

PRESENT

I dance we dance
 you dance you dance
 he/she/it dances they dance
 • *He dances with the Royal Ballet.*

PAST

I danced we danced
 you danced you danced
 he/she/it danced they danced
 • *He danced with both Lizzy and Jane.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has danced

PAST PERFECT ... had danced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dancing we are dancing
 you are dancing you are dancing
 he/she/it is dancing they are dancing
 • *Look at me! I'm dancing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dancing we were dancing
 you were dancing you were dancing
 he/she/it was dancing they were dancing
 • *We were dancing on air after winning the award.*

FUTURE ... will dance

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dancing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have danced

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was danced they were danced
 • *Swan Lake was first danced in 1877.*

COMPLEMENTS

dance *move the body and legs rhythmically, usually to music*

I dance every chance I get.
 She dances really well.
 Can you dance?

dance *bob up and down in a lively manner*

The rain was dancing on the pavement.
 The kids were dancing with excitement.
 The furniture danced across the floor during the earthquake.

dance _____ *perform as a dancer*
 OBJECT

I have danced **that role** many times.
 Can you dance **the tango**?
 The company will dance **Romeo and Juliet** this season.

dance _____ *cause to dance*
 OBJECT

The groom danced **his mother-in-law** across the ballroom.

EXPRESSIONS

be dancing on air *be very happy*

Since her promotion, Deborah has been dancing on air.

dance to _____ *respond to [music] by dancing* [OFTEN FIGURATIVE]

We love to dance to the pop music of the 1980s.
 European leaders refused to dance to the president's tune.

PRESENT

I dare we dare
 you dare you dare
 he/she/it dares they dare

• *He dares to boast about it?*

PAST

I dared we dared
 you dared you dared
 he/she/it dared they dared

• *They dared to risk it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dared

PAST PERFECT ... had dared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am daring we are daring
 you are daring you are daring
 he/she/it is daring they are daring

• *I'm daring you to enter without knocking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was daring we were daring
 you were daring you were daring
 he/she/it was daring they were daring

• *We were daring the wrath of our families.*

FUTURE ... will dare

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be daring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dared

PAST PASSIVE

I was dared we were dared
 you were dared you were dared
 he/she/it was dared they were dared

• *Sam was dared to do it by the other kids.*

COMPLEMENTS

dare *be brave enough*

Try the durian roll if you dare.

dare _____ *challenge to do something bold*

OBJECT

Ralph dared **his sister**.

They have all dared **me**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I dared **him to stop me**.

He dared **us to cross the stream on a log**.

dare _____ *be bold/brave enough*

INFINITIVE

Would you dare **to be different?**

I didn't dare **to ask her out**.

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

He dared not **fail his team**.

He dared not **be late for the meeting**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I wouldn't dare **asking her out**.

He didn't dare **making the trip alone**.

dare _____ *face boldly/bravely, defy*

OBJECT

He dared **public criticism** throughout his career.

The captain dared **the roaring waves**.

PRESENT

I deal we deal
 you deal you deal
 he/she/it deals they deal
 • *He deals in antique furniture.*

PAST

I dealt we dealt
 you dealt you dealt
 he/she/it dealt they dealt
 • *I dealt myself a bad hand.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dealt

PAST PERFECT ... had dealt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dealing we are dealing
 you are dealing you are dealing
 he/she/it is dealing they are dealing
 • *I'm dealing this hand.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dealing we were dealing
 you were dealing you were dealing
 he/she/it was dealing they were dealing
 • *They were dealing illegal drugs.*

FUTURE ... will deal

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dealing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dealt

PAST PASSIVE

I was dealt we were dealt
 you were dealt you were dealt
 he/she/it was dealt they were dealt
 • *Justice was dealt to everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

deal distribute cards in a game

Who's dealing?
 I will deal as soon as everyone sits down.

deal engage in bargaining/negotiation

The union will never deal.
 He only deals if the price is right.

deal _____ distribute [cards]

OBJECT

I will deal **five cards** to each player.
 He deals **the cards** until none are left.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

You dealt **me an awful hand**.
 He dealt **her three aces**.

to PARAPHRASE

You dealt **a bad hand to me**.
 He dealt **three aces to her**.

deal _____ sell [illegal drugs]

OBJECT

He deals **marijuana** to teenagers.
 The gang deals **stolen prescription drugs**.

deal _____ deliver, administer

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Spike dealt **the intruder a blow to the head**.
 Fate dealt **him a terrible blow**.

to PARAPHRASE

Life has dealt **them some bad times**.
 Fate dealt **a terrible blow to him**.
 Life has dealt **some bad times to them**.

PHRASAL VERBS

deal in _____ buy and sell

The real estate broker deals only
 in commercial properties.

deal SEP in allow to take part

Maurice has free time; let's deal him in.

deal SEP out distribute piece by piece

Agnes dealt the cards out three at a time.

deal with _____ behave toward, treat
 in a particular way

The coach dealt fairly with his players.

deal with _____ handle, take care of

The board agreed to deal with financial matters later.

deal with _____ have to do with, concern

The article deals with early French-American customs.

deal with _____ try to accept/reconcile

Meg dealt with three deaths in her family last year.

PRESENT

I decide we decide
 you decide you decide
 he/she/it decides they decide
 • *He always decides at the last minute.*

PAST

I decided we decided
 you decided you decided
 he/she/it decided they decided
 • *I finally decided to eat out.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has decided

PAST PERFECT ... had decided

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am deciding we are deciding
 you are deciding you are deciding
 he/she/it is deciding they are deciding
 • *I'm deciding what to wear.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was deciding we were deciding
 you were deciding you were deciding
 he/she/it was deciding they were deciding
 • *We were deciding what to have for dinner.*

FUTURE ... will decide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be deciding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have decided

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was decided they were decided
 • *The election was decided by 342 votes.*

COMPLEMENTS

decide *make a choice/judgment*

You decide.
 Have you decided yet?
 Tamara couldn't decide between Joseph and Milton.

decide _____ *make a final choice/judgment about*

OBJECT

The court decided **the issue**.
 The election will decide **the matter**.
 The case was decided by a 5–4 vote.

PASSIVE

in favor of OBJECTThe jury decided **in favor of the defendant**.

WH-CLAUSE

I can't decide **what we should do**.We decided **when we had to leave**.The boss will decide **how the employees will dress**.

WH-INFINITIVE

I can't decide **what to do**.We decided **when to leave**.The aldermen will decide **how to vote**.decide _____ *choose*

ON OBJECT

I've decided **on a yellow cake with chocolate frosting**.
 The museum owner decided **on the painting by Picasso**.
 The judge decided **on leniency** for the young defendant.

INFINITIVE

We decided **to stay at home**.Charles decided **to take the offer**.decide _____ *conclude*

THAT-CLAUSE

We decided **that we are going to sell the house**.
 Albert has decided **that he will major in English**.

decide _____ *determine the outcome of*

OBJECT

A goal in overtime decided **the game**.
 The voters in Ohio will decide **the election**.
 His key testimony decided **the trial**.

EXPRESSIONS

decided *unquestionable, definite*

The taller man had a decided advantage.

PRESENT

I declare we declare
 you declare you declare
 he/she/it declares they declare
 • *Jason declares that he will enter the race.*

PAST

I declared we declared
 you declared you declared
 he/she/it declared they declared
 • *The company declared a dividend.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has declared

PAST PERFECT ... had declared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am declaring we are declaring
 you are declaring you are declaring
 he/she/it is declaring they are declaring
 • *I am declaring all my income.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was declaring we were declaring
 you were declaring you were declaring
 he/she/it was declaring they were declaring
 • *We were just declaring how nice your garden looks.*

FUTURE ... will declare

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be declaring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have declared

PAST PASSIVE

I was declared we were declared
 you were declared you were declared
 he/she/it was declared they were declared
 • *War was declared in 1939.*

COMPLEMENTS

declare announce one's intention to run
 [for office]

Jackson declared for sheriff today.
 When will the senator declare for re-election?

declare _____ state formally/publicly/officially, proclaim

OBJECT

The president declared **war** on poverty.
 The company declared **victory** in its patent suit.
 The accused declares **his innocence**.
 The company had to declare **bankruptcy** today.
 The governor declared **a day of mourning**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

Ralph declared **John (to be) the best friend he ever had**.
 The paper declared **the senator (to be) a credit to the nation**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The court declared **Uncle Henry (to be) incompetent**.
 The lawyer declared **his client (to be) innocent**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The author declared **that she would donate her royalties to charity**.

WH-CLAUSE

The chairperson declared **that the meeting was in session**.

My father loudly declared **what a lucky man his son-in-law was**.

DIRECT QUOTATION

The guests all declared **how tall Sally was getting**.

"We are in a recession," George declared.

declare _____ make a complete statement of [goods one is bringing into / sending out of the country]

OBJECT

We declared **the bottles of wine we bought in Italy**.

PRESENT

I defend we defend
 you defend you defend
 he/she/it defends they defend

• *We defend your right to free speech.*

PAST

I defended we defended
 you defended you defended
 he/she/it defended they defended

• *He defended some pretty odd clients.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has defended

PAST PERFECT ... had defended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am defending we are defending
 you are defending you are defending
 he/she/it is defending they are defending

• *I'm defending two juveniles accused of burglary.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was defending we were defending
 you were defending you were defending
 he/she/it was defending they were defending

• *They were defending the whole coastline.*

FUTURE

... will defend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be defending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have defended

PAST PASSIVE

I was defended we were defended
 you were defended you were defended
 he/she/it was defended they were defended

• *The fort was strongly defended.*

COMPLEMENTS

defend *engage in defense, play the role of defender*

I am defending.
 Their team defends well against the run.

defend _____ *protect from attack/danger/criticism/challenge*

OBJECT

The soldiers defended **the village** against armed attack.
 Stanford is defending **the north goal**.
 Huxley defended **Darwin's ideas**.
 The press vigorously defends **the right of free speech**.

WH-CLAUSE

You must defend **what you hold dear**.
 Alice defended **what she had written**.
 The elite units defended **wherever the threat was the greatest**.

defend _____ *act as attorney for*

OBJECT

Clarence Darrow defended **John Scopes**.

defend _____ *uphold the validity of [an academic thesis]*

OBJECT

Ruth is defending **her M.A. thesis** at noon.

defend _____ *seek to retain [a title, position]*

OBJECT

The Giants are defending **their title**.
 He will defend **his championship** this fall.
 I have to defend **my job** at every board meeting.

defend _____ *make an excuse for, justify*

OBJECT

How do you defend **your outrageous behavior at the party**?

PRESENT

I define we define
 you define you define
 he/she/it defines they define
 • *His work defines what is stylish.*

PAST

I defined we defined
 you defined you defined
 he/she/it defined they defined
 • *The military defined lines of authority.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has defined

PAST PERFECT ... had defined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am defining we are defining
 you are defining you are defining
 he/she/it is defining they are defining
 • *I'm defining it as a total failure.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was defining we were defining
 you were defining you were defining
 he/she/it was defining they were defining
 • *The surveyors were defining the property lines.*

FUTURE

... will define

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be defining

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have defined

PAST PASSIVE

I was defined we were defined
 you were defined you were defined
 he/she/it was defined they were defined
 • *The concept was defined by the ancient Greeks.*

COMPLEMENTS

define _____ state the meaning of

OBJECT

Who can define **justice**?

The coach tried to define **the offside rule**.

OBJECT + *as* OBJECT

I defined **justice as a sense of fair play**.

The dictionary defines "**persnickety**" *as* "**fussy about small details**."

define _____ describe in detail, make clear

OBJECT

Please define **the duties of the secretary**.

The candidates tried to define **the important campaign issues**.

WH-CLAUSE

The advertisement defined **the new features of the operating system**.

Can you define **what a barouche is**?

I defined **what duty means to me**.

define _____ characterize

OBJECT

People define **themselves** by their choices.

Politicians always try to define **their opponents**.

OBJECT + *as* OBJECT

The president defined **Simpson's behavior as outrageous and uncalled-for**.

Language defines **us as human**.

define _____ mark/fix the limits/outline of

OBJECT

The row of trees defines **our property line**.

Rivers often define **state boundaries**.

WH-CLAUSE

The speed of light defines **how fast things can move**.

Usury laws define **how much interest can be charged on a loan**.

PRESENT

I deliver we deliver
 you deliver you deliver
 he/she/it delivers they deliver
 • *The company only delivers on weekdays.*

PAST

I delivered we delivered
 you delivered you delivered
 he/she/it delivered they delivered
 • *Someone just delivered the pizza.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has delivered

PAST PERFECT ... had delivered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am delivering we are delivering
 you are delivering you are delivering
 he/she/it is delivering they are delivering
 • *I'm delivering the speech tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was delivering we were delivering
 you were delivering you were delivering
 he/she/it was delivering they were delivering
 • *They were delivering furniture yesterday.*

FUTURE ... will deliver

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be delivering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have delivered

PAST PASSIVE

I was delivered we were delivered
 you were delivered you were delivered
 he/she/it was delivered they were delivered
 • *The package was delivered this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

deliver engage in delivery

Do you deliver?
 The deli only delivers in the neighborhood.

deliver fulfill promises/expectations

He always delivers when he is most needed.
 No matter how sick he is, a good player always delivers.

deliver give birth

The mother in Room 313 delivered yesterday.

deliver _____ transport [to the proper person or location]

OBJECT

Did they deliver **my package**?

They delivered **the wrong thing** again!

WH-CLAUSE

We can only deliver **what has been prepaid**.

They will deliver **whatever you need to ship**.

deliver _____ provide [something desirable]

OBJECT

My group can deliver **the votes**.

The new hybrid delivers **great mileage**.

deliver _____ hand over, surrender

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

The suspect delivered **the stolen goods**.

The guard delivered **the prisoners to the county jail**.

deliver _____ set free, rescue

OBJECT + from OBJECT

Please deliver **us from our enemies**.

My aunt and uncle delivered **me from an unhappy childhood**.

deliver _____ speak/sing in a performance

OBJECT

The senator delivered **his speech** in Chicago.

She delivered **her song** in a clear, ringing voice.

deliver _____ give birth to

OBJECT

Andrea delivered **a baby girl** this morning.

deliver _____ help in giving birth to

OBJECT

The nurse delivered **the twin girls**.

EXPRESSIONS

deliver a blow strike [someone/
 something] in a certain way
 [OFTEN FIGURATIVE]

The policeman delivered a blow that broke
 the hoodlum's jaw.

The candidate delivered a blow that undermined
 his opponent's argument.

PRESENT

I demand	we demand
you demand	you demand
he/she/it demands	they demand

• *He demands to see a lawyer.*

PAST

I demanded	we demanded
you demanded	you demanded
he/she/it demanded	they demanded

• *She demanded a refund.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has demanded

PAST PERFECT ... had demanded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am demanding	we are demanding
you are demanding	you are demanding
he/she/it is demanding	they are demanding

• *I'm demanding that they be punished.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was demanding	we were demanding
you were demanding	you were demanding
he/she/it was demanding	they were demanding

• *They were demanding equal rights.*

FUTURE ... will demand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be demanding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have demanded

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was demanded	they were demanded

• *An apology was demanded.*

COMPLEMENTS

demand _____ call for forcefully, often as a right or with authority

OBJECT

The customer demanded **a refund**.

I demanded **an apology**.

The crowd demanded **justice**.

The boss demanded **too much** of his employees.

The robber demanded **money** from the bank teller.

INFINITIVE

I demand **to be heard**.

The owner demanded **to be paid for the damages**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The senator demanded **that he be given equal time**.

The chair demanded **that the meeting be called to order**.

We demand **that we be permitted to leave**.

WH-CLAUSE

I'm only demanding **what is owed to me**.

The robber demanded **whatever valuables we had**.

demand _____ require, need

OBJECT

This job demands **strong attention to detail**.

EXPRESSIONS

demanding requiring much attention/
effort/time

This secretarial job is very demanding.

One cannot please the most demanding customers.

PRESENT

I demonstrate we demonstrate
 you demonstrate you demonstrate
 he/she/it demonstrates they demonstrate
 • *He always demonstrates a desire to help.*

PAST

I demonstrated we demonstrated
 you demonstrated you demonstrated
 he/she/it demonstrated they demonstrated
 • *They demonstrated their trustworthiness.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has demonstrated

PAST PERFECT ... had demonstrated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am demonstrating we are demonstrating
 you are demonstrating you are demonstrating
 he/she/it is demonstrating they are demonstrating
 • *The union is demonstrating against the company.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was demonstrating we were demonstrating
 you were demonstrating you were demonstrating
 he/she/it was demonstrating they were demonstrating
 • *We were demonstrating for equal rights.*

FUTURE

... will demonstrate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be demonstrating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have demonstrated

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was demonstrated they were demonstrated

• *The procedure was demonstrated to the other doctors.*

COMPLEMENTS

demonstrate *illustrate a process/
 procedure*

demonstrate *participate in a public
 display of opinion*

demonstrate _____ *show clearly, illustrate, explain, prove [with examples, experiments]*

OBJECT

Professor, will you demonstrate?

I will demonstrate to the audience.

The students seem to demonstrate every week against
 the university's involvement in war research.

The workers are demonstrating for higher wages.

Dr. Brown demonstrated **the procedure**.The girls demonstrated **their science project**.The salespeople demonstrated **the computers** to the customers.I will demonstrate **what I had in mind**.The expert demonstrated **why the validity of the photograph
 was in question**.The police demonstrated **how the accident had happened**.He demonstrated **what to do in case of fire**.The nurse demonstrated **how to put on a bandage**.

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

PRESENT

I deny we deny
 you deny you deny
 he/she/it denies they deny
 • *He totally denies doing anything wrong.*

PAST

I denied we denied
 you denied you denied
 he/she/it denied they denied
 • *They denied him a visa.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has denied

PAST PERFECT ... had denied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am denying we are denying
 you are denying you are denying
 he/she/it is denying they are denying
 • *The suspect is denying everything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was denying we were denying
 you were denying you were denying
 he/she/it was denying they were denying
 • *He was denying them the right of free speech.*

FUTURE ... will deny

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be denying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have denied

PAST PASSIVE

I was denied we were denied
 you were denied you were denied
 he/she/it was denied they were denied
 • *The story was denied by the senator.*

COMPLEMENTS

deny _____ declare to be false

OBJECT

He denies **any claim that he was involved.**

I deny **the allegation.**

WH-CLAUSE

We totally deny **what the prosecution has alleged.**

I deny **whatever they have said about me.**

deny _____ refuse to believe

OBJECT

Some groups deny **the theory of evolution.**

The police denied **Mike's story.**

deny _____ refuse to admit/acknowledge

OBJECT

He denied **any responsibility for the accident.**

I denied **Jerry's crazy accusations.**

THAT-CLAUSE

We denied **that we were even at the party.**

Drivers always deny **that they were speeding.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The kids denied **breaking the window.**

The salesman denied **promising a 90-day warranty on the car.**

deny _____ reject, refuse to grant

OBJECT

The governor denied **the petition.**

The CEO denied **my request for a meeting.**

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

Would you deny **a hungry child food?**

Would you deny **food to a hungry child?**

PRESENT

I depend we depend
 you depend you depend
 he/she/it depends they depend
 • *John depends on his staff.*

PAST

I depended we depended
 you depended you depended
 he/she/it depended they depended
 • *I depended on outside consultants.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has depended

PAST PERFECT ... had depended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am depending we are depending
 you are depending you are depending
 he/she/it is depending they are depending
 • *I'm depending on you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was depending we were depending
 you were depending you were depending
 he/she/it was depending they were depending
 • *We were depending on getting a larger budget.*

FUTURE

... will depend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be depending

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have depended

PAST PASSIVE

I was depended we were depended
 you were depended you were depended
 he/she/it was depended they were depended
 • *His advice was greatly depended on.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *depend* is usually used with *on*. However, *on* is optional with WH-CLAUSE complements, especially in conversation.

depend *be contingent on something* “Will you go to the party?” “That depends.”

depend _____ *be based/contingent on, be determined by*

on OBJECT

Plant life depends **on water and oxygen**.Our department depends **on government grants**.Where we go on vacation depends **on the value of the dollar**.Crowd size depends **on the weather and available parking**.

(on) WH-CLAUSE

My job depends **(on) who wins the election**.It depends **(on) what you mean**.The price depends **(on) where you want to go**.It depends **(on) how much it costs**.

depend _____ *rely on, trust*

on OBJECT

You can depend **on me**.Stella depended **on the kindness of strangers**.We are going to win. Depend **on it!**

on OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I depended **on him to give us good advice**.They depended **on the shelter to protect them from the storm**.People depend too much **on milk to provide their calcium**.

on PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The village depends **on getting safe drinking water from their wells**.They are depending **on your getting them home**.My parents depend **on my helping them with their computer problems**.

PRESENT

I derive we derive
 you derive you derive
 he/she/it derives they derive
 • *He derives his income from investments.*

PAST

I derived we derived
 you derived you derived
 he/she/it derived they derived
 • *I derived a solution within five minutes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has derived

PAST PERFECT ... had derived

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am deriving we are deriving
 you are deriving you are deriving
 he/she/it is deriving they are deriving
 • *He is not deriving much satisfaction from it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was deriving we were deriving
 you were deriving you were deriving
 he/she/it was deriving they were deriving
 • *They were deriving ethanol from corn.*

FUTURE ... will derive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be deriving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have derived

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was derived they were derived
 • *The compound was derived in our labs.*

COMPLEMENTS

derive _____ originate
 from OBJECT

My optimism derives **from the robust economy**.
 “Duke” derives **from the Latin word “dux.”**
 Western philosophy derives **from the ancient Greeks**.

derive _____ get, obtain
 OBJECT (+ from OBJECT)

We derive **the chemical** organically.
 We derive **gas from coal**.
 He derives **his information from the foreign press**.
 I derive **much satisfaction from my work**.
 Popular culture derives **many expressions from sports**.
 Many English words are derived **from the Vikings**.
 We derive **what we need** synthetically.
 They derive **whatever energy they need from water power**.

PASSIVE
 WH-CLAUSE (+ from OBJECT)

derive _____ arrive at by reasoning
 OBJECT

She derived **that equation** from the definitions given in class.
 They derived **a completely different conclusion**.
 Holmes derived **the killer’s identity** through reasoning alone.

PRESENT

I describe we describe
 you describe you describe
 he/she/it describes they describe
 • *Melville accurately describes whaling.*

PAST

I described we described
 you described you described
 he/she/it described they described
 • *She described what he looks like.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has described

PAST PERFECT ... had described

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am describing we are describing
 you are describing you are describing
 he/she/it is describing they are describing
 • *I'm not describing it very well, I'm afraid.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was describing we were describing
 you were describing you were describing
 he/she/it was describing they were describing
 • *The students were describing their summer vacations.*

FUTURE ... will describe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be describing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have described

PAST PASSIVE

I was described we were described
 you were described you were described
 he/she/it was described they were described
 • *The pre-war situation was described in the last lecture.*

COMPLEMENTS

describe _____ portray, represent, explain

OBJECT

Can you describe **your attacker**?Please describe **your living room** to me.His articles describe **the consequences of global warming**.The dance describes **the nature of conflict**.OBJECT + *as* OBJECTHe described **the operation as a complete success**.The press described **the verdict as a travesty of justice**.

PASSIVE

The verdict was described **as a travesty of justice**.

WH-CLAUSE

The book describes **what you should do to protect yourself from inflation**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The presentation described **how we can improve our job skills**.The guide described **what to look for**.The article described **how to make money in real estate**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He described **living in London during the war**.The doctor described **having a heart attack**.

describe _____ trace the outline of

OBJECT

He described **a circle** with a compass.Figure skaters must describe **elaborate shapes on the ice**.

PRESENT

I deserve we deserve
 you deserve you deserve
 he/she/it deserves they deserve
 • *He deserves a medal.*

PAST

I deserved we deserved
 you deserved you deserved
 he/she/it deserved they deserved
 • *He deserved everything he got.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has deserved

PAST PERFECT ... had deserved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Deserve is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Deserve is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will deserve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have deserved

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was deserved they were deserved
 • *Marion's reward was well deserved.*

COMPLEMENTS

deserve _____ *be worthy of, should get*

OBJECT

They deserve **a second chance**.
 She certainly deserves **our admiration**.
 This problem deserves **our full attention**.
 The term paper deserves **an "A."**

INFINITIVE

He didn't deserve **to be treated that way**.
 I deserve **to be heard**.

WH-CLAUSE

Her restaurant deserves **to have three stars**.
 He deserves **what he has coming to him**.
 They really deserve **whatever tips they earn**.
 People usually deserve **whatever reputation they have**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He didn't deserve **being treated that way**.
 I didn't deserve **being ignored**.
 No restaurant deserves **losing its license that way**.

EXPRESSIONS

deserve credit for _____ *should be recognized for*

Rebecca deserves credit for keeping the construction project on schedule.

deserve blame for _____ *should be held responsible for*

Congress deserves much of the blame for the financial crisis.

be deserving of _____ *be worthy of [praise, help]*

Zack is deserving of the award.
 Mrs. Nichols is deserving of energy assistance.

PRESENT

I design we design
 you design you design
 he/she/it designs they design
 • *She designs dresses in Milan.*

PAST

I designed we designed
 you designed you designed
 he/she/it designed they designed
 • *I designed a wonderful waterfall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has designed

PAST PERFECT ... had designed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am designing we are designing
 you are designing you are designing
 he/she/it is designing they are designing
 • *I'm designing something new.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was designing we were designing
 you were designing you were designing
 he/she/it was designing they were designing
 • *Our team was designing accounting software.*

FUTURE ... will design

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be designing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have designed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was designed they were designed

• *The school was designed by architect William B. Ittner.*

COMPLEMENTS

design _____ conceive and develop (plans for)

OBJECT

He designed **the new mall**.
 They design **artwork for CD covers**.
 My boss designed a **perfect scheme for betting on horse races**.

WH-CLAUSE

We only design **what we can build in six months**.
 They will design **whatever you need**.
 They will design **whatever kind of advertising campaign the company wants**.

design _____ conceive and develop [for a specific purpose]

OBJECT + as OBJECT

The firm designed **the external drive as a USB device**.
 The publisher designed **the book as an aid to language learners**.
 He designed **his blog as an alternative to the mainstream media**.

OBJECT + to be OBJECT

The firm designed **the external drive to be a USB device**.
 The publisher designed **the book to be an aid to language learners**.
 He designed **his blog to be an alternative to the mainstream media**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I designed **a new device to record messages**.
 We design **cars to go faster and faster**.
 Nate designed **a statistical model to predict elections better**.
 We designed **the operating system to be more robust**.

EXPRESSIONS

be designed for _____
be intended for

This bread machine was not designed for daily use.

PRESENT

I desire we desire
 you desire you desire
 he/she/it desires they desire
 • *He desires to be introduced.*

PAST

I desired we desired
 you desired you desired
 he/she/it desired they desired
 • *We desired too much too soon.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has desired

PAST PERFECT ... had desired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Desire is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Desire is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will desire

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have desired

PAST PASSIVE

I was desired we were desired
 you were desired you were desired
 he/she/it was desired they were desired
 • *An immediate response was desired.*

COMPLEMENTS

desire _____ wish for, request

OBJECT

We all desire **a good job with benefits**.
 The kids desired **more computer time**.
 The world desires **peace**.

(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The company desired (for) **the CEO to be a member of the board**.
 We desired (for) **the party to be a complete surprise**.

INFINITIVE

He desires **to see them one last time**.
 Ingrid desired **to be left alone**.
 The manager desired **to be kept informed**.

WH-CLAUSE

We all seem to desire **what we can't get**.
 The kids all desire **whatever they see on TV**.

PRESENT

I destroy we destroy
 you destroy you destroy
 he/she/it destroys they destroy
 • *A tornado destroys everything in its path.*

PAST

I destroyed we destroyed
 you destroyed you destroyed
 he/she/it destroyed they destroyed
 • *They destroyed all the records.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has destroyed**PAST PERFECT** ... had destroyed**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am destroying we are destroying
 you are destroying you are destroying
 he/she/it is destroying they are destroying
 • *I'm destroying my old bank statements.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was destroying we were destroying
 you were destroying you were destroying
 he/she/it was destroying they were destroying
 • *Forest roads were destroying the stream beds.*

FUTURE ... will destroy**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be destroying**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have destroyed**PAST PASSIVE**

I was destroyed we were destroyed
 you were destroyed you were destroyed
 he/she/it was destroyed they were destroyed
 • *The army was destroyed.*

COMPLEMENTS**destroy** _____ ruin, demolish, crush

OBJECT

The storm destroyed **the old barn**.
 The noise from the TV destroyed **my concentration**.
 Their stupid argument totally destroyed **our dinner party**.
 Critics destroy **what they don't understand**.
 The advancing army destroyed **whatever was in its path**.

WH-CLAUSE

destroy _____ kill [an animal]

OBJECT

The vet had to destroy **the injured horse**.

PASSIVE

Abandoned pets are often destroyed.

PRESENT

I detail we detail
 you detail you detail
 he/she/it details they detail
 • *He details even the smallest expenses.*

PAST

I detailed we detailed
 you detailed you detailed
 he/she/it detailed they detailed
 • *He detailed the recruits to the mess hall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has detailed

PAST PERFECT ... had detailed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am detailing we are detailing
 you are detailing you are detailing
 he/she/it is detailing they are detailing
 • *I'm detailing everything you need to know.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was detailing we were detailing
 you were detailing you were detailing
 he/she/it was detailing they were detailing
 • *We were detailing all of the recommendations.*

FUTURE ... will detail

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be detailing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have detailed

PAST PASSIVE

I was detailed we were detailed
 you were detailed you were detailed
 he/she/it was detailed they were detailed
 • *His complaints were detailed in the company log.*

COMPLEMENTS

detail _____ report/list even the smallest things about

OBJECT

Please detail **the events that led to the accident.**

You must detail **all of your expenses.**

I detailed **everything that had happened since I arrived.**

WH-CLAUSE

I detailed **what happened that night.**

You should detail **how often the operating system failed.**

In my diary, I detailed **wherever we stopped on our trip.**

detail _____ assign [to/for a task]

OBJECT

The captain detailed **the men** for guard duty.

PASSIVE

We were detailed to another unit.

detail _____ wash, wax, and restore to pristine condition [a vehicle]

OBJECT

Some car washes will also detail **your car.**

Owners often detail **their antique cars** to an incredible degree.

PRESENT

I determine we determine
 you determine you determine
 he/she/it determines they determine
 • *Economic conditions determine the result.*

PAST

I determined we determined
 you determined you determined
 he/she/it determined they determined
 • *We determined to continue the expansion.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has determined**PAST PERFECT** ... had determined**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am determining we are determining
 you are determining you are determining
 he/she/it is determining they are determining
 • *We are still determining what is the best thing to do.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was determining we were determining
 you were determining you were determining
 he/she/it was determining they were determining
 • *I was determining where I could have lost my wallet.*

FUTURE

... will determine

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be determining**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have determined**PAST PASSIVE**

I was determined we were determined
 you were determined you were determined
 he/she/it was determined they were determined
 • *Our policies were determined by pure self-interest.*

COMPLEMENTS**determine** _____ *decide, figure out*

OBJECT

The board determines **all company policies**.You must first determine **the area of the floor to be painted**.

INFINITIVE

They determined **to try again**.George determined **to mind his own business** in the future.

THAT-CLAUSE

We determined **that we should go ahead**.The jury determined **that the defendant was innocent**.

WH-CLAUSE

I haven't determined **what I should major in**.We still couldn't determine **why the experiment failed**.

WH-INFINITIVE

I never determined **what to do**.Have you determined **where to stay** yet?**determine** _____ *be the cause of, control*

OBJECT

Our team's superior physical condition determined **the outcome of the game**.National interest always determines **national policy**.

WH-CLAUSE

In war, luck often determines **who will live and who will die**.**EXPRESSIONS****be determined** *be resolved, have one's mind set*

My spouse is determined to get a Ph.D.

The owner was determined to turn a profit last year.

determine the root of a problem *figure out the causes of a problem*

You must determine the root of a problem before you can solve it.

PRESENT

I develop we develop
you develop you develop
he/she/it develops they develop
• *Prostate cancer usually develops slowly.*

PAST

I developed we developed
you developed you developed
he/she/it developed they developed
• *They developed an interesting proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has developed

PAST PERFECT ... had developed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am developing we are developing
you are developing you are developing
he/she/it is developing they are developing
• *He is developing the land north of the freeway.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was developing we were developing
you were developing you were developing
he/she/it was developing they were developing
• *The patient was developing resistance to the drug.*

FUTURE ... will develop

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be developing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have developed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was developed they were developed
• *The new software was developed by our division.*

COMPLEMENTS

develop *grow and mature*

A human develops from a single fertilized egg.
Infants develop at an amazing rate.
Nicole is developing into a fine golfer.
Our reunion plans are developing nicely.

develop *come into being gradually*

The situation is developing as we expected.

develop _____ *turn out, happen*

it + develop + THAT-CLAUSE

It developed **that three senators were also involved in the scandal.**

develop _____ *elaborate*

OBJECT

He needs to develop **his ideas** further.
Mozart develops **two new themes** in the second movement.

develop _____ *utilize, exploit*

OBJECT

The company is developing **its land in Idaho**.
We must develop **our advantage in skilled labor**.
You can only develop **what resources you have**.

WH-CLAUSE

develop _____ *promote the growth of, expand*

OBJECT

Only exercise can develop **muscles**.
The warm weather is developing **the wheat** rapidly.
He developed **his tiny restaurant** into a national chain.

develop _____ *acquire gradually*

OBJECT

I have developed **an interest in opera**.

develop _____ *bring into being and evolve*

OBJECT

The company leads the industry in developing **new products**.
We develop **video games** for the entertainment industry.
Arnold is developing **a new television show**.
The website was developed by our engineers and designers.
The company only develops **what it can sell**.
Our team will develop **whatever plug-ins you want**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

develop _____ *get [a disease]*

OBJECT

Annie developed **a rash** on her arms and legs.
Bart developed **measles** at summer camp.

PRESENT

I devote we devote
 you devote you devote
 he/she/it devotes they devote
 • *He devotes his weekends to restoring cars.*

PAST

I devoted we devoted
 you devoted you devoted
 he/she/it devoted they devoted
 • *I devoted 10% of my tax refund to charity.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has devoted

PAST PERFECT ... had devoted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am devoting we are devoting
 you are devoting you are devoting
 he/she/it is devoting they are devoting
 • *I'm devoting a lot of time to it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was devoting we were devoting
 you were devoting you were devoting
 he/she/it was devoting they were devoting
 • *We were devoting our resources to staff development.*

FUTURE ... will devote

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be devoting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have devoted

PAST PASSIVE

I was devoted we were devoted
 you were devoted you were devoted
 he/she/it was devoted they were devoted
 • *The fund was devoted to wildlife preservation.*

COMPLEMENTS

devote _____ commit, apply [to a specific purpose]

OBJECT + to OBJECT

I devote **my free time to charity work.**Our company devotes **itself to research.**We devote **ourselves to our children.**

OBJECT + to WH-CLAUSE

I devoted **fully half of the basement to a print shop.**We devote **our resources to whoever needs them the most.**They devote **their restoration efforts to whatever buildings are most at risk.**

OBJECT + to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Sally devotes **her time to saving the environment.**

WH-CLAUSE + to OBJECT

They devote **whatever they can afford to their church.**

WH-CLAUSE + to WH-CLAUSE

I devote **what I can to what needs doing.**

WH-CLAUSE + to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We devote **whatever profits we make to building a stronger community.**

devote _____ consecrate

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The Romans devoted **their greatest temple to Jupiter.**

PASSIVE

The greatest Roman temple was devoted **to Jupiter.**

EXPRESSIONS

devoted loyal, dedicated

Amber was a truly devoted daughter.

PRESENT

I die we die
 you die you die
 he/she/it dies they die
 • *The engine dies whenever I brake.*

PAST

I died we died
 you died you died
 he/she/it died they died
 • *The rumors finally died.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has died

PAST PERFECT ... had died

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dying we are dying
 you are dying you are dying
 he/she/it is dying they are dying
 • *The tomato plants are dying.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dying we were dying
 you were dying you were dying
 he/she/it was dying they were dying
 • *We were dying of thirst.*

FUTURE ... will die

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have died

PAST PASSIVE

Die is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

die stop living

His aunt died of cancer.
 In *Hamlet*, nearly everyone dies at the end.
 My grandfather died before I was born.
 The criminal was sentenced to die by hanging.
 “It is sweet and fitting to die for one’s country.” [HORACE]

die stop functioning

My iPod just died.
 The chain saw kept dying.

die go out of existence

The committee dies at the end of the session.
 My anger died when I learned what had really happened.
 The storm finally died during the night.

die fail, lose force

All of his early plays died after a few performances.
 The bill died before it came to a vote.
 The crowd’s laughter slowly died.

die suffer greatly, agonize [FIGURATIVE]

I’m dying here in all this heat.

die _____ suffer greatly, agonize [FIGURATIVE]
 of OBJECT

My mother was dying **of curiosity**.
 Our son was dying **of boredom** at Grandma’s house.

die _____ desire greatly [FIGURATIVE]
 for OBJECT

The kids were dying **for ice cream**.
That chocolate cake is to die **for!**

INFINITIVE

I’m dying **to find out what happened**.
 The kids are dying **to open their presents**.
 Thelma is dying **to see Louise**.

PHRASAL VERBS

die away/down/out disappear gradually

The echo of her footsteps died away.
 The wind died down after midnight.
 The noise from the bar finally died down.
 The fire will eventually die out.

die back die from the tips toward the roots, become dormant [OF PLANTS]

Perennials die back in the fall or winter.

die off/out become extinct, die one by one until all are gone

Mammals thrived after the dinosaurs died off.
 When did the Neanderthals die out?

die on _____ stop functioning while being operated by

My cell phone died on me again.

PRESENT

I dig we dig
 you dig you dig
 he/she/it digs they dig
 • *He really digs in at supertime.*

PAST

I dug we dug
 you dug you dug
 he/she/it dug they dug
 • *They dug up a lot of information.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dug

PAST PERFECT ... had dug

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am digging we are digging
 you are digging you are digging
 he/she/it is digging they are digging
 • *I'm digging as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was digging we were digging
 you were digging you were digging
 he/she/it was digging they were digging
 • *The kids were digging in the backyard.*

FUTURE

... will dig

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be digging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dug

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was dug they were dug
 • *The foundation was dug last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

dig turn up / remove soil by hand, tool,
 or machine

dig search [for something]

dig _____ create [a hole] by removing soil

OBJECT

dig _____ remove from the soil

OBJECT

dig _____ notice, understand, like [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

I have been digging all afternoon.

We will dig tomorrow.

Nicole dug in her suitcase for the shampoo.

I am digging everywhere I can think of.

The accountants are really digging.

The road crew was digging a **trench**.The dog dug a **hole** in our front lawn.They have dug **the foundation**.The farmer dug **potatoes** in the field.Miners can dig **coal** from the slopes.Did you dig **that crazy shirt**?I couldn't dig **all that technical talk**.Kids don't dig **classical music**.Did you dig **what he was saying**?I can't dig **what the teacher is saying**.Did you dig **who was in that movie**?

PHRASAL VERBS

dig at _____ criticize

dig down/deep be generous

dig in start to work intensively

dig in start eating

dig into _____ investigate thoroughly

dig into _____ start eating

dig SEP out uncover by digging

dig SEP out obtain by searching

dig SEP up uncover by digging

dig SEP up obtain by searching

He's always digging at me for my conservatism.

We all must dig down to feed the poor.

There were 23 court cases to study, and the lawyers dug in.

Supper's on the table. Dig in!

The detectives dug into the suspect's background.

The workmen dug into the stew and biscuits.

Tim dug his car out with a snow shovel.

Let's dig out the family photo albums.

We dug 23 arrowheads up in one afternoon.

Reporters dug up a lot of information about the mayor.

PRESENT

I direct we direct
 you direct you direct
 he/she/it directs they direct
 • *He directs the emergency response team.*

PAST

I directed we directed
 you directed you directed
 he/she/it directed they directed
 • *She directed a number of movies.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has directed

PAST PERFECT ... had directed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am directing we are directing
 you are directing you are directing
 he/she/it is directing they are directing
 • *He is directing a play.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was directing we were directing
 you were directing you were directing
 he/she/it was directing they were directing
 • *The police were directing traffic on Elm Street.*

FUTURE ... will direct

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be directing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have directed

PAST PASSIVE

I was directed we were directed
 you were directed you were directed
 he/she/it was directed they were directed
 • *The archaeological dig was directed by Dr. Brown.*

COMPLEMENTS

direct lead people in a performance

Henry Smith will be directing.
 He has never directed before.

direct _____ be in charge of, manage

OBJECT

I am directing **the new project**.
 She will direct **the program**.
 He will direct **all fund-raising activities**.
 She is directing **the installation of the new piece of sculpture**.

direct _____ supervise performers in [an artistic production]

OBJECT

He directed **one of the Harry Potter films**.
 The brothers have directed **a number of movies**.
 I have directed **four Broadway plays**.

direct _____ point/channel to a specified person/place

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The signs directed **us down a side street**.
 The ships directed **their guns on the fort**.
 Direct **your questions to my press secretary**.
 The tourists directed **their attention to the statue of Venus**.
 We directed **the floodwater away from the house**.
 Our attention was directed **to the inscription on the monument**.

PASSIVE

direct _____ order

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The judge directed **the jury to ignore the last statement**.
 The police directed **him to put up his hands**.

PASSIVE

He was directed **to put up his hands**.

PRESENT

I disappear we disappear
 you disappear you disappear
 he/she/it disappears they disappear
 • *He disappears right after dinner.*

PAST

I disappeared we disappeared
 you disappeared you disappeared
 he/she/it disappeared they disappeared
 • *The money disappeared last night.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has disappeared**PAST PERFECT** ... had disappeared**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am disappearing we are disappearing
 you are disappearing you are disappearing
 he/she/it is disappearing they are disappearing
 • *Wild mushrooms are disappearing from the forests.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was disappearing we were disappearing
 you were disappearing you were disappearing
 he/she/it was disappearing they were disappearing
 • *The T-shirts were disappearing fast.*

FUTURE

... will disappear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be disappearing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have disappeared**PAST PASSIVE***Disappear* is rarely used in the passive voice.**COMPLEMENTS****disappear** *vanish from view*

The mountains disappeared in the fog.
 Alice stared as the Cheshire cat disappeared.
 The man disappeared around the corner.
 The suspects disappeared into the crowd.

disappear *go out of existence*

The fog disappeared as the sun rose.
 Many species of frogs have disappeared over the last decade.
 All of the investors' money has just disappeared.
 When the ship passed us by, our last hope disappeared.

PRESENT

I discover we discover
you discover you discover
he/she/it discovers they discover
• *Holmes always discovers the murderer.*

PAST

I discovered we discovered
you discovered you discovered
he/she/it discovered they discovered
• *I discovered an important letter.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has discovered

PAST PERFECT ... had discovered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am discovering we are discovering
you are discovering you are discovering
he/she/it is discovering they are discovering
• *I'm discovering how much I need to learn.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was discovering we were discovering
you were discovering you were discovering
he/she/it was discovering they were discovering
• *We were discovering something new every day.*

FUTURE ... will discover

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be discovering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have discovered

PAST PASSIVE

I was discovered we were discovered
you were discovered you were discovered
he/she/it was discovered they were discovered
• *The spy's identity was never discovered.*

COMPLEMENTS

discover _____ *be the first to see / learn about*

OBJECT

William Herschel discovered **Uranus** in 1781.
Marie and Pierre Curie discovered **radium** in 1902.
Francis Crick and James Watson discovered **the structure of DNA** on the basis of research by Rosalind Franklin.
Edwin Hubble discovered **the first direct evidence that the universe is expanding.**

discover _____ *see / become aware of for the first time*

OBJECT

We discovered **a new problem with the design.**
I finally discovered **a solution.**
They discovered **a leak in the water line.**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The doctor discovered **George to be diabetic.**
We discovered **him to be encouraged by recent events.**

PASSIVE

He was discovered **to be sleeping on the job.**

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The police discovered **him breaking into a car.**
We discovered **a squirrel gnawing a hole in our roof.**

PASSIVE

He was discovered **sleeping on the job.**

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

She discovered **her mother exhausted from the trip.**
We discovered **him encouraged by recent events.**
We discovered **Frank embittered by what had happened.**

THAT-CLAUSE

We discovered **that we were in real trouble.**
I discovered **that the battery was dead.**
We discovered **that he was encouraged by recent events.**

WH-CLAUSE

Jasper discovered **what had gone wrong.**
We discovered **where we could park without getting a ticket.**
They discovered **why the company was losing so much money.**
We discovered **why he was encouraged by recent events.**

WH-INFINITIVE

I quickly discovered **what not to do.**
We discovered **where to get good pizza.**
The kids discovered **how to turn on the TV.**

discover _____ *reveal, make known*

OBJECT

Our investigation discovered **several instances of contamination.**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The investigation discovered **the patrolman to be taking bribes.**

PRESENT

I discuss we discuss
 you discuss you discuss
 he/she/it discusses they discuss
 • *He discusses politics on the radio.*

PAST

I discussed we discussed
 you discussed you discussed
 he/she/it discussed they discussed
 • *We discussed this problem yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has discussed

PAST PERFECT ... had discussed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am discussing we are discussing
 you are discussing you are discussing
 he/she/it is discussing they are discussing
 • *I'm discussing the proposal with my group.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was discussing we were discussing
 you were discussing you were discussing
 he/she/it was discussing they were discussing
 • *We were discussing him when you came in.*

FUTURE ... will discuss

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be discussing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have discussed

PAST PASSIVE

I was discussed we were discussed
 you were discussed you were discussed
 he/she/it was discussed they were discussed
 • *The plans were thoroughly discussed at the meeting.*

COMPLEMENTS

discuss _____ talk about, consider in writing/speech

OBJECT

We were discussing **the latest rumor**.
 They discussed **Tim's behavior at the party**.
 The board discussed **a possible merger**.
 Last week we discussed **the causes of World War I**.
 The article discusses **Albert Einstein's theory of relativity**.
 The Gettysburg Address discussed **the principles of human equality**.
 The committee discussed **who would receive bonuses this year**.
 They discussed **what they had seen on Oprah**.
 The book discusses **how electricity is generated by wind turbines**.
 We discussed **how much we were all paying for gas**.
 The lawyers discussed **whom to bill**.
 They discussed **where to go on vacation**.
 My report discusses **how to save electricity**.
 My wife and I discussed **how much to pay the babysitter**.

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

PRESENT

I display we display
 you display you display
 he/she/it displays they display
 • *He displays his work at art fairs.*

PAST

I displayed we displayed
 you displayed you displayed
 he/she/it displayed they displayed
 • *She displayed fine motor skills.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has displayed

PAST PERFECT ... had displayed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am displaying we are displaying
 you are displaying you are displaying
 he/she/it is displaying they are displaying
 • *I'm displaying my lawn sculptures this weekend.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was displaying we were displaying
 you were displaying you were displaying
 he/she/it was displaying they were displaying
 • *The soldiers were displaying great bravery.*

FUTURE

... will display

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be displaying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have displayed

PAST PASSIVE

I was displayed we were displayed
 you were displayed you were displayed
 he/she/it was displayed they were displayed

• *His paintings were displayed at a museum in New York.*

COMPLEMENTS

display exhibit artwork

I am displaying in Miami this fall.
 Will you be able to display soon?
 Have you ever displayed in a gallery?

display engage in a breeding ritual

Most birds display during mating season.
 Many male mammals display both to attract females
 and to discourage male rivals.

display _____ exhibit, place into view

OBJECT

They display **the flag** on every holiday.
 Merchants displayed **their wares** in booths.
 Mary Ann displayed **her new winter coat**.
 Their son proudly displayed **his missing tooth**.

WH-CLAUSE

They displayed **what they had to sell**.
 The shops displayed **whatever goods they had left
 after the flood**.

display _____ demonstrate, reveal

OBJECT

The unit displayed **great courage under fire**.
 His behavior displayed **great consideration for others**.
 The senator's proposal displayed **a total disregard
 for his constituents**.

WH-CLAUSE

They displayed **what they were made of**.
 The inventor displayed **how his device worked**.

display _____ show off

OBJECT

Richard likes to display **his knowledge of Latin**.
 He is always displaying **his erudition**.

WH-CLAUSE

They display **how rich they are**.
 He displays **how much everything costs**.

PRESENT

I distinguish we distinguish
 you distinguish you distinguish
 he/she/it distinguishes they distinguish
 • *She distinguishes two types of tumors.*

PAST

I distinguished we distinguished
 you distinguished you distinguished
 he/she/it distinguished they distinguished
 • *He distinguished himself in linguistics.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has distinguished**PAST PERFECT** ... had distinguished**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am distinguishing we are distinguishing
 you are distinguishing you are distinguishing
 he/she/it is distinguishing they are distinguishing
 • *The student is distinguishing himself from the others.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was distinguishing we were distinguishing
 you were distinguishing you were distinguishing
 he/she/it was distinguishing they were distinguishing
 • *They were distinguishing ant species by their DNA.*

FUTURE ... will distinguish**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be distinguishing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have distinguished**PAST PASSIVE**

I was distinguished we were distinguished
 you were distinguished you were distinguished
 he/she/it was distinguished they were distinguished
 • *Her research was distinguished by its originality.*

COMPLEMENTS**distinguish** _____ notice as different, tell apart

OBJECT

We need to distinguish **the difference**.Can you distinguish **the twins**?OBJECT + *and* OBJECTAny farmer can distinguish **wheat and barley**.OBJECT + *from* OBJECTAll morality distinguishes **right from wrong**.WH-CLAUSE + *from* WH-CLAUSEYou must distinguish **what people say from what they actually do**.We distinguish **what we want from what we need**.**distinguish** _____ make special, set apart

OBJECT

Teamwork and camaraderie distinguish **the Cardinals**.OBJECT + *from* OBJECTHis enthusiasm distinguishes **him from his co-workers**.**distinguish** _____ recognize

OBJECT

It is always easy to distinguish **Beethoven's music**.Everybody can distinguish **the skyline of Manhattan**.

PASSIVE

His paintings are easily distinguished.

distinguish _____ make [oneself] famous

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

My neighbor distinguished **himself** in the field of molecular biology.REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +
AS PREDICATE NOUNGrace distinguished **herself as a pioneer in pediatric health care**.**EXPRESSIONS****distinguished** *famous, outstanding*We heard the distinguished cellist
Yo-Yo Ma play.

PRESENT

I dive we dive
you dive you dive
he/she/it dives they dive

• *The market dives after bad economic news.*

PAST

I dived/dove we dived/dove
you dived/dove you dived/dove
he/she/it dived/dove they dived/dove

• *I never dived from the highest board.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dived

PAST PERFECT ... had dived

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am diving we are diving
you are diving you are diving
he/she/it is diving they are diving

• *I'm diving into the bond market.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was diving we were diving
you were diving you were diving
he/she/it was diving they were diving

• *We were diving for lobsters.*

FUTURE

... will dive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be diving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dived

PAST PASSIVE

Dive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

dive *plunge into water headfirst*

She dived into the pool.
I dived from the 10-meter board.
I dove with my eyes closed.
Michael has been diving since he was four years old.

dive *go/swim underwater*

The submarine dove to 75 meters.
The ducks were diving in the pond.
The whale dove as soon as the boat approached.
We were diving in wet suits.

dive *fall sharply and quickly*

The plane dived under the clouds.
The temperature dives at nightfall.
The market dived on the news.

dive _____ *plunge quickly, lunge*
for OBJECT

The soldiers dove **for cover**.
The shortstop dove **for the ball**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dive in *start doing something energetically*

We put the craft materials on the table and told the kids to dive right in.

dive into _____ *start doing energetically*

Becky dove into the new design project.
New arrivals are diving right into the discussion.

PRESENT

I divide we divide
 you divide you divide
 he/she/it divides they divide
 • *He divides his clients into two groups.*

PAST

I divided we divided
 you divided you divided
 he/she/it divided they divided
 • *I divided the assignment into three parts.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has divided

PAST PERFECT ... had divided

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dividing we are dividing
 you are dividing you are dividing
 he/she/it is dividing they are dividing
 • *I'm dividing the room into two sections.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dividing we were dividing
 you were dividing you were dividing
 he/she/it was dividing they were dividing
 • *The cells were dividing rapidly.*

FUTURE ... will divide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dividing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have divided

PAST PASSIVE

I was divided we were divided
 you were divided you were divided
 he/she/it was divided they were divided
 • *The money was divided evenly.*

COMPLEMENTS

divide replicate

Bacteria divide rapidly in a favorable environment.
 Cancer cells divide more frequently than normal cells.

divide branch out, become separated

The branches are dividing close to the trunk of the tree.
 Voters usually divide along party lines.

divide _____ separate [into parts/groups]

OBJECT

OBJECT + into OBJECT

A stone fence divides **the farmers' fields** from each other.
 Researchers divided **the participants into three groups**.
 The Civil War divides **American history into two distinct periods**.

PASSIVE

All Gaul is divided **into three parts**.

divide _____ separate into opposing sides

OBJECT

The issue divided **the country**.

divide _____ distribute, portion out

OBJECT

OBJECT + between/among OBJECT

Ruby divided **her daylilies**.
 Grandmother divides **her time between reading and working crossword puzzles**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

We will divide **the cookies among us**.
 The estate was divided **among the heirs**.
 We will divide **whatever we get** equally.
 They divided **what they had earned**.

divide _____ separate arithmetically [into equal parts]

OBJECT

Please divide **84** by 6.
 Can you divide **356** into 4 equal shares?

PHRASAL VERBS

divide up separate

The class should divide up into three teams.

divide SEP up apportion

The four brothers divided the acreage up among themselves.

EXPRESSIONS

divide and conquer / divide and rule
 cause a group of people to fight each other, then defeat them all

The boss knows how to divide and conquer his managers.

PRESENT

I do we do
 you do you do
 he/she/it does they do
 • *He always does his best.*

PAST

I did we did
 you did you did
 he/she/it did they did
 • *I did everything you asked.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has done

PAST PERFECT ... had done

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am doing we are doing
 you are doing you are doing
 he/she/it is doing they are doing
 • *I'm doing what I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was doing we were doing
 you were doing you were doing
 he/she/it was doing they were doing
 • *We were doing just fine until we had an accident.*

FUTURE ... will do

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be doing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have done

PAST PASSIVE

I was done we were done
 you were done you were done
 he/she/it was done they were done
 • *The job was done in record time.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Do* is also used with the base form of a verb

- to ask questions in the simple present and past tenses
 Do you want some candy?
- to form negative statements with *not* in the simple present and past tenses
 I do not think we will win.
- to emphasize what one is saying
 I do wish Mary would attend.

do *manage, get along*

do *be adequate/right*

“How is your son doing in school?” “He’s doing well, thanks.”

A couple of hours will do.

Ten dollars will do.

Your blue suit will do for the party.

do _____ *perform, finish working on*

OBJECT

I did **some errands** after lunch.

I was just doing **my job**.

We always do **the crossword puzzle** together.

The kids should do **their homework** soon.

I did **what needed to be done**.

We will do **whatever job we are assigned**.

WH-CLAUSE

do _____ *perform [for someone’s benefit]*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Do **me a favor**.

He did **them a good deed**.

They did **the company a real service**.

Do **a favor for me**.

He did **a good deed for them**.

They did **a real service for the company**.

for PARAPHRASE

do _____ *prepare, clean, decorate, arrange*

OBJECT

We did **the table** before the guests came.

I did **a nice roast** for dinner.

I did **the dishes** afterwards.

My husband does **the laundry**.

We did **the living room** in pale blue.

She does **my hair**.



do _____ travel [a distance] / visit [a place] / spend [time]

OBJECT

Hikers can do **20 miles a day**.
His car can do **100 miles an hour**.
We will do **several museums** this afternoon.
I did **three years** in the Navy.

do _____ be right/proper [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

INFINITIVE

It won't do **to be late for the meeting**.
It doesn't do **to get all upset about it**.
It will never do **to come in over budget**.

do _____ cause, have as an effect

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The wind did **a lot of damage**.
A nap will do **you some good**.

do _____ create, produce, play a role in

OBJECT

The author is doing **a biography of Abraham Lincoln**.
The artist is doing **portraits of famous people**.
The actress did **three movies** last year.

PHRASAL VERBS

do away with _____ eliminate

I did away with my landline phone at home.
The company did away with employee bonuses.

do away with _____ murder

He did away with three wives before he was caught.

do SEP in make very tired

Driving for three hours does me in.

do SEP in cause the death/failure of, kill

Pneumonia finally did him in.

The mob tried to do in the entire police force.
The politician was done in by greed.

do [someone] out of _____ prevent [someone] from getting

The con artist did investors out of their life's savings.

do SEP over repeat

I misspelled a word and had to do the sign over.

do SEP over decorate differently

The couple did over the living room last summer.

do SEP up wrap [a package]

Would you do up this gift for me?

do SEP up fasten [clothing]

She did up her son's coat.

do SEP up decorate, dress up

We will do up the office for the boss's birthday.
Anya really did herself up for the party.

do without _____ get along without

We can't do without your help.

EXPRESSIONS

could do with _____ want, need

I could do with some ice cream right now.

do a job/number on _____ damage, harm

The kids really did a job on our furniture.
The committee did a number on his budget proposal.

do _____ dirty treat poorly

The team did him dirty by trading him to the Lions.

do _____ for a living earn money on which to live by doing

"What does she do for a living?" "She does web design."

do the trick be exactly what is needed

Lowering interest rates does the trick every time.
This pocketknife will do the trick.

Nancy does well to give a speech without crying.
Gordon did well to escape the fire uninjured.

What does my zip code have to do with my car insurance?

The problem has something to do with the cable service.

top
40
verb

do well to _____ be lucky in doing

have to do with _____ concern, be about

PRESENT

I draw we draw
 you draw you draw
 he/she/it draws they draw
 • *He draws a grim picture of the economy.*

PAST

I drew we drew
 you drew you drew
 he/she/it drew they drew
 • *Her presentation drew a large audience.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has drawn

PAST PERFECT ... had drawn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drawing we are drawing
 you are drawing you are drawing
 he/she/it is drawing they are drawing
 • *The play is drawing well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drawing we were drawing
 you were drawing you were drawing
 he/she/it was drawing they were drawing
 • *We were drawing up a new will.*

FUTURE ... will draw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be drawing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have drawn

PAST PASSIVE

I was drawn we were drawn
 you were drawn you were drawn
 he/she/it was drawn they were drawn
 • *The sketches were drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.*

COMPLEMENTS

draw create a picture

She draws beautifully.

draw attract an audience

Art students must draw every day.

draw show a handgun

Costume dramas rarely draw well.

draw _____ create [a picture]

Policemen are trained to draw and aim but hold their fire.

OBJECT

The children drew **pictures of their families**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The architects have drawn **a floor plan**.

for PARAPHRASE

The children drew **them pictures**.

The economist drew **us a scary picture of the future**.

The children drew **pictures for them**.

The economists **drew a scary picture of the future for us**.

draw _____ create a picture of

OBJECT

The artist drew **the Taj Mahal**.

I'd like to draw **Queen Victoria without her crown**.

draw _____ drag, pull, extract

OBJECT

The teacher drew **the children** away from the window.

I drew **the curtains** across the windows.

The archers drew **their bows**.

The nurse needs to draw **a blood sample**.

He drew **the winning number**.

draw _____ move steadily

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The robber drew **closer to his victim**.

My business day was drawing **to a close**.

draw _____ attract

OBJECT

Water always draws **mosquitoes**.

He usually draws **a big crowd**.

draw _____ form

OBJECT

Voters must draw **their own conclusions** from the debate.

PHRASAL VERBS

draw SEP **up** write, formulate

A young attorney drew up my will.

Our family drew up an evacuation plan.

PRESENT

I dream we dream
you dream you dream
he/she/it dreams they dream
• *He dreams of getting rich.*

PAST

I dreamed we dreamed
you dreamed you dreamed
he/she/it dreamed they dreamed
• *I dreamed that I ate a giant marshmallow.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dreamed

PAST PERFECT ... had dreamed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dreaming we are dreaming
you are dreaming you are dreaming
he/she/it is dreaming they are dreaming
• *If I'm dreaming, don't wake me up.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dreaming we were dreaming
you were dreaming you were dreaming
he/she/it was dreaming they were dreaming
• *I was dreaming that I was late to work.*

FUTURE ... will dream

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dreaming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dreamed

PAST PASSIVE

I was dreamed we were dreamed
you were dreamed you were dreamed
he/she/it was dreamed they were dreamed
• *It was never even dreamed of 50 years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

dream *have thoughts and images while one sleeps*

I think I was dreaming.
We can all dream, can't we?
I must have been dreaming.

dream *pass time idly*

Sorry, I was just dreaming.

dream _____ *have [thoughts and images] while one sleeps about OBJECT*

Last night I dreamed **about my grandmother**.
Do rabbits dream **about carrots**?
She dreamt **about Cassie and Pookie**.
I never dream **about my childhood**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I dreamed **that I had gotten lost in the woods**.
Cinderella dreamt **that she had met her prince**.

about PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I dreamt **about losing my job**.
He dreamed **about their moving back home**.

dream _____ *imagine, wish of OBJECT*

We all dream **of a better future for our children**.
Everyone dreams **of world peace**.
Everyone dreams **that they will be rich and famous**.
People always dream **that tomorrow will be better than today**.
Cubs fans could only dream **of winning the World Series**.
Actors always dream **of getting the big break**.

THAT-CLAUSE

of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

dream _____ *consider possible/proper [ALWAYS NEGATIVE] of PRESENT PARTICIPLE*

We wouldn't dream **of going to the party without you**.
He would never dream **of eating meat**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dream SEP **away** *spend [time] idly*

Let's sit on the riverbank and dream away the day.

dream SEP **up** *invent, concoct*

Our board dreamed up a plan to avoid bankruptcy.
My brother and I dream up all kinds of wacky ideas.

PRESENT

I dress we dress
 you dress you dress
 he/she/it dresses they dress
 • *She dresses very stylishly.*

PAST

I dressed we dressed
 you dressed you dressed
 he/she/it dressed they dressed
 • *I dressed the children in hats and coats.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dressed

PAST PERFECT ... had dressed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dressing we are dressing
 you are dressing you are dressing
 he/she/it is dressing they are dressing
 • *Just a minute, I'm dressing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dressing we were dressing
 you were dressing you were dressing
 he/she/it was dressing they were dressing
 • *We were dressing up for the party.*

FUTURE ... will dress

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dressing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dressed

PAST PASSIVE

I was dressed we were dressed
 you were dressed you were dressed
 he/she/it was dressed they were dressed
 • *The salad was dressed before we served it.*

COMPLEMENTS

dress *put on / wear clothes*

I had to dress at my friend's house.
 We dressed as quickly as we could.
 We need to dress carefully for the reception.
 You must learn to dress for success.

dress _____ *put [clothes] on [someone]*

OBJECT

You need to dress **the children** before breakfast.
 I dressed **them** in their snow jackets.
 We dressed **ourselves** in our Sunday best.
 The babies were dressed by their grandmother.

PASSIVE

dress _____ *provide with clothes*

OBJECT

It is expensive to dress **a family**.
 We need to feed and dress **all the refugees**.

dress _____ *decorate*

OBJECT

The committee will dress **the speaker's platform**.
 We always dress **the church** for Easter.

dress _____ *apply medicine and bandages to [a wound]*

OBJECT

The corpsmen dressed **all the open wounds**.
 I dressed **Harry's scraped knee**.
 All the open wounds were dressed by the corpsmen.

PASSIVE

dress _____ *prepare [food] for cooking/serving*

OBJECT

Carl dressed **the deer that he had shot**.
 I will dress **the salad** at the table.

dress _____ *arrange [hair]*

OBJECT

She dresses **my hair** for me.
 I need to dress **Alice's hair** before she leaves.

PHRASAL VERBS

dress down *wear casual clothes*

On Casual Friday, we all dress down.

dress up *wear formal clothes*

We have to dress up for the gala opening.

dress up *wear a costume*

My daughter is dressing up as Princess Leia for Halloween.

dress SEP **up** *put formal clothes on*

We have to dress the children up for the birthday party.

dress SEP **up** *put a costume on*

We dressed our daughter up as Princess Leia.

PRESENT

I drink we drink
 you drink you drink
 he/she/it drinks they drink

• *John drinks white wine.*

PAST

I drank we drank
 you drank you drank
 he/she/it drank they drank

• *I drank two cups of coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has drunk

PAST PERFECT ... had drunk

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was drunk they were drunk

• *Orange juice was always drunk at breakfast.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drinking we are drinking
 you are drinking you are drinking
 he/she/it is drinking they are drinking

• *I'm only drinking green tea these days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drinking we were drinking
 you were drinking you were drinking
 he/she/it was drinking they were drinking

• *They were drinking in the hotel bar.*

FUTURE ... will drink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be drinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have drunk

COMPLEMENTS

drink take a liquid in one's mouth and swallow it Is the patient able to drink?
 He is drinking without any trouble now.
 Don't try to drink too soon.

drink consume alcoholic beverages Jack is drinking again.
 They never drink.
 We drink only on special occasions.

drink _____ consume [a liquid]
 OBJECT I like to drink **sparkling water**.
 He only drinks **imported beer**.
 Their kids never drink **soda pop**.
 We will drink **what is already open**.
 I'll drink **whatever is on tap**.

drink _____ cause [oneself] to be in a particular state
 as a result of excessive alcohol consumption He drank **himself into oblivion**.
 The college students drank **themselves into a stupor**.
 One of my neighbors drank **himself to death**.
 REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + into OBJECT He drank **himself stupid**.
 They drank **themselves blind**.
 REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT I drank **myself senseless**.
 REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

drink SEP **away** consume alcohol to relieve
 oneself of The lonely widower drank
 his troubles away.
drink SEP **down** swallow [a liquid] completely Mother told me to drink the syrup down in one gulp.
drink SEP **in** absorb with the mind/senses He drinks in knowledge like a sponge.
 The tourists drank in the mountain scenery.
 We drank in the sights and sounds of New Year's Eve.
drink to _____ make a toast to Let's drink to the couple's health and happiness.
 I'll drink to that!
Drink up! Start/keep drinking! There's more wine in the cellar. Drink up!
drink SEP **up** consume all of [a liquid] My teenage sons drank up all the milk.

PRESENT

I drive we drive
 you drive you drive
 he/she/it drives they drive
 • *He drives a blue Toyota.*

PAST

I drove we drove
 you drove you drove
 he/she/it drove they drove
 • *I drove the kids to school.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has driven

PAST PERFECT ... had driven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am driving we are driving
 you are driving you are driving
 he/she/it is driving they are driving
 • *I'm driving home this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was driving we were driving
 you were driving you were driving
 he/she/it was driving they were driving
 • *We were driving to Seattle.*

FUTURE ... will drive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be driving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have driven

PAST PASSIVE

I was driven we were driven
 you were driven you were driven
 he/she/it was driven they were driven
 • *The decision was driven by the need to be more cost effective.*

COMPLEMENTS

drive operate a vehicle

Who can drive?
 My grandmother never drives at night.

drive move with great force/speed

The rain was driving across the road.
 The army drove forward relentlessly.

drive _____ operate [a vehicle (equipped with)]

OBJECT

He is driving an **old pickup truck**.
 We drove a **rented convertible** in Hawaii.
 Who can drive a **stick shift**?

drive _____ cause to go [to a specific place]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I drove **the car into the garage**.
 Can you drive **me home**?
 The waves drove **the boat onto the rocks**.
 The farmers were driving **their sheep to pasture**.

drive _____ press forcefully

OBJECT

The company drives **its sales force** hard.
 The jockeys drove **their horses** as hard as they could.

drive _____ force into a specific condition/behavior

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Reading Dr. King's speeches drove **him to a life of service**.
 You are driving **me crazy**.
 His behavior drove **his parents mad**.
 The bad reviews drove **the author to completely revise the play**.
 Famine drove **the peasants to revolt**.

drive _____ shape, propel

OBJECT

National interest always drives **foreign policy**.
 Opposition to slavery drove **public opinion in the North**.
 Oil prices now drive **the value of the dollar**.

PHRASAL VERBS

drive SEP **down** cause to decrease

Foreclosures are driving down home prices.

drive SEP **up** cause to increase

Limiting oil production will drive prices up.

drive _____ **on** cause to move forward to success

It is the memory of my mother that drives me on.

PRESENT

I drop we drop
 you drop you drop
 he/she/it drops they drop
 • *He always drops by at the wrong time.*

PAST

I dropped we dropped
 you dropped you dropped
 he/she/it dropped they dropped
 • *Our team dropped three games in a row.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dropped

PAST PERFECT ... had dropped

PAST PASSIVE

I was dropped we were dropped
 you were dropped you were dropped
 he/she/it was dropped they were dropped
 • *The plan was dropped for lack of support.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dropping we are dropping
 you are dropping you are dropping
 he/she/it is dropping they are dropping
 • *I'm dropping a package off for you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dropping we were dropping
 you were dropping you were dropping
 he/she/it was dropping they were dropping
 • *The kids were dropping coins in the fountain.*

FUTURE ... will drop

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dropping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dropped

COMPLEMENTS

drop *fall*drop *fall / lie down due to exhaustion*drop *decrease*drop _____ *let fall*

OBJECT

drop _____ *lower*

OBJECT

drop _____ *abandon, give up on*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

drop _____ *omit*

OBJECT

drop _____ *lose*

OBJECT

drop _____ *say/send casually*

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

drop _____ *end a relationship with [INFORMAL]*

OBJECT

The ginkgo leaves dropped in a single day.

Our spirits dropped when we heard the news.

She worked so hard in the yard that she just dropped.

The temperature dropped last night.

Production of new cars has dropped significantly.

I dropped **the letter** into the mailbox.Startled by the sudden noise, I dropped **my glass**.The actor dropped **his voice** at the end of every line.The union dropped **its lawsuit against the company**.I had to drop **the course**.Drop **what you are doing** and help me.Jackie always drops **the "g" in "doing."**He dropped **these names** from the membership list.Our team dropped **another close game** last night.Sara has dropped **15 pounds** this year.He drops **hints that you need to pay attention to**.She dropped **her mother a brief note**.She dropped **a brief note to her mother**.After six months of dating, Gwen dropped **Ben**.

PHRASAL VERBS

drop **by/in (on _____)** *make an informal/unexpected visit (to [someone])*drop **SEP off** *take to a specific place and leave*

Drop by anytime!

We dropped in on Grandpa yesterday.

Please drop me off at the mall.

PRESENT

I dry we dry
 you dry you dry
 he/she/it dries they dry
 • *This paint dries in four hours.*

PAST

I dried we dried
 you dried you dried
 he/she/it dried they dried
 • *I dried off the table so we could eat.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dried

PAST PERFECT ... had dried

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drying we are drying
 you are drying you are drying
 he/she/it is drying they are drying
 • *I'm drying the laundry.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drying we were drying
 you were drying you were drying
 he/she/it was drying they were drying
 • *We were drying the rugs after the flood.*

FUTURE ... will dry

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be drying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dried

PAST PASSIVE

I was dried we were dried
 you were dried you were dried
 he/she/it was dried they were dried
 • *The sample was dried by evaporation.*

COMPLEMENTS

dry *become moisture-free*

The herbs were drying in the sun.
 My new shirt dries in just a couple of hours.
 My hair will never dry in this humidity.

dry _____ *remove all the moisture from*

OBJECT

Can you dry **the children** when they get out of the pool?
 This wind dries **my skin** terribly.
 I waved the documents in the air to dry **the ink on the signatures**.

PASSIVE

The children were dried when they got out of the pool.

PHRASAL VERBS

dry off *make oneself dry*

dry SEP **off** *make dry*

I dry off before stepping out of the shower.
 Linda dried the kids off before they ran into the house.
 Dry yourself off before you come into the kitchen.
 Dry off the table before you stack books on it.

dry out *undergo withdrawal from alcohol/drugs*

dry SEP **out** *cause [someone] to become sober*

Luke dried out at Hope Center.
 The police dried him out before releasing him from jail.

dry up *become completely dry*

dry up *disappear*

dry SEP **up** *cut off the supply of*

The farmer's well dried up in November.
 Our source for Italian soda has dried up.
 The weak housing market has dried up opportunities for construction managers.

PRESENT

I eat we eat
 you eat you eat
 he/she/it eats they eat
 • *He only eats cereal for breakfast.*

PAST

I ate we ate
 you ate you ate
 he/she/it ate they ate
 • *I ate breakfast early this morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has eaten

PAST PERFECT ... had eaten

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was eaten they were eaten
 • *Only a third of the cat food was eaten.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am eating we are eating
 you are eating you are eating
 he/she/it is eating they are eating
 • *We are eating out tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was eating we were eating
 you were eating you were eating
 he/she/it was eating they were eating
 • *I was eating lunch when I got the news.*

FUTURE ... will eat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be eating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have eaten

COMPLEMENTS

eat *take food in one's mouth and swallow it* The children usually eat around noon.
 I eat too much when I get stressed.
 I'll call you back, we're eating now.
 Let's eat!

eat _____ consume [food]

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

The kids love to eat **pizza**.
 My wife will never eat **liver**.
 Can we eat **what was left over from last night**?
 The dog eats **whatever the children drop on the floor**.

eat _____ bear the expense of

OBJECT

We will have to eat **the cost overrun**.
 They are just going to eat **the overhead costs**.
 You will have to eat **the rest of the contract**.

eat _____ make as if by eating

OBJECT

The paint remover ate **a hole** in my glove.

PHRASAL VERBS

eat (at) _____ bother, annoy

His criticisms have been eating at me all day.

eat at / away at / into _____ wear away, corrode

Rust was eating away at the exterior of my car.
 Acid was eating into the countertop.

eat in have a meal at home

The weather is awful. Let's eat in.

eat out have a meal in a restaurant

I don't feel like cooking. Let's eat out.

Eat up! Start/keep eating!

Dinner is getting cold. Eat up!

eat SEP up bite all over

Mosquitoes are eating the campers up.

eat SEP up use up, consume, waste

The boss's lavish lifestyle ate up the company's profit.

eat SEP up enjoy greatly

The singer told awful jokes, but the audience ate it up.

eat SEP up believe [something]

My aunt ate up everything she read in the tabloids.

EXPRESSIONS

eat _____ out of house and home
 consume all the food in [someone's] home

Our three sons are eating us out of
 house and home.

PRESENT

I eliminate we eliminate
you eliminate you eliminate
he/she/it eliminates they eliminate
• *The evidence eliminates all the suspects.*

PAST

I eliminated we eliminated
you eliminated you eliminated
he/she/it eliminated they eliminated
• *We eliminated two sales positions.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has eliminated

PAST PERFECT ... had eliminated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am eliminating we are eliminating
you are eliminating you are eliminating
he/she/it is eliminating they are eliminating
• *I'm eliminating all saturated fat from my diet.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was eliminating we were eliminating
you were eliminating you were eliminating
he/she/it was eliminating they were eliminating
• *They were eliminating all low-performing stores.*

FUTURE ... will eliminate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be eliminating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have eliminated

PAST PASSIVE

I was eliminated we were eliminated
you were eliminated you were eliminated
he/she/it was eliminated they were eliminated
• *My team was eliminated in the first round.*

COMPLEMENTS

eliminate *expel bodily waste*

You need to eliminate on a regular basis.
Some desert rats never eliminate.

eliminate _____ *put an end to, eradicate*

OBJECT

President Johnson tried to eliminate **poverty in America**.
She wanted to eliminate **bribery as a political way of life**.

eliminate _____ *remove from competition*

OBJECT

We have eliminated **all of the candidates**.
The Cardinals eliminated **the Panthers** in the semifinal round.

eliminate _____ *remove from consideration*

OBJECT

The board eliminated **the option of bankruptcy**.
Detectives have eliminated **two of the suspects**.

WH-CLAUSE

The police eliminated **whoever was not at the crime scene**.
The designer eliminated **whatever was distracting**.

eliminate _____ *get rid of, dispose of*

OBJECT

We have tried to eliminate **all unnecessary expenses**.
They've eliminated **any trace of having been there**.

WH-CLAUSE

We eliminated **what we didn't need to carry with us**.
They eliminated **whichever flights were nonstop**.

PRESENT

I emerge	we emerge
you emerge	you emerge
he/she/it emerges	they emerge

• *A great leader often emerges in a crisis.*

PAST

I emerged	we emerged
you emerged	you emerged
he/she/it emerged	they emerged

• *A new problem emerged the next day.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has emerged

PAST PERFECT ... had emerged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am emerging	we are emerging
you are emerging	you are emerging
he/she/it is emerging	they are emerging

• *A pattern is emerging from the data.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was emerging	we were emerging
you were emerging	you were emerging
he/she/it was emerging	they were emerging

• *We were finally emerging from the fog.*

FUTURE ... will emerge

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be emerging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have emerged

PAST PASSIVE

Emerge is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

emerge *appear, come into view*

A plane emerged from the clouds.
 A dark shape suddenly emerged from the mist.
 A school of fish emerged from the shadow of the dock.
 The manager finally emerged from his office just before 5 o'clock.

emerge *come into existence*

Most mammal lines emerged before the dinosaurs became extinct.

emerge *become known*

Yet another problem with the program emerged today.
 New allegations are emerging almost daily.
 The extent of his injuries only emerged when the doctors saw the X-rays.
 Jones has emerged as a first-rate player.

emerge _____ *finish a contest/event in a specific condition/state*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The Democrats emerged **victorious** in the elections.
 Rick emerged **unhurt** from the collision.

PRESENT

I emphasize	we emphasize
you emphasize	you emphasize
he/she/it emphasizes	they emphasize

• *He always emphasizes safety.*

PAST

I emphasized	we emphasized
you emphasized	you emphasized
he/she/it emphasized	they emphasized

• *My first boss emphasized punctuality.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has emphasized

PAST PERFECT ... had emphasized

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am emphasizing	we are emphasizing
you are emphasizing	you are emphasizing
he/she/it is emphasizing	they are emphasizing

• *He is emphasizing the need for donors.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was emphasizing	we were emphasizing
you were emphasizing	you were emphasizing
he/she/it was emphasizing	they were emphasizing

• *We were emphasizing our reduced prices.*

FUTURE ... will emphasize

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be emphasizing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have emphasized

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was emphasized	they were emphasized

• *Accuracy was emphasized over speed.*

COMPLEMENTS

emphasize _____ place special importance on, stress

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| OBJECT | The real estate agent emphasized the remodeled kitchen .
Emphasize the second syllable in the verb “record.” |
| THAT-CLAUSE | The guide emphasized the importance of wearing a life vest at all times .
The pilot emphasized that we should have our seat belts fastened while we are seated .
Let me emphasize that we need to hurry .
I can't emphasize enough that the key to success is higher education . |
| WH-CLAUSE | He emphasized what we had to watch out for .
They emphasized why everyone should vote .
The teacher emphasized how we could improve our test scores . |
| WH-INFINITIVE | The fireman emphasized what to do in case of fire .
I emphasized where to go for help .
The teacher emphasized how to improve our test scores . |

PRESENT

I employ we employ
 you employ you employ
 he/she/it employs they employ
 • *The company employs over 500 workers.*

PAST

I employed we employed
 you employed you employed
 he/she/it employed they employed
 • *We employed a new secretary last week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has employed

PAST PERFECT ... had employed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am employing we are employing
 you are employing you are employing
 he/she/it is employing they are employing
 • *I'm employing all of our resources.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was employing we were employing
 you were employing you were employing
 he/she/it was employing they were employing
 • *They were only employing college graduates.*

FUTURE

... will employ

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be employing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have employed

PAST PASSIVE

I was employed we were employed
 you were employed you were employed
 he/she/it was employed they were employed
 • *I was first employed in 2002.*

COMPLEMENTS

employ hire workers

Are they employing?
 The company might be employing.
 They are not employing now.

employ _____ hire

OBJECT

They just employed **a new driver**.
 We haven't employed **anyone** for that position yet.
 She was only employed yesterday.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

The corporation employed **Kathryn as sales manager**.

employ _____ have working for oneself

OBJECT

The company employs **15,000 people** in 23 countries.
 Our firm employs **three full-time accountants**.

PASSIVE

John has been employed here for 20 years.
 Evelyn has been employed as a legal secretary for 13 years.
 Helen is employed in customer service.

employ _____ make use of

OBJECT

You must employ **all of your talents**.
 I employed **my newly acquired C++ programming skills**.
 General Gage had to employ **his last reserve unit**.
 The sergeant employed **whomever the captain sent him**.
 We will employ **whatever manpower we have**.
 I employed **whatever tools were at hand**.

WH-CLAUSE

employ _____ use for a particular purpose

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I employed **an air compressor to clean the keyboards**.
 They employed **me to fill in for Harry**.
 She employed the **shop vac to clean the leaves off the deck**.
 We employed **a lawn service to mow the grass**.

PRESENT

I enable we enable
 you enable you enable
 he/she/it enables they enable
 • *This code enables the alarm system.*

PAST

I enabled we enabled
 you enabled you enabled
 he/she/it enabled they enabled
 • *The Internet enabled me to work at home.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has enabled

PAST PERFECT ... had enabled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am enabling we are enabling
 you are enabling you are enabling
 he/she/it is enabling they are enabling
 • *The grant is enabling me to finish graduate school.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was enabling we were enabling
 you were enabling you were enabling
 he/she/it was enabling they were enabling
 • *The technicians were enabling the device.*

FUTURE ... will enable

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be enabling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have enabled

PAST PASSIVE

I was enabled we were enabled
 you were enabled you were enabled
 he/she/it was enabled they were enabled
 • *The feature was enabled in the latest software release.*

COMPLEMENTS

enable _____ make possible/feasible

OBJECT

The law enabled **the creation of a new agency**.
 The bipartisan agreement enabled **passage of the bill**.
 Excellent planning enabled **the success of the program**.

enable _____ make it possible for [someone/something to do]

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

His help enabled **me to succeed**.
 Its success enables **the company to provide health benefits**.
 The tow truck enabled **us to get out of the snow bank**.
 The loan enabled **Susan to finish school**.

enable _____ activate, cause to operate

OBJECT

Batteries enable **the panel** if the electricity fails.
 You have to enable **the alarm** every night.
 A computer program enables **the entire plant**.

PRESENT

I encounter we encounter
 you encounter you encounter
 he/she/it encounters they encounter
 • *Our proposals always encounter resistance.*

PAST

I encountered we encountered
 you encountered you encountered
 he/she/it encountered they encountered
 • *I encountered an ugly scene at the mall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has encountered

PAST PERFECT ... had encountered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am encountering we are encountering
 you are encountering you are encountering
 he/she/it is encountering they are encountering
 • *Our infantry is encountering counterattacks.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was encountering we were encountering
 you were encountering you were encountering
 he/she/it was encountering they were encountering
 • *The bill was encountering a lot of opposition.*

FUTURE

... will encounter

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be encountering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have encountered

PAST PASSIVE

I was encountered we were encountered
 you were encountered you were encountered
 he/she/it was encountered they were encountered
 • *Strong winds were encountered by the boats.*

COMPLEMENTS

encounter _____ meet/face, often by chance

OBJECT

Harriet encountered **her opponent** at the grocery store.
 Our little boat encountered **a terrible storm**.
 You encounter **all sorts of people** at the zoo.

encounter _____ experience, come up against

OBJECT

The proposal has encountered **total indifference**.
 Her idea will encounter **opposition**.
 The shuttle program has encountered **one delay after another**.
 We encountered **problems getting the interest rate we had hoped for**.
 Our forces are only encountering **light resistance**.
 The senator has encountered **some pretty hostile interviewers** lately.

PRESENT

I encourage we encourage
you encourage you encourage
he/she/it encourages they encourage
• *He encourages everyone to finish school.*

PAST

I encouraged we encouraged
you encouraged you encouraged
he/she/it encouraged they encouraged
• *They encouraged me to read a lot.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has encouraged

PAST PERFECT ... had encouraged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am encouraging we are encouraging
you are encouraging you are encouraging
he/she/it is encouraging they are encouraging
• *I am encouraging my co-workers to donate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was encouraging we were encouraging
you were encouraging you were encouraging
he/she/it was encouraging they were encouraging
• *Our teachers were always encouraging us.*

FUTURE

... will encourage

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be encouraging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have encouraged

PAST PASSIVE

I was encouraged we were encouraged
you were encouraged you were encouraged
he/she/it was encouraged they were encouraged
• *We were encouraged to go ahead with our plan.*

COMPLEMENTS

encourage _____ give hope/confidence to

OBJECT

His sermons encouraged **the entire congregation**.
Her example encouraged **all of us**.
The crowd's applause encouraged **the shy third graders**.
We encouraged **Alex** in his baseball career.

encourage _____ advise, urge

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Karen encouraged **us to begin a reading program**.
My mom encouraged **me to become a doctor**.

encourage _____ promote

OBJECT

The fertilizer encouraged **a new round of plant growth**.
Run-off fertilizer has greatly encouraged **algae growth** in the lakes.
The program was designed to encourage **greater fuel efficiency**.

encourage _____ make likely to

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The tax cut encouraged **companies to expand**.
The sight of cannon encouraged **the crowds to disperse**.

PRESENT

I end we end
 you end you end
 he/she/it ends they end
 • *The play ends with a merry dance.*

PAST

I ended we ended
 you ended you ended
 he/she/it ended they ended
 • *The game ended before dinnertime.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ended

PAST PERFECT ... had ended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ending we are ending
 you are ending you are ending
 he/she/it is ending they are ending
 • *They are ending their relationship.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ending we were ending
 you were ending you were ending
 he/she/it was ending they were ending
 • *The long stalemate was finally ending.*

FUTURE ... will end

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ended

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was ended they were ended
 • *The ugly scene was ended when Jim stormed out.*

COMPLEMENTS

end stop, cease

Will this night never end?
 The morning sessions end promptly at noon.
 The symphony ended on a triumphant chord.
 The game ended in a tie.

end _____ finish, stop
OBJECT

Wilma ended **their engagement**.
 The sudden storm abruptly ended **our picnic**.
Macbeth ends **the summer season**.
 The senator ended **his speech** with a promise to cut taxes.
 The vote ended **all hope of a compromise**.
 You must end **what you begin**.
 They need to end **whatever mischief they are up to**.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

NOTE: The following six constructions with *up* mean
 “be in [a condition/position/situation/location] at the end.”

end up _____

Our neighbor was a gambler and ended up broke.

end up as _____

Uncle Austin ended up as a lieutenant.

end up at _____

We had an accident and ended up at the hospital.
 The scholar ended up at the University of Wyoming.

end up (by) _____

We were so tired, we ended up by sleeping at Ned's house.
 Jim ended up going to Memphis for the weekend.

end (up) in _____

The argument ended up in a fistfight.

end (up) with _____

The meeting ended with the treasurer's report.
 The movie ended up with the boy and girl getting married.

EXPRESSIONS

end it all commit suicide

The pain became so severe that he ended it all.

_____ to end all _____ the best/greatest

That was the cruise to end all cruises.

end up with the short end of the stick
get less than others

In the divorce settlement, Sonny ended up with the
 short end of the stick.
 Bonnie ended up with the short end of the stick when
 the company handed out bonuses.

PRESENT

I engage we engage
 you engage you engage
 he/she/it engages they engage
 • *Danny's play totally engages the audience.*

PAST

I engaged we engaged
 you engaged you engaged
 he/she/it engaged they engaged
 • *I engaged a lawyer yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has engaged

PAST PERFECT ... had engaged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am engaging we are engaging
 you are engaging you are engaging
 he/she/it is engaging they are engaging
 • *We're engaging an architect for the restoration.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was engaging we were engaging
 you were engaging you were engaging
 he/she/it was engaging they were engaging
 • *The operation was engaging all of our resources.*

FUTURE ... will engage

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be engaging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have engaged

PAST PASSIVE

I was engaged we were engaged
 you were engaged you were engaged
 he/she/it was engaged they were engaged
 • *The battle was engaged at 5:30 this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

engage *start fighting*

The ships were engaging at long range.
 The opposing attorneys engaged as soon as the trial started.
 He never engages unless he has a decided advantage.

engage *fit/lock together, be in gear*

Are the gears engaged?
 The gears never did engage properly.
 The clutch engaged with a loud grinding noise.

be/get engaged *be pledged to marry*
 [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

Sally got engaged last night.
 They will not be engaged very long.
 Are they engaged?
 He has never been engaged before.

engage _____ *start fighting against*

The army engaged **the enemy** at 0500 hours.

engage _____ *hire, contract the services of*
 OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)

We will need to engage **a lawyer**.
 They engaged **a bus and a driver**.
 Six seniors engaged **a limousine for prom night**.
 We engaged **a contractor for our remodeling project**.
 They engaged **the band for the wedding**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We engaged **Mr. Smith to evaluate the estate**.
 We engaged **a consultant to help us launch the new product**.
 Mr. Smith was engaged **to evaluate the estate**.

PASSIVE

engage _____ *attract and hold, keep busy*
 OBJECT

That painting really engaged **my attention**.
 Computer games totally engage **my daughter's interest**.
 Gardening engages **all my spare time**.
 Stevie is completely engaged by her new job.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

engage in _____ *participate in*

Will Penelope engage in sports when she gets to college?

engage _____ *in cause to participate in*

Tamara engaged William in conversation.
 The boss engaged Mike in an exciting new project.

PRESENT

I enjoy we enjoy
 you enjoy you enjoy
 he/she/it enjoys they enjoy
 • *He enjoys gardening.*

PAST

I enjoyed we enjoyed
 you enjoyed you enjoyed
 he/she/it enjoyed they enjoyed
 • *I enjoyed meeting your friends.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has enjoyed

PAST PERFECT ... had enjoyed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was enjoyed they were enjoyed
 • *The picnic was enjoyed by everyone.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am enjoying we are enjoying
 you are enjoying you are enjoying
 he/she/it is enjoying they are enjoying
 • *I'm enjoying myself at the beach.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was enjoying we were enjoying
 you were enjoying you were enjoying
 he/she/it was enjoying they were enjoying
 • *We were enjoying a quiet evening at home.*

FUTURE ... will enjoy

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be enjoying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have enjoyed

COMPLEMENTS

enjoy _____ get pleasure/satisfaction from

OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

enjoy _____ have/experience [something good]

OBJECT

enjoy _____ have fun

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

I really enjoyed **the movie**.We have always enjoyed **their friendship**.The kids really enjoy **picnics**.Everyone enjoys **success**.I enjoy **living in London**.No one enjoys **commuting such long distances**.We always enjoy **seeing our high school classmates**.We enjoy **visiting with Harry and Rosie** on their farm.I enjoy **eating out once in awhile**.The book enjoyed **great success**.My uncle didn't enjoy **very good health**.The team doesn't enjoy **a lot of financial support**.I hope you enjoyed **yourself** at the picnic.

EXPRESSIONS

enjoy the best of both worlds *benefit from two opportunities that usually exclude each other*

We enjoy the best of both worlds: living out in the country and having high-speed Internet service.

PRESENT

I enter we enter
 you enter you enter
 he/she/it enters they enter
 • *Our son enters kindergarten this year.*

PAST

I entered we entered
 you entered you entered
 he/she/it entered they entered
 • *We entered into a new agreement.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has entered

PAST PERFECT ... had entered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am entering we are entering
 you are entering you are entering
 he/she/it is entering they are entering
 • *I'm entering the building now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was entering we were entering
 you were entering you were entering
 he/she/it was entering they were entering
 • *They were entering a new era in broadcasting.*

FUTURE

... will enter

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be entering

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have entered

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was entered they were entered
 • *All the new data was entered last night.*

COMPLEMENTS

enter come in

Please enter.
 I will enter as soon as I can.
 They will be entering in just a minute.
 Hamlet enters from stage left.
 Tourists enter through the east gate.

enter _____ come/go into

OBJECT

Elvis has entered **the building**.
 The Allies entered **Paris** on August 19, 1944.
 We entered **the dark room** cautiously.
 They entered **the United States** at LaGuardia Airport.
 The bullet entered **his shoulder**.

enter _____ participate/enroll in

OBJECT

I entered **the drawing**.
 Harry entered **the hotdog eating contest**.
 I will enter **the university** this fall.
 She will enter **the race for the open Senate seat**.

enter _____ register/enter [data]

OBJECT

They entered **their names** for the drawing.
 Please enter **your names** on the guest list.
 I entered **all the data** in the proper fields.

enter _____ make a new beginning in

OBJECT

The insects will soon enter **a new developmental stage**.
 I would be entering **a totally new career**.
 He decided to enter **politics**.
 Our sons are just entering **puberty**.

PHRASAL VERBS

enter into _____ take part in, become a part of

The president entered into a dialog with our enemies.
 Our firm entered into an agreement with the mayor's office.

enter [someone/something] in(to) _____ cause [someone/something] to join / enroll in

They will enter Jenny in the contest.
 I am entering a painting in the school's art fair.

enter (up)on _____ begin

Lucas entered on a career in accounting.

PRESENT

I entitle we entitle
 you entitle you entitle
 he/she/it entitles they entitle
 • *The law entitles me to a trial by my peers.*

PAST

I entitled we entitled
 you entitled you entitled
 he/she/it entitled they entitled
 • *It entitled them to apply for citizenship.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has entitiled

PAST PERFECT ... had entitiled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am entitiling we are entitiling
 you are entitiling you are entitiling
 he/she/it is entitiling they are entitiling
 • *I am entitiling the poem "Lost Rainbows."*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was entitiling we were entitiling
 you were entitiling you were entitiling
 he/she/it was entitiling they were entitiling
 • *He was entitiling the book Lost Memories.*

FUTURE ... will entitle

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be entitiling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have entitiled

PAST PASSIVE

I was entitiled we were entitiled
 you were entitiled you were entitiled
 he/she/it was entitiled they were entitiled
 • *He was entitiled to request payment.*

COMPLEMENTS

entitle _____ give the right

OBJECT + to OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

entitle _____ give a name to

OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE

The coupon entitles **you to a free pass**.The ranchers were entitiled **to a water allotment**.The law entitles **him to call his lawyer**.It entitles **the injured party to sue**.The laws in Texas entitle **people to carry concealed firearms**.What entitles **you to complain**?We are entitiled **to attend three seminars of our choosing**.They entitiled **their last album Broken Dreams**.Coward entitiled **his most famous play Blithe Spirit**.The book is entitiled **Happy Days**.The CD is entitiled **Mexico Sunset**.

PRESENT

I escape we escape
 you escape you escape
 he/she/it escapes they escape
 • *His name escapes me.*

PAST

I escaped we escaped
 you escaped you escaped
 he/she/it escaped they escaped
 • *Dillinger escaped from prison again.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has escaped

PAST PERFECT ... had escaped

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was escaped they were escaped
 • *The danger was narrowly escaped.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am escaping we are escaping
 you are escaping you are escaping
 he/she/it is escaping they are escaping
 • *I'm escaping the staff meeting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was escaping we were escaping
 you were escaping you were escaping
 he/she/it was escaping they were escaping
 • *The sheep were escaping through a hole in the fence.*

FUTURE

... will escape

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be escaping

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have escaped

COMPLEMENTS

escape *get free* [from confinement/
 restriction], *leak*

My pet turtle escaped yesterday.
 The balloons escaped from the party tent.
 Three prisoners escaped from the county jail.
 Fortunately, all of the crew escaped.
 The news quickly escaped to the public.
 The gas was escaping at a dangerous rate.

escape _____ *break free* [from confinement / an unpleasant or difficult situation/event]
 (from) OBJECT

No one ever escaped (**from**) Alcatraz alive.
 Three convicts escaped (**from**) the county jail last night.
 He escaped (**from**) a life of drudgery.
 I escaped (**from**) Senator Blather's talk.
 You can never escape **who you are**.
 I escaped **whoever was following me**.
 We escaped **whatever task we would have been given**.

WH-CLAUSE

escape _____ *come from unintentionally*
 OBJECT

A tiny smile escaped **her**.

escape _____ *avoid*
 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I escaped **having to do the dishes**.
 We will escape **working all night**.
 The driver barely escaped **running off the road**.
 We escaped **having to listen to his boasting**.
 They escaped **being punished for it**.

escape _____ *be forgotten by*
 OBJECT

The nurse's name escapes **me**.

EXPRESSIONS

escape [someone's] notice *be unnoticed
 by someone*

Nothing escapes the boss's notice.
 The darkening sky escaped his notice.

escape the ax *avoid being eliminated*

Four co-workers were laid off, but I escaped the ax.

PRESENT

I establish we establish
 you establish you establish
 he/she/it establishes they establish
 • *It establishes an important precedent.*

PAST

I established we established
 you established you established
 he/she/it established they established
 • *We established our case before the court.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has established

PAST PERFECT ... had established

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am establishing we are establishing
 you are establishing you are establishing
 he/she/it is establishing they are establishing
 • *He is establishing a new nonprofit foundation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was establishing we were establishing
 you were establishing you were establishing
 he/she/it was establishing they were establishing
 • *We were establishing what actually happened here.*

FUTURE

... will establish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be establishing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have established

PAST PASSIVE

I was established we were established
 you were established you were established
 he/she/it was established they were established
 • *The company was established in 1983.*

COMPLEMENTS

establish _____ bring about, create

OBJECT

The Constitution established **three separate branches of government.**The legislature established **the commission.**Uncle Henry established **a trust fund for his children.**He originally established **the company** in Delaware.

The United States was established in 1787.

PASSIVE

establish _____ prove beyond doubt

OBJECT

The evidence will establish **my client's innocence.**Astronomers have established **the existence of a black hole at the center of our galaxy.**The facts establish **the validity of his complaint.**The police cannot establish **the identity of the victim.**We will establish **that the will is invalid.**New research has established **that people have been in the New World for 20,000 years.**The geologists established **that there was oil in the region.**The police have established **who broke into the house.**This report will establish **what we have been saying all along.**We need to establish **when the accident occurred.**

WH-CLAUSE

establish _____ put on a firm basis

OBJECT

We need to establish **a good working relationship** with them.They managed to establish **a level of mutual trust.**All couples want to establish **a solid relationship.**He established **his son** in business.

establish _____ cause to be recognized/accepted

OBJECT

The album established **her reputation.**The album established **her reputation as a star.**Edgar established **himself as an economic guru.**It established **him as someone to be reckoned with.**The upset established **our team as a legitimate contender.**

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

PRESENT

I estimate we estimate
you estimate you estimate
he/she/it estimates they estimate
• *I estimate that the job will take a week.*

PAST

I estimated we estimated
you estimated you estimated
he/she/it estimated they estimated
• *They estimated the price at \$250.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has estimated

PAST PERFECT ... had estimated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am estimating we are estimating
you are estimating you are estimating
he/she/it is estimating they are estimating
• *He is estimating that it will take 10 working days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was estimating we were estimating
you were estimating you were estimating
he/she/it was estimating they were estimating
• *We were estimating college expenses today.*

FUTURE ... will estimate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be estimating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have estimated

PAST PASSIVE

I was estimated we were estimated
you were estimated you were estimated
he/she/it was estimated they were estimated
• *The cost was estimated to be over a million dollars.*

COMPLEMENTS

estimate _____ make a general guess about the worth/extent/size of

OBJECT

They will estimate **the entire estate**.
The Coast Guard was trying to estimate **the extent of the flooding**.
I estimated **the number of square feet in the house**.
We estimated **the rough cost of the project**.

OBJECT + at OBJECT

He estimated **Kyle at six feet tall**.
The police estimated **the crowd at two million people**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We estimated **the cost to be around \$25,000**.
They estimated **the land to be about 5.5 acres**.
I estimated **the driving time to be four hours**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The police estimated **the crowd to be two million people**.
The engineer estimated **that the project would require four years to complete**.
Our analysts estimate **that the Democratic candidate will win in a landslide victory**.

PRESENT

I examine we examine
 you examine you examine
 he/she/it examines they examine
 • *The committee examines all candidates.*

PAST

I examined we examined
 you examined you examined
 he/she/it examined they examined
 • *The police examined the crime scene.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has examined

PAST PERFECT ... had examined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am examining we are examining
 you are examining you are examining
 he/she/it is examining they are examining
 • *The doctor is examining him now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was examining we were examining
 you were examining you were examining
 he/she/it was examining they were examining
 • *We were examining every alternative.*

FUTURE

... will examine

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be examining

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have examined

PAST PASSIVE

I was examined we were examined
 you were examined you were examined
 he/she/it was examined they were examined
 • *The bridge supports were carefully examined.*

COMPLEMENTS

examine _____ inspect, investigate, analyze

OBJECT

The vet examined **the injured parrot**.
 The pilot examined **the plane** carefully.
 The police examined **the victim's car**.
 The lieutenant examined **every rifle**.
 The doctor will examine **her** for signs of malnutrition.
 The committee examined **the issue of drunk driving**.
 We examined **what had fallen from the ceiling**.
 The police examined **where the car had gone off the road**.
 The accountant always examines **whatever charges we make**.

WH-CLAUSE

examine _____ interrogate, question

OBJECT

The committee examined **me** for nearly an hour.
 I examined **him** myself.
 The professor examined **us** on the causes of the Civil War.

PASSIVE

You will be examined at the end of the course.

PRESENT

I exercise we exercise
you exercise you exercise
he/she/it exercises they exercise
• *He exercises every day.*

PAST

I exercised we exercised
you exercised you exercised
he/she/it exercised they exercised
• *Mom always exercised good judgment.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has exercised

PAST PERFECT ... had exercised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am exercising we are exercising
you are exercising you are exercising
he/she/it is exercising they are exercising
• *I'm exercising as we talk.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was exercising we were exercising
you were exercising you were exercising
he/she/it was exercising they were exercising
• *They were exercising their constitutional right.*

FUTURE ... will exercise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be exercising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have exercised

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was exercised they were exercised
• *The horses were exercised this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

exercise *perform physical activities*
to make oneself healthier/stronger

I need to exercise more.
I was exercising when you called.
I can only exercise on weekends.

exercise _____ *use repeatedly to strengthen / to make more flexible*

OBJECT

I need to exercise **my wrist**.
The doctor told me to exercise **my neck muscles**.
I exercise **my knees** by running up steps.

exercise _____ *train, give a physical workout to*

OBJECT

You must exercise **the animals** every day.
The guards exercised **the prisoners**.
The trainers exercised **their horses** according to
a rigid schedule.
The captain exercised the **oarsmen** regularly.

exercise _____ *put into use/action*

OBJECT

He always exercises **extreme caution**.
He didn't exercise **very good judgment** this time.
They are cautious about exercising **too much control**.
The newspaper exercises **a great deal of power**.
I am only exercising **my constitutional rights**.

exercise _____ *get the attention of, cause alarm to*

OBJECT

Crime always exercises **the media**.
Politicians know how to exercise **public opinion**.
The talk show hosts were really exercised about it.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I exist	we exist
you exist	you exist
he/she/it exists	they exist

• *Dragons only exist in fiction.*

PAST

I existed	we existed
you existed	you existed
he/she/it existed	they existed

• *The problem existed for years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has existed**PAST PERFECT** ... had existed**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am existing	we are existing
you are existing	you are existing
he/she/it is existing	they are existing

• *I am existing from day to day.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was existing	we were existing
you were existing	you were existing
he/she/it was existing	they were existing

• *The kids were existing on peanut butter sandwiches.*

FUTURE ... will exist**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be existing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have existed**PAST PASSIVE***Exist* is never used in the passive voice.**COMPLEMENTS****exist** *be real*

Dark matter actually exists in outer space.
 No matter what you say, the problem still exists.
 A golden age never existed.
 The problem only exists in his imagination.

exist *continue to live / to be active*

I can't exist without you.
 We cannot exist without food and water.
 The colony managed to exist for many more years.
 Racism has always existed in American politics.
 Hope exists even when things look bad.

exist *occur, be found*

Tigers don't exist in Africa.

PRESENT

I expand we expand
you expand you expand
he/she/it expands they expand
• *It expands if you need more space.*

PAST

I expanded we expanded
you expanded you expanded
he/she/it expanded they expanded
• *We expanded our operations in Asia.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has expanded

PAST PERFECT ... had expanded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am expanding we are expanding
you are expanding you are expanding
he/she/it is expanding they are expanding
• *We are expanding our market.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was expanding we were expanding
you were expanding you were expanding
he/she/it was expanding they were expanding
• *The business was expanding rapidly.*

FUTURE ... will expand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be expanding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have expanded

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was expanded they were expanded
• *The plant was recently expanded.*

COMPLEMENTS

expand enlarge, become bigger

The umbrella expanded with a pop.
The table expands to seat eight people.
The foam expands and seals all the leaks.
Our business is expanding all the time.
His influence has expanded greatly.
The company is expanding into New England and Canada.
We are expanding into home appliances.

expand _____ make bigger

OBJECT

They have expanded **their empire**.
We needed to expand **the committee**.
You must expand **your thinking**.
The army was rapidly expanded.

PASSIVE

expand _____ express in full

OBJECT

The senator expanded **his remarks on immigration reform**.
The professor expanded **his ideas on economic recovery**.
Please expand **all abbreviations**.

PHRASAL VERBS

expand on _____ give more details about

The reporters asked Senator Blather to expand on his statement about global warming.

PRESENT

I expect we expect
 you expect you expect
 he/she/it expects they expect
 • *He expects that his team will win.*

PAST

I expected we expected
 you expected you expected
 he/she/it expected they expected
 • *I never expected special treatment.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has expected

PAST PERFECT ... had expected

PAST PASSIVE

I was expected we were expected
 you were expected you were expected
 he/she/it was expected they were expected
 • *The sad news was expected.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am expecting we are expecting
 you are expecting you are expecting
 he/she/it is expecting they are expecting
 • *She is expecting a baby in June.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was expecting we were expecting
 you were expecting you were expecting
 he/she/it was expecting they were expecting
 • *We were expecting them at any moment.*

FUTURE ... will expect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be expecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have expected

COMPLEMENTS

expect *be pregnant / due for delivery*

[USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

Sally is expecting.

She is expecting in early September.

expect _____ think that [something] will happen

OBJECT

Roberta is expecting **twins**.
 She is expecting **a phone call**.
 We expect **high tide** around nine.
 I had expected **better results**.
 He expected **the worst**.

INFINITIVE

I expected **to win**.
 The CEO expected **to close the deal today**.
 They expect **to stay in Detroit overnight**.

THAT-CLAUSE

Everyone expected **that Senator Blather would lose**.
 Who could have expected **that we could get so lost**?
 John expected **that he and Susan would get married this fall**.

WH-CLAUSE

I never expected **what happened**.
 They never expected **what was coming**.
 Who could have expected **how much it would cost**?

expect _____ think that [something] should happen

OBJECT

The boy expected **a reward** for finding my wallet.
 The principal expects **better behavior** from the students.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I expect **you to do your homework**.
 The president expects **all citizens to do their share**.
 The weatherman expects **it to rain tomorrow**.

INFINITIVE

We all expect **to be treated with respect**.

expect _____ suppose, think

THAT-CLAUSE

I expect **that you are right**.
 I expect **that it is true**.
 I expect **that you believed everything he told you**.

PHRASAL VERBS

expect [someone] for _____ think that [someone] will attend [an event]

The family expected you for lunch today.

PRESENT

I experience we experience
you experience you experience
he/she/it experiences they experience
• *He experiences severe headaches.*

PAST

I experienced we experienced
you experienced you experienced
he/she/it experienced they experienced
• *She experienced a few disappointments.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has experienced

PAST PERFECT ... had experienced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am experiencing we are experiencing
you are experiencing you are experiencing
he/she/it is experiencing they are experiencing
• *We are experiencing a brief technical delay.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was experiencing we were experiencing
you were experiencing you were experiencing
he/she/it was experiencing they were experiencing
• *I was experiencing a total meltdown.*

FUTURE ... will experience

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be experiencing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have experienced

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was experienced they were experienced
• *Some setbacks were experienced during the project.*

COMPLEMENTS

experience _____ undergo, encounter

OBJECT

I have experienced **a few bad days**.
He experienced **many hardships** growing up.
I've experienced **good days and bad days**.
I had never experienced **such a disappointment** before.
The market is experiencing **some bad news**.
I can't imagine experiencing **such a thing**.

WH-CLAUSE

I have never experienced **what he has gone through**.
They will soon experience **what it is like**.
The island experienced **what a Category 5 hurricane could do**.

PRESENT

I explain we explain
 you explain you explain
 he/she/it explains they explain
 • *She explains things very well.*

PAST

I explained we explained
 you explained you explained
 he/she/it explained they explained
 • *I explained to the police what happened.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has explained

PAST PERFECT ... had explained

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am explaining we are explaining
 you are explaining you are explaining
 he/she/it is explaining they are explaining
 • *I'm explaining where they should go.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was explaining we were explaining
 you were explaining you were explaining
 he/she/it was explaining they were explaining
 • *He was explaining that he missed his train.*

FUTURE

... will explain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be explaining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have explained

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was explained they were explained
 • *The mystery was explained later.*

COMPLEMENTS

explain *engage in giving reasons/ justifications*

They tried to explain.
 I'm sorry, I can't explain.

explain _____ *give the cause of / reason for*

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

He explained **his mistake**.
 The CEO explained **the secret of our success**.
 The coach tried to explain **their defeat**.
 The technician explained **the malfunction to his boss**.

explain _____ *make clear, give details about*

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

He explained **his new approach**.
 The economist explained **the complicated math behind his model**.
 We need to explain **our proposal**.
 The attorney explained **the law to his client**.

THAT-CLAUSE

He explained **that he wasn't feeling well**.
 They explained **that their flight had been delayed**.
 Mary explained **that she had to make a call**.

WH-CLAUSE

Can you explain **what went wrong**?
 I explained **what we needed to do**.
 He explained **where we had made our mistake**.
 I will explain **where we are going to meet**.
 The administrator explained **why it was a really bad idea**.
 The repairman explained **how we could have prevented the problem**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The manager explained **what to do in case of fire**.
 I will explain **where to park your cars**.
 The consultant explained **how to increase our sales**.

explain _____ *give a reason for one's behavior*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The wine bottle is empty. Explain **yourself**, son.

PHRASAL VERBS

explain SEP **away** *justify with credible reasons/excuses*

The student tried to explain away her absences.
 Janice explained away her bruises as the result of clumsiness.

PRESENT

I expose we expose
 you expose you expose
 he/she/it exposes they expose
 • *He exposes himself to a lot of criticism.*

PAST

I exposed we exposed
 you exposed you exposed
 he/she/it exposed they exposed
 • *The paper exposed the crooked politician.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has exposed

PAST PERFECT ... had exposed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am exposing we are exposing
 you are exposing you are exposing
 he/she/it is exposing they are exposing
 • *I am exposing everything that happened there.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was exposing we were exposing
 you were exposing you were exposing
 he/she/it was exposing they were exposing
 • *He was exposing his family to unnecessary risk.*

FUTURE ... will expose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be exposing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have exposed

PAST PASSIVE

I was exposed we were exposed
 you were exposed you were exposed
 he/she/it was exposed they were exposed
 • *The children were exposed to measles.*

COMPLEMENTS

expose _____ leave unprotected from

OBJECT + to OBJECT

PASSIVE

The company exposed **us to toxic chemicals**.
 The hikers were exposed **to the thunderstorm**.
 The troops were needlessly exposed **to enemy fire**.
 I was exposed **to typhoid** on my trip.

expose _____ cause to be affected/influenced by

OBJECT + to OBJECT

PASSIVE

I exposed **my legs to the warm sun**.
 You should expose **your children to good music**.
 The photographer exposed **the film to the light**.
 In Berkeley, I was exposed **to a wide variety of food**.

expose _____ display, make visible, reveal

OBJECT

OBJECT + as PREDICATE NOUN

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The suspect exposed **his gang tattoos**.
 I didn't want to expose **my total ignorance**.
 Who wants to expose **their mistakes** in public?
 The journalist exposed **the governor as a fraud**.
 The reporter exposed **who was involved in the scandal**.
 I will expose **what you have been doing**.
 I only exposed **what everyone already knew**.
 Mike exposed **the mayor's taking a bribe**.

expose _____ display one's genitals

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

He was arrested because he exposed **himself** in public.

expose _____ subject oneself

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT

Public officials expose **themselves to the risk of investigation**.

PRESENT

I express we express
 you express you express
 he/she/it expresses they express
 • *He expresses himself well.*

PAST

I expressed we expressed
 you expressed you expressed
 he/she/it expressed they expressed
 • *I expressed my ideas in a long essay.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has expressed

PAST PERFECT ... had expressed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was expressed they were expressed
 • *My position was expressed before the meeting.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am expressing we are expressing
 you are expressing you are expressing
 he/she/it is expressing they are expressing
 • *He is expressing his disapproval very clearly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was expressing we were expressing
 you were expressing you were expressing
 he/she/it was expressing they were expressing
 • *The author was only expressing his personal opinion.*

FUTURE

... will express

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be expressing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have expressed

COMPLEMENTS

express _____ state, convey

OBJECT

I expressed **my sympathy**.
 The ballet expresses **the enthusiasm of youth**.
 I can't express **my feelings** in words.
 His face expressed **worry**.
 He expressed exactly **what he meant**.
 I tried to express **how I felt**.
 She expressed **how much our visit meant to her**.
 His attitude expressed **how upset he was**.

WH-CLAUSE

express _____ send [something] by rapid delivery

OBJECT

I will express **the product** right away.
 Please express **this document**.
 The package was expressed overnight.
 I expressed **the manuscript to the editor** this morning.
 They just expressed **the package to Jason**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

express _____ state/show one's thoughts/feelings

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + ADVERB OF MANNER

Delia expressed **herself poorly** at last night's meeting.
 Norman expresses **himself best in his artwork**.
 Bonnie expresses **herself through music**.

PRESENT

I extend we extend
 you extend you extend
 he/she/it extends they extend
 • *The lake extends 15 miles to the east.*

PAST

I extended we extended
 you extended you extended
 he/she/it extended they extended
 • *They extended the offer to all employees.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has extended

PAST PERFECT ... had extended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am extending we are extending
 you are extending you are extending
 he/she/it is extending they are extending
 • *We are extending our trip.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was extending we were extending
 you were extending you were extending
 he/she/it was extending they were extending
 • *They were extending their deck.*

FUTURE ... will extend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be extending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have extended

PAST PASSIVE

I was extended we were extended
 you were extended you were extended
 he/she/it was extended they were extended
 • *The deadline was extended to next Saturday.*

COMPLEMENTS

extend _____ stretch, continue, include

ADVERB OF TIME

The conference extends **through the weekend**.
 The battle extended **through the night**.
 The Ming Dynasty extended **from 1368 to 1644**.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The damage extended **for miles**.
 The city extends **all the way to the ocean**.
 His influence extends **throughout the state**.
 The Rocky Mountains extend **from Canada to New Mexico**.
 His business interests extend **to oil drilling and casinos**.

extend _____ stretch, lengthen, enlarge, prolong

OBJECT

He extended **both his arms** to catch the kitten.
 We are extending **the kitchen**.
 We need to extend **the dining room table**.
 Senator Blather extended **his control of the Appropriations Committee**.
 They are extending **the deadline** for applications.
 Regular oil changes extend **the life of a car**.
 We are extending **our vacation** by a couple of days.
 The company extended **itself** too far.

extend _____ offer, give

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The government will extend **emergency aid to the flood victims**.
 They will extend **additional credit to their customers**.
 We extend **best wishes to the participants**.
 The club extends **membership to all senior citizens**.

extend _____ work very hard

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

Esther is extending **herself** too far by joining so many clubs.

PRESENT

I face we face
 you face you face
 he/she/it faces they face
 • *Our house faces a lovely park.*

PAST

I faced we faced
 you faced you faced
 he/she/it faced they faced
 • *We faced overwhelming odds.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has faced

PAST PERFECT ... had faced

PAST PASSIVE

I was faced we were faced
 you were faced you were faced
 he/she/it was faced they were faced
 • *The apartment building was faced with brick.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am facing we are facing
 you are facing you are facing
 he/she/it is facing they are facing
 • *We are facing a serious problem.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was facing we were facing
 you were facing you were facing
 he/she/it was facing they were facing
 • *They were facing certain defeat.*

FUTURE ... will face

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be facing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have faced

COMPLEMENTS

face _____ turn / be oriented in a certain direction

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The porch faces **north**.
 Our hotel room faced **toward the ocean**.
 Birds face **into the wind** to retain body heat.
 Her apartment faced **onto Main Street**.

face _____ turn / be oriented toward

OBJECT

Please face **the front of the hall**.
 Our hotel room faced **the ocean**.
 The armies faced **each other**.
 The ships faced **the oncoming waves**.
 The people on the beach all faced **the sun**.

face _____ confront / deal with [something difficult/unpleasant]

OBJECT

You must face **the facts!**
 The market was facing **a big sell-off of assets**.
 The Cubs face **their old rivals** this weekend.
 He was faced with financial ruin.
 We were facing **what we feared the most**.
 They will face **whatever problems come up**.
 He must face **whatever punishment he is given**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

face _____ cover the surface of

OBJECT + with OBJECT

They faced **the walls with marble**.
 We faced **our kitchen counter with blue slate**.
 The bathroom surfaces are faced **with white tile**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

face away/forward/in/out/etc.
 turn / be oriented in a specified direction

The actor faced away from the audience.
 Stand in a straight line and face forward!
 The statue in the foyer faces in.
 The statue in the portico faces out.

face _____ head-on confront directly

Cindy faced her drug addiction head-on.

face up to _____ confront directly, accept

Greg finally faced up to his alcohol problem.
 You have to face up to the fact that you can't climb stairs anymore.

PRESENT

I fail we fail
 you fail you fail
 he/she/it fails they fail
 • *He never fails to answer his e-mail.*

PAST

I failed we failed
 you failed you failed
 he/she/it failed they failed
 • *The air conditioning failed again.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has failed

PAST PERFECT ... had failed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am failing we are failing
 you are failing you are failing
 he/she/it is failing they are failing
 • *He is failing to keep up with the assignments.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was failing we were failing
 you were failing you were failing
 he/she/it was failing they were failing
 • *His health was failing.*

FUTURE ... will fail

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be failing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have failed

PAST PASSIVE

I was failed we were failed
 you were failed you were failed
 he/she/it was failed they were failed
 • *The class was failed by half the students.*

COMPLEMENTS

fail *weaken, decline*

My grandmother's eyesight is failing.
 My strength was beginning to fail.
 The light was failing.

fail *be unsuccessful*

The surprise attack failed miserably.
 I'm afraid that John is failing this semester.

fail *stop working, break down*

The old compressor finally failed.
 Their marriage eventually failed.
 His heart failed at the end.
 Most start-up companies fail in their first year.

fail _____ *not earn a passing grade in/on*

OBJECT

Bryan failed **algebra** last semester.
 I failed **the test** the first time I took it.
 Thirty percent of applicants fail **the bar exam**.
 You cannot fail **the orals**.

fail _____ *disappoint, be of no help to*

OBJECT

He would never fail **the team**.
 Mary's friends failed **her**.
 My courage failed **me** at the end.
 He never failed **his duty**.

PASSIVE

I was failed by several of my office mates.

fail _____ *not [do something]*

INFINITIVE

Don't fail **to lock the door** when you leave.
 I fail **to see the point**.
 The team failed **to score in the first half**.
 The new program can't fail **to save you money**.
 Did he fail **to understand the instructions**?

PRESENT

I fall	we fall
you fall	you fall
he/she/it falls	they fall

• *Night falls early this time of year.*

PAST

I fell	we fell
you fell	you fell
he/she/it fell	they fell

• *The market fell like a rock yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fallen

PAST PERFECT ... had fallen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am falling	we are falling
you are falling	you are falling
he/she/it is falling	they are falling

• *Look out! It's falling.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was falling	we were falling
you were falling	you were falling
he/she/it was falling	they were falling

• *The snow was falling heavily.*

FUTURE

... will fall

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be falling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fallen

PAST PASSIVE

Fall is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

fall drop downward

I fell on the ice.

He fell to his knees.

In the next mile, the river falls 100 feet.

The valley fell in front of him.

fall become lower/weaker/less

My temperature finally started falling.

His voice always falls at the end of his sentences.

Their expectations are falling.

The wind usually falls at sunset.

The market fell today.

Our productivity fell last quarter.

fall be wounded/killed in battle

Fifty thousand soldiers fell at the Battle of Gettysburg.

fall _____ pass [into a specific state/condition], become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Dad falls **asleep** in front of the news.

Ursula fell **sick** after eating potato salad at the picnic.

The crowd fell **silent** as she approached the podium.

PHRASAL VERBS

fall away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.

fall in a specified direction

fall apart/through fail, come to nothing

fall back retreat

fall back on _____ turn back to for help

fall behind (on _____) lag behind

fall for _____ become strongly attracted to

fall for _____ be deceived by

fall in with _____ associate with

fall off decline, diminish

fall on _____ happen on

fall out (with _____) quarrel (with [someone])

fall under _____ be influenced/controlled by

fall (up)on/to _____ become the duty of

The castle walls are falling down.

My hat fell off when I stood up.

Our party plans fell through at the last minute.

The regiment fell back to the new fort.

The Dickersons fell back on their savings.

On the second lap, the American swimmers fell behind.

The doctor fell further behind as the day went on.

My roommates and I are falling behind on the rent.

Patrick fell for Tammy on their first date.

We won't fall for the politician's lies anymore.

Our son fell in with computer nerds at school.

Attendance at our church has fallen off dramatically.

Christmas falls on a Saturday this year.

The meeting falls on my day off.

Nick fell out with the project director.

The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.

Organization of the meeting fell to the secretary.

PRESENT

I favor we favor
 you favor you favor
 he/she/it favors they favor
 • *He favors conservative causes.*

PAST

I favored we favored
 you favored you favored
 he/she/it favored they favored
 • *I favored none of the applicants.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has favored

PAST PERFECT ... had favored

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am favoring we are favoring
 you are favoring you are favoring
 he/she/it is favoring they are favoring
 • *He is favoring his right knee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was favoring we were favoring
 you were favoring you were favoring
 he/she/it was favoring they were favoring
 • *They were favoring the front runner until recently.*

FUTURE ... will favor

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be favoring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have favored

PAST PASSIVE

I was favored we were favored
 you were favored you were favored
 he/she/it was favored they were favored
 • *The Democrats were favored this year.*

COMPLEMENTS

favor _____ prefer, like

OBJECT

“Fortune favors **the brave**” is a famous Latin saying.
 I generally favor **Chinese food**.

WH-CLAUSE

He never favors **one grandchild** over another.
 Audiences always favor **what they are already familiar with**.
 Politicians always favor **whatever is popular**.
 I would favor **whichever restaurant we can get a reservation at**.

favor _____ consider most likely to win

OBJECT

The sports bloggers favor **the Giants**.

WH-CLAUSE

The odds will favor **whoever wins the primary**.

favor _____ help, facilitate

OBJECT

Lax security favored **the prisoners’ escape**.
 Sunshine favored **the first game of the baseball season**.

favor _____ treat gently

OBJECT

He favors **his sore ankle**.
 The horse is favoring **his left front hoof**.
 Handicapped children have to be favored.

PASSIVE

favor _____ look like

OBJECT

Both twins favor **their father**.

EXPRESSIONS

favor [someone] with _____ give
 [something] to [someone]

The singer favored us with an encore.

PRESENT

I fear	we fear
you fear	you fear
he/she/it fears	they fear

• *Everyone fears public embarrassment.*

PAST

I feared	we feared
you feared	you feared
he/she/it feared	they feared

• *I feared his violent temper.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has feared

PAST PERFECT ... had feared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Fear is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Fear is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will fear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have feared

PAST PASSIVE

I was feared	we were feared
you were feared	you were feared
he/she/it was feared	they were feared

• *A dawn attack was feared by the general.*

COMPLEMENTS

fear _____ be afraid of, worry about

OBJECT

“Fear no more **the heat o’ the sun.**” [SHAKESPEARE]

I fear **a recession coming.**

The sailors feared **the dark skies to the west.**

The citizens feared **another terrorist attack.**

We have long feared **exactly this happening.**

Hearing news of the fatal accident, Martha feared **the worst.**

INFINITIVE

I feared **to even open my eyes.**

We feared **to make a sound.**

I feared **to go out after dark.**

THAT-CLAUSE

I fear **that you are right.**

We fear **that your flight may be cancelled.**

The lawyers feared **that the judge would not allow their arguments.**

WH-CLAUSE

We all fear **what we do not know.**

They fear **what will happen next.**

I feared **what might go wrong with our plans.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I feared even **opening my eyes.**

We feared **making a sound.**

I feared **going out after dark.**

PHRASAL VERBS

fear for _____ worry about

My brother is a coal miner, and I fear for his safety.

The hurricane was approaching, and we feared for our lives.

PRESENT

I feed we feed
 you feed you feed
 he/she/it feeds they feed
 • *He feeds the birds every day.*

PAST

I fed we fed
 you fed you fed
 he/she/it fed they fed
 • *I fed the cat two hours ago.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fed

PAST PERFECT ... had fed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeding we are feeding
 you are feeding you are feeding
 he/she/it is feeding they are feeding
 • *I'm feeding the documents into the shredder.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeding we were feeding
 you were feeding you were feeding
 he/she/it was feeding they were feeding
 • *They were feeding us misinformation.*

FUTURE ... will feed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be feeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fed

PAST PASSIVE

I was fed we were fed
 you were fed you were fed
 he/she/it was fed they were fed
 • *The children were fed earlier.*

COMPLEMENTS

feed eat

How often do they feed?
 The birds were feeding on our plum tree.
 Lions only feed when they are hungry.

feed supply [food/materials]

The zookeepers feed every morning and evening.
 Don't feed too fast, or the shredder will jam.

feed _____ give food to, supply materials to

OBJECT

We feed **the homeless** at a downtown shelter.
 You should only feed **the goldfish** once a week.
 Keep feeding **the boiler** until we have enough steam.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

Feed **me some more rope**.
 Feed **some more rope to me**.

feed _____ send [an electric current, a signal]

OBJECT

The sensor feeds **a signal** to the computer.
 The station feeds **the broadcast** to a satellite.
 The current is fed to the circuit breaker.

PASSIVE

feed _____ foster, support

OBJECT

Resentment feeds **hostility**.
 Rumors are feeding **the confusion**.
 Music feeds **the soul**.
 The mind can only be fed by education.

PASSIVE

feed _____ supply

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We fed **the chickens corn**.
 The company fed **the press misleading information**.
 The director fed **the actress her lines**.
 This cable feeds **the factory its power**.

to PARAPHRASE

We fed **corn to the chickens**.
 The company fed **misleading information to the press**.
 The director fed **the actress's lines to her**.
 This cable feeds **power to the factory**.

feed _____ move/push [into/through an opening]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The nurse fed **the breathing tube into the patient's windpipe**.
 The tourist fed **quarters into the vending machine**.

feel _____ *be aware of, sense* [continued]

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They felt the **boat** *getting under way*.

I felt **myself** *getting sick*.

The speaker felt **the audience** *losing interest*.

feel _____ *believe, think*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The coach felt **the team** *to be ready for the game*.

John felt **them** *to be completely mistaken*.

I always felt **myself** *to be a good sport*.

THAT-CLAUSE

I feel **that I am right** about it.

We feel **that we should go ahead** as planned.

Sam felt **that he deserved a bigger raise**.

feel _____ *experience, have grief/pity because of*

OBJECT

We felt **Grandma's death** keenly.

PHRASAL VERBS

feel (about/around) for _____

seek by touching

I felt for the light switch.

She was feeling around in the dark for her glasses.

feel for _____ *sympathize with*

I really feel for the team that lost.

feel **SEP** out *find out the views of*

Senator Blather felt out the voters about the tax increase.

EXPRESSIONS

feel at home *feel comfortable/accepted*

My friends feel at home here.

feel _____ in [one's] bones *sense by*

intuition

I feel it in my bones that he's going to hit a home

run tonight.

feel like _____ *desire, want*

I feel like pizza for dinner.

I feel like drinking lemonade.

feel like _____ *seem to be*

This feels like real wood.

It feels like January, even though it's only September.

feel like / as if / as though _____

believe/sense that

I feel like it's going to rain.

We feel as if we're never going to pay off the mortgage.

feel like a million (bucks/dollars)

feel physically and mentally strong

An early-morning walk through the woods makes me

feel like a million bucks.

feel like a new person *feel refreshed/*

renewed

After a shower and shave, the hobo felt like a new person.

feel like death warmed over *feel very sick*

The flu made him feel like death warmed over.

feel like [oneself] *perceive oneself*

to be in a normal state

After having a cold for a week, I feel like myself again.

feel no pain *be drunk*

After drinking a six pack, Meredith is feeling no pain.

feel [one's] oats *be lively*

The salesman danced a jig around the office; he's feeling

his oats since he landed that big contract.

feel out of place *feel awkward*

Gordon feels out of place at wine-and-cheese parties.

feel the pinch *have too little money*

My parents want to vacation in Spain, but they're feeling

the pinch.

feel up to _____

perceive oneself to be

capable of

Do you feel up to going shopping?

PRESENT

I feel we feel
 you feel you feel
 he/she/it feels they felt
 • *My arm feels just fine, thanks.*

PAST

I felt we felt
 you felt you felt
 he/she/it felt they felt
 • *They felt sorry for her.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has felt

PAST PERFECT ... had felt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeling we are feeling
 you are feeling you are feeling
 he/she/it is feeling they are feeling
 • *I'm feeling tired.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeling we were feeling
 you were feeling you were feeling
 he/she/it was feeling they were feeling
 • *We were feeling our way through the cave.*

FUTURE ... will feel

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be feeling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have felt

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was felt they were felt
 • *The loss was felt by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

feel _____ perceive oneself to be

PREDICATE NOUN

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PAST PARTICIPLE

feel _____ have an emotion/opinion

ADVERB OF MANNER

feel _____ seem

it + feel + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE +
 INFINITIVE

feel _____ seem to the sense of touch

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

feel _____ search by touch

ADVERB OF PLACE

feel _____ seek by touching

OBJECT

feel _____ touch in order to examine

OBJECT

feel _____ be aware of, sense

OBJECT

Sally felt **a complete fool**.

I felt **a victim of circumstances**.

John felt **foolish**.

We all felt **sad at the news**.

The situation felt **all wrong**.

Are you feeling **better** today?

I don't feel **well**.

The team felt **defeated** after losing their best pitcher.

We felt **overwhelmed** by the experience.

He felt **badly** about what had happened.

Robert always feels **strongly** about political issues.

It felt **good to go to class again**.

It feels **weird to be in the presence of so many geeks**.

The water feels **too cold**.

I felt **everywhere**.

He felt **in his pockets** for the key.

She felt **under the cushions**.

The burglars felt **their way** along the corridor.

I felt **his swollen ankle**.

The detective felt **the suspect** for a gun.

She carefully felt **the dog's injured leg**.

They felt **the impact of the explosion**.

I felt **a rock in my shoe**.

Ron felt **a pang of jealousy**.



PRESENT

I fight	we fight
you fight	you fight
he/she/it fights	they fight
• <i>He always fights for the underdog.</i>	

PAST

I fought	we fought
you fought	you fought
he/she/it fought	they fought
• <i>The senator fought against corruption.</i>	

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fought

PAST PERFECT ... had fought

PAST PASSIVE

I was fought	we were fought
you were fought	you were fought
he/she/it was fought	they were fought
• <i>The battle of Gettysburg was fought in July 1863.</i>	

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fighting	we are fighting
you are fighting	you are fighting
he/she/it is fighting	they are fighting
• <i>I'm fighting a nasty cold.</i>	

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fighting	we were fighting
you were fighting	you were fighting
he/she/it was fighting	they were fighting
• <i>They were fighting a rearguard action in the hills.</i>	

FUTURE ... will fight

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fighting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fought

COMPLEMENTS

fight engage in combat/argument

It is useless to fight with City Hall.
 The damaged ship will never fight again.
 It is noble to fight for one's country.
 The media was fighting for access to the court transcripts.
 The twins are always fighting.
 What married couple doesn't fight occasionally?
 She was fighting against other committee members.

fight _____ contend/struggle against, oppose

OBJECT

The Spanish fought **Napoleon's armies** savagely.
 I am fighting **a terrible sore throat**.
 The company is fighting **the judge's ruling**.
 We will fight **the takeover bid**.
 The neighborhood fought **the new development**.
 The minority party is fighting **Senator Blather's amendment**.
 We have fought **what we considered to be wrong**.
 They will fight **whomever we nominate**.
 We will fight **whatever forces are arrayed against us**.

WH-CLAUSE

fight _____ wage, be engaged in

OBJECT

We are fighting **a war on poverty**.
 He is fighting **the good fight**.
 They fought **a running battle** for a week.

PHRASAL VERBS

fight back retaliate

She may lose the argument, but she'll find a way to fight back.

fight SEP back resist, struggle against

Ruth fought back her tears after hearing about his death.

fight SEP off repel an attack by

I'm trying to fight off a bout of the flu.

The platoon fought off a much larger force.

fight on continue to fight

Although surrounded, Colonel Travis's men fought on.

fight SEP out settle by struggle

The rival gangs fought it out with guns.

Beth and Seth fought out their differences in court.

fight over _____ struggle to obtain

The classmates fought over who would get the award.

Jayne and Eve fought over Humphrey.

PRESENT

I figure we figure
 you figure you figure
 he/she/it figures they figure
 • *He figures to win his first match.*

PAST

I figured we figured
 you figured you figured
 he/she/it figured they figured
 • *They figured out the total cost.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has figured

PAST PERFECT ... had figured

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am figuring we are figuring
 you are figuring you are figuring
 he/she/it is figuring they are figuring
 • *I am figuring out how much to tip.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was figuring we were figuring
 you were figuring you were figuring
 he/she/it was figuring they were figuring
 • *We were figuring that the flight would be canceled.*

FUTURE ... will figure

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be figuring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have figured

PAST PASSIVE

I was figured we were figured
 you were figured you were figured
 he/she/it was figured they were figured
 • *The problem was quickly figured out.*

COMPLEMENTS

figure *be just as expected*

figure _____ *calculate, estimate*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

figure _____ *believe, expect*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

figure *appear likely*

INFINITIVE

It figures that Ryan would be the team captain.

We need to figure **the fixed costs**.
 The garage figured **the cost of repairing the dent**.
 How do you figure **the time we spent on it**?
 I can't begin to figure **our losses**.
 Did you figure **what replacing the rug would cost**?

We figured **the company to be quite safe**.
 The writers figure **the Cubs to win the pennant**.
 The Cubs were figured **to win the pennant**.
 We figured **that it was too late to call them**.
 The salesman figured **that we wouldn't notice the difference**.
 They figured **that there would be a delay**.
 Why did he figure **that the wedding would be in Chicago**?

He figures **to be the odds-on favorite**.
 They figure **to heat their house with firewood**.
 He figures **to beat the odds**.

PHRASAL VERBS

figure _____ **into** [something]
include in [a calculation]

figure in/into _____ *be involved/
 important in*

figure on _____ *plan/count/depend on*

figure SEP **out** *understand*

figure SEP **out** *solve, determine*

Did you figure office supplies into the expense total?

The butler figures prominently in the story.
 The physical evidence figured into the defendant's conviction.

Let's figure on going to a movie after dinner.
 The contractor figured on five sheets of plywood being left over.

The teacher couldn't figure Stephanie out at all.
 Tim figured the crossword puzzle out in six minutes.
 The police figured out who committed the crime.
 I figured out what our rate of return would be.
 We figured out how much gas we would need.

PRESENT

I file we file
 you file you file
 he/she/it files they file
 • *He files all the correspondence.*

PAST

I filed we filed
 you filed you filed
 he/she/it filed they filed
 • *She filed for the open seat on the council.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has filed

PAST PERFECT ... had filed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am filing we are filing
 you are filing you are filing
 he/she/it is filing they are filing
 • *I'm filing all the reports chronologically.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was filing we were filing
 you were filing you were filing
 he/she/it was filing they were filing
 • *She was filing her nails.*

FUTURE ... will file

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be filing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have filed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was filed they were filed
 • *The will was filed with the county clerk.*

COMPLEMENTS

file catalog and store something

We filed all day Tuesday.
 Jack and Hannah are filing in the back office.

file _____ catalog and store

OBJECT

I filed **all the letters and memos**.
 We filed **all the CDs** by artist.
 Senator Blather had filed **all of his press releases**.
 File **this report** under "Worker Safety."

file _____ put into official records

OBJECT

She filed **divorce papers** this morning.
 We have just filed **our mortgage**.
 The sheriff filed **an eviction notice** on them.
 I filed **a complaint** with the company.
 They are going to file **charges**.
 He filed **a claim** for his share of the estate.
 File **this copy** with the county clerk's office.

file _____ send [copy] to a newspaper

OBJECT

The freelance reporter filed **the story** just before midnight.

file _____ march/walk in line

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The children filed **out of the classroom** quietly.
 We glumly filed **into the meeting room**.

file _____ smooth with a tool

OBJECT

The actress filed **her nails** while she waited.

PHRASAL VERBS

file away at _____ scrape with a tool

The jeweler was filing away at the burr.

file SEP away keep in memory

You may want to file the idea away for future use.

file SEP down smooth/reduce with a tool

The locksmith filed down the key.

file for _____ begin a legal proceeding

Irene has filed for divorce.

file for _____ register as an election candidate

My brother will file for alderman tomorrow.

file _____ off [something] remove from [something] with a tool

The woodworker filed the edge off the drill bit.

PRESENT

I fill we fill
 you fill you fill
 he/she/it fills they fill
 • *The clinic fills quickly in the evening.*

PAST

I filled we filled
 you filled you filled
 he/she/it filled they filled
 • *We already filled the order.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has filled

PAST PERFECT ... had filled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am filling we are filling
 you are filling you are filling
 he/she/it is filling they are filling
 • *I am filling two vacant positions.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was filling we were filling
 you were filling you were filling
 he/she/it was filling they were filling
 • *The boats were filling their tanks at the dock.*

FUTURE ... will fill

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be filling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have filled

PAST PASSIVE

I was filled we were filled
 you were filled you were filled
 he/she/it was filled they were filled
 • *The positions were filled almost immediately.*

COMPLEMENTS

fill *become full*

The sails were filling in the rising breeze.
 The pool was slowly filling.
 The stadium was quickly filling with noisy fans.
 Janet's eyes filled with tears.

fill _____ *put as much as possible into, make full*
 OBJECT

I filled **my coffee cup** again.
 I filled **the hole in the driveway** with gravel.
 Kay fills **his days** with handsetting type and printing.

fill _____ *occupy all of*
 OBJECT

The crowd completely filled **the small hall**.

fill _____ *spread throughout, pervade*
 OBJECT

Smoke from the forest fire filled **the air**.
 That stupid tune completely filled **my head**.
 The scandal filled **the evening news**.

fill _____ *supply what is requested*
 OBJECT

Can you fill **the order** by Friday?
 The pharmacist filled **my prescription** while I shopped.
 My prescription was filled while I shopped.

PASSIVE

fill _____ *put someone into [a job/office]*
 OBJECT

We filled **the vacancy on the committee**.
 I'm sorry, we have already filled **the position**.

PHRASAL VERBS

fill in *become full, spread*

The sign-up sheet is filling in quickly.
 The new grass is filling in nicely.

fill SEP **in** *give details to*

C.J. filled the reporters in about the president's meeting.

fill SEP **in/out** *write information on*

Fill in the blank with the correct verb form.
 Applicants must fill out both sides of the form.

fill in for _____ *take the place of*

Can you fill in for me on Tuesday?

fill up *become completely full*

The hall is filling up for the concert.

The kids are filling up on cookies and milk.

fill SEP **up** *make completely full*

We're filling up the truck with cardboard to recycle.

find _____ *declare as a legal verdict*

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The jury found **the defendant guilty**.

find _____ *obtain*

OBJECT

You must find **time to study**.

Charlotte and Kathy found **an apartment** on Walnut Street.

Our product found **lots of buyers** among senior citizens.

Grandma finds **comfort** in her photo albums.

PHRASAL VERBS

find for _____ *decide in favor of*

The jury found for the defendant.

find out *learn the truth*

Your mother will find out.

I'll search the Internet and find out for you.

find SEP **out** *learn*

I found out what makes Jason tick.

What did you find out about the boss's husband?

EXPRESSIONS

find a way around _____ *discover a way to avoid [something]*

The computer engineer found a way around the error message.

My attorney found a way around the regulation.

find fault (with _____) *discover something wrong with [someone/something]*

My landlord finds fault with everyone.

The moderator found fault with both candidates' arguments.

find favor with _____ *win the approval of*

Vergil found favor with the emperor Augustus.

find it in [one's] heart / in [oneself] _____ *have the courage/compassion*

We found it in our hearts to beg forgiveness.

The voters found it in themselves to elect a black president.

find neither hide nor hair of _____ *fail to detect any sign of*

The detectives found neither hide nor hair of the suspect.

find [one's] bearings *determine where one is*

After wandering in the woods for four hours, we found our bearings.

find [one's] tongue/voice *determine what to say*

The candidate finally found her voice, but it was too late.

find [one's] way *discover the route*

We eventually found our way to the log cabin.

find [oneself] *become aware of what one wants to be/do in life*

Melanie found herself in her sophomore year of college.

find out the hard way *discover something by (usually unpleasant) experience*

Senator Blather found out the hard way how much voters oppose tax hikes.

find the/[one's] mark *discover a way to win / defeat someone*

She found her mark midway through the second period and scored four goals after that.

PRESENT

I find we find
 you find you find
 he/she/it finds they find
 • *He finds his new job interesting.*

PAST

I found we found
 you found you found
 he/she/it found they found
 • *We found a really great babysitter.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has found

PAST PERFECT ... had found

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am finding we are finding
 you are finding you are finding
 he/she/it is finding they are finding
 • *I'm finding it hard to concentrate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was finding we were finding
 you were finding you were finding
 he/she/it was finding they were finding
 • *They were finding more support than expected.*

FUTURE

... will find

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be finding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have found

PAST PASSIVE

I was found we were found
 you were found you were found
 he/she/it was found they were found
 • *The murderer was never found.*

COMPLEMENTS

find _____ discover, come upon by chance

OBJECT

I finally found **my missing wallet**.
 The hikers found **a path back to camp**.
 Astronomers found **a new moon orbiting Jupiter**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I found **Jane a great birthday present**.
 We found **the kittens a nice home**.

for PARAPHRASE

I found **a great birthday present for Jane**.
 We found **a nice home for the kittens**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I found **the new job to have its limitations**.
 Larry found **the restaurant to get a lot of repeat customers**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I found **myself holding my breath**.
 They found **the kids playing in the backyard**.
 Harriet found **Jim working in the garage**.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

I found **the dog covered with mud**.
 We found **our car damaged beyond repair**.
 I found **myself drained by the experience**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I found **that there was no simple solution**.
 We all find **that we get tired more easily as we get older**.
 Amy found **that she liked living in Montana**.

WH-CLAUSE

I find **that the new job has its limitations**.
 We found **what we had been looking for**.
 I never found **why the computer failed**.
 The police will find **whoever did this**.

find _____ consider

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

I found **him (to be) a poor listener**.
 The teacher found **the class (to be) good students**.
 They found **the car (to be) a piece of junk**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I found **myself (to be) upset with him**.
 We found **him (to be) amused at it**.
 They found **the situation (to be) very satisfactory**.



PRESENT

I finish we finish
 you finish you finish
 he/she/it finishes they finish

• *I always finish my assignments on time.*

PAST

I finished we finished
 you finished you finished
 he/she/it finished they finished

• *I just finished reading the news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has finished

PAST PERFECT ... had finished

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am finishing we are finishing
 you are finishing you are finishing
 he/she/it is finishing they are finishing

• *We're just finishing now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was finishing we were finishing
 you were finishing you were finishing
 he/she/it was finishing they were finishing

• *He was finishing the dishes when the power went out.*

FUTURE

... will finish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be finishing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have finished

PAST PASSIVE

I was finished we were finished
 you were finished you were finished
 he/she/it was finished they were finished

• *The job was finished on time and under budget.*

COMPLEMENTS

finish complete an activity/event

When will we finish?

The play finishes around 10:15.

finish come to an end

The boring meeting finished at 5 o'clock.

finish _____ bring to an end, complete
 OBJECT

We finished **dinner** around 9 o'clock.

Have the kids finished **their homework**?

We hope to finish **our house** before winter comes.

WH-CLAUSE

You must finish **what you have begun**.

He will finish **whatever painting still needs to be done**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He has finished **writing the report**.

You can finish **watching your program** after dinner.

Have they finished **eating dinner** yet?

finish _____ consume completely
 OBJECT

The kids must finish **their soup** before they get dessert.

finish _____ completely exhaust
 OBJECT

The 5K run nearly finished **me**.

finish _____ end a contest in a certain position
 PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Our team finished **third** at the Science Fair.

finish _____ apply a final coat of varnish/paint to
 OBJECT

We'll finish **the desk** with urethane varnish.

finish _____ ruin
 OBJECT

His thoughtless remark finished **his political career**.

PHRASAL VERBS

finish SEP off/up consume completely

We could finish off the last of the chocolate cake.

Finish up your spaghetti, kids.

finish with _____ stop being involved / dealing with

I am finished with local politicians.

She was finished with trying to please her neighbors.

finish with _____ stop using

I need the spatula when you finish with it.

I need the spatula when you're finished with it.

PRESENT

I fire we fire
 you fire you fire
 he/she/it fires they fire
 • *Press the starter until the engine fires.*

PAST

I fired we fired
 you fired you fired
 he/she/it fired they fired
 • *The company fired several executives.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fired

PAST PERFECT ... had fired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am firing we are firing
 you are firing you are firing
 he/she/it is firing they are firing
 • *I am not firing anybody.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was firing we were firing
 you were firing you were firing
 he/she/it was firing they were firing
 • *They were firing automatic weapons.*

FUTURE ... will fire

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be firing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fired

PAST PASSIVE

I was fired we were fired
 you were fired you were fired
 he/she/it was fired they were fired
 • *A gun was fired during the protest meeting.*

COMPLEMENTS

fire *begin to burn*

The dry grass quickly fired in the hot wind.
 The boiler was firing and steam was being produced.

fire *discharge [OF A WEAPON]*

A gun fired, causing the crowd to panic.

fire _____ *shoot, launch*
 OBJECT

Someone had fired **a gun** nearby.
 The pilot fired **his missiles** at the enemy trucks.

fire _____ *inspire, arouse*
 OBJECT

The poem fired **my imagination**.
 Her example fired **our lagging spirits**.

fire _____ *dismiss from a job/position*
 OBJECT

He fired **the whole department**.
 They can't fire **everyone**, can they?
 Three programmers were fired yesterday.
 The candidate will fire **whoever leaked the memo to the press**.
 He can fire **whomever he wants to**.

PASSIVE
 WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

fire down/in/out/up/etc. *shoot in a specified direction*

The Confederates fired down from Lookout Mountain.
 The commando raced to the window and fired in.

fire away *shoot continuously*

The sailors were firing away at the enemy ship.
 "I have three questions." "Fire away!"

fire away *speak without hesitation*
fire back (at _____) *shoot (at [someone who shot first])*

When the enemy opens fire, you can fire back.
 The policeman fired back at the robber.

fire SEP off *write and send quickly*

His assistant fired off 15 memos in one hour.

fire SEP up *fill with enthusiasm*

His speech fired up the crowd, and they were ready to go.

fire SEP up *begin to operate*

The engine fired up with a roar.

fire SEP up *cause to begin to operate*

My wife fired up her laptop and checked e-mail.

fire SEP up *cause to burn*

The crew fired up the boilers and the ship got under way.
 Gerry fired up the grill and barbecued pork steaks.

PRESENT

I fit we fit
you fit you fit
he/she/it fits they fit
• *The theory fits all the facts.*

PAST

I fit/fitted we fit/fitted
you fit/fitted you fit/fitted
he/she/it fit/fitted they fit/fitted
• *We fit eight people at the table before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fit/fitted

PAST PERFECT ... had fit/fitted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fitting we are fitting
you are fitting you are fitting
he/she/it is fitting they are fitting
• *I am fitting them in as best I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fitting we were fitting
you were fitting you were fitting
he/she/it was fitting they were fitting
• *We were fitting in very nicely, I thought.*

FUTURE

... will fit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fit/fitted

PAST PASSIVE

I was fit/fitted we were fit/fitted
you were fit/fitted you were fit/fitted
he/she/it was fit/fitted they were fit/fitted
• *He was fitted for a new suit.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: For the following six meanings, *fit* is not used in the progressive tenses.**fit** *be the right size and shape*

The sweater fits perfectly.
Will the new rug fit in the living room?

fit *be accommodated*

How many students can fit in a phone booth?
These bags won't fit in the dumpster.

fit _____ *be the right size and shape for*
OBJECT

The new suit fits **me** perfectly.
The old frame won't fit **the new picture**.

fit _____ *be appropriate/suitable for*
OBJECT

Your hat fits **the rest of your outfit**.
The class fits **my schedule** pretty well.
The punishment must fit **the crime**.

fit _____ *accommodate*
OBJECTCan we fit **24 children** in the classroom?**fit** _____ *manage to insert*
OBJECTWe can fit **four skeins of yarn** in this box.NOTE: For the following four meanings, *fit* may be used in the progressive tenses.**fit** _____ *adjust to the right size and shape*
OBJECTYou need to fit **the rug** to the room.**fit** _____ *measure for the right size*
OBJECT
PASSIVE

The tailor is fitting **Dad** for a new suit.
Dad was fitted for a new suit.

fit _____ *make appropriate/suitable*
OBJECT + to OBJECTDoes a songwriter fit **words to music** or **music to words**?**fit** _____ *supply, equip*
OBJECT + with OBJECTThe shipyard will fit **the boat with everything it needs**.

PHRASAL VERBS

fit in *be in accord/harmony*

Our new neighbors fit in just fine.

fit SEP in *provide a place for*

The hostess will fit the two unexpected guests in.

PRESENT

I fix we fix
 you fix you fix
 he/she/it fixes they fix
 • *He fixes all of our computers.*

PAST

I fixed we fixed
 you fixed you fixed
 he/she/it fixed they fixed
 • *We fixed the date for the meeting.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fixed

PAST PERFECT ... had fixed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fixing we are fixing
 you are fixing you are fixing
 he/she/it is fixing they are fixing
 • *I'm fixing the toaster now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fixing we were fixing
 you were fixing you were fixing
 he/she/it was fixing they were fixing
 • *She was fixing lunch.*

FUTURE ... will fix

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fixing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fixed

PAST PASSIVE

I was fixed we were fixed
 you were fixed you were fixed
 he/she/it was fixed they were fixed
 • *The location was fixed by GPS.*

COMPLEMENTS

fix _____ repair, mend

OBJECT

Only the dealer can fix **your car**.
 We will try to fix **our relationship**.

fix _____ make stable

OBJECT

I fixed **the mailbox post** in concrete.
 To prevent earthquake damage, fix **all bookcases** to the wall.

fix _____ direct and hold, focus

OBJECT

I fixed **my eyes** on the blurry image.
 We fixed **the telescope** on the distant image.
 She fixed **me** with an icy stare.

fix _____ determine, establish

OBJECT

The committee will fix **the blame** for this mess.
 They will fix **the agenda for the hearing**.
 The amount of damage cannot be fixed yet.

PASSIVE

fix _____ attach

OBJECT

The pharmacist fixed **a label** to the bottle.

fix _____ put in order, adjust

OBJECT

We're late, and Joan is still fixing **her hair**.

fix _____ prepare [food/drink]

OBJECT

I am fixing **lunch** now.
 I will fix **a salad** for the picnic.
 Can I fix **you a martini**?
 Can I fix **a martini for you**?

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

fix _____ neuter [an animal]

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Most cities have a program to fix **dogs and cats** for free.
 Our cat has already been fixed.

fix _____ illegally influence the outcome of a contest

OBJECT

PASSIVE

The mob fixed **all the boxing matches**.
 Elections have been fixed before.

fix _____ get even with, punish

OBJECT

Bert stole all our turnips. We'll fix **him**!

PRESENT

I flee	we flee
you flee	you flee
he/she/it flees	they flee

• *Everyone flees from imminent danger.*

PAST

I fled	we fled
you fled	you fled
he/she/it fled	they fled

• *I never fled from a fight.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fled

PAST PERFECT ... had fled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fleeing	we are fleeing
you are fleeing	you are fleeing
he/she/it is fleeing	they are fleeing

• *They are fleeing as fast as they can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fleeing	we were fleeing
you were fleeing	you were fleeing
he/she/it was fleeing	they were fleeing

• *The animals were fleeing from the forest fire.*

FUTURE ... will flee

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fleeing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fled

PAST PASSIVE

Flee is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

flee *move/run away from danger/
unpleasantness, escape*

The fish fled when my shadow fell across
the pond.

The deer fled when they heard the shot.

The birds fled before the coming storm.

The refugees fled into the woods.

The soldiers were fleeing back into the trenches.

The reporters had fled to the press bar.

Civilians were fleeing from the rampaging soldiers.

flee *move away swiftly, vanish*

The moon fled behind the clouds.

The ghostly shape fled from view.

Our shadows fled before us.

flee _____ *run away from*
(from) OBJECT

The survivors quickly fled **(from) the scene of the explosion.**

The reporters fled **(from) the room** when the senator began
his lengthy speech.

The entire city fled **(from) the rapidly rising floodwaters.**

The animals fled **(from) the burning barn.**

I fled **(from) the noisy, overcrowded arena.**

PRESENT

I fling we fling
 you fling you fling
 he/she/it flings they fling
 • *She flings her hair back if she's angry.*

PAST

I flung we flung
 you flung you flung
 he/she/it flung they flung
 • *He flung his clothes all over room.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has flung

PAST PERFECT ... had flung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flinging we are flinging
 you are flinging you are flinging
 he/she/it is flinging they are flinging
 • *The dog is flinging dirt everywhere.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flinging we were flinging
 you were flinging you were flinging
 he/she/it was flinging they were flinging
 • *The kids were flinging toys out the car window.*

FUTURE ... will fling

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be flinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have flung

PAST PASSIVE

I was flung we were flung
 you were flung you were flung
 he/she/it was flung they were flung
 • *The protesters were flung into police vans.*

COMPLEMENTS

fling _____ move suddenly, scatter

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Roberta flung **out of the room.**

The leaves were flinging **all over the lawn.**

fling _____ throw recklessly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids had flung **their books everywhere.**

I flung **myself onto the sofa.**

The rioters had flung **the furniture in every direction.**

The wind was flinging **my raked leaves all over the lawn.**

fling _____ cast, throw

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He flung **a rope over a tree limb.**

The cadets will fling **their caps into the air.**

I flung **a blanket over the shivering children.**

The fisherman is flinging **his net into the pond.**

The guards flung **him into an empty cell.**

The reporter flung **his shoe at the president.**

fling _____ devote oneself entirely to

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + into OBJECT

I flung **myself into jazz.**

We flung **ourselves into the social scene.**

Freshmen tend to fling **themselves into too many activities.**

Frank flung **himself into his work.**

PHRASAL VERBS

fling SEP around/aside/away/down/
 in/off/out/up/etc. throw in a specified
 direction

The burglar flung away his loot as
 soon as he saw the cop.

Bill opened the car door and flung his jacket in.

EXPRESSIONS

fling caution to the wind take a serious
 risk

Harry flung caution to the wind and
 jumped into the lake with all his clothes on.

fling [one's] head back tilt one's head
 back suddenly

Don flung his head back and laughed.

fling _____ (up) in [someone's] face
 confront [someone] with

She flung his extramarital affairs up in his face.

PRESENT

I flow	we flow
you flow	you flow
he/she/it flows	they flow

• *The river flows south from here.*

PAST

I flowed	we flowed
you flowed	you flowed
he/she/it flowed	they flowed

• *The stream flowed into the lake.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has flowed

PAST PERFECT ... had flowed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flowing	we are flowing
you are flowing	you are flowing
he/she/it is flowing	they are flowing

• *The water is flowing into the drain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flowing	we were flowing
you were flowing	you were flowing
he/she/it was flowing	they were flowing

• *Money was flowing into his campaign.*

FUTURE ... will flow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be flowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have flowed

PAST PASSIVE

Flow is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

flow *move freely*

The river eventually flows into the Mississippi.
 The clogged drain was finally beginning to flow.
 The stream was flowing over the little dam.
 Cold air was flowing in through the open window.
 The wine was flowing freely.
 Money was flowing out of the company like water.
 The guests flowed easily from one room to another.

flow *proceed smoothly*

Mozart wanted his music to “flow like oil.”
 The conversation flowed around the table.
 The wonderful smell of baking flowed throughout the house.
 Ideas flowed easily at the conference.

flow *hang loosely*

Legolas’s long blond hair flowed across his shoulders and down his back.

flow _____ *come from as a source*
 from OBJECT

The spring flowed **from a crack in the rocks**.
 Wealth flows **from trade**.
 Blood was flowing **from the boxer’s nose**.

PHRASAL VERBS

flow **away/in/out/etc.** *flow*
 in a specified direction

People flowed away from the mall at closing time.
 The tide flowed in and out.

PRESENT

I fly we fly
 you fly you fly
 he/she/it flies they fly
 • *Cathy flies to New York once a month.*

PAST

I flew we flew
 you flew you flew
 he/she/it flew they flew
 • *I never flew in such a small plane before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has flown

PAST PERFECT ... had flown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flying we are flying
 you are flying you are flying
 he/she/it is flying they are flying
 • *I am flying back tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flying we were flying
 you were flying you were flying
 he/she/it was flying they were flying
 • *The kids were flying kites in the park.*

FUTURE ... will fly

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be flying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have flown

PAST PASSIVE

I was flown we were flown
 you were flown you were flown
 he/she/it was flown they were flown
 • *The flags were flown at half-mast.*

COMPLEMENTS

fly *move through the air*

My hat flew into the air.
 The birds flew around us, screeching and squawking.
 The plane was flying at 36,000 feet.

fly *travel by aircraft*

Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic.
 When are you flying to Paris?
 Whoever thought that we could fly to the moon?

fly *wave/float in the air*

Flags were flying in the breeze.
 His shirttail was flying in the wind as he ran down the hill.

fly *move/spread/go/pass quickly*

The wood chips flew as the chain saw bit into the log.
 The door flew open, and in walked Grandmother.
 Rumors were flying everywhere.
 I'm already late for the meeting; I have to fly.
 My, how time flies.

fly *win acceptance*

His proposal will never fly with the voters.
 "Do you think the plan will fly?" "I think it will fly."

fly _____ pilot / travel in [an aircraft]

OBJECT

My grandfather flew **fighter planes** in World War II.
 I flew **United** to Chicago.

fly _____ transport by aircraft

OBJECT

We flew **the children** to England, where they would be safe.
 They flew **the engine** back to the manufacturer.
 The replacement parts were flown from Sweden.

PASSIVE

fly _____ cause to move through the air

OBJECT

Didn't you fly **paper airplanes** when you were a kid?
 We always fly **the flag** on Memorial Day.

PHRASAL VERBS

fly **away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc.** *fly in a specified direction*

The robin flew down from its nest.
 The planes flew over in formation.

fly **by** *go quickly past*

Did you see the wild geese fly by, heading home again?
 January really flew by.

fly **off** *come off suddenly*

The truck's wheel flew off and hit Kathy's car.

PRESENT

I follow we follow
 you follow you follow
 he/she/it follows they follow
 • *The students never follow my advice.*

PAST

I followed we followed
 you followed you followed
 he/she/it followed they followed
 • *The press followed his every move.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has followed

PAST PERFECT ... had followed

PAST PASSIVE

I was followed we were followed
 you were followed you were followed
 he/she/it was followed they were followed
 • *The meeting was followed by a reception.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am following we are following
 you are following you are following
 he/she/it is following they are following
 • *I'm not following what you mean.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was following we were following
 you were following you were following
 he/she/it was following they were following
 • *We were following their directions.*

FUTURE ... will follow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be following

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have followed

COMPLEMENTS

follow *come/go after/behind*

Go ahead. I will follow.
 When winter comes, spring will follow.

follow *occur as a result*

After a major forest fire, extensive erosion always follows.
 When there is no planning, disaster will follow.

follow _____ *come/go after/behind*

OBJECT

Night follows **day**.
 We followed **the guide** to the waterfall.
 Police followed **the suspects** to their home.

follow _____ *occur as a result of*

OBJECT

Success follows **hard work**.
 A big celebration followed **her election victory**.

follow _____ *obey, be guided by*

OBJECT

I was only following **orders**.
 You didn't follow **the manual**.
 You must follow **what you believe**.
 He will follow **whatever advice you give him**.

WH-CLAUSE

follow _____ *understand*

OBJECT

Go ahead. I'm following **you** so far.
 We followed **his explanations** pretty well.
 I followed **what he was saying**.

WH-CLAUSE

follow _____ *pay close attention to*

OBJECT

She follows **every move the teacher makes**.
 I don't follow **college basketball**.
 We have followed **Senator Blather's career** with interest.

follow _____ *move forward on*

OBJECT

Follow **Highway 155** for seven miles.

PHRASAL VERBS

follow _____ *down/in/out/up/etc.*
follow in a specified direction

The dog followed Zack down to the village.
 The chairman followed me out and congratulated me.

follow **through/up (on _____)** *check on,*
find out more about, complete [a task]

My secretary will follow through on the woman's request.
 The police followed up on several leads.

PRESENT

I forbid we forbid
 you forbid you forbid
 he/she/it forbids they forbid
 • *The law forbids the sale of handguns.*

PAST

I forbade we forbade
 you forbade you forbade
 he/she/it forbade they forbade
 • *The police forbade parking on the street.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forbidden

PAST PERFECT ... had forbidden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forbidding we are forbidding
 you are forbidding you are forbidding
 he/she/it is forbidding they are forbidding
 • *Sally's mother is forbidding any more parties.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forbidding we were forbidding
 you were forbidding you were forbidding
 he/she/it was forbidding they were forbidding
 • *The department was forbidding fishing in the area.*

FUTURE ... will forbid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forbidding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forbidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was forbidden we were forbidden
 you were forbidden you were forbidden
 he/she/it was forbidden they were forbidden
 • *The lawyers were forbidden to talk to the press.*

COMPLEMENTS

forbid _____ prohibit, not allow

OBJECT

The law forbids **the sale of alcohol to minors**.
 Most religions forbid **marriage between close relatives**.
 My parents forbid **books at the dinner table**.
 Lack of time forbids **further explanation**.

PASSIVE

Campfires are forbidden in this area.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I forbid **you to talk to me like that**.
 Some churches forbid **priests to marry**.
 Jane's mother forbade **her to go to the party**.

PASSIVE

I was forbidden **to take pictures there**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The new law forbids **smoking in public places**.
 The rules of soccer forbid **tripping an opponent**.
 My mother forbids **watching TV before finishing homework**.
 Space forbids **covering all the issues**.

PASSIVE

Using a cell phone in class is strictly forbidden.

EXPRESSIONS

God/Heaven forbid! *I hope it will not happen.*

God forbid that Mark should fall asleep and have an accident.
 "Your ex-boyfriend is coming to the party."
 "Heaven forbid!"

PRESENT

I force we force
 you force you force
 he/she/it forces they force
 • *His silliness always forces me to smile.*

PAST

I forced we forced
 you forced you forced
 he/she/it forced they forced
 • *We forced them to apologize.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forced**PAST PERFECT** ... had forced**PAST PASSIVE**

I was forced we were forced
 you were forced you were forced
 he/she/it was forced they were forced
 • *The door was forced open.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forcing we are forcing
 you are forcing you are forcing
 he/she/it is forcing they are forcing
 • *The wind is forcing the boat off course.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forcing we were forcing
 you were forcing you were forcing
 he/she/it was forcing they were forcing
 • *I was forcing myself to stay awake.*

FUTURE ... will force**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be forcing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have forced**COMPLEMENTS****force** _____ *move/open/break using effort*

OBJECT

My husband forced **the desk** through the doorway.
 We forced **three more candles** into the box.
 The soldiers forced **the door**.
 I had to force **the lock on the desk**.
 The president forced **the legislation** through Congress.

force _____ *produce/cause/compel*

OBJECT

I finally forced **a smile** from her mother.
 The police forced **a confession** from the murderer.
 The police forced **the assailant** to his knees.
 The coach forced **a faster pace**.
 I forced **him to admit his mistake**.
 We forced **the window to stay open**.
 The storm forced **us to turn back**.
 My grades forced **me to study harder**.
 The army was forced **to retreat**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

force _____ *cause*

OBJECT

The fourth-quarter touchdown forced **overtime**.
 His statement forced **a murmur throughout the audience**.
 The defeat forced **a cease-fire between the armies**.
 Heavy snow is forcing **delays** at the airport.

PHRASAL VERBS**force** _____ *back/down/in/out/up/etc.*
cause to move in a specified direction

The farmer forced the cows back
 into the barn.
 The bad economic news forced the stock market down.
 Peggy forced the medicine down.
 We forced our way in.

EXPRESSIONS**force [someone's] hand** *cause [someone]*
to act prematurely/unwillingly

The journalist didn't want to reveal
 her sources, but the judge forced her hand.

PRESENT

I forget we forget
 you forget you forget
 he/she/it forgets they forget
 • *He always forgets to put the milk away.*

PAST

I forgot we forgot
 you forgot you forgot
 he/she/it forgot they forgot
 • *I forgot his first name.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forgotten

PAST PERFECT ... had forgotten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgetting we are forgetting
 you are forgetting you are forgetting
 he/she/it is forgetting they are forgetting
 • *I'm always forgetting something.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgetting we were forgetting
 you were forgetting you were forgetting
 he/she/it was forgetting they were forgetting
 • *I was forgetting what I was about to do.*

FUTURE ... will forget

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forgetting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forgotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgotten we were forgotten
 you were forgotten you were forgotten
 he/she/it was forgotten they were forgotten
 • *The incident certainly wasn't forgotten.*

COMPLEMENTS

forget *fail to remember*

Don't forget!
 He never forgets.
 They won't forget, will they?

forget _____ *fail to remember*

OBJECT

I forgot **his e-mail address**.
 You must never forget **your password**.
 Don't forget **the flowers**.

INFINITIVE

I forgot **to water the plants**.
 Don't forget **to run the dishwasher**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The kids always forget **to hang their coats up**.
 We forgot **that we were having dinner with the Smiths tonight**.
 I forgot **that the meeting had been canceled**.
 She forgot **that she had to pick up the cat at the vet**.

WH-CLAUSE

I forgot **what I was about to say**.
 He forgot **where he had put his car keys**.
 I will never forget **where we stayed in Florida**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The author forgot **where to put the quote marks**.
 I forgot **how to change my password**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can't forget **taking her to the hospital**.
 He won't soon forget **doing that**.
 Did he forget **running into a tree**?

forget _____ *leave behind*

OBJECT

Darn it. I forgot **my briefcase**.
 Don't forget **your hat** when you leave.
 People always forget **things** when they get off the plane.

forget _____ *neglect, disregard*

(about) OBJECT

Don't forget **(about) your friends** when you send holiday cards.
 Sam forgot **(about) the ice cream in the trunk**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forget it! *Disregard it.*

"Do I have to clean the bathroom?"
 "Forget it! I'll do it myself."

forget [oneself] *lose one's temper*

Peter forgot himself and cursed in front of the principal.

PRESENT

I forgive	we forgive
you forgive	you forgive
he/she/it forgives	they forgive

• *He forgives anything his daughter does.*

PAST

I forgave	we forgave
you forgave	you forgave
he/she/it forgave	they forgave

• *I forgave him for forgetting my birthday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forgiven

PAST PERFECT ... had forgiven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgiving	we are forgiving
you are forgiving	you are forgiving
he/she/it is forgiving	they are forgiving

• *I'm forgiving part of their debt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgiving	we were forgiving
you were forgiving	you were forgiving
he/she/it was forgiving	they were forgiving

• *They were always forgiving my mistakes.*

FUTURE ... will forgive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forgiving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forgiven

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgiven	we were forgiven
you were forgiven	you were forgiven
he/she/it was forgiven	they were forgiven

• *You were forgiven for making such a mistake.*

COMPLEMENTS

forgive *pardon*

He forgives readily.
She can forgive without being superior about it.
I can't forgive so easily.

forgive _____ *excuse, pardon, stop feeling angry/punitive about/toward*

OBJECT

I tried to forgive **his insensitive behavior**.Some people never forgive **even the smallest slight**.

PASSIVE

My sister was always forgiven, no matter what she had done.

OBJECT + *for* OBJECTI forgave **Don for his thoughtless remark**.Please forgive **me for this interruption**.OBJECT + *for* PRESENT PARTICIPLEWill she forgive **him for forgetting their anniversary**?Can you forgive **me for being so late**?I'll never forgive **her for eating the last piece of cake**.forgive _____ *cancel payment of [a debt]*

OBJECT

Many parents forgive **their children's loans**.The bank may temporarily forgive **interest payments on house loans**.Some schools will forgive **a percentage of student loans**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forgive and forget. [PROVERB]

Pardon an offense, and forget it ever happened.

You could punish him forever—or just forgive and forget.

PRESENT

I form we form
 you form you form
 he/she/it forms they form

• *A river forms the state's eastern boundary.*

PAST

I formed we formed
 you formed you formed
 he/she/it formed they formed

• *They formed a new company.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has formed

PAST PERFECT ... had formed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forming we are forming
 you are forming you are forming
 he/she/it is forming they are forming

• *The data is forming a pattern.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forming we were forming
 you were forming you were forming
 he/she/it was forming they were forming

• *Clouds were forming above the mountains.*

FUTURE ... will form

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have formed

PAST PASSIVE

I was formed we were formed
 you were formed you were formed
 he/she/it was formed they were formed

• *The soldiers were quickly formed into a line.*

COMPLEMENTS

form *assume a definite shape/structure*

An idea slowly formed in my mind.
 Tornadoes were forming along the storm front.
 The soldiers quickly formed into battlelines.
 When you look at any game of chance, patterns form—
 real or not.

form _____ *give a definite shape/structure to*

OBJECT + into OBJECT

Form **the dough into a small ball.**
 The captain formed **the men into an effective fighting force.**
 The workers formed **the mud into adobe bricks.**

form _____ *create*

OBJECT

My buddies and I formed **a motorcycle club.**
 If you arrange the pieces in a certain way, they form **a picture.**

form _____ *make up, constitute*

OBJECT

The first ten amendments form **the Bill of Rights.**
 Greek and Roman statues form **the core of the museum collection.**
 The “-ed” ending forms **the regular past tense in English.**
 These three stars form **Orion's belt.**

form _____ *develop*

OBJECT

A good education forms **the mind.**
 As a child, I formed **good study habits.**

PRESENT

I freeze we freeze
 you freeze you freeze
 he/she/it freezes they freeze
 • *It usually freezes by mid-October.*

PAST

I froze we froze
 you froze you froze
 he/she/it froze they froze
 • *The bank froze their assets.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has frozen

PAST PERFECT ... had frozen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am freezing we are freezing
 you are freezing you are freezing
 he/she/it is freezing they are freezing
 • *I'm freezing out here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was freezing we were freezing
 you were freezing you were freezing
 he/she/it was freezing they were freezing
 • *They were freezing raspberries from their garden.*

FUTURE ... will freeze

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be freezing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have frozen

PAST PASSIVE

I was frozen we were frozen
 you were frozen you were frozen
 he/she/it was frozen they were frozen
 • *The water pipes were all frozen.*

COMPLEMENTS

freeze harden into ice, become solid
 due to cold

freeze become uncomfortably/
 dangerously cold

freeze be at or below 32° Fahrenheit

freeze be preserved in a very cold place

freeze become motionless

freeze be damaged/destroyed by frost

freeze _____ cause (the contents of) to harden into ice or other solid

OBJECT

freeze _____ chill, make uncomfortably/dangerously cold

OBJECT

freeze _____ preserve in a very cold place

OBJECT

freeze _____ cause to become motionless

OBJECT

freeze _____ fix at a certain level

OBJECT

freeze _____ prohibit, restrict

OBJECT

The muddy roads would soon freeze.

The rivers all froze that dreadful winter.

Put on a hat or your ears will freeze.

Turn up the heat; the room is freezing.

The mountain climbers nearly froze to death.

The weatherman says it will freeze tonight.

Girl Scout cookies freeze well.

The rabbits froze when they heard the hawk.

His face froze when he heard us coming.

My petunias all froze last night.

We froze _____

We froze **a couple of trays of ice.**

The cold snap froze **our garden hoses.**

The wind was freezing _____

The wind was freezing **my fingers.**

The driving rain froze **the crowd watching the game.**

We can freeze _____

We can freeze **the leftover vegetable soup.**

The shout froze **everyone** in the store.

The peace agreement froze **the armies** in place.

The accident froze **traffic** for hours.

The Federal Reserve froze **the interest rate** today.

The government froze **foreign assets** today.

PHRASAL VERBS

freeze over become covered with ice

freeze up stop functioning

The lake froze over, and we went ice skating.

I just freeze up when I have to talk to a group of people.

If there is a power surge, my computer completely freezes up.

PRESENT

I frighten we frighten
you frighten you frighten
he/she/it frightens they frighten
• *That costume frightens me.*

PAST

I frightened we frightened
you frightened you frightened
he/she/it frightened they frightened
• *The storm frightened the animals.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has frightened

PAST PERFECT ... had frightened

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am frightening we are frightening
you are frightening you are frightening
he/she/it is frightening they are frightening
• *You are frightening the children.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was frightening we were frightening
you were frightening you were frightening
he/she/it was frightening they were frightening
• *He was frightening everyone with his strange talk.*

FUTURE ... will frighten

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be frightening

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have frightened

PAST PASSIVE

I was frightened we were frightened
you were frightened you were frightened
he/she/it was frightened they were frightened
• *All of us were frightened by the earthquake.*

COMPLEMENTS

frighten *become scared*

Harry frightens easily.
Investors frighten at any unexpected bad news.
The horses will frighten if you do that.

frighten _____ *scare*

OBJECT

Icy roads frighten **me**.
The rumors frightened **the whole city**.
His accident frightened **all of us**.
The CEO's strange actions frightened **the shareholders**.
"I don't know what effect these men will have upon the enemy,
but, by God, they frighten **me**." [DUKE OF WELLINGTON]
We were frightened by what he said.

PASSIVE

frighten _____ *force by scaring*

OBJECT + into OBJECT

OBJECT + into PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The police frightened **him into a confession**.
The police frightened **him into confessing**.
The weather forecast frightened **us into canceling our trip**.
The bad economic news frightened **me into selling my stock in the company**.
I was frightened **into cooperating with them**.

PASSIVE

frighten _____ *prevent by scaring*

OBJECT + out of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The crime reports frightened **my neighbors out of going downtown**.

PHRASAL VERBS

frighten SEP *away/off* *cause to go/stay away by scaring*

Our dog frightened the burglar away.
We were frightened off by the unruly Mardi Gras crowd.

EXPRESSIONS

frighten _____ *to death* *scare badly*

His costume frightened me to death.

PRESENT

I furnish we furnish
 you furnish you furnish
 he/she/it furnishes they furnish
 • *The hotel furnishes beach towels.*

PAST

I furnished we furnished
 you furnished you furnished
 he/she/it furnished they furnished
 • *They furnished the suite quite nicely.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has furnished

PAST PERFECT ... had furnished

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am furnishing we are furnishing
 you are furnishing you are furnishing
 he/she/it is furnishing they are furnishing
 • *We are furnishing everything free of charge.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was furnishing we were furnishing
 you were furnishing you were furnishing
 he/she/it was furnishing they were furnishing
 • *They were furnishing information about the victims.*

FUTURE ... will furnish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be furnishing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have furnished

PAST PASSIVE

I was furnished we were furnished
 you were furnished you were furnished
 he/she/it was furnished they were furnished
 • *The stables were furnished with clean straw.*

COMPLEMENTS

furnish _____ provide, supply

OBJECT

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

furnish _____ provide furniture for

OBJECT

PASSIVE

We furnished **everything they needed**.

Our company furnished **the computers and printers**.

The landscapers furnished **all the flowers and trees**.

The table decorations were furnished by the host committee.

The government furnished **him a new identity**.

The car rental agency furnished **us an SUV**.

He furnished **the police a solid alibi**.

The government furnished **a new identity for him**.

The car rental agency furnished **an SUV for us**.

He furnished **a solid alibi for the police**.

They furnished **the room** with everything.

An interior decorator furnished **the model house**.

The guest cottage is completely furnished.

PRESENT

I gain we gain
 you gain you gain
 he/she/it gains they gain
 • *My watch gains three minutes a day.*

PAST

I gained we gained
 you gained you gained
 he/she/it gained they gained
 • *I gained six pounds over the holidays.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has gained

PAST PERFECT ... had gained

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am gaining we are gaining
 you are gaining you are gaining
 he/she/it is gaining they are gaining
 • *We are gaining on them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was gaining we were gaining
 you were gaining you were gaining
 he/she/it was gaining they were gaining
 • *The baby was gaining weight normally.*

FUTURE

... will gain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be gaining

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have gained

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was gained they were gained

• *His fortune was gained in commodities trading.*

COMPLEMENTS

gain _____ benefit

ADVERB OF MANNER

Barney will gain **politically** from redistricting.
 Kenny gained **career-wise** from interning with an ad agency.
 Peter gained **in maturity** by joining the Peace Corps.
 Bertha gained **in wisdom and experience**.

gain _____ increase

ADVERB OF MANNER

The market has gained **steadily** over the last week.
 My art collection has gained **in value** every year.

OBJECT

I can gain **weight** just by looking at a package of cookies.
 The hurricane gained **strength** as it approached land.
 The Dow gained **two percent** today.
 The company needs to gain **market share**.

gain _____ get as an increase/advantage

OBJECT

We will gain **half an hour** by taking the shortcut.
 You gain **time** when you fly westward.
 We can gain **six inches** by moving the cabinet over.
 He gained **a few seconds** on us every time we circled the track.

gain _____ acquire, earn, win

OBJECT

They gained **control of the company**.
 She gained **friends** easily.
 The attack gained **the high ground**.
 We hope to gain **recognition** with lots of TV commercials.
 His argument gained **a number of followers**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

His speech gained **him a large following**.
 The treaty gained **us several important trade concessions**.
 The deal gained **the company a lot of publicity**.
 His speech gained **a large following for him**.
 The treaty gained **several important trade concessions for us**.
 The deal gained **a lot of publicity for the company**.

for PARAPHRASE

PHRASAL VERBS

gain on _____ catch up to

The yellow car was gaining on us rapidly.

PRESENT

I gather we gather
 you gather you gather
 he/she/it gathers they gather
 • *I gather that there is a problem.*

PAST

I gathered we gathered
 you gathered you gathered
 he/she/it gathered they gathered
 • *The soldiers gathered their gear.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has gathered

PAST PERFECT ... had gathered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am gathering we are gathering
 you are gathering you are gathering
 he/she/it is gathering they are gathering
 • *I am gathering them together now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was gathering we were gathering
 you were gathering you were gathering
 he/she/it was gathering they were gathering
 • *He was gathering wild mushrooms for restaurants.*

FUTURE ... will gather

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be gathering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have gathered

PAST PASSIVE

I was gathered we were gathered
 you were gathered you were gathered
 he/she/it was gathered they were gathered
 • *The blanket was gathered about the baby.*

COMPLEMENTS

gather cluster, come together

Clouds were gathering in the west.
 A mob was gathering in front of the gate.
 A worldwide economic crisis was gathering.
 The hungry cows gathered along the fence.
 At sunset the birds all gather in the trees.

gather _____ collect, bring together

OBJECT

She was out gathering **flowers**.
 I gathered **the children** around me.
 He tried to gather **his scattered thoughts**.
 His collection of rare books was just gathering **dust in the basement**.

WH-CLAUSE

I tried to gather **my courage**.
 They gathered **what provisions they still had**.
 The bus gathered **whoever wanted to go on the field trip**.
 Rescuers gathered **whatever survivors they could find**.

gather _____ gain gradually

OBJECT

The truck gathered **speed** on the open highway.
 The proposal had gathered **a lot of support**.

gather _____ conclude

THAT-CLAUSE

They gathered **that the young couple wanted to be left alone**.
 We gathered **that the trip to London was off**.
 I gather **that the meeting wasn't a great success**.

gather _____ pull/fold together

OBJECT

We gathered **our cloaks** about us tightly.
 She gathered **her hair** into a tight bun.
 I gathered **the cloth** and stitched it.
 The sailors gathered **the sails**.

PRESENT

I get we get
 you get you get
 he/she/it gets they get
 • *He gets to sleep late on weekends.*

PAST

I got we got
 you got you got
 he/she/it got they got
 • *We got good feedback on the proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has got/gotten

PAST PERFECT ... had got/gotten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am getting we are getting
 you are getting you are getting
 he/she/it is getting they are getting
 • *I'm getting ready now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was getting we were getting
 you were getting you were getting
 he/she/it was getting they were getting
 • *The plan was getting a lot of criticism.*

FUTURE

... will get

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be getting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have got/gotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was got/gotten we were got/gotten
 you were got/gotten you were got/gotten
 he/she/it was got/gotten they were got/gotten
 • *Permission was gotten from the authorities.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Get* is also used as a helping verb to form the passive voice.

get + PAST PARTICIPLE

The burglar got caught by police.
 I got injured playing football.
 Bobby got sent to the principal's office.
 We'll get married in October.

get _____ receive, obtain

OBJECT

They got **permission** to leave early.
 I got a **"B"** in Social Studies last quarter.
 I got a **traffic ticket** last night.
 The company got **an award for community service**.
 I'm getting a **busy signal**.
 We are getting a **new car**.
 Permission to leave early was gotten.

get _____ bring

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

Get **me a coffee**, will you?
 I will get **her a blanket**.
 Get a **coffee for me**, will you?
 I will get a **blanket for her**.

get _____ notice, understand

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Did you get **that smirky look on his face**?
 "Did you get **the joke**?" "Yes, I got **it**."
 I got **what he was trying to say**.
 Did you get **how he avoided talking to us**?

get _____ become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He really got **angry** about it.
 I got **sick** on the way back.
 The dogs got **loose** and headed for the barn.

get _____ begin, start

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Let's get **going**.

get _____ have the opportunity, receive permission

INFINITIVE

We will get **to meet them at the reception**.
 The kids get **to stay up late tonight**.



get _____ *cause/persuade [to do/be]*

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

get _____ *arrive at*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ *travel*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ *cause to move*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ *be affected/infected by*

OBJECT

NOTE: For the following two meanings, *get* is used only in the present perfect tense.

get _____ *have, possess*

OBJECT

get _____ *must*

INFINITIVE

Get **your hands clean** before coming to the table.

I got **the computer screen dirty**.

I got **the kids to clean up their room**.

We finally got **the truck to start**.

I got **the kids cleaning up their room**.

It got **me thinking about a new solution**.

I finally got **my computer fixed**.

We got **our house painted**.

Our parents got **home** early.

We can get **to the office** in 15 minutes.

Did you get **to Paris** last summer?

I got **as far as Chicago**.

Can you get **me to the airport** in 30 minutes?

I got **the car out of the garage**.

I got **the hiccups** just before I went on stage.

Can you get **the flu** from a flu shot?

I've got **a terrible cold**.

I've only got **about \$20** on me.

I've got **to go now**.

He has got **to be more careful**.

PHRASAL VERBS

get **across/back/down/in/out/up/etc.**
move in a specified direction

get **SEP in/out/etc.** *take/bring in a
specified direction*

get **around/out** *become known*

get **around** _____ *avoid*

get **away with** _____ *do without
being punished*

get **back to** _____ *respond to*

get **behind (on _____)** *be late making
payments (on [something])*

get **by (on/with _____)** *manage to
survive/do (with [something])*

get **in/into** _____ *be admitted to*

get **out of** _____ *avoid,
escape*

get **over** _____ *recover from*

get **up** *rise*

get _____ **up** *cause to rise*

The police ordered the crowd to get back.
She opened the car door and told him to get in.

Did you get the firewood in?
He got the cheese and crackers out.

The news got around that they were divorced.
He got around the problem by installing new software.
The company got away with selling pirated software.

I must get back to Anthony tomorrow.
Lots of people have gotten behind on their mortgages.

Amos gets by on \$750 a month.
Our neighbors get by with just one car.
Our son got into nursing school.
Harold got out of doing dishes four nights in a row.

Pat got over the flu in three days.

It's 7 o'clock—time to get up.
Please get up and get me a fork.

Mom got us up before dawn.

PRESENT

I give we give
 you give you give
 he/she/it gives they give
 • *He gives 10% of his income to charity.*

PAST

I gave we gave
 you gave you gave
 he/she/it gave they gave
 • *The company gave me a car to use.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has given

PAST PERFECT ... had given

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am giving we are giving
 you are giving you are giving
 he/she/it is giving they are giving
 • *I'm giving up on it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was giving we were giving
 you were giving you were giving
 he/she/it was giving they were giving
 • *We were giving a party that evening.*

FUTURE ... will give

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be giving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have given

PAST PASSIVE

I was given we were given
 you were given you were given
 he/she/it was given they were given
 • *All of the employees were given entry cards.*

COMPLEMENTS

give *make a gift/donation*

give *yield, collapse*

give _____ *make a gift of, donate*
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

give _____ *convey physically*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

give _____ *provide*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

give _____ *host*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 for PARAPHRASE
 PASSIVE

give _____ *present*
 OBJECT

How much can you give?
 They always give generously to the homeless shelter.
 For the deadlock to be broken, something has to give.
 The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.

Terry gave **Dan** a new computer.
 Spanky gave **Alfalfa** the high sign.
 Terry gave a new computer **to Dan**.
 Spanky gave **the high sign to Alfalfa**.

She gave a **little smile** at the news.
 Leo gave **the president** a copy of the report.
 She gave **the boys** a dirty look.
 Leo gave a copy of the report **to the president**.
 She gave a dirty look **to the boys**.

Soy-based inks give **good results**.
 Give **me** a chance to prove myself.
 This gives **gays and lesbians** the right to marry.
 The boss gave **his cousin** a job.
 The boss gave a job **to his cousin**.

We will give **the reception** in his honor.
 I gave **my parents** a surprise party.
 We gave **the seniors** a graduation party.
 I gave a surprise party **for my parents**.
 We gave a graduation party **for the seniors**.
 A graduation party was given for the seniors.
 The seniors were given a graduation party.

The senator is giving a **speech** on TV.
 He gave a **good argument** against the proposal.



give _____ perform

OBJECT

The symphony gave **a concert** last night.
The band gave **a free concert** to benefit AIDS victims.

give _____ cause to have

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Loud music gives **me a headache**.

give _____ pay

OBJECT

Michelle gave **\$125** for her outfit.

give _____ administer

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Freddie gave **the guard a punch in the mouth**.
Darla's mom gave **her some cough syrup**.
Darla's mom gave **some cough syrup to her**.

TO PARAPHRASE

give _____ cause

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

You gave **me to understand that you would support us**.
He gave **Jackson to believe that the problem was solved**.

give _____ sentence to

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The judge gave **the criminal 30 days in jail**.

give _____ sacrifice

OBJECT + for OBJECT

"It is sweet and right to give **your life for your country**."
[HORACE]

give _____ devote

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Marvin gave **his whole life to the cause of justice**.

PHRASAL VERBS

give SEP away betray

A club member gave away our
secret meeting place.

give SEP back return

You'll have to give the engagement ring back.

give in (to _____) surrender
(to [someone/something])

After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in.
Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.

give it to _____ scold, punish

My boss really gave it to me when I walked in late.

give off _____ release, emit

The compost is giving off an earthy smell.
The laptop gives off a lot of heat.

give out come to an end

The settlers' food gave out after three weeks.

give out wear out, stop operating

After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.

give SEP out distribute

C.J. gave out the president's itinerary.

give SEP out make known

Don't give out your cell phone number.

give out _____ produce

This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.

give SEP up stop, cease

Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.

give SEP up surrender, yield

Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages.
An hour later, he gave himself up.

give up (on _____) admit failure
(with [something])

Sheila finally gave up on the crossword puzzle.
I tried four times to reach Lisa, then gave up.

give up (on _____) stop trying ([to do])

Ainsley finally gave up on trying to convince Sam.

PRESENT

I go we go
 you go you go
 he/she/it goes they go
 • *He goes to all their home games.*

PAST

I went we went
 you went you went
 he/she/it went they went
 • *We never went to Spain.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has gone

PAST PERFECT ... had gone

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am going we are going
 you are going you are going
 he/she/it is going they are going
 • *I'm going now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was going we were going
 you were going you were going
 he/she/it was going they were going
 • *The party was going very well.*

FUTURE ... will go

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be going

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have gone

PAST PASSIVE

Go is never used in the passive voice. *Gone* in sentences like *He is gone* is a past participle functioning as an adjective.

COMPLEMENTS

go *depart, leave*

Please go.
 I'm going as soon as I can get packed.
 The seasons come and go.

go *function*

The engine won't go.

go *become worse, fail*

I think my hearing is going.
 For most athletes, the knees are the first thing to go.

go *be eliminated/discarded*

I'm afraid that Smith will have to go.

go *be worded, sung*

The song goes like this ... la la di la la, la la di da.

go _____ *travel*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I'm going **to Dallas** tomorrow.
 We are going **to lunch** now.
Where do they go on vacation?

go _____ *proceed, move*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The car in the left lane is going **too slow**.
 I'm going **as fast as I can**.

go _____ *extend, lead*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Route 66 originally went **from Chicago to Los Angeles**.
 Delta goes **everywhere in the Southeast**.
 That door goes **to the kitchen**.

go _____ *pass*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The evening went **too quickly**.

go _____ *progress*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The meeting is going **well**.
How is it going?

go _____ *be, become, turn out*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers went **hungry** for days.
 I think the cheese has gone **bad**.
 How many banks have gone **bankrupt**?
 My e-mails to her have all gone **unanswered**.

go _____ *attend*

to OBJECT

Dad went **to college** on the G.I. Bill.
 Sidney went **to Harvard Law School**.
 Our family goes **to church** on Sunday.
 Let's go **to a movie** tonight.



go _____ engage in [a sport/leisure activity]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We plan to go **skiing** in Idaho.
They went **dancing** last night.

go _____ do [something inadvisable] [USED ONLY IN THE NEGATIVE; INFORMAL]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Don't go **telling everyone about it**.
We won't go **running to him with all our problems**.

go _____ belong

ADVERB OF PLACE

Coats go **in the closet**, not **on the floor**.

go _____ be sent

to OBJECT

The proposal went by e-mail **to all department heads**.

go _____ be given/sold

to OBJECT

The prize goes **to the lady in the blue sweater**.
The antique lamp goes **to bidder No. 17**.

PHRASAL VERBS

go back/down/in/out/up/etc.
move in a specified direction

He went back to check the furnace.
Ed went out to watch the sunset.

go against _____ oppose, be contrary to

She'll go against the incumbent in the fall election.
Dispensing birth control pills goes against his conscience.

go along with _____ agree with

The president went along with his staff on the issue.

go away end

My headache went away before lunch.

go back to _____ date back to

The New Year's Eve custom goes back to Druid times.

go back to _____ resume

It's four in the morning—go back to sleep.

go by _____ be known as

His real name is Meredith, but he goes by Snuffy.

go down decrease

The swelling has slowly gone down.
The temperature went down 18 degrees in one hour.

go down stop functioning

Cable service went down at 9:36 this morning.

go for _____ be attracted by

She goes for men with beards.

go for _____ do [an activity]

Let's go for a swim.

go for _____ sell for [an amount]

How much did the dining room set go for?

go into _____ begin a career in

Steve went into electronics, and Stuart went into medicine.

go off explode, fire

The gun went off accidentally.

go off take place, happen

The surprise party went off as planned.

go on be switched on

All of a sudden, the lights went on.

go on happen

What went on at yesterday's meeting?
What's going on?

go on (_____) continue ([doing])

Forrest Gump just went on running.
How long will the concert go on?

go out be extinguished

The lights went out one by one.

go through _____ spend, consume

We go through \$5,000 a month.
Our son goes through two gallons of milk a week.

go through _____ examine

She went through her mail during supper.

go under fail

A third of all small businesses go under.

go up be built

A new mall is going up on the edge of town.

go up increase

The stock market has gone up 225 points.

go with _____
harmonize with

This tie would go well with your blue suit.
That paisley shirt doesn't go with anything.

go without _____
manage without

The prisoners went without food for nine days.

PRESENT

I grant we grant
 you grant you grant
 he/she/it grants they grant
 • *The group grants awards to young artists.*

PAST

I granted we granted
 you granted you granted
 he/she/it granted they granted
 • *They granted me a leave of absence.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has granted

PAST PERFECT ... had granted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am granting we are granting
 you are granting you are granting
 he/she/it is granting they are granting
 • *They are granting a dozen awards this year.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was granting we were granting
 you were granting you were granting
 he/she/it was granting they were granting
 • *They were not granting any more loans.*

FUTURE ... will grant

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be granting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have granted

PAST PASSIVE

I was granted we were granted
 you were granted you were granted
 he/she/it was granted they were granted
 • *Your request was granted.*

COMPLEMENTS

grant _____ give, confer

OBJECT

The not-for-profit granted **three scholarships** last year.
 The local government grants **home beautification awards**.
 Our government grants **other countries emergency relief**.
 Our government grants **emergency relief to other countries**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

grant _____ agree to allow/fulfill

OBJECT

The fairy godmother granted **her every wish**.
 We can only grant **approved applications**.
 The judge granted **the lawyer's motion**.
 The president can grant **the refugees asylum**.
 They will grant **you your freedom**.
 She granted **the children three wishes**.
 The president can grant **asylum to the refugees**.
 They will grant **you freedom to you**.
 She granted **three wishes to the children**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

The court granted **what we had requested**.
 The agency can grant **whatever amounts it wishes to**.
 The wizard will grant **whatever wish Dorothy makes**.

grant _____ admit, assume

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

THAT-CLAUSE

I granted **her the point**.
 I granted **the point to her**.
 He granted **that I had a legitimate point**.
 I will grant **that his position is pretty solid**.
 Let's grant for the moment **that this is the case**.

grant _____ transfer [real estate by deed]

OBJECT

A deed grants **legal ownership of property**.
 Only a court officer can grant **a deed**.
 Our property was granted by the county.

PASSIVE

EXPRESSIONS

Granted, ... I/We admit that ...

Granted, the conversation should not
 have been recorded.

PRESENT

I grind we grind
 you grind you grind
 he/she/it grinds they grind
 • *Poverty grinds everyone down.*

PAST

I ground we ground
 you ground you ground
 he/she/it ground they ground
 • *We ground some more coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ground

PAST PERFECT ... had ground

PAST PASSIVE

I was ground we were ground
 you were ground you were ground
 he/she/it was ground they were ground
 • *The gear teeth were ground pretty badly.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am grinding we are grinding
 you are grinding you are grinding
 he/she/it is grinding they are grinding
 • *They are grinding their rusty swords and spears.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was grinding we were grinding
 you were grinding you were grinding
 he/she/it was grinding they were grinding
 • *I was grinding my teeth in my sleep.*

FUTURE ... will grind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be grinding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ground

COMPLEMENTS

grind *crush, sharpen/smooth/press by rubbing*

grind *clash/grate noisily*

grind _____ *crush into powder / tiny pieces*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

grind _____ *sharpen/smooth by rubbing*

OBJECT

grind _____ *rub together forcefully*

OBJECT

grind _____ *press/rub with a circular motion*

OBJECT

grind _____ *oppress*

OBJECT

The wheels of justice grind slow, but they grind exceeding fine. [PROVERB]
 The mill grinds continuously when the harvest comes in.

The gears ground whenever I tried to shift.
 His teeth were grinding loudly.
 The axle wheels were grinding and squeaking.

The wheel grinds **the seeds**, separating wheat from chaff.
 The miller is grinding **the corn** into meal.
 The heavy tanks ground **the road** to rubble.
 The editorial ground **the opposition's argument** to shreds.
 The corn is ground into meal.

We ground **all the edges** until they shone.
 The lens maker ground **the glass** until it was perfectly smooth.

He grinds **his teeth** when he gets really upset.

He ground **the black widow spider** under his heel.
 They ground **the dried herbs** with their hands.

The tyrant ground **the colonists** with excessive taxes.

PHRASAL VERBS

grind away at _____ *work steadily on*

grind SEP **down** *reduce and destroy [someone's] enthusiasm*

grind _____ **into** *rub into*

grind on *continue, seemingly endlessly*

grind SEP **out** *produce mechanically, churn out*

grind SEP **up** *reduce to small pieces*

She ground away at her thesis.

This job really grinds me down.

The workers ground dirt into the carpet.

The Vietnam War ground on for six more years.

The novelist grinds out a chapter a day.

Bill grinds the coffee beans up very fine.

PRESENT

I grow we grow
 you grow you grow
 he/she/it grows they grow
 • *He grows wheat and barley on his land.*

PAST

I grew we grew
 you grew you grew
 he/she/it grew they grew
 • *The kids grew a lot this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has grown

PAST PERFECT ... had grown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am growing we are growing
 you are growing you are growing
 he/she/it is growing they are growing
 • *He is growing up.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was growing we were growing
 you were growing you were growing
 he/she/it was growing they were growing
 • *The passengers were growing angry at the delay.*

FUTURE ... will grow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be growing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have grown

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was grown they were grown
 • *The Fair Trade coffee was grown in Mexico.*

COMPLEMENTS

grow develop, mature

Weeds were growing in the driveway.
 Many flowers won't grow in partial shade.

grow become taller

My, how you've grown!
 The kids are sure growing.

grow become longer

Her hair grew two inches over the summer.

grow become bigger, expand

Our investments have grown about eight percent a year.
 His reputation is growing even outside the region.
 The company is growing through mergers with smaller firms.
 The deficit has grown every year.

grow _____ raise [plants, a crop]

OBJECT

We will grow **more corn** next year.
 We can grow **pansies** in the window boxes.
 It isn't good to grow **the same crop** in a field year after year.
 We will grow **what sells the best**.
 They grow **whatever crops can tolerate the heat**.

grow _____ cause to develop and flourish

OBJECT

We are trying to grow **the business**.
 The company has grown **its profits** effectively.
 The magazine needs to grow **its circulation**.

grow _____ begin

INFINITIVE

I have grown **to like broccoli**.
 I had grown **to hate Senator Blather's speeches**.

grow _____ become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The driver grew **tired** as evening approached.
 Ruby grew **pale** at the sight of the snake.
 They grew **accustomed** to the boss's angry outbursts.

PHRASAL VERBS

grow into _____ become big enough for

She's grown into her sister's winter coat.

grow into _____ develop into

Your son has grown into a fine young man.
 The banking problem has grown into a major economic crisis.

grow up to be _____ develop into

She has grown up to be a poised and confident woman.

PRESENT

I guess we guess
 you guess you guess
 he/she/it guesses they guess
 • *I guess that we can come to the party.*

PAST

I guessed we guessed
 you guessed you guessed
 he/she/it guessed they guessed
 • *I guessed wrong every time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has guessed

PAST PERFECT ... had guessed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am guessing we are guessing
 you are guessing you are guessing
 he/she/it is guessing they are guessing
 • *I'm just guessing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was guessing we were guessing
 you were guessing you were guessing
 he/she/it was guessing they were guessing
 • *They were guessing that she would choose me.*

FUTURE ... will guess

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be guessing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have guessed

PAST PASSIVE

I was guessed we were guessed
 you were guessed you were guessed
 he/she/it was guessed they were guessed
 • *The answer was never guessed.*

COMPLEMENTS

guess *have/state an opinion without enough information*

You don't know; you're just guessing.
 You can guess as well as I can.
 Go ahead—guess.

guess _____ *give an answer/solution with no certainty of being correct*

OBJECT

Can you guess **the answer**?
 I can only guess **the outcome**.
 Guess **my dog's name**!

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I guessed **it wrong** again.
 You guessed **it right**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I guessed **Mary to take the prize**.
 Watson didn't guess **the "opium addict" to be Sherlock Holmes**.
 We guessed **him to be innocent**.

THAT-CLAUSE

She guessed **that the train would arrive in 15 minutes**.
 The contractor guessed **that a new furnace would cost \$3,000**.

WH-CLAUSE

You must guess **who he is**.
 Guess **what time it is**.
 Guess **where I'm going tomorrow**.

guess _____ *reach a correct conclusion about*

OBJECT

He guessed **the answer**.
 You can probably guess **my big news**.

WH-CLAUSE

You guessed **what he wanted this time**.
 Janet guessed **how many jelly beans were in the jar**.
 Can you guess **how much it cost**?

guess _____ *think, suppose*

THAT-CLAUSE

I guess **(that) you're right**.
 I guess **(that) I'll go straight to the party**.

EXPRESSIONS

I guess (so). *I suppose so.*
 [SHOWING VAGUE AGREEMENT]

"Are you thirsty?" "I guess so."
 "Will your dad be home this evening?" "I guess so."

Guess what! [CONVERSATION OPENER]

"Guess what!" "What?" "I'm going to have a baby."

PRESENT

I guide we guide
 you guide you guide
 he/she/it guides they guide
 • *He guides hikers through the park.*

PAST

I guided we guided
 you guided you guided
 he/she/it guided they guided
 • *His advice guided me through life.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has guided

PAST PERFECT ... had guided

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am guiding we are guiding
 you are guiding you are guiding
 he/she/it is guiding they are guiding
 • *I'm guiding this trip, not you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was guiding we were guiding
 you were guiding you were guiding
 he/she/it was guiding they were guiding
 • *The map was guiding us home.*

FUTURE ... will guide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be guiding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have guided

PAST PASSIVE

I was guided we were guided
 you were guided you were guided
 he/she/it was guided they were guided
 • *The ship was guided into the harbor by the pilot.*

COMPLEMENTS

guide *conduct a tour, show the way* Who can guide better than he?
 The North Star will always guide at night.

guide _____ *conduct [a tour], show the way to*
OBJECT Ms. Brown will guide **the tour of the plant**.
 Sacagawea guided **the Lewis and Clark expedition**.
 The GPS guided **us** to the restaurant.
 The lighthouse guided **the ship** back to harbor.

guide _____ *direct, control*
OBJECT The score guides **the conductor** in the interpretation
 of the music.
 The computer manual guided **us** through every step
 of the installation.
 Software guides **the flow of electricity** in the Smart Grid.
 Yoda's wisdom guided **Luke** in his struggle.

PASSIVE The bank's actions were guided by the need to protect
 the depositors.

WH-CLAUSE The latest research guides **what we will do**.
 The environmental impact should guide **where we locate
 the new plant**.
 Our income guides **how much we can spend**.

PRESENT

I hand we hand
 you hand you hand
 he/she/it hands they hand
 • *We hand in our report every Friday.*

PAST

I handed we handed
 you handed you handed
 he/she/it handed they handed
 • *The waiter just handed us the menus.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has handed**PAST PERFECT** ... had handed**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am handing we are handing
 you are handing you are handing
 he/she/it is handing they are handing
 • *I'm handing the report to them now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was handing we were handing
 you were handing you were handing
 he/she/it was handing they were handing
 • *The hostess was handing out party favors to the kids.*

FUTURE ... will hand**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be handing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have handed**PAST PASSIVE**

I was handed we were handed
 you were handed you were handed
 he/she/it was handed they were handed
 • *The documentation was handed to him by our lawyer.*

COMPLEMENTS**hand** _____ pass something by hand

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

Please hand **me that towel**.Can you hand **the agent our tickets**?Tarzan handed **Jane a banana**.Please hand **that towel to me**.Can you hand **our tickets to the agent**?Tarzan handed **a banana to Jane**.**hand** _____ provide/present

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

The news handed **us a golden opportunity**.Napoleon's delay handed **Wellington the battle**.The scandal handed **Senator Blather the election**.Our goalie's error handed **our opponents the game**.The news handed **a golden opportunity to us**.Napoleon's delay handed **the battle to Wellington**.The scandal handed **the election to Senator Blather**.Our goalie's error handed **the game to our opponents**.**PHRASAL VERBS****hand** SEP **down** issue [an official decision]

The judge handed down a sentence of five to 10 years.

hand SEP **down** pass from generation to generation

This story was handed down from mother to daughter. The desk has been handed down through six generations.

hand SEP **in** submit [a report, assignment]

Don't forget to hand in your essays at the end of class.

hand (SEP) **off** hand off ([the football]) (to [another player]) [AMERICAN FOOTBALL]

Warner handed off to the running back. The quarterback handed the ball off before he was tackled.

hand SEP **out** administer

She can hand out insults, but she can't take them.

hand SEP **out** distribute

C.J. handed out the president's schedule to the reporters.

hand SEP **over** surrender

Did the store clerk hand over all the money?

President Bush handed power over to President Obama.

PRESENT

I handle we handle
 you handle you handle
 he/she/it handles they handle
 • *My new car handles well.*

PAST

I handled we handled
 you handled you handled
 he/she/it handled they handled
 • *I handled this problem last week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has handled

PAST PERFECT ... had handled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am handling we are handling
 you are handling you are handling
 he/she/it is handling they are handling
 • *I'm handling the fraud case.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was handling we were handling
 you were handling you were handling
 he/she/it was handling they were handling
 • *The kids were handling the baby kittens carefully.*

FUTURE ... will handle

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be handling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have handled

PAST PASSIVE

I was handled we were handled
 you were handled you were handled
 he/she/it was handled they were handled
 • *These issues were handled by our legal department.*

COMPLEMENTS

handle _____ function in a certain way

ADVERB OF MANNER

His truck doesn't handle **very well at all**.
 The boat's helm began to handle **sluggishly**.
 Most sports cars handle **very tightly**.

handle _____ touch, hold, feel

OBJECT

Please don't handle **the merchandise**.
 We handled **the material** to see how soft it was.
 Nobody would handle **the reptiles** at the petting zoo.

handle _____ take care of, manage, deal with

OBJECT

Who is handling **the phones**?
 The Major Case Squad handles **only murder cases**.
 His main job is to handle **all requests to meet the senator**.
 Who will handle **the problem of employee theft**?
 All our legal affairs are handled by their firm.

PASSIVE

handle _____ endure, cope with

OBJECT

I can't handle **the heat in Florida**.
 Do you think you can handle **all the confusion**?
 We couldn't handle **the cigarette smoke in the restaurant**.
 They couldn't handle **what was happening**.
 I can handle **whatever I need to**.
 The soldiers could handle **whatever the enemy threw at them**.
 He couldn't handle **working such long hours**.
 The soldiers couldn't handle **being away from their families**.
 The engine couldn't handle **pulling such a heavy load**.

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

handle _____ be involved in buying/selling

OBJECT

The hardware store handles **plumbing and electrical supplies**.

handle _____ behave

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

Sam handled **himself** very well in the scandal.

EXPRESSIONS

handle _____ with kid gloves
 deal with very carefully

You need to handle the actor with kid gloves.

PRESENT

I hang	we hang
you hang	you hang
he/she/it hangs	they hang

• *His picture hangs in the boardroom.*

PAST

I hung/hanged	we hung/hanged
you hung/hanged	you hung/hanged
he/she/it hung/hanged	they hung/hanged

• *We hung all the ornaments on the tree.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hung/hanged

PAST PERFECT ... had hung/hanged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hanging	we are hanging
you are hanging	you are hanging
he/she/it is hanging	they are hanging

• *I'm hanging around until she returns.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hanging	we were hanging
you were hanging	you were hanging
he/she/it was hanging	they were hanging

• *They were hanging out at Tom's house.*

FUTURE

... will hang

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hanging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hung/hanged

PAST PASSIVE

I was hung/hanged	we were hung/hanged
you were hung/hanged	you were hung/hanged
he/she/it was hung/hanged	they were hung/hanged

• *He was hanged in 1803.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The past tense and past participle form is *hung* for all meanings of *hang* except one: The form *hanged* is used for the meanings “be suspended by the neck until dead” and “suspend by the neck until dead.”

hang *be suspended by the neck until dead* He will hang for his crimes.
Black Bart was finally hanged.

hang _____ *be suspended, droop*
ADVERB OF PLACE

ADVERB OF MANNER

hang _____ *be prevalent*
ADVERB OF PLACE

hang _____ *suspend/fasten without support from below, let droop*
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)

PASSIVE

hang _____ *exhibit [artwork]*
OBJECT

PASSIVE

hang _____ *suspend by the neck until dead*
OBJECT
PASSIVE

The gulls hung **above the fishing boats**.
The smoke from the forest fire hung **in the still air**.
Wet laundry hung **everywhere in the small apartment**.
The flag was hanging **limply** from the staff.
His suit hangs **a little too loosely**.
His head hung **in shame** after his arrest.

Before the battle, tension hung **in the air**.

We've already hung **the Christmas wreath**.
We hung **our wet clothing on branches**.
I hung a **bird feeder in the oak tree**.
The bridge was hung **from steel cables**.

They hung **her paintings** in the main gallery.
I hung **the photograph** in the spring exhibition.
His pictures have been hung at all the major art shows.

They hanged **the convict** at dawn.
He was hanged for his many crimes.

PHRASAL VERBS

hang around/out *loiter, linger*
hang on *wait*
hang on to _____ *keep*
hang up *end a phone call*

Leo hung around for Josh.
Can you hang on while I take another call?
Hang on to the baby clothes; you may need them again.
I was telling her about my day when she just hung up.

PRESENT

I happen we happen
 you happen you happen
 he/she/it happens they happen
 • *It happens to be my birthday today.*

PAST

I happened we happened
 you happened you happened
 he/she/it happened they happened
 • *I happened to be downtown on Friday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has happened

PAST PERFECT ... had happened

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it is happening they are happening
 • *It is happening all over again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was happening they were happening
 • *Nothing was happening.*

FUTURE ... will happen

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be happening

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have happened

PAST PASSIVE

Happen is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

happen occur, take place

Mistakes happen.
 Good stuff is happening there.
 What happened on this date in history?
 The same thing had happened to us before.
 It will happen again, you know.

happen _____ [be/do] by chance

INFINITIVE

I happen **to know the combination to the lock.**
 Did you happen **to see Mary on your way in?**
 Do you happen **to have change for a dollar?**
 We happened **to be visiting Denver at the time.**

there + happen + to be PREDICATE NOUN

There happens **to be a tool kit in my car.**
 There happened **to be a police car passing by.**

it + happen + to be PREDICATE NOUN

It happens **to be trash pickup day.**
 It happened **to be the third Sunday of the month.**

it + happen + to be PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

It happens **to be hot and humid here in the Midwest.**

it + happen + THAT-CLAUSE

It happens **that we will be out of town Saturday.**
 It happened **that George went to school with him.**
 It could happen **that the game will be postponed.**
 It happened **that the hotel had lost our reservation.**

PHRASAL VERBS

happen along/by appear, come past by chance

We were sitting on the porch when a deer happened by.

happen on/upon _____ meet/find by chance

We happened on Luis at the baseball game.
 I happened on his wallet when I was cleaning the living room.
 My son was returning from a concert when he happened upon the crime scene.

happen to _____ be done to, be the fate of

Could something have happened to the kids?
 They promised nothing would happen to me.
 Pay us the money, and nothing will happen to little Jimmy.
 What happened to the proposal I gave you?

PRESENT

I hate we hate
 you hate you hate
 he/she/it hates they hate

• *He hates to be late for dinner.*

PAST

I hated we hated
 you hated you hated
 he/she/it hated they hated

• *I always hated driving in the snow.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hated

PAST PERFECT ... had hated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Hate is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Hate is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will hate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hated

PAST PASSIVE

I was hated we were hated
 you were hated you were hated
 he/she/it was hated they were hated

• *Our dog was hated by every cat in the neighborhood.*

COMPLEMENTS

hate _____ dislike very strongly

OBJECT

The kids hate **broccoli**.

I hate **the way my hair looks**.

She hates **the long commute to work**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I hate **him criticizing everybody's ideas**.

The judge hates **attorneys filing frivolous motions**.

The company hates **the union striking at the busiest time of year**.

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I would hate **for them to lose their last game**.

We hated **for them to worry so much about it**.

Mr. Jordan always hated **for meetings to start late**.

INFINITIVE

I hate **to interrupt**, but I need to talk to you.

We hate **to estimate the extent of the problem** without knowing more about it.

She hates **to throw anything away**.

(it) THAT-CLAUSE

I hate **(it) that the kids can't come for Christmas**.

We hated **(it) that the candidates were unwilling to discuss the real issues**.

I hate **(it) that the library is closed on weekends**.

WH-CLAUSE

I hate **who he has become**.

Ben hated **what they did to his parents' house**.

Everyone hates **how expensive gasoline is these days**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

My parents hate **being out so late**.

Everyone hates **getting old**.

Don't you hate **getting stuck at the airport?**

EXPRESSIONS

hate [someone's] guts dislike
 [someone] intensely

He used to be her friend, but now she hates
 his guts.

PRESENT

I have we have
 you have you have
 he/she/it has they have
 • *November only has 30 days.*

PAST

I had we had
 you had you had
 he/she/it had they had
 • *We had a really great time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has had

PAST PERFECT ... had had

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am having we are having
 you are having you are having
 he/she/it is having they are having
 • *I'm having some people over.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was having we were having
 you were having you were having
 he/she/it was having they were having
 • *We were having a lot of problems then.*

FUTURE ... will have

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be having

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have had

PAST PASSIVE

Have is not used in the passive voice except in idiomatic expressions.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Have* is also used as a helping verb to form the perfect tenses.

have + PAST PARTICIPLE She has read all six of Jane Austen's novels.

have _____ possess, own, contain, include

OBJECT Do you have a **car**?
 I have **enough food for everyone**.
 Ted has **an interesting news item for us**.
 Do you have a **minute**?
 We have **an office in Tokyo**.
 Does the meeting room have a **projection screen**?
 The department store has **mattresses on sale**.
 A week has **seven days**.
 The knitters' club has **372 members**.

have _____ be characterized by

OBJECT She has **red hair**.
 He has a **quick temper**.
 My car has a **tendency to stall at stop signs**.

have _____ must

INFINITIVE I have **to be at the office by 8 o'clock**.
 We have **to stop for gas at the next exit**.
 You will have **to make up your minds soon**.

NOTE: When the information in the infinitive is clear from context, *have* + INFINITIVE is often contracted to *have* + *to*. For example, *Do you have to go now?* may be contracted to *Do you have to?* *Have to* is sometimes pronounced /hafta/.

have _____ cause [to do]

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE I had **the kids put away their toys**.
 He had **me reprint the document**.
 We will have **the builder modify the deck**.
 OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE He had **his crew working on the addition**.
 The comedian really had **us laughing**.
 The coach had **the team running wind sprints**.
 OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE I had **my watch repaired**.
 Aunt Jenny had **her hip replaced** this fall.
 They had **the wedding reception catered**.



have _____ experience, undergo

OBJECT

He had **chicken pox** when he was a child.

Did you have **a good time** at the party?

The Southwest had **drought conditions** for several years.

They are having **an argument about visitation rights**.

have _____ keep in one's mind

OBJECT

Senator Blather has **an opinion about everything**.

We have **doubts about the new employee**.

I have **an idea for earning extra money**.

have _____ host

OBJECT

The restaurant is having **a grand opening** this Saturday.

have _____ eat, drink

OBJECT

Dan is having **blackberry pie** for dessert.

Tim had **a refill** on his soft drink.

have _____ be the parent(s) of

OBJECT

We have **two sons and a daughter**.

have _____ study

OBJECT

Terry had **three years of Spanish** in high school.

have _____ position

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Mark had **his hands on the steering wheel**.

The graduate had **a parent on either side of him**.

PHRASAL VERBS

have _____ back/down/over/up/etc.
invite and host [someone] at a specified
location

We had the Smiths over for dinner.

have _____ against have as a reason
to dislike

She has a grudge against her ex-boyfriend.

have _____ on be operating

She has the radio on when she's at home.

have SEP on be wearing

He had on a turtleneck sweater and baggy trousers.

have SEP out have removed

I had one of my upper molars out.

EXPRESSIONS

have had it have done/endured all
that one can

I have had it with tax auditors.

have a big mouth _____ gossip a lot,
reveal secrets a lot

Don't tell Joanie your troubles; she has a big mouth.

have a bone to pick (with _____) have
something to argue about (with [someone])

I have a bone to pick with the editor about his changes.

have [one's] cake and eat it too / have
it both ways have the advantages of
something without its disadvantages

Denny wants to live in the country, but he wants a
grocery store next door. He can't have his cake and
eat it too.

have it good be rich

The bank executive really has it good—a Mercedes,
a mansion, and a vacation home in California.

have it out (with _____)
settle an argument (with
[someone])

The teacher had it out with the principal.

have it that _____
claim/say that

Rumor has it that Glenda is getting married.

have to do with _____
concern, involve

The article has to do with child labor laws.

PRESENT

I head we head
 you head you head
 he/she/it heads they head
 • *She heads the compensation committee.*

PAST

I headed we headed
 you headed you headed
 he/she/it headed they headed
 • *Jones headed the list of candidates.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has headed

PAST PERFECT ... had headed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am heading we are heading
 you are heading you are heading
 he/she/it is heading they are heading
 • *I am heading the investigation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was heading we were heading
 you were heading you were heading
 he/she/it was heading they were heading
 • *We were finally heading home.*

FUTURE ... will head

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be heading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have headed

PAST PASSIVE

I was headed we were headed
 you were headed you were headed
 he/she/it was headed they were headed
 • *The ship was headed out to sea.*

COMPLEMENTS

head _____ lead, be in charge of

OBJECT

PASSIVE

head _____ be at the front/top of

OBJECT

PASSIVE

head _____ proceed/go

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

head _____ move (toward)

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Ms. Lewis is heading **the operation**.
 Who will head **the department** after she retires?
 The program was headed by Oliver Brown.

Clearly, she heads **the list of potential nominees**.
 Who is heading **the short list**?
 The Giants head **their division** again this year.
 The pool of applicants was headed by my mother.

We headed **home** after dinner.
 The sheep were heading **into the south pasture**.
 The fishing boats were all heading **west**.

We headed **the car to the curb**.
 The ranchers headed **the sheep up to the mountains**.
 They headed **the sailboat into the wind**.

PHRASAL VERBS

head back/down/in/off/out/over/
 up/etc. go in a specified direction

head after _____ pursue

head for _____ have as a destination

head into _____ begin to do

head SEP off block, intercept

Let's head down to Mexico City.
 The twins headed off to college in 2006.
 Pierre headed after Lizbeth to apologize.

Our family headed for the Ozarks.
 Patton's army headed for Berlin.

She finished her Algebra homework and headed into Chemistry.
 Grant's army headed off the Confederate army at Appomattox.

PRESENT

I hear we hear
 you hear you hear
 he/she/it hears they hear
 • *He only hears what he wants to.*

PAST

I heard we heard
 you heard you heard
 he/she/it heard they heard
 • *I heard that there was a problem.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has heard

PAST PERFECT ... had heard

PAST PASSIVE

I was heard we were heard
 you were heard you were heard
 he/she/it was heard they were heard
 • *All witnesses were heard in one afternoon.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hearing we are hearing
 you are hearing you are hearing
 he/she/it is hearing they are hearing
 • *I'm not hearing anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hearing we were hearing
 you were hearing you were hearing
 he/she/it was hearing they were hearing
 • *They were hearing some surprising reports.*

FUTURE

... will hear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have heard

COMPLEMENTS

hear perceive sound by earhear make out words/musichear perceive by ear

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE [USED ONLY
IN THE PASSIVE]

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

hear be told, learn

OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

hear listen to the two sides in [a court case]

OBJECT

She can only hear in the middle frequencies.

Sam hears pretty well for someone his age.

Can everybody hear, or should I turn the radio up?

I don't think anyone could hear while the band was playing.

I just heard **the telephone**.We could hear **the surf** from our room.Did you just hear **something**?

The dog's barking was heard by everybody in the building.

He was heard **to make threats**.The senator was heard **to make promises he couldn't keep**.I heard **him start the car**.We heard **the kids turn on the TV**.I heard **her play a Mozart piano concerto**.I heard **him starting the car**.We heard **the kids playing in the backyard**.He heard **someone talking on the phone**.Did you hear **the news**?I heard **the final score**.John has just heard **the results of his test**.I heard **that Jim is leaving the company**.Did you hear **that they are going to have a baby**?Have you heard **who won the game**?I heard **what you said**.The judge heard **three divorce cases** this morning.

PHRASAL VERBS

hear from receive a message fromhear of learn of the existence ofhear out listen to everything
[someone] has to say

We heard from the Ellners last week.

I've heard of hedgehogs, but I've never seen one.

Simon heard her out, but he didn't change his mind.

PRESENT

I help we help
 you help you help
 he/she/it helps they help
 • *He helps the kids with their homework.*

PAST

I helped we helped
 you helped you helped
 he/she/it helped they helped
 • *I helped as much as I could.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has helped

PAST PERFECT ... had helped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am helping we are helping
 you are helping you are helping
 he/she/it is helping they are helping
 • *I'm helping wherever I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was helping we were helping
 you were helping you were helping
 he/she/it was helping they were helping
 • *We were helping them fix dinner.*

FUTURE ... will help

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be helping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have helped

PAST PASSIVE

I was helped we were helped
 you were helped you were helped
 he/she/it was helped they were helped
 • *The situation was helped by their timely actions.*

COMPLEMENTS

help *be of assistance/use*

He always helps if we need him.
 A little extra money always helps.
 The kids help around the house once in a while.

help _____ *assist, support*

OBJECT

Help **your mother** in the kitchen, will you?
 The new players have really helped **the team**.
 Some rain will help **the corn**.
 Please help **yourself** to more coffee.
 Jerry helped **me get the kite off the roof**.
 I will help **you do it**.
 The guards actually helped **the prisoners escape**.
 Can you help **me finish this report**?
 Can you help **fix it**?
 He even helped **pay for it**.
 Theo helped **clean out the barn**.
 Help **get the dog back inside**.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

help _____ *improve, give relief to*

OBJECT

The extra tutoring helped **my test scores** a lot.
 Nothing would help **this food**.
 A new rug would help **the living room**.
 The aspirin helped **my headache**.

help _____ *avoid [USUALLY USED IN THE NEGATIVE]*

but + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE [INFORMAL]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I couldn't help **but hear what you said**.
 I couldn't help **hearing what you said**.
 They couldn't help **laughing at the situation**.
 Bill can't help **making a bad situation worse**.
 Romeo couldn't help **being attracted to Juliet**.

PHRASAL VERBS

help _____ *down/in/out/up/etc. assist in moving in a specified direction*

We helped the kitten down from the tree.
 I've fallen; can you help me up?

help [someone] on/off with _____ *assist [someone] in putting on / taking off [clothing]*

She helped Gretchen on with her shoes.
 Would you help me off with this sweatshirt?

PRESENT

I hide	we hide
you hide	you hide
he/she/it hides	they hide

• *Our cat always hides in the closet.*

PAST

I hid	we hid
you hid	you hid
he/she/it hid	they hid

• *I hid a house key outside.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hidden

PAST PERFECT ... had hidden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hiding	we are hiding
you are hiding	you are hiding
he/she/it is hiding	they are hiding

• *I'm hiding from Todd.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hiding	we were hiding
you were hiding	you were hiding
he/she/it was hiding	they were hiding

• *They were hiding the money in offshore accounts.*

FUTURE ... will hide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hiding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was hidden	we were hidden
you were hidden	you were hidden
he/she/it was hidden	they were hidden

• *The photos were hidden in a closet.*

COMPLEMENTS

hide keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself

The dog hides whenever we get his cage.
The birds hide in the trees if there is a hawk nearby.
The kids were hiding behind the tree.
The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.

hide _____ put out of sight, conceal
OBJECT

The cat had hidden **her kittens** in the attic.
The burglars hid **themselves** carefully.
The old lady hid **her money** under her mattress.
He hid **the stolen property** in the basement.
Janet hid **her face** behind the newspaper.
They hid **their business losses** by altering the records.

hide _____ keep secret
OBJECT
WH-CLAUSE

I tried to hide **my confusion** by changing the subject.
The senator hid **who had actually made the campaign contribution**.
They wanted to hide **what they had done**.
Allison never hid **what she was going to do**.
We all want to hide **whatever makes us look foolish**.

hide _____ keep from being seen
OBJECT
PASSIVE

A sign hid **the entrance to his office**.
My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.

PHRASAL VERBS

hide out conceal oneself for a period of time

Jesse and Frank James hid out in Meramec Caverns.

EXPRESSIONS

hide [one's] head in the sand ignore signs of danger

We hid our heads in the sand when Hitler seized control of the government.

hide [one's] light under a bushel conceal one's talents/ideas

Share your suggestions, Donna. Don't hide your light under a bushel.

PRESENT

I hire we hire
 you hire you hire
 he/she/it hires they hire
 • *The firm only hires college graduates.*

PAST

I hired we hired
 you hired you hired
 he/she/it hired they hired
 • *We just hired a new IT person.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hired

PAST PERFECT ... had hired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hiring we are hiring
 you are hiring you are hiring
 he/she/it is hiring they are hiring
 • *I am not hiring just anyone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hiring we were hiring
 you were hiring you were hiring
 he/she/it was hiring they were hiring
 • *They were hiring staff for the new office.*

FUTURE ... will hire

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hiring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hired

PAST PASSIVE

I was hired we were hired
 you were hired you were hired
 he/she/it was hired they were hired
 • *Marian was hired by a company in Texas.*

COMPLEMENTS

hire employ someone to do a job

The Apex Corporation is hiring now.
 Do you know anyone who is hiring?
 Nobody will hire in a recession.

hire _____ employ to do a job, engage the services of

OBJECT

We had to hire **a contractor**.
 He hired **his brother-in-law**.
 The hospitals are trying to hire **more skilled nurses**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

My neighbor was hired for temporary work.
 We hired **an electrician to wire the new ceiling fan**.
 The company hired **a salesman to fill in for Dolores**.

WH-CLAUSE

We can only hire **who is on the short list of applicants**.
 They will hire **whoever is the most qualified**.
 I will hire **whomever I want to**.

PHRASAL VERBS

hire SEP away cause [someone] to leave a job and begin a job with one's company

They tried to hire away the top math professors at our university.

hire [oneself] out take a job, usually temporarily

Between campaigns, he hired himself out as a speechwriter.
 She hired herself out as a babysitter.

PRESENT

I hit we hit
 you hit you hit
 he/she/it hits they hit
 • *He always hits his target.*

PAST

I hit we hit
 you hit you hit
 he/she/it hit they hit
 • *The storm hit us pretty hard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hit

PAST PERFECT ... had hit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hitting we are hitting
 you are hitting you are hitting
 he/she/it is hitting they are hitting
 • *I'm hitting a lot of resistance.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hitting we were hitting
 you were hitting you were hitting
 he/she/it was hitting they were hitting
 • *Prices were hitting all-time highs.*

FUTURE

... will hit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hit

PAST PASSIVE

I was hit we were hit
 you were hit you were hit
 he/she/it was hit they were hit
 • *Our car was hit by a pickup truck.*

COMPLEMENTS

hit deliver a blow/setback

Depression can hit at any time.
 The storm will hit sometime tomorrow morning.
 The shells and bombs were hitting everywhere.

hit _____ strike, deliver a blow to

OBJECT

The batter hit **the pitch** sharply.
 I hit **the target** on the first shot.
 The bullet hit **him** in the left shoulder.
 Our oak tree was hit by lightning.

PASSIVE

hit _____ cause to suffer, distress

OBJECT

A terrible drought has hit **the entire Midwest**.
 A sharp sell-off hit **the market** today.

hit _____ activate, turn on/off

OBJECT

He hit **the brakes** in a panic.
 Hit **the light switch**, will you?
 They always want to hit **the panic button** right away.

hit _____ reach [a level/goal]

OBJECT

Do you think oil will hit **\$100 a barrel**?
 Sales could hit **our goal of 2,000 units** this week.
 A new record was hit on Wall Street today.

PASSIVE

hit _____ arrive/appear at

OBJECT

We should hit **Kansas City** around noon.
 The tourists hit **all the souvenir shops**.

hit _____ encounter

OBJECT

The pilot hit **a headwind** 120 miles from Singapore.
 The research was going well, then we hit **a snag**.

hit _____ become clear to

OBJECT

The smell of garlic hit **me** as soon as I entered the house.
 The solution hit **Johanna** right after lunch.

PHRASAL VERBS

hit on/upon _____ discover

She hit upon the idea of extending
 Medicare to people 55 and over.

PRESENT

I hold we hold
 you hold you hold
 he/she/it holds they hold
 • *A barrel holds 55 U.S. gallons.*

PAST

I held we held
 you held you held
 he/she/it held they held
 • *She held that position for years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has held

PAST PERFECT ... had held

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am holding we are holding
 you are holding you are holding
 he/she/it is holding they are holding
 • *Come on, I'm holding the door.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was holding we were holding
 you were holding you were holding
 he/she/it was holding they were holding
 • *Susan was holding the baby.*

FUTURE ... will hold

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be holding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have held

PAST PASSIVE

I was held we were held
 you were held you were held
 he/she/it was held they were held
 • *The plane was held for transfer passengers.*

COMPLEMENTS

hold *keep one's position*

So far, our defensive line is holding.
 We hope the tent holds in this wind.
 The beautiful weather will hold through the weekend.
 Our market share is still holding.
 The senator's lead in the polls has held steady.
 Please hold still.
 Please hold. Your call is important to us.
 I hope this rope holds.

hold *stay together / in one piece*

hold _____ *grasp*

OBJECT

I held **the hammer** in my right hand.
 Please hold **the ladder** while I change the lightbulb.
 Hold **my hand** while we cross the street.

hold _____ *keep steady, maintain, keep control of*

OBJECT

They will hold **their prices** at the current level.
 The runners held **a five-mile-per-hour pace**.
 The house had held **its value** over the years.
 Will you hold **the elevator** for a minute?
 The framework holds **the entire structure** together.
 He needs to hold **his temper** better.
 How long can you hold **your breath**?
 The movie completely held **my attention**.
 The senator held **his audience spellbound**.
 The scream held **everyone frozen in place**.
 The cables hold **the tower rigid**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

hold _____ *keep for later use*

OBJECT

The hotel will hold **the room** for us until 10 P.M.
 Hold **my calls**.
 The troops were held in reserve.

PASSIVE

hold _____ *contain, have room for*

OBJECT

The safe deposit box holds **the deed to our house**.
 The tank holds **1,000 gallons**.
 The auditorium can hold **400 people**.



hold _____ consider, believe

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

hold _____ conduct

OBJECT

hold _____ have as one's own

OBJECT

hold _____ keep in one's mind, maintain

OBJECT

hold SEP back/down/in/out/up/etc.
keep in a specified position

hold _____ against [someone] have as
a reason to think poorly of [someone]

hold SEP back keep secret, withhold

hold SEP down have and keep [a job]

hold SEP in suppress

hold off (on) _____ delay, postpone

hold SEP off keep away, resist

hold on wait

hold on manage to keep one's position

hold SEP on secure

hold out last, endure

hold out for _____ insist on getting

hold SEP over keep for more
performances

hold _____ together keep united

hold up remain in the
same condition

hold SEP up delay,
stop

hold SEP up rob

hold SEP up support

The judge held **the defendant (to be) blameless.**

I hold **him (to be) fully responsible for the accident.**

"We hold **these truths to be self-evident ...**"

[DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE]

The court held **that citizens have a right to possess firearms.**

For years, the tobacco industry held **that cigarettes didn't cause cancer.**

The seniors held **a bake sale** for their class trip.

We held **a seminar** for the interns.

The neighbors held **a lively conversation** on the porch.

They will hold **a special exhibit on pre-Columbian art.**

The president will hold **a press conference** on Tuesday.

Amelia Earhart holds **the title of first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean.**

My wife holds **the office of County Clerk.**

They held **the belief that the earth is flat.**

We will hold **the memory of her** in our hearts forever.

PHRASAL VERBS

A police barricade held the crowd back.

The auctioneer held up an antique butter churn.

She still holds it against him that he has never opened the door for her.

The juror held back the fact that he knew the defendant. His mother was sure that he was holding something back.

Jake holds down two jobs and takes college classes too.

The candidate is good at holding his emotions in.

She held off asking her parents for more money.

The old woman held the robber off until police arrived.

Hold on while I dry my hands.

Although our team was outscored in the final period, we held on and won the game.

A clasp holds the lid on.

How long will our food hold out?

The settlers held out until the cavalry arrived.

I don't want a cookie; I'm holding out for a cupcake.

The union held out for better working conditions.

The theater held the movie over for six more weeks.

It was Mom who held the family together.

This old house is holding up pretty well.

Sales of soccer balls are holding up in spite of the economy.

The discovery of human remains held up construction for two weeks.

Three teenagers held the store up in broad daylight.

Special bolts hold up the roof of a coal mine.

PRESENT

I honor we honor
 you honor you honor
 he/she/it honors they honor
 • *He always honors his agreements.*

PAST

I honored we honored
 you honored you honored
 he/she/it honored they honored
 • *The club honored me with an award.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has honored

PAST PERFECT ... had honored

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am honoring we are honoring
 you are honoring you are honoring
 he/she/it is honoring they are honoring
 • *They are honoring us for our environmental work.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was honoring we were honoring
 you were honoring you were honoring
 he/she/it was honoring they were honoring
 • *The bank was honoring the letter of credit.*

FUTURE ... will honor

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be honoring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have honored

PAST PASSIVE

I was honored we were honored
 you were honored you were honored
 he/she/it was honored they were honored
 • *Dean Smith was honored by all of her colleagues.*

COMPLEMENTS

honor _____ show great respect for

OBJECT

The party honors **graduating seniors**.
 “Honor **your father and your mother**.” [BIBLE]
 We can’t honor **our soldiers** enough.
 The nation honors **Presidents Washington and Lincoln**
 on Presidents’ Day in February.
 I am greatly honored by your applause.

PASSIVE

honor _____ fulfill the terms of, fulfill one’s commitment to pay

OBJECT

Our country will honor **all the terms of the treaty**.
 He is a person who always honors **his word**.
 The company must honor **all of its bills**.

honor _____ accept as payment

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Will the restaurant honor **my credit card**?
 A certified check will be honored at any bank.

PRESENT

I hope we hope
 you hope you hope
 he/she/it hopes they hope
 • *He hopes that he can visit sometime.*

PAST

I hoped we hoped
 you hoped you hoped
 he/she/it hoped they hoped
 • *I always hoped that I could go to Italy.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hoped

PAST PERFECT ... had hoped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hoping we are hoping
 you are hoping you are hoping
 he/she/it is hoping they are hoping
 • *I'm hoping that it will snow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hoping we were hoping
 you were hoping you were hoping
 he/she/it was hoping they were hoping
 • *We were hoping for success.*

FUTURE ... will hope

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hoping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hoped

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was hoped they were hoped
 • *A bigger turnout was hoped for.*

COMPLEMENTS

hope _____ desire, wish
 for OBJECT

THAT-CLAUSE

The kids are hoping **for snow** on Christmas Day.
 We couldn't hope **for a nicer day to go to the beach**.
 I hope **that everything is okay**.
 We hoped **that you could join us**.
 My father was hoping **that he might rest awhile**.
 The players hope **that they do not have to play in the rain**.
 Everyone hopes **that the market will recover**.
 I hope **that I didn't offend anyone**.

hope _____ expect, plan
 INFINITIVE

I hope **to go Boston on Tuesday**.
 The plumber hopes **to be finished in an hour**.
 We hope **to see you there**.
 I never hoped **to have such success with it**.
 He hopes **to do better next time**.

EXPRESSIONS

hope against (all) hope desire an
 improbable outcome

The family is hoping against hope that
 their house wasn't flooded.

PRESENT

I house we house
 you house you house
 he/she/it houses they house
 • *The cabinet houses his mineral collection.*

PAST

I housed we housed
 you housed you housed
 he/she/it housed they housed
 • *They housed the flood victims in a hotel.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has housed

PAST PERFECT ... had housed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am housing we are housing
 you are housing you are housing
 he/she/it is housing they are housing
 • *I am housing two international students.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was housing we were housing
 you were housing you were housing
 he/she/it was housing they were housing
 • *We were housing the wedding guests all over town.*

FUTURE

... will house

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be housing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have housed

PAST PASSIVE

I was housed we were housed
 you were housed you were housed
 he/she/it was housed they were housed
 • *The refugees were temporarily housed in army tents.*

NOTE: The verb *house* ends with a /z/ sound.
 The noun *house* ends with an /s/ sound.

COMPLEMENTS

house _____ give shelter/lodging to

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)

We offered to house **an exchange student**.
 They housed **us in old army barracks**.
 We have to house **the volunteers somewhere**.
 Can we house **our pets with you?**

house _____ store

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)

While I was working abroad, my parents housed **my furniture**.
 You must house **these papers somewhere dry**.
 His documents were housed **in various places**.

PASSIVE

house _____ contain

OBJECT

Those buildings house **government offices**.
 These rooms house **all of his photographs**.
 The outbuildings house **his antique automobiles**.
 These drawers house **thousands of specimens**.

PASSIVE

The printers are housed in a separate room.

PRESENT

I hurt we hurt
 you hurt you hurt
 he/she/it hurts they hurt

• *The scandal hurts his re-election chances.*

PAST

I hurt we hurt
 you hurt you hurt
 he/she/it hurt they hurt

• *I hurt my knee yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hurt

PAST PERFECT ... had hurt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hurting we are hurting
 you are hurting you are hurting
 he/she/it is hurting they are hurting

• *The auto industry is really hurting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hurting we were hurting
 you were hurting you were hurting
 he/she/it was hurting they were hurting

• *Lack of money was hurting our program.*

FUTURE ... will hurt

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hurting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hurt

PAST PASSIVE

I was hurt we were hurt
 you were hurt you were hurt
 he/she/it was hurt they were hurt

• *He was hurt playing football.*

COMPLEMENTS

hurt *be a source of pain*

Mommy, my stomach hurts.
 My shoulder was hurting again.
 This injection may hurt a little.
 The loss of so many jobs has got to hurt.
 The entire economy is hurting.

hurt *be in a bad situation*

hurt _____ *injure, cause pain/harm to*

OBJECT

He hurt **his back** trying to move the refrigerator.
 Listening to such loud music hurts **my ears**.
 The new shoes are hurting **my feet**.
 Would it hurt **you** to wash the dishes once in a while?
 Her feelings were hurt by what they said.

PASSIVE

hurt _____ *damage, harm*

OBJECT

A high interest rate will hurt **car sales**.
 The unusually cold summer has hurt **vacation rentals**.
 Injuries have hurt **our team's chances**.
 The recession is hurting **sales**.
 Such negative criticism would hurt **anyone's self-image**.
 The dollar has been hurt by high oil prices.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I identify we identify
 you identify you identify
 he/she/it identifies they identify
 • *She identifies DNA sources for a lab.*

PAST

I identified we identified
 you identified you identified
 he/she/it identified they identified
 • *I identified two possible suspects.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has identified

PAST PERFECT ... had identified

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am identifying we are identifying
 you are identifying you are identifying
 he/she/it is identifying they are identifying
 • *They are identifying the plant as a new species.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was identifying we were identifying
 you were identifying you were identifying
 he/she/it was identifying they were identifying
 • *By college, I was identifying myself as a Democrat.*

FUTURE ... will identify

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be identifying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have identified

PAST PASSIVE

I was identified we were identified
 you were identified you were identified
 he/she/it was identified they were identified
 • *He was identified by two eyewitnesses.*

COMPLEMENTS

identify _____ establish/classify who/what [someone/something] is

OBJECT

The police identified **the body**.
 He can identify **every airplane ever made**.
 Her book identifies **the causes of depression**.
 Fortunately, the tumor was identified at an early stage.
 We identified **the flower as a kind of daisy**.
 The poll identified **55% of likely voters as Democrats**.
 The hospital identified **my blood type as AB**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

WH-CLAUSE

The police identified **who took the jewels**.
 They never identified **whose body it was**.
 Can you identify **what kind of car it was**?
 The lab will identify **which blood type it was**.

identify _____ be compatible, associate oneself

with OBJECT

I always identify **with the underdog**.
 Voters can identify **with her**.
 I could never identify **with anybody in that movie**.
 Las Vegas will always be identified with gambling.

PASSIVE

identify _____ associate

OBJECT + with OBJECT

Grandpa identifies **rock music with drugs and immorality**.

identify _____ say who one is

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The police asked us to identify **ourselves**.

PRESENT

I ignore we ignore
 you ignore you ignore
 he/she/it ignores they ignore
 • *He ignores what he doesn't want to hear.*

PAST

I ignored we ignored
 you ignored you ignored
 he/she/it ignored they ignored
 • *We ignored the problem far too long.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ignored

PAST PERFECT ... had ignored

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ignoring we are ignoring
 you are ignoring you are ignoring
 he/she/it is ignoring they are ignoring
 • *I am ignoring the heat as best I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ignoring we were ignoring
 you were ignoring you were ignoring
 he/she/it was ignoring they were ignoring
 • *They were ignoring all of our requests.*

FUTURE

... will ignore

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ignoring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ignored

PAST PASSIVE

I was ignored we were ignored
 you were ignored you were ignored
 he/she/it was ignored they were ignored
 • *His early movies were ignored by the critics.*

COMPLEMENTS

ignore _____ pay no attention to

OBJECT

He ignored **all the overdue bills**.
 Senator Blather ignored **the reporters' questions**.
 The taxi drivers there ignore **all traffic signals**.
 The waiter ignored **us** the whole evening.
 Economists ignored **the warning signs**.

PASSIVE

My warnings were totally ignored.

WH-CLAUSE

We can never ignore **who he really is**.
 He ignored **what he had been told**.
 Should we just ignore **what happened?**

PRESENT

I illustrate we illustrate
you illustrate you illustrate
he/she/it illustrates they illustrate
• *Davy illustrates his stories with crayons.*

PAST

I illustrated we illustrated
you illustrated you illustrated
he/she/it illustrated they illustrated
• *A professional artist illustrated the book.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has illustrated

PAST PERFECT ... had illustrated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am illustrating we are illustrating
you are illustrating you are illustrating
he/she/it is illustrating they are illustrating
• *I am illustrating a graphic novel.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was illustrating we were illustrating
you were illustrating you were illustrating
he/she/it was illustrating they were illustrating
• *He was just illustrating his point.*

FUTURE ... will illustrate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be illustrating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have illustrated

PAST PASSIVE

I was illustrated we were illustrated
you were illustrated you were illustrated
he/she/it was illustrated they were illustrated
• *Medieval manuscripts were often beautifully illustrated.*

COMPLEMENTS

illustrate _____ explain/decorate with pictures/diagrams

OBJECT

Jason illustrates **children's books**.
She illustrates **wedding and birth announcements**.
The company will illustrate **any kind of promotional material**.
Medical textbooks are illustrated at great expense.

PASSIVE

illustrate _____ show/explain with examples

OBJECT

Good speakers always illustrate **their ideas with numerous examples**.
Henry illustrated **his concern about the economy** by showing employment data.
Preachers have always illustrated **their message** with parables.
Laurie's thesis was cleverly illustrated with personal experiences.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

Always illustrate **what you are trying to say**.
Peter illustrated **how much the project would cost** with a series of bar charts.
He illustrated **whatever point he was making** with a carefully chosen example.

PRESENT

I imagine we imagine
 you imagine you imagine
 he/she/it imagines they imagine
 • *He always imagines the worst.*

PAST

I imagined we imagined
 you imagined you imagined
 he/she/it imagined they imagined
 • *I never imagined buying food online.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has imagined

PAST PERFECT ... had imagined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am imagining we are imagining
 you are imagining you are imagining
 he/she/it is imagining they are imagining
 • *She is always imagining things.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was imagining we were imagining
 you were imagining you were imagining
 he/she/it was imagining they were imagining
 • *I was imagining everything that could go wrong.*

FUTURE ... will imagine

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be imagining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have imagined

PAST PASSIVE

I was imagined we were imagined
 you were imagined you were imagined
 he/she/it was imagined they were imagined
 • *Such success was never imagined by anyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

imagine _____ suppose, picture, form an idea of

OBJECT

Can you imagine **such a thing**?I cannot imagine **it**.You can imagine **anything you want**.OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUNI could imagine **myself as a college professor**.We can't imagine **our grandparents as teenagers**.Can you imagine **the book as a movie**?OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE NOUNI imagined **their house (to be) a grand mansion**.Fred imagined **himself (to be) quite a critic**.Everyone imagines **himself (to be) an honest person**.OBJECT + (*to be*) PREDICATE ADJECTIVEI always imagined **him (to be) very calm**.We never imagined New York **(to be) so noisy**.Larry imagines **himself (to be) very creative**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I imagined **myself winning the lottery**.We couldn't imagine **our parents doing such a thing**.Thelma could imagine **Louise driving a truck**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I imagine **that you will want to be up early**.Who could imagine **that such a thing would happen**?An optimist always imagines **that things will get better**.

WH-CLAUSE

Just imagine **what might have happened**!I can't imagine **how much that would have cost**.Imagine **whatever you like**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Can you imagine **acting like that**?I never imagined **doing so well on the test**.Who hasn't imagined **winning the lottery**?

PRESENT

I imply	we imply
you imply	you imply
he/she/it implies	they imply

• *Silence implies consent.*

PAST

I implied	we implied
you implied	you implied
he/she/it implied	they implied

• *I never implied any such thing.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has implied

PAST PERFECT ... had implied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am implying	we are implying
you are implying	you are implying
he/she/it is implying	they are implying

• *He is implying that he disagrees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was implying	we were implying
you were implying	you were implying
he/she/it was implying	they were implying

• *They were implying much more than they said.*

FUTURE ... will imply

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be implying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have implied

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was implied	they were implied

• *It was certainly implied by what he said.*

COMPLEMENTS

imply _____ suggest/indicate without actually saying

OBJECT

His comments imply a **willingness to cooperate**.
 The tone of the statement implied a **relaxation of hostilities**.
 Dark clouds always imply **rain**.

PASSIVE

I don't think he was necessarily implying **anything**.
 Their cooperation was definitely implied.

THAT-CLAUSE

He implied **that they would cooperate fully**.
 The publisher has implied **that they might publish my book**.
 His knowing smile implies **that he understands you perfectly**.
 The waiter implied **that our table was needed by others**.

PRESENT

I improve we improve
 you improve you improve
 he/she/it improves they improve
 • *The new road improves land values.*

PAST

I improved we improved
 you improved you improved
 he/she/it improved they improved
 • *His health improved after he quit his job.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has improved**PAST PERFECT** ... had improved**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was improved they were improved

• *The design was improved by eliminating the frills.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am improving we are improving
 you are improving you are improving
 he/she/it is improving they are improving
 • *I am improving every day.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was improving we were improving
 you were improving you were improving
 he/she/it was improving they were improving
 • *We were improving the kitchen little by little.*

FUTURE ... will improve**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be improving**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have improved**COMPLEMENTS****improve** get better

Paul's health is improving daily.
 My knee isn't improving as quickly as I would like.
 The quality of the soil was noticeably improving.
 Sales figures have not improved much lately.
 Our Spanish has improved since we moved to Madrid.

improve _____ make better, increase

OBJECT

The new antenna improved **radio reception** a lot.
 My new glasses have noticeably improved **my vision**.
 Urban redevelopment has improved **the city's tax base**.
 Reorganization has improved **productivity** by 25%.

PHRASAL VERBS**improve on/upon** _____
make/do better than

How could you improve on Post-it notes?
 The new website improved on the navigation shortcomings
 of the old site.
 Your original article has been much improved upon.

PRESENT

I include we include
 you include you include
 he/she/it includes they include
 • *The price includes all taxes.*

PAST

I included we included
 you included you included
 he/she/it included they included
 • *I included some extra brochures.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has included

PAST PERFECT ... had included

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am including we are including
 you are including you are including
 he/she/it is including they are including
 • *I am including everyone who wants to come.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was including we were including
 you were including you were including
 he/she/it was including they were including
 • *They were including service charges on their bills.*

FUTURE ... will include

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be including

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have included

PAST PASSIVE

I was included we were included
 you were included you were included
 he/she/it was included they were included
 • *Wine was not included on the fixed-price menu.*

COMPLEMENTS

include _____ have as part of a whole, contain [NOT USED IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

OBJECT

The bid includes **parts and materials**.
 The nucleus includes **both protons and neutrons**.
 Their family includes **two adopted children**.
 The treaty can only include **what both sides agree to**.

WH-CLAUSE

include _____ make a part of, add

OBJECT

Did you include **ketchup and mustard** on the shopping list?
 We have to include **all the aunts and uncles**.
 He is including **wind technology** in the nation's energy policy.
 A number of out-of-town friends and relatives were included
 on the guest list.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

You can include **whomever you want to invite**.
 I will include **whatever else you need**.

PRESENT

I increase we increase
 you increase you increase
 he/she/it increases they increase
 • *Rainfall increases as you move east.*

PAST

I increased we increased
 you increased you increased
 he/she/it increased they increased
 • *His popularity increased over the years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has increased**PAST PERFECT** ... had increased**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am increasing we are increasing
 you are increasing you are increasing
 he/she/it is increasing they are increasing
 • *I am increasing my original estimate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was increasing we were increasing
 you were increasing you were increasing
 he/she/it was increasing they were increasing
 • *Costs were increasing every month.*

FUTURE

... will increase

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be increasing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have increased**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was increased they were increased
 • *My salary was increased by 10%.*

COMPLEMENTS**increase** *become larger/greater/faster*

Computing capacity increases every year.
 New housing starts have not increased for a year.
 At first, family size increases with income.
 Power generation has increased 20% a year for a decade.
 Population increases at a geometric rate.
 The hurricane's speed is increasing as it moves away from Florida.

increase _____ *make larger/greater/faster, add to*

OBJECT

Can you increase **the power**?
 Senator Blather wants to increase **his popularity**.
 We should increase **the kids' allowance**.
 Replacing the pipe will increase **the flow rate**.
 He wanted to increase **the minimum wage** from \$5.15 an hour to \$7.25.
 They increased **processor speed** while decreasing power consumption.

PASSIVE

Plant growth can be increased by improved fertilizers.

PRESENT

I indicate we indicate
you indicate you indicate
he/she/it indicates they indicate
• *His temperature indicates an infection.*

PAST

I indicated we indicated
you indicated you indicated
he/she/it indicated they indicated
• *He indicated a willingness to cooperate.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has indicated

PAST PERFECT ... had indicated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am indicating we are indicating
you are indicating you are indicating
he/she/it is indicating they are indicating
• *He is indicating that he will not accept the award.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was indicating we were indicating
you were indicating you were indicating
he/she/it was indicating they were indicating
• *Economic signs were indicating a mild recession.*

FUTURE

... will indicate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be indicating

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have indicated

PAST PASSIVE

I was indicated we were indicated
you were indicated you were indicated
he/she/it was indicated they were indicated
• *Prompt action was indicated.*

COMPLEMENTS

indicate _____ point to, signify, make known

OBJECT

The poll indicates **voter dissatisfaction**.
The broken window indicated **an intruder**.
Warm, wet weather usually indicates **a high-pressure system**.
A yellow card indicates **a penalty**.
Each blip on the screen indicates **one aircraft**.

THAT-CLAUSE

That light indicates **that the engine is overheating**.
His hesitation indicated **that he was having doubts**.
Their laughter indicated **that the kids were having a great time**.
All signs indicate **that the economy will rebound**.

WH-CLAUSE

The committee never indicated **whom they would recommend**.
The attendant indicated **where we should park**.
A sign indicated **how much we should pay**.

indicate _____ express

OBJECT

He indicated **his displeasure** by frowning.
The cat indicated **her pleasure** by purring.
The suspect indicated **a willingness to cooperate**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I indicated **that I would be more careful**.
The coach indicated **that he would meet us after the game**.
We politely indicated **that we disagreed**.

indicate _____ show/suggest the need for

OBJECT

A system breakdown indicates **immediate action**.
The X-rays indicate **surgery**.
The team's poor performance indicated **a coaching change**.

PASSIVE

Intervention was clearly indicated by the circumstances.

PRESENT

I inform we inform
 you inform you inform
 he/she/it informs they inform
 • *He informs us when a deadline is near.*

PAST

I informed we informed
 you informed you informed
 he/she/it informed they informed
 • *I already informed them of the decision.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has informed

PAST PERFECT ... had informed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am informing we are informing
 you are informing you are informing
 he/she/it is informing they are informing
 • *I am informing you now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was informing we were informing
 you were informing you were informing
 he/she/it was informing they were informing
 • *They were informing passengers about the delay.*

FUTURE ... will inform

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be informing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have informed

PAST PASSIVE

I was informed we were informed
 you were informed you were informed
 he/she/it was informed they were informed
 • *We were already informed of the meeting.*

COMPLEMENTS

inform _____ tell, give facts/information to

OBJECT

You should inform **the staff** right away.When will you inform **them**?We can inform **all of our suppliers** by e-mail.

We were informed just this morning.

We informed **the members of the schedule change**.The president informed **Congress of weapons sales in the Mideast**.We informed **her that they were going to be late**.The contractor informed **Jerry that the tile was unavailable**.We were informed **that the class was already full**.We informed **them what needed to be done**.I informed **them where the meeting would be held**.He informed **us how much the project would cost**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + of OBJECT

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

PASSIVE

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

inform _____ guide, give a characteristic quality to

OBJECT

A sense of humility informs **all his writings**.Research informs **our new product development**.Educational theories have always informed **teaching practices**.The applicant's personality always informs **who we hire**.Conservative principles inform **what the party stands for**.Her own experience has always informed **what she writes about**.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

inform on/against _____ give information about the criminal activity of

Danielle informed on her boss, who was using questionable accounting practices.

PRESENT

I insist	we insist
you insist	you insist
he/she/it insists	they insist

• *He insists that we go ahead without him.*

PAST

I insisted	we insisted
you insisted	you insisted
he/she/it insisted	they insisted

• *I always insisted on promptness.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has insisted

PAST PERFECT ... had insisted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am insisting	we are insisting
you are insisting	you are insisting
he/she/it is insisting	they are insisting

• *He is insisting on his fair share.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was insisting	we were insisting
you were insisting	you were insisting
he/she/it was insisting	they were insisting

• *They were insisting that we have dinner with them.*

FUTURE

... will insist

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be insisting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have insisted

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was insisted	they were insisted

• *Additional security was insisted on.*

COMPLEMENTS

insist _____ claim forcefully

THAT-CLAUSE

I insisted **that I had made a reservation.**
 We insisted **that there had been some mistake.**
 They insisted **that the roads were too icy to drive on.**

insist _____ demand strongly

on/upon OBJECT

He always insists **on the aisle seat.**
 We insisted **on a table near the window.**
 They didn't insist **on a formal bid.**
 The president insists **upon integrity** among his cabinet members.

PASSIVE

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

A May deadline was insisted upon by the mayor.
 I insist **that the motion be voted on.**

on/upon PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We insisted **that we be seated immediately.**
 Fiona insists **that she be allowed to say a few words.**
 The kids insisted **on doing it themselves.**
 My parents always insist **on arriving an hour early.**
 They insisted **on taking us out to dinner.**
 I insist **upon speaking with your manager.**

PRESENT

I install we install
 you install you install
 he/she/it installs they install
 • *They install air conditioning systems.*

PAST

I installed we installed
 you installed you installed
 he/she/it installed they installed
 • *The church installed a new minister.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has installed**PAST PERFECT** ... had installed**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am installing we are installing
 you are installing you are installing
 he/she/it is installing they are installing
 • *She is installing the new version of the program.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was installing we were installing
 you were installing you were installing
 he/she/it was installing they were installing
 • *She was installing the garbage disposal herself.*

FUTURE ... will install**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be installing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have installed**PAST PASSIVE**

I was installed we were installed
 you were installed you were installed
 he/she/it was installed they were installed
 • *He was installed as president of the historical society.*

COMPLEMENTS**install** _____ *be (able to be) put in position for use*

ADVERB OF TIME

Our company's cable modem installs **in minutes**.

ADVERB OF PLACE

The low-flow showerhead installs **in place of the old one**.

ADVERB OF MANNER

The spam filter installs **easily on any server**.**install** _____ *put in a position/office with a ceremony*

OBJECT

We installed **a new president** on January 20.The college has installed **its first African-American dean**.OBJECT + *as* OBJECTThey installed **Michelle as the new secretary**.

PASSIVE

Michelle was installed **as the new secretary**.**install** _____ *put in place, settle*

OBJECT

The cat installed **herself** on the ottoman.The government installed **a new colony** on the west bank of the river.**install** _____ *put in position for use*

OBJECT

Don installed **flooring** until his knees gave out.We need to install **new locks** on all exterior doors.Casey will install **a new dishwasher** this weekend.My daughter installed **a new operating system** on my computer.Dad had installed **three different antivirus programs** on his computer.

PRESENT

I intend we intend
 you intend you intend
 he/she/it intends they intend
 • *He intends to start the meeting at eight.*

PAST

I intended we intended
 you intended you intended
 he/she/it intended they intended
 • *I always intended to learn Italian.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has intended

PAST PERFECT ... had intended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am intending we are intending
 you are intending you are intending
 he/she/it is intending they are intending
 • *I am intending for Larry to assist us.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was intending we were intending
 you were intending you were intending
 he/she/it was intending they were intending
 • *We were intending to go to a movie tonight.*

FUTURE

... will intend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be intending

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have intended

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was intended they were intended
 • *These books were intended for children.*

COMPLEMENTS

intend _____ plan, have in mind

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I intended **for Robert to pick us up**.
 The captain intended **for the squad to hold the bridge**.
 Holmes intended **for Watson to solve the crime**.

INFINITIVE

I intend **to take the train to Chicago**.
 We had intended **to leave early**.
 We never intended **to stay so long**.
What did you intend to do about it?

intend _____ mean, have for the purpose/use of

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

I intended **the book as a present**.
 He intended **the play as social satire**.
 We only intended **the proposal as a first draft**.
 They intended **it as a joke**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + for OBJECT

OBJECT + for WH-CLAUSE

He intended **the remark as an attack on racism**.
 The remark was intended **as an attack on racism**.
 We intend **these instructions for beginners**.

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The teacher intended **the punishment for whoever failed to do their homework**.
 We intend **for these sweaters to be donated to disabled veterans**.

PRESENT

I interest	we interest
you interest	you interest
he/she/it interests	they interest

• *Your proposal interests me.*

PAST

I interested	we interested
you interested	you interested
he/she/it interested	they interested

• *Her talk interested me in learning more.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has interested

PAST PERFECT ... had interested

PAST PASSIVE

I was interested	we were interested
you were interested	you were interested
he/she/it was interested	they were interested

• *I was really interested in what you were saying.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will interest

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have interested

COMPLEMENTS

interest _____ engage the attention/involvement of

OBJECT

Your idea has interested **all of us**.

The game will interest **the children**.

The weather interests **everyone**.

interest _____ cause to become involved with

OBJECT + in OBJECT

Can I interest **you in a game of checkers**?

We tried to interest **our son in finding his own apartment**.

OBJECT + in WH-CLAUSE

The writer tried to interest **them in what he had published**.

PASSIVE

I was interested **in what you said**.

PRESENT

I introduce we introduce
you introduce you introduce
he/she/it introduces they introduce
• *He always introduces the speaker.*

PAST

I introduced we introduced
you introduced you introduced
he/she/it introduced they introduced
• *They introduced several new products.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has introduced

PAST PERFECT ... had introduced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am introducing we are introducing
you are introducing you are introducing
he/she/it is introducing they are introducing
• *I am introducing them this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was introducing we were introducing
you were introducing you were introducing
he/she/it was introducing they were introducing
• *We were introducing ourselves to all the visitors.*

FUTURE

... will introduce

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be introducing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have introduced

PAST PASSIVE

I was introduced we were introduced
you were introduced you were introduced
he/she/it was introduced they were introduced
• *The legislation was introduced last session.*

COMPLEMENTS

introduce _____ present, announce

OBJECT

Ms. Taylor will introduce **the next speaker**.
They are going to introduce **a new product** next week.
Only a member can formally introduce **a bill**.
The first chapter introduces **the main characters**.
The speaker was introduced by Ms. Wamhoff.

PASSIVE

introduce _____ make acquainted

OBJECT

I introduced **Ron and Barbara**.
When did you introduce **the Smiths**?
Let me introduce **myself** to you and your wife.
Our club has introduced **a number of young couples**.
Ruth and I were never formally introduced.

PASSIVE

introduce _____ bring into use, bring for the first time

OBJECT

The ancient Greeks introduced **writing** throughout the Mediterranean world.
The Spanish introduced **many new diseases** to the New World.
Ships introduce **nonnative species of marine organisms** to ports when they dock.
John Baskerville introduced **a method for producing smooth white paper**.

PASSIVE

introduce _____ make familiar with, bring a knowledge of [something] to

OBJECT + to OBJECT

My mom introduced **me to knitting**.
Melvin introduced **his friends to archaeology**.
Professor Kirby introduced **his students to the joys of Latin poetry**.
The second graders were introduced **to multiplication and division**.

PASSIVE

introduce _____ insert

OBJECT + into OBJECT

Senator Blather introduced **humor into the debate**.
Scientists introduced **the modified genes into potato plants**.

PASSIVE

Was the virus introduced **into Japan**?

PRESENT

I invite we invite
 you invite you invite
 he/she/it invites they invite
 • *He always invites us to stay for lunch.*

PAST

I invited we invited
 you invited you invited
 he/she/it invited they invited
 • *We invited the Flynns to dinner.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has invited

PAST PERFECT ... had invited

PAST PASSIVE

I was invited we were invited
 you were invited you were invited
 he/she/it was invited they were invited
 • *We were invited to the reception.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am inviting we are inviting
 you are inviting you are inviting
 he/she/it is inviting they are inviting
 • *I am not inviting everyone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was inviting we were inviting
 you were inviting you were inviting
 he/she/it was inviting they were inviting
 • *They were inviting all their old friends.*

FUTURE ... will invite

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be inviting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have invited

COMPLEMENTS

invite _____ ask to be one's guest(s)

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

PASSIVE

invite _____ ask politely, request

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

invite _____ make likely to happen

OBJECT

We only invited **the committee members**.We invited **them home**.They invited **us to the concert**.Let's invite **the Muellers over for dinner**.Everyone is invited **to Joe's retirement party**.We invited **the kids' friends to swim in the pool**.He invited **us to sit down**.The senator invited **the reporters to ask questions**.The audience was invited **to examine the displays**.Doing that just invites **trouble**.The king's harsh policies invited **rebellion**.The rumors will invite **financial speculation**.The wet spring invited **a plague of mosquitoes**.

PHRASAL VERBS

invite _____ along/down/in/out/over/up/etc.
ask to be one's guest in a specified locationLet's invite the grandkids along
on our next vacation.

The McLanes invited the Molitors over for drinks.

Billy Joe invited Mary Sue out for lunch.

PRESENT

I involve we involve
 you involve you involve
 he/she/it involves they involve
 • *Her music involves us completely.*

PAST

I involved we involved
 you involved you involved
 he/she/it involved they involved
 • *I involved Roderick as little as possible.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has involved

PAST PERFECT ... had involved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am involving we are involving
 you are involving you are involving
 he/she/it is involving they are involving
 • *I am not involving you in the project.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was involving we were involving
 you were involving you were involving
 he/she/it was involving they were involving
 • *The financial crisis was involving the banks.*

FUTURE ... will involve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be involving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have involved

PAST PASSIVE

I was involved we were involved
 you were involved you were involved
 he/she/it was involved they were involved
 • *We were completely involved.*

COMPLEMENTS

involve _____ engage, occupy, affect

OBJECT

The research involves **him** completely.
 These stupid games totally involve **the children**.
 The election has involved **the entire country**.

PASSIVE

They were all involved in the conspiracy.

involve _____ include, entail

OBJECT

The plan involves **a lot of risk**.
 Did the accident involve **any injuries**?
 The cancer might involve **the lymph nodes**.

PASSIVE

Some danger is involved.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The attack involved **making a complex flanking movement**.
 The charges involve **filing a false report**.
 The job involves **working every other weekend**.
 The play's staging will involve **flying a kite**.

involve _____ draw into difficulty/trouble

OBJECT + in OBJECT

Paying for Sonny's college involved **us in a lot of debt**.

PRESENT

I issue we issue
 you issue you issue
 he/she/it issues they issue

• *The senator issues press releases nonstop.*

PAST

I issued we issued
 you issued you issued
 he/she/it issued they issued

• *The company issued new stock.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has issued

PAST PERFECT ... had issued

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am issuing we are issuing
 you are issuing you are issuing
 he/she/it is issuing they are issuing

• *I am issuing a statement shortly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was issuing we were issuing
 you were issuing you were issuing
 he/she/it was issuing they were issuing

• *The crowd was issuing out of the stadium.*

FUTURE ... will issue

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be issuing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have issued

PAST PASSIVE

I was issued we were issued
 you were issued you were issued
 he/she/it was issued they were issued

• *The stamps were first issued in 1945.*

COMPLEMENTS

issue _____ send out, distribute, make available

OBJECT

The officers were issuing a **string of frantic orders**.
 The editor issued **new assignments** to all the reporters.
 We need to issue **new ID cards**.
 The publisher issued a **new series of foreign language textbooks**.
 Senator Blather issued **an apology**.
 The National Weather Service has issued a **tornado warning for our area**.

PASSIVE

The amendments to the bill were just issued.
 The new Lincoln stamps were issued yesterday.

issue _____ discharge

OBJECT

The pipe issued **wastewater** into the lake.
 The brakes were issuing a **shower of sparks**.
 The volcano was issuing **clouds of toxic gases**.

issue _____ emerge, flow out

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Blood issued **from the gash in his leg**.
 The stream issues **out of a spring in the mountains**.
 A wisp of smoke issued **from the cave**.
 Additional mistakes issued **from the first error**.

issue _____ come about as a result

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Nothing useful will issue **from this seminar**.

EXPRESSIONS

issue a call for _____ request publicly

The Red Cross issued an urgent call for blood donors.

PRESENT

I join we join
 you join you join
 he/she/it joins they join
 • *He always joins us for lunch.*

PAST

I joined we joined
 you joined you joined
 he/she/it joined they joined
 • *Thompson joined the company.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has joined

PAST PERFECT ... had joined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am joining we are joining
 you are joining you are joining
 he/she/it is joining they are joining
 • *I am joining an exercise class.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was joining we were joining
 you were joining you were joining
 he/she/it was joining they were joining
 • *The two companies were joining together.*

FUTURE ... will join

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be joining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have joined

PAST PASSIVE

I was joined we were joined
 you were joined you were joined
 he/she/it was joined they were joined
 • *We were joined by several friends.*

COMPLEMENTS

join *come together*

The two rivers join farther south.
 Their voices joined in perfect harmony.
 I think the two segments will join nicely.
 The two family lines have joined many times.

join _____ *connect, link*

OBJECT

We joined **the pieces** with superglue.
 We need to join **the two servers**.
 First, join **Part A** to Part B.
 The two villages are joined by a wooden bridge.

join _____ *come together with socially*

OBJECT

We are joining **some friends** later.
 Will you join **us** for lunch?

join _____ *become a member of*

OBJECT

I would like to join **a reading group**.
 They just joined our **church**.

PHRASAL VERBS

join in _____ *take part in*

Toby loosened his tie and joined in the fun.
 Celeste would like to join in the conversation.

join up (with _____) *become associated (with [someone/something])*

Some scientists joined up with a local brewery and started "Science on Tap."

EXPRESSIONS

join battle *begin to fight*

The two sides joined battle at 6 A.M.

join forces *work together for a purpose*

The liberals joined forces to defeat the amendment.

join hands *hold one another's hands*

The children joined hands and sang "We Are the World."

join _____ in marriage/matrimony *preside over the marriage of*

The minister joined the couple in marriage.

Join the club! *You're in the same situation that I am / we are.*

You don't have money either? Join the club!

PRESENT

I judge	we judge
you judge	you judge
he/she/it judges	they judge

• *He always judges the debate contests.*

PAST

I judged	we judged
you judged	you judged
he/she/it judged	they judged

• *I never judged anyone unfairly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has judged

PAST PERFECT ... had judged

PAST PASSIVE

I was judged	we were judged
you were judged	you were judged
he/she/it was judged	they were judged

• *They were judged innocent of the crime.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am judging	we are judging
you are judging	you are judging
he/she/it is judging	they are judging

• *I am judging the pie-eating contest.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was judging	we were judging
you were judging	you were judging
he/she/it was judging	they were judging

• *They were always judging their neighbors.*

FUTURE ... will judge

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be judging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have judged

COMPLEMENTS

judge form an opinion, act as a judge

He always judges as fairly as he can.
 “Judge not, lest ye be judged.” [BIBLE]
 “When ye judge between people, judge ye with justice.”
 [KORAN]

judge _____ hear and decide a legal case

OBJECT

He has judged **several cases** in circuit court.
 She judged **the big copyright appeal**.

judge _____ determine, conclude

OBJECT

How do you judge **the load capacity of a bridge**?
 The experts were unable to judge **the value of the painting**.
 The sheriff judged **Bart (to be) a risk to society**.
 They judged **Jim (to be) a skilled negotiator**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Linda's pie was judged **(to be) the best**.
 I judged **the watermelon (to be) ripe**.
 We judged **the situation (to be) dangerous**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I judged **the house to be in bad shape**.
 I judged **the car to have cost around \$2,000**.

THAT-CLAUSE

He judged **that the boysenberry pie was best**.
 The court judged **that it could not hear the case**.

WH-CLAUSE

The committee must judge **who the best qualified person is**.
 You must judge **what our best alternative is**.

WH-INFINITIVE

You must judge **what to do**.
 They judged **how far to push the issue**.

judge _____ criticize

OBJECT

He is always judging **people**.
 You can't judge **them** without knowing what happened.
 He shouldn't judge **people** by how they dress.
 Don't judge **me**!
 My English isn't perfect, so try not to judge **me** too harshly.

judge _____ decide the winner of [a contest]

OBJECT

They now judge **Olympic figure skating** anonymously.
 She was qualified to judge **scholastic debates**.
 Three prominent citizens will judge **the local art fair**.

PRESENT

I jump we jump
 you jump you jump
 he/she/it jumps they jump
 • *He jumps at the slightest sound.*

PAST

I jumped we jumped
 you jumped you jumped
 he/she/it jumped they jumped
 • *Oil prices jumped four dollars a barrel.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has jumped

PAST PERFECT ... had jumped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am jumping we are jumping
 you are jumping you are jumping
 he/she/it is jumping they are jumping
 • *The kids are jumping into the pool.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was jumping we were jumping
 you were jumping you were jumping
 he/she/it was jumping they were jumping
 • *Prices were jumping up and down.*

FUTURE

... will jump

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be jumping

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have jumped

PAST PASSIVE

I was jumped we were jumped
 you were jumped you were jumped
 he/she/it was jumped they were jumped
 • *My idea was jumped on by everybody.*

COMPLEMENTS

jump *spring up, leap up*

jump *increase sharply*

jump *move suddenly and quickly*

jump *move involuntarily, jerk*

jump *change suddenly*

jump _____ *leap over*
 OBJECT

The kids were jumping with excitement.
 The survivors were jumping and waving their arms.

The market jumped 200 points in the first hour.
 The price of groceries jumped 17% in two years.
 The river level jumped three feet.

All the kids jumped in the pool at the same time.
 We jumped from rock to rock across the stream.
 I can jump on the bus and be there in 20 minutes.
 I jumped into bed right after supper.
 The cat jumped from the table onto my lap.
 The skydivers jumped from 12,000 feet.

My left eye was jumping uncontrollably.
 The computer screen was jumping every few seconds.
 He has jumped from one job to another.

He jumped **the fence** and ran across the field.
 Their new product has really jumped **the competition**.

PHRASAL VERBS

jump down/in/off/out/up/etc.
leap in a specified direction

jump at _____ *seize enthusiastically*

jump in *join a conversation*

jump in/into/on _____ *become quickly involved in*

jump on _____ *criticize severely*

My friend opened the car door and said, "Jump in."
 Pookie the cat liked to jump up on the top edge of a door and meow at us.
 The players were jumping up and down along the sidelines.
 Melanie jumped at the chance to teach music.
 We were talking about our favorite books, and Jeremy immediately jumped in.
 His assistants jumped into the problem of homelessness.
 The reporters jumped on the story about the mayor's resignation.
 The committee jumped on his income-tax proposal.

PRESENT

I justify	we justify
you justify	you justify
he/she/it justifies	they justify

• *He always justifies himself.*

PAST

I justified	we justified
you justified	you justified
he/she/it justified	they justified

• *He clearly justified his actions.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has justified

PAST PERFECT ... had justified

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am justifying	we are justifying
you are justifying	you are justifying
he/she/it is justifying	they are justifying

• *I am not justifying my earlier remarks.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was justifying	we were justifying
you were justifying	you were justifying
he/she/it was justifying	they were justifying

• *They were always justifying what they wanted to do.*

FUTURE ... will justify

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be justifying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have justified

PAST PASSIVE

I am justified	we were justified
you were justified	you were justified
he/she/it was justified	they were justified

• *The manager's decision was justified.*

COMPLEMENTS

justify _____ demonstrate to be right/fair/reasonable, give a good reason for

OBJECT

You need to justify **your claim**.
 I can't justify **Larry's rude behavior**.
 I have to justify **my trip expenses**.
 Senator Blather tried to justify **his wild accusations against his opponent**.

PASSIVE

Her response was completely justified.

WH-CLAUSE

I can fully justify **what I did**.
 The repairman justified **how much he was charging**.
 You must justify **whatever changes you made in the contract**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Nobody can justify **behaving like that**.
 I can't justify **buying a new computer**.
 We need to justify **hiring a temp**.
 How can they justify **going so far over budget**?

justify _____ position so that the edges of [text] are straight [TYPOGRAPHY]

OBJECT

I don't like the ragged look of this paragraph. Justify **it** left and right.

PRESENT

I keep we keep
 you keep you keep
 he/she/it keeps they keep
 • *He keeps his keys in the top drawer.*

PAST

I kept we kept
 you kept you kept
 he/she/it kept they kept
 • *I kept careful records of all the expenses.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has kept

PAST PERFECT ... had kept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am keeping we are keeping
 you are keeping you are keeping
 he/she/it is keeping they are keeping
 • *I am keeping his letters.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was keeping we were keeping
 you were keeping you were keeping
 he/she/it was keeping they were keeping
 • *We were keeping the grandchildren for the weekend.*

FUTURE ... will keep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be keeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have kept

PAST PASSIVE

I was kept we were kept
 you were kept you were kept
 he/she/it was kept they were kept
 • *His antique autos were kept in immaculate condition.*

COMPLEMENTS

keep remain in good condition, remain the same

The yogurt will keep for days.
 How long will meat keep in the freezer?
 No secret keeps for very long.
 Will the work keep until tomorrow?

keep _____ hold in one's possession, retain
 OBJECT

We kept **all of our children's letters**.
 Keep **the change**.
 The quarterback kept **the ball**.

keep _____ store
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We keep **all of our cash in a safe**.
Where do you keep **the potato chips**?
 We're keeping **the extra envelopes in this drawer**.

keep _____ maintain, take care of
 OBJECT

Everyone used to keep **a garden**.
 Are you going to keep **your subscription to the magazine**?
 You need to keep **good records**.

keep _____ continue in an activity/position/condition
 PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers kept **ready**.
 Keep **warm**!
 Amazingly, the children kept **quiet**.
 Keep **working**!
 The people behind us kept **talking throughout the concert**.
 The company kept **losing money**.

keep _____ cause to continue in an activity/position/condition
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Keep **your hands over your head**!
 I kept **my eyes on the road**.
 Kids! Keep **your hands to yourselves**.
 The doctor kept **Alice in the hospital**
 two days longer.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

The president kept **Wilson as ambassador to Great Britain**.
 The team kept **Charlie as captain**.
 The new company kept **Chris as office manager**.



keep _____ cause to continue in an activity/position/condition [continued]

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers kept **their weapons ready**.

Keep **your feet dry!**

Please try to keep **the room clean**.

The secretary kept **the file secret**.

The sergeant kept **the men digging trenches**.

Keep **them talking!**

He always kept **us laughing at his silly jokes**.

Keep **me informed** about the merger.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

keep _____ employ, have in one's service

OBJECT

The hotel keeps a **large housekeeping staff**.

keep _____ adhere to, fulfill

OBJECT

John always keeps **his word**.

PHRASAL VERBS

keep away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.
remain in a specified location

Keep away from the edge
of the bluff.

My parents are coming—keep down!

keep SEP away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.
cause to remain in a specified location

Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn?

It's raining; keep the children in.

keep after/at _____ nag, harass

The teacher keeps after us about our homework.

keep at/on/up _____ continue [doing]

You're doing a great job. Keep at it!

Keep on writing—the paper's due tomorrow.

It kept on snowing for two days.

This report is wonderful. Keep up the good work.

We're trying to keep our grocery bill down.

When I had the flu, I couldn't keep food down.

I could hardly keep from laughing at his costume.

I tried to keep myself from screaming at him.

His counselor kept him from using drugs.

keep SEP down limit

She kept her anger inside until he left.

keep SEP down not vomit

The boss hopes to keep all the systems analysts on.

keep ([oneself]) from _____ prevent oneself
from [doing something]

Derek keeps the radio on all night long.

keep [someone] from _____ prevent [someone]
from [doing something]

It's cold in here; I'll keep my coat on.

keep SEP in/inside suppress

This jacket should keep out the rain and wind.

keep _____ on continue to employ

My sisters are arguing, and I'm keeping out of it.

keep _____ on continue to operate

The author keeps to himself.

keep SEP on continue to wear [clothing]

Be sure to keep this to yourself.

keep SEP out provide protection from

It's not easy for Grandpa to keep up a large house.

keep out of _____ not become involved in

We have managed to keep up our family traditions.

keep to [oneself] avoid being with other people

Keep your spirits up.

keep _____ to [oneself] not tell

It's hard to keep up with our rich neighbors.

keep SEP up maintain

keep up (with _____) stay even (with
[someone/something])

PRESENT

I kill we kill
 you kill you kill
 he/she/it kills they kill
 • *He kills the engine when he brakes.*

PAST

I killed we killed
 you killed you killed
 he/she/it killed they killed
 • *The Senate killed the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has killed

PAST PERFECT ... had killed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am killing we are killing
 you are killing you are killing
 he/she/it is killing they are killing
 • *The suspense is killing me.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was killing we were killing
 you were killing you were killing
 he/she/it was killing they were killing
 • *A fungus was killing my tomato plants.*

FUTURE ... will kill

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be killing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have killed

PAST PASSIVE

I was killed we were killed
 you were killed you were killed
 he/she/it was killed they were killed
 • *The deer were killed by wolves.*

COMPLEMENTS

kill _____ cause to die

OBJECT

Someone had killed **the night watchman**.
 Beetles are killing **pine trees** all over the West.
 The cancer can only be killed by radiation.

PASSIVE

kill _____ stop, shut off, put an end to

OBJECT

Jeff killed **the motor**.
 Kill **the lights**, will you?
 The scandal killed **any chance for his re-election**.
 The company killed **the ad campaign**.
 It might kill **the pain**.
 Our competition was just killed by our new product.

PASSIVE

kill _____ pass [time] idly [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

They killed **time** looking through old magazines.
 You have **an hour** to kill before the appointment.

kill _____ cause extreme pain/unhappiness to [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

These shoes are killing **me**.
 Turn the music down—the noise is killing **me**.
 Working for a boss like Stanley was killing **her**.

kill _____ entertain very well [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

She just killed **her audience**.

kill _____ perform very well on [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

You killed **the exam!**

PHRASAL VERBS

kill for _____ go to extremes to get

I would kill for some frozen custard right now.

kill SEP off cause the death of most/all of a group

Our neighbor killed off all the dandelions in his yard.
 Dinosaurs were killed off 65 million years ago.

EXPRESSIONS

kill two birds with one stone
 accomplish two tasks with a single action

I'll kill two birds with one stone by dropping the package off on my way to the grocery store.

PRESENT

I kneel	we kneel
you kneel	you kneel
he/she/it kneels	they kneel

• *The priest always kneels before the altar.*

PAST

I knelt/kneeled	we knelt/kneeled
you knelt/kneeled	you knelt/kneeled
he/she/it knelt/kneeled	they knelt/kneeled

• *The clergy all knelt in prayer.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has knelt/kneeled**PAST PERFECT** ... had knelt/kneeled**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am kneeling	we are kneeling
you are kneeling	you are kneeling
he/she/it is kneeling	they are kneeling

• *He is kneeling to reach something under the bed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was kneeling	we were kneeling
you were kneeling	you were kneeling
he/she/it was kneeling	they were kneeling

• *The soldiers were kneeling behind the wall.*

FUTURE ... will kneel**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be kneeling**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have knelt/kneeled**PAST PASSIVE***Kneel* is never used in the passive voice.**COMPLEMENTS****kneel** *be/rest on one's knee(s)*

Laying floor tiles kept me kneeling all afternoon.

The policeman was kneeling on one knee when he fired his pistol.

kneel *show respect/submission by being/resting on one's knee(s)*

The king forced the rebels to kneel.

The nuns knelt before the cross.

He knelt before the king to be knighted.

They all knelt in prayer.

PHRASAL VERBS**kneel down** *go down on one's knee(s)*

I knelt down to pick up the kids' toys.

We all had to kneel down to get through the low doorway.

PRESENT

I knit we knit
 you knit you knit
 he/she/it knits they knit
 • *She knits one sweater every year.*

PAST

I knit/knitted we knit/knitted
 you knit/knitted you knit/knitted
 he/she/it knit/knitted they knit/knitted
 • *The bones knitted nicely.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has knit/knitted

PAST PERFECT ... had knit/knitted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am knitting we are knitting
 you are knitting you are knitting
 he/she/it is knitting they are knitting
 • *I am knitting a wool baby blanket.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was knitting we were knitting
 you were knitting you were knitting
 he/she/it was knitting they were knitting
 • *He was knitting his hands together.*

FUTURE ... will knit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be knitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have knit/knitted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was knit/knitted they were knit/knitted
 • *The wall hanging was knit in Scotland.*

COMPLEMENTS

knit create fabric/clothing by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles

She knits as a full-time occupation.
 A lot of people knit for charity organizations.
 My mother knits when she watches TV.

knit join, grow together

The broken bone will eventually knit and become strong.
 Our neighborhood gradually knit into a close community.

knit _____ create by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles

OBJECT

I am knitting **a wool sweater** for a child in Kazakhstan.
 Could you knit **a pair of socks** for me?
 The afghan was knit by my grandmother.

PASSIVE

knit _____ cause to join / grow together

OBJECT

The tree had knitted **its roots** into a solid mass.
 I knit **my fingers** to form a shallow bowl.
 A cast may be required to knit **the broken bone** together.
 The major had knit **the unit** into an effective force.

PHRASAL VERBS

knit up make a knitted item, repair by knitting

This yarn knits up well.
 That scarf pattern knits up quickly.
 "Sleep that knits up **the ravell'd sleeve of care.**"
 [SHAKESPEARE]

EXPRESSIONS

knit [one's] brow(s) wrinkle one's eyebrows

Colin knits his brow when he's thinking.

PRESENT

I knock we knock
 you knock you knock
 he/she/it knocks they knock
 • *He always knocks before he enters.*

PAST

I knocked we knocked
 you knocked you knocked
 he/she/it knocked they knocked
 • *FBI agents knocked on the hotel door.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has knocked

PAST PERFECT ... had knocked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am knocking we are knocking
 you are knocking you are knocking
 he/she/it is knocking they are knocking
 • *I am knocking on everyone's door.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was knocking we were knocking
 you were knocking you were knocking
 he/she/it was knocking they were knocking
 • *The engine was knocking pretty badly.*

FUTURE ... will knock

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be knocking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have knocked

PAST PASSIVE

I was knocked we were knocked
 you were knocked you were knocked
 he/she/it was knocked they were knocked
 • *He was knocked down by a passing motorcycle.*

COMPLEMENTS

knock *make a pounding/tapping noise*

The radiator in our room is knocking again.
 The engine knocks when you go more than 45 miles an hour.
 We have a woodpecker that knocks loudly every morning.

knock _____ *strike/drive*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Casey knocked **the pitch into left field**.
 I knocked **the water glass onto the floor**.
 The explosion knocked **the soldiers off their feet**.
 I accidentally knocked **the vase out of her hand**.
 We were knocked **to the floor** by the earthquake.

PASSIVE

knock _____ *criticize [INFORMAL]*

OBJECT

Politicians are always knocking **their opponents**.
 The critics really knocked **his last movie**.

knock _____ *rap with one's knuckles/fist*

ON OBJECT

I knocked **on George's door**, but no one answered.
 I knocked **on the desk** to get everyone's attention.

knock _____ *make by hitting*

OBJECT

The carpenter knocked **a hole** in the wall.

PHRASAL VERBS

knock SEP **down** *demolish*

knock SEP **down** *hit and cause to fall*

Workers knocked down the vacant building.
 The kids knocked the chair down as they ran past.
 The bully knocked him down with a single punch.

knock **off** *stop working*

knock SEP **off** *reduce the amount by*

We're going to knock off at 4 o'clock.
 The car dealer knocked \$1,000 off the sticker price.
 I convinced the manager to knock off 20% from the bill.

knock SEP **off/out** *make quickly*

How many afghans can you knock off in a week?
 Gerry can knock out 25 rolling pins in a day.

knock SEP **out** *cause to stop working*

knock SEP **out** *exhaust*

The ice storm knocked out electricity in our neighborhood.
 Running five miles has really knocked me out.

knock SEP **out** *make unconscious*

knock [oneself] **out** *work to exhaustion*

The blow to the head knocked him out.
 Don't knock yourself out on this project.

knock SEP **over** *surprise, shock*

The price increase knocked me over.

PRESENT

I know we know
 you know you know
 he/she/it knows they know
 • *He always knows what to say.*

PAST

I knew we knew
 you knew you knew
 he/she/it knew they knew
 • *I knew Ben in graduate school.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has known

PAST PERFECT ... had known

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will know

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have known

PAST PASSIVE

I was known we were known
 you were known you were known
 he/she/it was known they were known
 • *The problem was known years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

know *be aware / have knowledge of something*

“How old is she?” “I don’t know.”
 “Do you think he knows?” “I am sure he doesn’t know.”

know _____ *be aware*
about/of OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)

We have known **about his cancer** for several months.
 Do you know **about his refusal to sell the house?**
 I don’t know **of another doctor to call.**

know _____ *be aware of, realize, have information about*
 OBJECT

I know **the answer.**
 Tracy knows **a lot about my personal history.**
 We know **the place you mean.**
 His password was known only by his wife.
 I know **him to be an honest person.**
 We have known **the senator to give better speeches.**
 The company has been known **to take big risks before.**
 We knew **that it was going to be bad.**
 They should have known **that we were leaving early.**
 Does he know **that we are waiting?**

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE
 THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

know _____ *have in one’s memory*
 OBJECT

Most of the actors know **their lines** well.

know _____ *be acquainted/familiar with*
 OBJECT

I knew **your father** in college.
 She knows **everybody in the organization.**
 We knew **her as Liddy** when we were kids.

OBJECT + *as* OBJECT

know _____ *recognize*
 OBJECT

I’d know **his voice** anywhere.

PRESENT

I lack	we lack
you lack	you lack
he/she/it lacks	they lack

• *He lacks the tools to do the job right.*

PAST

I lacked	we lacked
you lacked	you lacked
he/she/it lacked	they lacked

• *We lacked the necessary resources.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lacked

PAST PERFECT ... had lacked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lacking	we are lacking
you are lacking	you are lacking
he/she/it is lacking	they are lacking

• *The expedition is lacking both food and water.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lacking	we were lacking
you were lacking	you were lacking
he/she/it was lacking	they were lacking

• *Up-to-the-minute information was lacking.*

FUTURE ... will lack

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be lacking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lacked

PAST PASSIVE

Lack is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

lack *be missing, not be enough* [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES] We need to make a decision, but solid information is lacking.

lack _____ *be missing, not have (enough of), need*
OBJECT

We lack **just about everything we need.**

The apartment lacks **adequate closet space.**

We never lacked **confidence in our abilities.**

The team has always lacked **a good defense.**

Is there anything **that** you lack?

for OBJECT [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

The downtown area doesn't lack **for coffee shops**, I see.

Hadley doesn't lack **for confidence**, that's for sure.

in OBJECT [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

Herman is lacking **in confidence.**

My old kitchen was lacking **in storage space.**

PRESENT

I last we last
 you last you last
 he/she/it lasts they last
 • *The concert lasts about two hours.*

PAST

I lasted we lasted
 you lasted you lasted
 he/she/it lasted they lasted
 • *The recession lasted 18 months.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lasted

PAST PERFECT ... had lasted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lasting we are lasting
 you are lasting you are lasting
 he/she/it is lasting they are lasting
 • *The meeting is lasting longer than I expected.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lasting we were lasting
 you were lasting you were lasting
 he/she/it was lasting they were lasting
 • *The traffic jam was lasting for hours.*

FUTURE ... will last

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be lasting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lasted

PAST PASSIVE

Last is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

last *continue, endure*

His Olympic record will never last.
 The supplies were lasting pretty well.
 Their remarkable success can't last.
 The ice cream can't last in this heat.

last _____ *continue, endure [for a specified period of time]*

ADVERB OF TIME

All of our classes last **50 minutes**.
 This far north, the sunsets seem to last **forever**.
 Football games last **60 minutes**.
 Marie can't last a **whole day** without ice cream.
 Brick lasts **longer** than vinyl siding.
 This car will last **10 years** if you take care of it.
How long can a cricket game last?

last _____ *be available to [for a specified period of time]*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF TIME

The water will last **you about two days**.
 Our supplies will not last **us forever**.
 Fifty pounds of dog food will last **them about a month**.
How long will the gasoline last **the convoy**?

PRESENT

I laugh we laugh
 you laugh you laugh
 he/she/it laughs they laugh
 • *She laughs a lot at my stories.*

PAST

I laughed we laughed
 you laughed you laughed
 he/she/it laughed they laughed
 • *I laughed so hard that my sides hurt.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has laughed

PAST PERFECT ... had laughed

PAST PASSIVE

I was laughed we were laughed
 you were laughed you were laughed
 he/she/it was laughed they were laughed
 • *His crazy scheme was laughed at.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am laughing we are laughing
 you are laughing you are laughing
 he/she/it is laughing they are laughing
 • *I'm not laughing anymore.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was laughing we were laughing
 you were laughing you were laughing
 he/she/it was laughing they were laughing
 • *He was laughing at his own mistakes.*

FUTURE ... will laugh

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be laughing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have laughed

COMPLEMENTS

laugh *chuckle/giggle loudly*

He is always laughing.
 I am afraid that the guys will just laugh.
 Go ahead, tell me. I won't laugh.
 "I don't think so," John laughed.

laugh _____ *be amused by*
at OBJECT

at WH-CLAUSE

at PRESENT PARTICIPLE

laugh _____ *mock, make fun of*
at OBJECT

PASSIVE

at WH-CLAUSE

I laughed **at John's joke**.
 We all laughed **at the skit**.
 Everyone laughed **at what he said**.
 The children laughed **at whatever the clown did**.
 Nobody can laugh **at being stuck in an elevator**.
 They laughed **at my talking with a fake British accent**.

Trixie laughed **at my predicament**.
What are you laughing at?
 He can laugh **at himself**.
 Many inventions were laughed at in the beginning.
 I laughed **at how much a new house would cost**.

PHRASAL VERBS

laugh SEP **off** *dismiss as silly*

They laughed off my warnings about snakes near the campsite.
 The actress laughed off recent reports about her love life.

EXPRESSIONS

He who laughs last, laughs best/longest.
 [PROVERB] *Satisfaction may be temporary; someone else may prevail and have greater satisfaction.*

Jonathan stole my girlfriend, but I'll get her back. He who laughs last, laughs best.

laugh all the way to the bank *make a lot of money doing something that others consider foolish*

People criticize the actress for her outrageous behavior, but she's laughing all the way to the bank.

laugh [one's] **head off** *laugh loudly and hard*

Be ready to laugh your head off when Pete's around.

laugh [oneself] **silly** *laugh loudly and hard*

I laugh myself silly when I read Mark Twain's sketches.

PRESENT

I lay we lay
 you lay you lay
 he/she/it lays they lay
 • *He usually lays his keys on his desk.*

PAST

I laid we laid
 you laid you laid
 he/she/it laid they laid
 • *He laid them somewhere else.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has laid

PAST PERFECT ... had laid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am laying we are laying
 you are laying you are laying
 he/she/it is laying they are laying
 • *We are laying a new rug in the living room.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was laying we were laying
 you were laying you were laying
 he/she/it was laying they were laying
 • *I was laying the book down when Mom called.*

FUTURE ... will lay

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be laying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have laid

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was laid they were laid

• *The wet clothing was laid over bushes to dry.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: For the differences between *lay* and *lie*, see the note in the Complements section of verb No. 290.

lay _____ put down
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I laid **the blankets on the foot of the bed.**
 He laid **the spreadsheets across the table.**
 I had just laid **my head on the pillow** when the phone rang.
 Lay **them over there**, will you?
 The presents were laid neatly **under the Christmas tree.**

PASSIVE
 lay _____ put in position, build
 OBJECT

Workers are laying **the foundation for a new office building.**

lay _____ prepare
 OBJECT

The governments laid **plans for a new world federation.**

lay _____ attribute
 OBJECT + to OBJECT

I lay **his mistake to youth and inexperience.**
 Tanya lays **her success to her high school English teacher's advice.**

lay _____ produce and push out [eggs]
 OBJECT

The chickens were laying **eggs** normally again.
 The bird had laid **a pair of eggs** in the oak tree.

PHRASAL VERBS

lay SEP **aside/back/down/out/etc.**
 put in a specified location

The student laid his book bag down.
 Would you lay the pamphlets out on the table?

lay SEP **aside** abandon

The president asked the senators to lay aside their differences.

lay SEP **aside/away** save, put away
 for future use

She laid aside \$100 a month for her son's college education.

lay SEP **down** impose, state clearly

The teacher laid down the rules for
 playground behavior.

lay in/up _____ store for future use

There's a snowstorm coming; we should lay
 in plenty of food.

lay into _____ criticize strongly

She laid up canned goods for the winter.

The boss laid into the sales staff at the meeting.



lay into _____ *consume voraciously*

lay off (_____) *stop teasing/criticizing* [INFORMAL]

lay off _____ *stop doing/consuming*

lay SEP **off** *stop employing, often temporarily*

lay _____ **on** [someone] *present to [someone]*

lay _____ **on** [someone] *blame [someone] for*

lay SEP **on** *apply*

lay SEP **out** *explain*

lay SEP **out** *design, plan, organize*

lay out _____ *spend*

lay over *make a stop during a trip*

lay _____ **up** *confine, keep from normal activities*

lay a finger on _____ *touch lightly*

lay _____ **at** [someone's] **door/feet** *blame [someone] for*

lay claim to _____ *state that one has a right to*

lay down [one's] **life** *sacrifice one's life*

lay down the law *speak sternly*

lay eyes on _____ *look at, usually for the first time*

lay hold of _____ *grasp, understand*

lay SEP **in ruins, lay waste to** _____,

lay SEP **to waste** *destroy completely*

lay it on (thick) *exaggerate*

lay it on the line *make something very clear*

lay _____ **to** *blame [something] for*

Did you see how Bill laid into the barbecued chicken?

Lay off, will you!?

I wish they would lay off my drag racing.

You should lay off video games for a while.

I'm laying off candy until after my next doctor's visit.

The company laid off 1,200 programmers.

Let me lay my latest moneymaking scheme on you.

Don't let Bridget lay the whole crisis on you.

Parents really know how to lay on the guilt when you've done something wrong.

He laid out the campaign strategy to the senator's inner circle.

Would you lay out the summer catalog for us?

How much money did you lay out for your new computer?

We had to lay over at O'Hare Airport for four hours before continuing to Anchorage.

The knee injury laid him up for two months.

The mumps laid the boy up for two weeks.

EXPRESSIONS

If he lays a finger on my computer, I'm calling the police.

My supervisor laid the scheduling conflict at my door.

The Spanish government laid claim to the island. Prairie du Rocher lays claim to the title of the oldest continuous white settlement in Illinois.

The soldier laid down his life for us and our country. Ned's father laid down the law about drinking and driving.

We fell in love the first time we laid eyes on each other.

"We must lay hold of the fact that economic laws are not made by nature. They are made by human beings." [FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT]

The Roman army laid Jerusalem in ruins in 70 A.D. The hurricane laid waste to the entire coast.

The tour guide really lays it on thick about the superiority of Wisconsin cheese.

Our teacher laid it on the line: Attend every class or fail the course.

The company laid the power outage to a lightning strike.

PRESENT

I lead we lead
 you lead you lead
 he/she/it leads they lead
 • *He leads the accounting department.*

PAST

I led we led
 you led you led
 he/she/it led they led
 • *Our policy led to considerable success.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has led

PAST PERFECT ... had led

PAST PASSIVE

I was led we were led
 you were led you were led
 he/she/it was led they were led
 • *The orchestra was led by a young German conductor.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leading we are leading
 you are leading you are leading
 he/she/it is leading they are leading
 • *He is leading the investigation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leading we were leading
 you were leading you were leading
 he/she/it was leading they were leading
 • *We were leading until the last minute.*

FUTURE ... will lead

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have led

COMPLEMENTS

lead **guide**

I have never led before.
 I can't lead until I know where we are going.
 In a formal dance, it is customary for the gentleman to lead.
 The Giants are leading for the first time.
 He has led in every tournament he has played this year.

lead **be first/ahead (in a competition)**

lead _____ **be ahead of, be at the head of**
 OBJECT

He leads **the league** in goals scored.
 Senator Blather will lead **the parade**.

lead _____ **be in charge of**
 OBJECT

Admiral Butler is leading **the task force**.
 She was leading **the company** at the time.

lead _____ **go [in a direction, to a place]**
 ADVERB OF PLACE

This road leads **to my Uncle's farm**.
 The path leads **back home**.
 His proposal will lead **to disaster**.

lead _____ **guide, conduct**
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A guide led **us to the monument**.
 He will lead **you wherever you want to go**.
 The animals were led **back inside the barn**.

lead _____ **cause, influence**
 OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The weather forecast led **them to cancel their trip**.
 The slow sales led **us to drop the entire product line**.
 We were led **to believe that we could get dinner here**.

lead _____ **result in**
 to OBJECT

A viral infection can lead **to pneumonia**.
 Four years of college leads **to a bachelor's degree**.

lead _____ **live, spend [time]**
 OBJECT

Our cats led **pampered lives**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lead **SEP** **away/back/down/in/on/out/**
 etc. **guide in a specified direction**

The police led the suspect **away**.
 The sergeant led the soldiers **out**.

PRESENT

I lean we lean
 you lean you lean
 he/she/it leans they lean
 • *His head always leans to the left.*

PAST

I leaned we leaned
 you leaned you leaned
 he/she/it leaned they leaned
 • *I never leaned on anybody for help.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has leaned

PAST PERFECT ... had leaned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaning we are leaning
 you are leaning you are leaning
 he/she/it is leaning they are leaning
 • *I am leaning toward Senator Blather.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaning we were leaning
 you were leaning you were leaning
 he/she/it was leaning they were leaning
 • *The ladder was leaning dangerously.*

FUTURE ... will lean

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leaning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have leaned

PAST PASSIVE

I was leaned we were leaned
 you were leaned you were leaned
 he/she/it was leaned they were leaned
 • *All the skis were leaned against the wall.*

COMPLEMENTS

lean *bend/tilt to one side*

The Christmas tree is leaning toward the fireplace.
 The sailboat leaned steeply as the breeze freshened.
 After the storm, the wharf was leaning and about to collapse.
 The wheat was leaning in the wind.
 The hikers leaned into the howling storm.

lean _____ rest [on/against]

ADVERB OF PLACE

He was leaning **on the rail**.
 I had to lean **against the door** to close it.
 He leaned **on the chair** and slowly stood up.
 We leaned **on the suitcase** to get it shut.

lean _____ favor, tend

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I am leaning **toward going to graduate school**.
 The newspaper leans **to the left**.
 Public opinion is leaning **against the government**.
 Dictators can lean **either left or right**.
 The citizens lean more **toward capitalism than socialism**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lean (_____) **back/down/forward/off/out/over/etc.** bend ([something]) in a specified direction

He leaned back and laughed.
 The sheriff leaned down and picked up the gun.
 The dog leaned out the window.
 The dog leaned its head out the window.
 The runner leaned over, gasping for breath.

lean on _____ rely on for advice/support

Doris is leaning on her parents for tuition.
 I lean on an accountant friend of mine for investment help.

PRESENT

I leap we leap
 you leap you leap
 he/she/it leaps they leap
 • *Superman leaps tall buildings with ease.*

PAST

I leaped/leapt we leaped/leapt
 you leaped/leapt you leaped/leapt
 he/she/it leaped/leapt they leaped/leapt
 • *He leapt at every opportunity he got.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has leaped/leapt

PAST PERFECT ... had leaped/leapt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaping we are leaping
 you are leaping you are leaping
 he/she/it is leaping they are leaping
 • *The frogs are leaping all over the place.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaping we were leaping
 you were leaping you were leaping
 he/she/it was leaping they were leaping
 • *They were leaping out of the basket.*

FUTURE ... will leap

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leaping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have leaped/leapt

PAST PASSIVE

I was leaped/leapt we were leaped/leapt
 you were leaped/leapt you were leaped/leapt
 he/she/it was leaped/leapt they were leaped/leapt
 • *The wall was leaped over without any difficulty.*

COMPLEMENTS

leap *jump, spring*

He leaps whenever anybody says “Boo!”
 The kids were all leaping with excitement.
 Antelope were leaping across the savannah.
 The fish were leaping like crazy.
 Our Siamese cat leapt onto Grandmother’s lap.
 He hurt his leg. He can’t leap.
 The defensive player leapt and intercepted the ball.
 The basketball player leaped and slammed the ball into the net.
 I leaped as high as I could.

leap _____ *jump over*
OBJECT

We had to leap **the ditch**.
 The horses leapt **the fence** easily.
 He leaped **every obstacle his opponents put in his way**.

PHRASAL VERBS

leap **down/in/off/on/out/over/up/** etc. *jump in a specified direction*

The wagon slowed down, and the boys leaped off.
 We were leaping up and down, trying to get their attention.

leap **at** _____ *accept eagerly*

Max leaped at the chance to be his own boss.
 The club leaped at Kyle’s offer to bring cupcakes.

leap **out at** _____ *get the immediate attention of*

The misspelled word leaped out at the proofreader.

EXPRESSIONS

leap **for joy** *be extremely happy*

Tad won the spelling bee, and his parents leapt for joy.

leap **off the page (at _____)** *be quickly noticed (by [someone])*

The typographical error leaped off the page at me.
 The unemployment statistics leaped off the page at her.

leap **to mind** *suddenly be thought of*

The author that leaps to mind is William Faulkner.

leap **to [one’s] feet** *jump up excitedly*

The audience leapt to its feet and shouted, “Encore!”

leap **to conclusions** *make a hasty judgment without knowing the facts*

Until you have read the entire article, don’t leap to conclusions.

PRESENT

I learn we learn
 you learn you learn
 he/she/it learns they learn
 • *He always learns the hard way.*

PAST

I learned we learned
 you learned you learned
 he/she/it learned they learned
 • *I just learned what happened.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has learned

PAST PERFECT ... had learned

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was learned they were learned
 • *That lesson was learned at great expense.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am learning we are learning
 you are learning you are learning
 he/she/it is learning they are learning
 • *I am learning how to do it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was learning we were learning
 you were learning you were learning
 he/she/it was learning they were learning
 • *We were learning Italian.*

FUTURE ... will learn

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be learning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have learned

COMPLEMENTS

learn gain some knowledge/skill

I am always learning.
 Nobody can learn under these circumstances.
 He can learn as well as anybody else.

learn _____ gain some knowledge/skill in
OBJECT

I learned **English** in high school.
 You need to learn **your lines** for the play.
 Everyone should learn **a trade**.
 Carpentry can only be learned by doing it.
 I eventually learned **to cook pretty well**.
 He must learn **to use his time better**.
 The team must learn **to work together**.
 I quickly learned **who was really in charge**.
 The students are learning **what they need to know**.
 He needs to learn **where he can find the information**.
 I learned **whom to ask for help**.
 They learned **how to deal with unexpected situations**.
 He needs to learn **how to parallel park**.

PASSIVE
INFINITIVE

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

learn _____ find out, come to know
about/of OBJECT

When did you learn **about his criminal record**?
 We learned **of her death** from the newspaper.
 I just learned **that you have been ill**.
 Everyone eventually learns **that they can't do it alone**.

THAT-CLAUSE

learn _____ memorize
OBJECT

Students must learn **the Gettysburg Address** by Monday.
 Learn **these 20 spelling words** by Friday.

EXPRESSIONS

learn _____ the hard way learn [something]
by (usually unpleasant) experience

Amy learned about drugs the hard way.

learn the ropes learn how to do something

It may take some time for the new secretary to learn the ropes.

learn to live with _____ learn to adapt to
the pain/difficulty of

Grandpa has learned to live with his arthritis.
 The house has no closets, but we've learned to live with it.

PRESENT

I leave we leave
 you leave you leave
 he/she/it leaves they leave
 • *He always leaves home by eight.*

PAST

I left we left
 you left you left
 he/she/it left they left
 • *I left you a little surprise.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has left
 PAST PERFECT ... had left

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaving we are leaving
 you are leaving you are leaving
 he/she/it is leaving they are leaving
 • *I'm leaving the porch light on.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaving we were leaving
 you were leaving you were leaving
 he/she/it was leaving they were leaving
 • *We were just leaving the garage when they called.*

FUTURE ... will leave
 FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leaving
 FUTURE PERFECT ... will have left

PAST PASSIVE

I was left we were left
 you were left you were left
 he/she/it was left they were left
 • *Water stains were left all over the ground floor.*

COMPLEMENTS

leave go away, depart

We are leaving soon.
 When can you leave?
 I am not leaving until this is settled.

leave _____ go away from, depart
 OBJECT

Elvis has left **the building**.
 The train will leave **the station** at 10:13 A.M.
 I left **the office** early that day.

leave _____ abandon, quit
 OBJECT

He left **the university** in his junior year.
 Ray has just left **his wife**.
 I left **the law firm** some time ago.

leave _____ cause/allow to remain behind
 OBJECT

Red wine always leaves **a stain**.
 He left **a fortune** after his death.
 The surgery will leave **a little scar**.
 I left **my coat with the concierge**.
 The kids left **footprints on the tile floor**.
 She left **her purse on the park bench**.
 Somebody's tickets were left **on the counter**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

PASSIVE

leave _____ cause/allow to remain/be in a certain state
 OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

The accident left **him a broken man**.
 The fire left **the building a ruined shell**.
 The training left **the division a formidable fighting force**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The movie left **me confused**.
 We had to leave **the children alone** for a few hours.
 The incident left **us speechless**.
 Please leave **the door open**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Riding a bicycle leaves **Bill out of breath**.
 I left **the kids finishing up their homework**.
 The comedian left **the audience roaring with laughter**.
 We left **the plumber ripping out the old sink**.
 Leave **the engine running**.



leave _____ deliver/provide before going away

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

They left **you a message**.

I am leaving **the waiter a big tip**.

We left **the kids some cookies**.

They left **a message for you**.

I am leaving **a big tip for the waiter**.

We left **some cookies for the kids**.

leave _____ allow/give [someone] to do

OBJECT + for OBJECT

OBJECT + to OBJECT

OBJECT + with OBJECT

My older sister left **the dishes for me**.

The boss will leave **the decision to his assistant**.

While I'm in Toronto, I'm going to leave **the project with you**.

leave _____ give at one's death (often by a will)

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Grandfather left **his stamp collection to his granddaughter**.

Mr. Plavsik left **all his money to charity**.

PHRASAL VERBS

leave _____ down/out/up/etc.

allow to remain in a specified position

Please leave the window up when you're finished in the room.

leave for _____ depart in the direction of

We will be leaving for the airport in 10 minutes.

leave off (_____) stop temporarily

Now, where did we leave off at yesterday's meeting?
The staff left off trying to organize a company picnic.

leave SEP off/on not put off/on

He left his jacket off in the classroom.

She left her coat on because it was chilly inside.

leave SEP out (of _____) omit, exclude (from [something])

Harry left out all references to World War Two.

Mrs. Crabtree left Norman out of her will.

leave SEP on not switch off

Leave the light on when you leave the room.

EXPRESSIONS

leave _____ open not schedule another activity on [a day/date]

Leave next Saturday open for the bake sale.

leave a bad taste in [one's] mouth cause one to have a lingering bad impression

The argument over immigration left a bad taste in my mouth.

leave no stone unturned search everywhere, do everything possible

The police left no stone unturned in looking for the murderer.

leave _____ alone/be not disturb

Leave me alone—I'm trying to study.

We should leave the matter be for the moment.

leave _____ out in the cold not keep [someone] informed

The rest of the staff left her out in the cold with regard to the new project.

leave (some) loose ends not finish a project, not solve a problem

The movie rushed the ending and left some loose ends.

be left (over) remain

Is there any chocolate cake left?

Some potato salad is left over from the picnic.

Half a skein of yarn is left over from my sweater project.

PRESENT

I lend we lend
 you lend you lend
 he/she/it lends they lend
 • *The bank lends money for new cars.*

PAST

I lent we lent
 you lent you lent
 he/she/it lent they lent
 • *The bank lent them the money.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lent

PAST PERFECT ... had lent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lending we are lending
 you are lending you are lending
 he/she/it is lending they are lending
 • *I am lending the truck to Anne for the weekend.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lending we were lending
 you were lending you were lending
 he/she/it was lending they were lending
 • *The banks were not lending at that time.*

FUTURE ... will lend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be lending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lent

PAST PASSIVE

I was lent we were lent
 you were lent you were lent
 he/she/it was lent they were lent
 • *The book was lent to me by a friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

lend give money on condition of repayment (plus interest)

Banks are not lending now.
 Who can afford to lend?
 Who is still lending these days?

lend _____ allow temporary use of on condition of return/payment

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I lent **Peter my lawnmower**.
 I can lend **you \$25**.
 Could I have lent **someone the library book**?
 I lent **my lawnmower to Peter**.
 I can lend **\$25 to you**.
 Could I have lent **the library book to someone**?

to PARAPHRASE

NOTE: Many speakers prefer to use the verb *loan* (rather than *lend*) when referring to money. For example, they would say “The bank will *loan* you the money” rather than “The bank will *lend* you the money.” Both are grammatically correct.

lend _____ make available to

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

The Red Cross lent **the flood relief effort its services**.
 The Red Cross lent **its services to the flood relief effort**.

lend _____ add

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The confetti and beads lend **gaiety to the Mardi Gras parade**.
 The bowl of fruit lends **color to an otherwise dull painting**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lend itself to _____ be suitable for

The gathering room lends itself to intimate conversation.

lend SEP **out** allow temporary use of on condition of return

We lent out our copy of Jane Austen’s *Pride and Prejudice*.

EXPRESSIONS

lend an/[one’s] ear (to _____) listen (to [someone])

The president is speaking; lend an ear.
 “Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.”
 [SHAKESPEARE]

PRESENT

I let we let
 you let you let
 he/she/it lets they let
 • *He lets us know if there is a problem.*

PAST

I let we let
 you let you let
 he/she/it let they let
 • *I let the dogs run in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has let

PAST PERFECT ... had let

PAST PASSIVE

I was let we were let
 you were let you were let
 he/she/it was let they were let
 • *Several staff members were let go recently.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am letting we are letting
 you are letting you are letting
 he/she/it is letting they are letting
 • *The coach is letting them try again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was letting we were letting
 you were letting you were letting
 he/she/it was letting they were letting
 • *We were letting too many mistakes get through.*

FUTURE ... will let

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be letting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have let

COMPLEMENTS

let _____ allow, permit

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

The referee let **the game continue**.Let **me show you around**.We let **the kids watch TV for a while after dinner**.Don't let **them leave without me**.Let **me go!**let's _____ [CONTRACTION OF **let us**; A WAY TO SUGGEST DOING SOMETHING]

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

Let's **go home now**.Let's **find out what happened**.Let's **not do that**.

PHRASAL VERBS

let SEP **by/down/in/off/on/out/through/up/etc.** allow to come/go in a specified direction

Let the children in.

The bus stopped and let off two passengers.

Let the dog out.

Stop wrestling and let your brother up.

Son, you've let your parents down again.

let SEP **down** disappoint

The policeman let the boys off with a warning.

let SEP **off (easy) (with _____)** forgive/release (with [little/no punishment])

The teacher let me off easy.

let **off/out _____** release, emit

The teakettle let off a loud whistle.

let **on _____** pretend

Barry is letting on that he knows about the crisis.

let **on _____** admit

Charlotte never let on that she was my sister.

let **out** end

When does the movie let out?

let **up** slow down, diminish

The rain appears to be letting up.

EXPRESSIONS

let **alone _____** not to mention, much less

The patient can't walk, let alone run.

I don't have time to read a chapter, let alone the whole book.

let _____ **alone/be** not disturb

Let your sister alone. Let her be.

let _____ **go** fire, lay off

The company let four mechanics go last Friday.

let **go/loose of _____** release, stop gripping

If we let go of the rope, we'll fall into the river.

PRESENT

I lift we lift
 you lift you lift
 he/she/it lifts they lift
 • *His humor always lifts my spirits.*

PAST

I lifted we lifted
 you lifted you lifted
 he/she/it lifted they lifted
 • *The president lifted the embargo.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lifted

PAST PERFECT ... had lifted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lifting we are lifting
 you are lifting you are lifting
 he/she/it is lifting they are lifting
 • *I'm lifting your hall pass.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lifting we were lifting
 you were lifting you were lifting
 he/she/it was lifting they were lifting
 • *The fog was finally lifting.*

FUTURE ... will lift

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be lifting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lifted

PAST PASSIVE

I was lifted we were lifted
 you were lifted you were lifted
 he/she/it was lifted they were lifted
 • *The siege of Leningrad was lifted after 872 days.*

COMPLEMENTS

lift *rise, rise and disappear*The bank of clouds over the bay
was lifting.The icy mist over the frozen lake lifted slowly.
The darkness began to lift in the pre-dawn hours.
Our gloomy spirits gradually lifted.

lift _____ raise

OBJECT

I could hardly lift **my suitcase**.The rescuers lifted **the fallen wall** with a crane.The good news lifted **everyone's mood** instantly.

The wounded cowboy was lifted onto the horse.

PASSIVE

lift _____ revoke, rescind, end

OBJECT

The police lifted **his passport**.The judge lifted **the restraining order**.The governor lifted **the ban on same-sex marriage**.

Censorship was only lifted after the war.

The embargo was lifted in April.

PASSIVE

lift _____ steal, plagiarize

OBJECT

Someone had lifted **her purse**.He had lifted **several paragraphs** from a magazine article.

Our luggage was lifted from the room while we slept.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

lift SEP down/up/etc. *move in a
specified direction*I lifted the wine glasses down from
the cabinet.

Lift your feet up, or you'll stumble.

lift off *launch, take off [OF SPACECRAFT]*

The space shuttle lifted off at 8:54 P.M.

EXPRESSIONS

lift a finger *make an effort
[USUALLY NEGATIVE]*Roland won't lift a finger to help around
the house.lift weights *exercise using [barbells,
dumbbells, etc.]*

Look at Biff's biceps—he must be lifting weights.

PRESENT

I light we light
 you light you light
 he/she/it lights they light
 • *Her face lights up when she smiles.*

PAST

I lit/lighted we lit/lighted
 you lit/lighted you lit/lighted
 he/she/it lit/lighted they lit/lighted
 • *I lit the candles on the birthday cake.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lit/lighted

PAST PERFECT ... had lit/lighted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lighting we are lighting
 you are lighting you are lighting
 he/she/it is lighting they are lighting
 • *I am lighting a fire.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lighting we were lighting
 you were lighting you were lighting
 he/she/it was lighting they were lighting
 • *Only candles were lighting the dining room.*

FUTURE

... will light

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be lighting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have lit/lighted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was lit/lighted they were lit/lighted
 • *The room was lit only by the fireplace.*

COMPLEMENTS

light catch fire

The pile of dry leaves and twigs finally lit.
 The smoldering coals lit with a whoosh.
 The damp wood never lit.

light _____ ignite, set fire to, cause to burn

OBJECT

Sparks from the train lit **trash along the track**.
 We should light **the lantern** before it gets dark.

PASSIVE

The fire was lit by an electrical short circuit in the wall.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I lit **them a candle**.

We will light **them a fire**.

for PARAPHRASE

I lit **a candle for them**.

We will light **a fire for them**.

light _____ illuminate

OBJECT

We used torches to light **the path**.

The campfire lighted **the boys' faces**.

The golden moon lit **the southern sky**.

PASSIVE

The street was lit by the burning buildings.

light _____ guide with a light

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We lit **the children to their rooms** with the lantern.

“And all our yesterdays have lighted **fools the way to dusty death**.” [SHAKESPEARE]

PHRASAL VERBS

light up brighten

The black night lit up with occasional
 flashes of lightning.
 Her face lit up when she heard the news.

EXPRESSIONS

light a fire under _____ cause to move/work faster/harder

The coach's tirade lit a fire under his sluggish team.

PRESENT

I like we like
 you like you like
 he/she/it likes they like

• *Everyone likes chocolate.*

PAST

I liked we liked
 you liked you liked
 he/she/it liked they liked

• *I never liked his attitude.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has liked

PAST PERFECT ... had liked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Like is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Like is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will like

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

—

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have liked

PAST PASSIVE

I was liked we were liked
 you were liked you were liked
 he/she/it was liked they were liked

• *She was liked by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

like _____ enjoy, be fond of

OBJECT

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

INFINITIVE

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

like _____ want, prefer

OBJECT

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

INFINITIVE

like _____ have affection for

OBJECT

OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

like _____ thrive in

OBJECT

I liked **the movie** a lot.

We all liked **Venice**.

Did the kids like **their babysitter**?

I like **dogs**, and my sister likes **cats**.

I like **them doing their homework as soon as they get home**.

We like **our children living so close to us**.

They like **to go canoeing when the weather is good**.

I like **to read by the fireplace**.

I like **what you have done with the room**.

The committee liked **how you answered their questions**.

We like **living in Chicago**.

My parents like **traveling by train**.

We would like **some coffee**, please.

I would like **a new job**.

Would you like **red or white wine**?

We like **our coffee black**, please.

My parents like **the TV really loud**.

I would like **you to take care of it yourself**.

Would you like **him to come with us**?

I would like **the oil changed every 5,000 miles**.

We would like **the wines uncorked now**, please.

Would you like **to go to dinner now**?

See if they would like **to join us**.

I would like **to say a few words**.

I think Ray likes **her** too.

Mr. Rogers likes **you** just the way you are.

Renee likes **Paul as a friend**.

Pansies like **full sun**.

The blue spruce doesn't like **wet soil**.

PRESENT

I limit	we limit
you limit	you limit
he/she/it limits	they limit

• *I limit myself to two cups of coffee a day.*

PAST

I limited	we limited
you limited	you limited
he/she/it limited	they limited

• *They limited the number of trips we take.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has limited

PAST PERFECT ... had limited

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am limiting	we are limiting
you are limiting	you are limiting
he/she/it is limiting	they are limiting

• *We are limiting how long the kids play video games.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was limiting	we were limiting
you were limiting	you were limiting
he/she/it was limiting	they were limiting

• *Charles was limiting out-of-season food.*

FUTURE

... will limit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be limiting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have limited

PAST PASSIVE

I was limited	we were limited
you were limited	you were limited
he/she/it was limited	they were limited

• *The power of government was limited by the Constitution.*

COMPLEMENTS

limit _____ restrict

OBJECT

We must limit **unnecessary spending**.
 The fishing industry has limited **catches of endangered species**.
 We try to limit **our use of electricity**.

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

The Environmental Protection Agency has limited **mercury emissions**.
 Senator Blather will limit **his speech to 15 minutes**.
 The company's server limits **us to 25 e-mails a day**.
 State law limits **senators to two terms**.

WH-CLAUSE

Our cell phone plan limits **calls to the 48 contiguous states**.
 The high elevation limits **what plants can grow there**.
 The rescue team limited **how far they would search**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I should limit **how much I spend on nonessentials**.
 Our budget limits **eating out**.
 Time limits **our taking too many side trips**.
 Company policy limits **taking spouses on business trips**.

PRESENT

I list	we list
you list	you list
he/she/it lists	they list

• *He lists himself as an Independent.*

PAST

I listed	we listed
you listed	you listed
he/she/it listed	they listed

• *I listed some of the things we need to do.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has listed

PAST PERFECT ... had listed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am listing	we are listing
you are listing	you are listing
he/she/it is listing	they are listing

• *I am listing the advantages and disadvantages.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was listing	we were listing
you were listing	you were listing
he/she/it was listing	they were listing

• *They were listing everything they could think of.*

FUTURE ... will list

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be listing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have listed

PAST PASSIVE

I was listed	we were listed
you were listed	you were listed
he/she/it was listed	they were listed

• *His name was already listed.*

COMPLEMENTS

list _____ itemize, create a series of items in written/printed form

OBJECT

I listed **all of our supplies**.
 We need to list **our expenses**.
 Can you list **everyone who was present**?
 List **three things that you like about the United States**.
 We list **you** among the club's most valuable members.
 I was listing **all the books I wanted to read**, and I ran out of paper.
 Is your company listed in the phone book?
 Our college has been listed among the top ten engineering schools.
 Please list **what you need**.
 The participants listed **why they were taking the workshop**.
 I will list **whatever times are still available**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

list _____ place in a category

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

I listed **Tom as a volunteer**.
 They listed **the reporters as nonvoting observers**.
 The school was listed **as a private four-year college**.
 The army listed **him as missing in action**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

list _____ have a specified price

for OBJECT

The car lists **for \$23,995**, but we'll sell it to you for \$22,500.
 The book lists **for \$19.95**.

PRESENT

I listen we listen
 you listen you listen
 he/she/it listens they listen
 • *He always listens to other people.*

PAST

I listened we listened
 you listened you listened
 he/she/it listened they listened
 • *I listened long enough.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has listened

PAST PERFECT ... had listened

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am listening we are listening
 you are listening you are listening
 he/she/it is listening they are listening
 • *I'm listening to what you have to say.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was listening we were listening
 you were listening you were listening
 he/she/it was listening they were listening
 • *We were listening to the radio.*

FUTURE ... will listen

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be listening

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have listened

PAST PASSIVE

I was listened we were listened
 you were listened you were listened
 he/she/it was listened they were listened
 • *Her proposal was listened to carefully.*

COMPLEMENTS

listen pay attention to in order to hear

Go ahead. I'm listening.
 Teenagers never listen.
 When the president speaks, the country listens.
 I think someone is listening.

listen _____ hear attentively

to OBJECT

Just listen **to that music!**
 We had to listen **to their sales pitch.**
 I want to listen **to the news** at six.
 Experimental music is not listened to often.
 Listen **to the rain falling on the roof.**
 The campers listened nervously **to the wolves howling in the darkness.**

PASSIVE

to OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We listened **to the kids playing under our window.**
 We will all listen **to what they propose.**
 I will listen **to whomever they choose as a spokesperson.**
 The public listens **to whatever nonsense they hear on talk radio.**

to WH-CLAUSE

listen _____ try to hear

for OBJECT

Do you know **what** to listen **for** at a congressional hearing?
 Listen **for the words "walrus" and "Paul."**

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I am listening **for the clock to chime.**
 Listen **for the owl to hoot.**

PHRASAL VERBS

listen in listen to a radio broadcast

Noam Chomsky will be interviewed on NPR tonight; I'm going to listen in.

listen in on _____ listen to secretly

If you heard two friends talking about you, would you listen in on them?

listen up listen carefully

The drill sergeant told the recruits to listen up.

EXPRESSIONS

listen to reason accept a reasonable argument

His lawyer recommended that he plead guilty, but he wouldn't listen to reason.

PRESENT

I live we live
 you live you live
 he/she/it lives they live
 • *They live on Chautauqua Court.*

PAST

I lived we lived
 you lived you lived
 he/she/it lived they lived
 • *He lived in the United States for six years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lived

PAST PERFECT ... had lived

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am living we are living
 you are living you are living
 he/she/it is living they are living
 • *He is living pretty well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was living we were living
 you were living you were living
 he/she/it was living they were living
 • *John was virtually living in his office.*

FUTURE ... will live

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be living

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lived

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was lived they were lived
 • *His life was lived to the fullest.*

COMPLEMENTS

live *be alive, exist*

Aunt Pearl lived to be 99 years old.
 Few people live after such a terrible accident.
 King Arthur never lived.

live *have a wonderful life*

You haven't lived until you've tasted Mom's lemon meringue pie.

live _____ *subsist, survive, feed on*

ADVERB OF MANNER

I can't live **that way**.
 The prisoners lived **under dreadful conditions**.

live _____ *reside*

ADVERB OF PLACE

They live **at 3817 West Main Street**.
 My great-grandparents lived **on a farm**.
 We have never lived **outside the country**.

live _____ *experience, pass one's life in a certain way*

ADVERB OF MANNER

James Bond loves to live **dangerously**.
 And the prince and princess lived **happily ever after**.
 The actor was living **a dream**.
 He was living **a life of luxury**.

OBJECT

PHRASAL VERBS

live **SEP** down *stop being embarrassed about*

I'll never live down forgetting my wedding anniversary.

live for _____ *consider extremely important*

Betty lives for coffee.

live off (of) _____ *survive by eating*

The campers lived mostly off fruits and berries.

live off (of) _____ *depend on for food and shelter*

She lived off her parents when she was in college.
 They live off of the paintings that they sell.

live on *survive, continue*

The legend of the phantom funeral lives on.

live on _____ *eat, feed on*

Many poor farmers live on rice and beans.
 Goldfinches live on insects and seeds.

live on _____ *support oneself with [OF PEOPLE]*

Mrs. Blaine lives on Social Security and a small pension.

live through _____ *survive*

How did they live through the Great Depression?

live up to _____ *maintain, meet [standards]*

How can I live up to my parents' expectations?

live with _____ *endure, put up with*

He lived with a limp for the rest of his life.

PRESENT

I locate we locate
 you locate you locate
 he/she/it locates they locate
 • *The agency locates missing people.*

PAST

I located we located
 you located you located
 he/she/it located they located
 • *They located the shipwreck in 1985.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has located

PAST PERFECT ... had located

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Locate is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Locate is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will locate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have located

PAST PASSIVE

I was located we were located
 you were located you were located
 he/she/it was located they were located
 • *The old stadium was located at Grand and Dodier.*

COMPLEMENTS

locate _____ find out where [someone/something] is

OBJECT

We never located **the original deed**.
 We have to locate **the property line**.
 Have the police located **the murder weapon**?
 My parents located **a good preschool** for Thomas.

PASSIVE

The treasure was never located.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We eventually located **the keys under some papers**.
 I located **the store in a strip mall near the highway**.
 He located **the missing cup in the trash can**.

WH-CLAUSE

Historians have located **where Shakespeare's theater stood**.
 He finally located **where the smell was coming from**.
 Did you locate **whatever you were looking for**?

locate _____ position, situate

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

They advised us to locate **the store downtown**.
 You should locate **your café in the new business park**.
 We located **our house as far from the road as possible**.
 Our house is located **as far from the road as possible**.

PASSIVE

locate _____ settle, put one's home/business

ADVERB OF PLACE

The English colonists located **on the banks of the James River**.
 The trucking company located **at the intersection of two interstate highways**.

PRESENT

I lock we lock
 you lock you lock
 he/she/it locks they lock
 • *My knee locks if I stand too long.*

PAST

I locked we locked
 you locked you locked
 he/she/it locked they locked
 • *They have just locked the gate.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has locked

PAST PERFECT ... had locked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am locking we are locking
 you are locking you are locking
 he/she/it is locking they are locking
 • *I am locking all of the windows.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was locking we were locking
 you were locking you were locking
 he/she/it was locking they were locking
 • *The left front wheel was locking.*

FUTURE ... will lock

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be locking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have locked

PAST PASSIVE

I was locked we were locked
 you were locked you were locked
 he/she/it was locked they were locked
 • *All of the doors were locked.*

COMPLEMENTS

lock become fastened with a bolt mechanism

The door locked with a click.
 The gates lock automatically.
 That door never locks properly.

lock become stuck in one position

Sometimes the car's steering wheel locks.
 My left elbow locks if I sit still too long.
 The transmission locks every time I try to shift into reverse.

lock _____ fasten with a bolt mechanism

OBJECT

Please lock **the door** when you leave.
 You should always lock **your car doors**.
 The trunk was securely locked.

PASSIVE

lock _____ secure with a lock

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I locked **the documents in the drawer**.
 We locked **the car in the garage**.
 My brother locked **me in a closet**.
 The prisoners were locked **in a cell**.

PASSIVE

lock _____ join together

OBJECT

The elks locked **horns**.
 As the rioters approached, the police locked **arms**.
 He locked **his fingers** around the steering wheel and braked hard.
 The bumpers were so tightly locked that we had to call a tow truck.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

lock SEP away/in/out/etc.
 secure with a lock in a specified location

We locked the dogs in for the night.
 They locked the rest of the staff out.
 I locked myself out of the car.

lock up secure a building by locking all the entrances

I'll lock up when I leave for the night.

lock SEP up lock securely

He locked his stamp collection up in a safe.

lock SEP up put in jail

The police locked the suspects up.

lock SEP up achieve, take control of

Our varsity team locked up first place in the conference.
 Senator Blather has locked up enough votes to override the president's veto.

PRESENT

I look we look
 you look you look
 he/she/it looks they look
 • *Kerry looks upset about something.*

PAST

I looked we looked
 you looked you looked
 he/she/it looked they looked
 • *I looked for him in the barn.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has looked

PAST PERFECT ... had looked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am looking we are looking
 you are looking you are looking
 he/she/it is looking they are looking
 • *Your lawn is looking good these days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was looking we were looking
 you were looking you were looking
 he/she/it was looking they were looking
 • *They were looking everywhere.*

FUTURE ... will look

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be looking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have looked

PAST PASSIVE

I was looked we were looked
 you were looked you were looked
 he/she/it was looked they were looked
 • *My proposal was looked upon as brilliant.*

COMPLEMENTS

look turn one's eyes to see something

Don't look now!
 Thanks, but I am only looking. [IN A STORE]
 Whenever there is an accident, people have to stop and look.

look _____ see, notice
 at OBJECT

Thomas doesn't look **at things** the way we do.
 Uncle Theron was looking **at the family photo albums.**

WH-CLAUSE

What are you looking **at**?
 Look **at her dress**—it's so short!
 Look **who came to see you!**
 Look **what Santa brought you!**
 Look **where we are!**

look _____ search, hunt
 ADVERB OF PLACE

Did you look **in the drawers**?
 I've looked **everywhere.**
Where did you look?
 You should look **online.**
 I'm looking **for my other sock.**
 The agency was looking **for a solution to the refugee problem.**
 Police are looking **for the stolen car.**

for OBJECT

look _____ seem, appear
 PREDICATE NOUN

The house is really looking **its age.**
 You look **a total wreck!**
 The rug looks **old and faded.**
 I thought Aunt Polly looked **pretty good.**
 A recession looks **unlikely** for now.
 The job looks **to be about finished.**

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

INFINITIVE

look _____ expect, hope
 INFINITIVE

They are looking **to finish in first place.**
 The market is looking **to rebound this quarter.**

look _____ face [in a certain direction]
 ADVERB OF PLACE

Our vacation home looks **out over the lake.**
 The cabin looks **west.**



PHRASAL VERBS

look away/back/inside/outside/etc.
look in a specified direction

look after _____ take care of

look around explore

look at _____ consider

look at _____ examine

look at _____ read

look back think about (something in)
the past

look down on _____ despise, have
contempt for

look for _____ expect

look for [someone/something] to _____
expect that [someone/something] will [do]

look in on _____ visit briefly, check on

look into _____ investigate

look on watch something happen

look on/upon _____ as consider

look out be careful

look out for _____ be cautious about

look out for _____ be concerned about
the welfare of

look SEP over review, examine

look through _____ examine the parts of

look to _____ depend on

look to _____ think about, examine

look up improve [USED ONLY IN THE
PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

look up to _____ admire, respect

look SEP up search for

There was a bad accident, and Mom
made me look away.

Open the package and look inside.

Teresa looks after her 95-year-old mother.

Would you look after my children while I'm at the grocery?

We entered the old fort and looked around.

They looked at the possibility of buying new computers.
Just look at his success in the real estate business!

The vet looked at Yu's pet hamster.

I haven't looked at today's newspaper yet.

The old sailor spends most of his time looking back.

Aunt Hilda looked down on us because we were poor.
He looked down on manual labor of any kind.

The weatherman is looking for rain by tomorrow afternoon.

I look for my aunt to win the election.

We are looking for the economy to rebound within a year.

I'll look in on Grandma when I go to the store.

The nurse looked in on the patient in Room 312.

She is looking into the possibility of new office furniture.

Workers looked on helplessly as the boat sank in the harbor.

I've always looked on you as a friend.

Look out! The sidewalk is slippery.

Look out for falling rocks.

His older brother looked out for him on the playground.

The treasurer looked over our accounts.

Patti is looking over the newspaper recipes.

Jim looked through the book for Civil War photos.

We looked through the desk and found nothing to keep.

Donald looked to his family to help pay his medical bills.

Students look to their teachers for help.

The playwright looks to Greek tragedies for inspiration.

The Dow Jones average was up 126 points today;
things are looking up.

All the scientists looked up to Robert Oppenheimer.

If you don't know a word, look it up in the dictionary.

When I'm in Buffalo, I'll look up a childhood friend of mine.

EXPRESSIONS

it looks like _____

it looks like / as if / as though _____

It looks like rain.

It looks like it will rain.

It looks as if it will rain.

It looks as though it will rain.

We look forward to meeting them at the party.

Dennis looks like his grandfather.

Ashley looks like a famous movie star.

top
40
verb

look forward to _____
anticipate eagerly

look like _____ have
the appearance of

PRESENT

I lose we lose
 you lose you lose
 he/she/it loses they lose
 • *My team always loses.*

PAST

I lost we lost
 you lost you lost
 he/she/it lost they lost
 • *I lost my glasses again.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lost

PAST PERFECT ... had lost

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am losing we are losing
 you are losing you are losing
 he/she/it is losing they are losing
 • *I am losing patience with them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was losing we were losing
 you were losing you were losing
 he/she/it was losing they were losing
 • *We were losing money on every transaction.*

FUTURE ... will lose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be losing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lost

PAST PASSIVE

I was lost we were lost
 you were lost you were lost
 he/she/it was lost they were lost
 • *The battle was lost in the first few minutes.*

COMPLEMENTS

lose not win, be defeated

The team has never lost this season.
 The longer you gamble, the more certain you are to lose.
 The Patriots lost by 14 points.

lose _____ not win, be defeated in

OBJECT

Napoleon never lost **a battle**—except the last one.
 You can win a battle, but still lose **the war**.
 I lost **my bet with Sam**.

lose _____ be deprived of

OBJECT

We lost **some dear friends** in the war.
 He has lost **the use of his left hand**.
 The senator has lost **their support**.

lose _____ misplace, be unable to find

OBJECT

I lost **the key to my desk**.
 The guide lost **his way** in the woods.
 I lost **my place in the book**.
 The mountain climbers were lost in the avalanche.

PASSIVE

lose _____ fail to keep/maintain

OBJECT

The cat is losing **its hair**.
 My watch is losing **time**.
 The sink has been losing **water** for days.
 The boat was losing **speed**.
 I lost **control of the motorcycle**.

lose _____ get rid of

OBJECT

I finally lost **some weight**.

lose _____ fail to make use of

OBJECT

The company lost **a great opportunity to expand**.
 Don't lose **any time** getting to the bookstore.

lose _____ cause to be deprived of

INDIRECT OBJECT + OBJECT

His position on immigration lost **him a lot of votes**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lose out (to _____) be unsuccessful
 [in a competition (with [someone])]

I applied for the job, but I lost out to
 a younger applicant.

PRESENT

I love we love
 you love you love
 he/she/it loves they love
 • *He loves living in San Francisco.*

PAST

I loved we loved
 you loved you loved
 he/she/it loved they loved
 • *I always loved the impressionist painters.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has loved

PAST PERFECT ... had loved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am loving we are loving
 you are loving you are loving
 he/she/it is loving they are loving
 • *I am loving this spring weather.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was loving we were loving
 you were loving you were loving
 he/she/it was loving they were loving
 • *They were loving every minute of it.*

FUTURE ... will love

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be loving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have loved

PAST PASSIVE

I was loved we were loved
 you were loved you were loved
 he/she/it was loved they were loved
 • *Grammar class was not always loved by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: In the progressive tenses, the verb *love* is primarily used informally and for emphasis.

love _____ feel romantic love for
 OBJECT

Basil says he loves **her**, but they haven't even kissed.
 Jason and Paul have loved **each other** for years.

love _____ like/desire very much
 OBJECT

Don't you just love **the sunshine**?
 I love **the food in southern France**.
 The professor was loved by all of his students.
 I love **John's parents living so close to us**.
 We love **the school providing after-hours care**.
 The children have loved **the beach being in walking distance**.

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

INFINITIVE

I love **to take long walks in the fog**.
 The children love **to play in the sandbox**.
 Who wouldn't love **to go to Hawaii**?

WH-CLAUSE

I love **what you are wearing**.
 Dogs generally love **whoever loves them**.
 I am sure we will love **whatever you are cooking**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I love **taking long walks in the fog**.
 They don't love **having to commute so far**.
 No one loves **being kept waiting for hours**.

love _____ take pleasure in
 (for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We would love **(for) you to come**.
 Jack and I would love **(for) them to join us**.
 They would love **(for) you to open the program**.
 I would love **to come to dinner with you**.
 They would love **to meet you**.
 The kids would love **to come to Jane's birthday party**.

INFINITIVE

love _____ thrive in
 OBJECT

Many flowering plants love **acidic soil**.
 Snails love **mild, wet weather**.
 New businesses love **word-of-mouth publicity**.

PRESENT

I maintain we maintain
you maintain you maintain
he/she/it maintains they maintain
• *He maintains that he is totally innocent.*

PAST

I maintained we maintained
you maintained you maintained
he/she/it maintained they maintained
• *Our stock maintained its price.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has maintained

PAST PERFECT ... had maintained

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am maintaining we are maintaining
you are maintaining you are maintaining
he/she/it is maintaining they are maintaining
• *I am still maintaining that old truck.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was maintaining we were maintaining
you were maintaining you were maintaining
he/she/it was maintaining they were maintaining
• *We were maintaining a strong market position.*

FUTURE ... will maintain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be maintaining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have maintained

PAST PASSIVE

I was maintained we were maintained
you were maintained you were maintained
he/she/it was maintained they were maintained
• *The house was maintained in excellent condition.*

COMPLEMENTS

maintain _____ *keep up, keep the same*

OBJECT

The prisoner maintained **his silence** throughout the torture.
Maintain **your speed** going downhill.
Successful companies maintain **good relationships with their customers**.
Senator Blather has maintained **his lead in the polls**.

maintain _____ *preserve, keep in good condition*

OBJECT

We spend our weekends just maintaining **our house**.
One person can't maintain **the network servers**.

WH-CLAUSE

You have to maintain **whatever you buy**.
The company will maintain **whatever you lease from them**.

maintain _____ *provide support for*

OBJECT

He is required to maintain **the children** until they are 18 years old.
The duke maintained **a household staff of 20 people**.
Rome could no longer maintain **its legions in Britain**.

maintain _____ *assert, declare as true*

OBJECT

The heirs maintained **the validity of their claim**.
The prosecutors will continue to maintain **their case**.
We have always maintained **his involvement in the crime**.
They maintain **the position that health care should be available to everyone**.

THAT-CLAUSE

He maintains **that he is completely innocent**.
President Lincoln maintained **that the war was fought to preserve the Union**.
The government maintained **that it had no involvement in the coup**.
He can't possibly maintain **that he knew nothing about it**.

WH-CLAUSE

He maintains **what he has always said**.
They will maintain **whatever benefits them**.

make _____ force, cause

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

make _____ be used to produce

OBJECT

PASSIVE

make _____ earn, succeed in achieving

OBJECT

make _____ amount to, total

OBJECT

make _____ arrive at

OBJECT

make _____ be on time for

OBJECT

They made **me do it!**

The earthquake made **the windows rattle.**

The officials made **the teams replay the game.**

Cotton rags make **the best paper.**

The sculpture was made entirely of driftwood.

You could make **a lot of money** doing that.

We made **about 500 miles** driving today.

Four quarts make **a gallon.**

Three feet make **a yard.**

Glen will make **Phoenix** by tomorrow afternoon.

Do you think we can make **the 2 o'clock flight?**

Three students didn't make **the deadline for submitting papers.**

PHRASAL VERBS

make away/off with _____ steal

make for _____ go toward

make for _____ result in

make like _____ pretend to be, imitate

make out succeed

make SEP out distinguish, decipher

make SEP out fill out

make SEP out understand

make SEP over change the appearance of

make [someone] out _____ describe [someone], usually falsely

make up become friendly after a quarrel

make up _____ form, be the parts of

make SEP up put together, prepare

make SEP up invent

make SEP up apply cosmetics to

make SEP up
do [something] that
one has missed

make up for _____
compensate for

The robbers made away with \$3,500.

They made off with my briefcase too.

The soldier made for the nearest foxhole.

Good pitching and hitting make for a successful team.

Dad made like a dinosaur and tromped around the room.

Gavin made out very well during the dot-com bubble.

I can barely make out the road in the snowstorm.

The bank teller couldn't make out the signature on the check.

Make the check out to the agency for \$25.

We couldn't make out what the professor was saying.

The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.

Dixie's parents made her out to be a perfect student.

Luke and Lana finally made up after two weeks of not speaking to one another.

These servers make up the backbone of our network.

The fleet was made up of battleships, cruisers, and destroyers.

I made a pot of chili up in 30 minutes.

Gary made up a story about a dog stealing his homework.

The artist made her up to look like a witch.

I have to make myself up before going out.

Jan was sick and has to make up the test on Monday.

How can I make up for the trouble I've caused you?

PRESENT

I make we make
 you make you make
 he/she/it makes they make
 • *She makes an excellent salary.*

PAST

I made we made
 you made you made
 he/she/it made they made
 • *I made lunch for my in-laws.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has made

PAST PERFECT ... had made

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am making we are making
 you are making you are making
 he/she/it is making they are making
 • *I'm making some coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was making we were making
 you were making you were making
 he/she/it was making they were making
 • *We were making pretty good time.*

FUTURE ... will make

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be making

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have made

PAST PASSIVE

I was made we were made
 you were made you were made
 he/she/it was made they were made
 • *Mistakes were made at every level.*

COMPLEMENTS

make _____ prepare, build, create, produce

OBJECT

I am going to make **a tuna salad**.
 We made **a little shed for the bicycles**.
 I made **a bookcase** out of mahogany.
 My wife made **a sweater** out of merino wool.
 I can make **a booklet of your favorite quotations**.
 It's chilly in here; would you make **a fire**?
 We're making **plans for spring break**.
 The president's children make **their own beds**.
 Carpenters made **a hole in the wall** for a window.
 His masterpiece was made in 1683.
 We will make **Thomas a Halloween costume**.
 The florist made **Ruth a terrific centerpiece**.
 His company made **us some custom cabinets**.
 His company made **some custom cabinets for us**.
 I can only make **what I have supplies for**.
 I will make **whatever you want** for your birthday.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

make _____ do, perform

OBJECT

Senator Blather made **a speech** at the YMCA.
 Make **a left turn** at the second traffic light.

make _____ cause to happen/exist

OBJECT

The dog made **a terrible mess** again.
 The two parties made **a deal**.
 Decisions have to be made quickly.

PASSIVE

make _____ cause to be, appoint, give a job/position to

OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

He made **the company a household name**.
 The company made **her vice president**.
 The board made **Boyd the CEO**.
 Tom was made **a captain** in 2005.
 The new job made **Janet very happy**.
 These paintings make the **living room cheerful**.
 Long meetings after lunch make **me sleepy**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE



PRESENT

I manage we manage
 you manage you manage
 he/she/it manages they manage
 • *He manages an import-export company.*

PAST

I managed we managed
 you managed you managed
 he/she/it managed they managed
 • *The coach managed several great teams.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has managed

PAST PERFECT ... had managed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am managing we are managing
 you are managing you are managing
 he/she/it is managing they are managing
 • *I'm managing okay since the surgery.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was managing we were managing
 you were managing you were managing
 he/she/it was managing they were managing
 • *We were just managing to break even.*

FUTURE

... will manage

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be managing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have managed

PAST PASSIVE

I was managed we were managed
 you were managed you were managed
 he/she/it was managed they were managed
 • *The project was not managed very well.*

COMPLEMENTS

manage cope with a stressful/difficult situation

He is managing pretty well, under the circumstances.

The kids can't manage by themselves.

You will have to manage as best you can.

manage _____ administer, control, regulate

OBJECT

I will manage **the new unit**.

Everybody needs to learn how to manage **their expenses**.

This valve manages **the flow of water into the irrigation system**.

Remote sensors are managed by satellite.

PASSIVE

manage _____ succeed in, be able to

INFINITIVE

I finally managed **to get some sleep**.

The technician managed **to repair the server**.

Despite the awful evening, she still managed **to smile**.

He could manage **to get wet in a desert**.

PHRASAL VERBS

manage on/with _____ be able to live/
do by using

We can manage on \$1,300 a month.

The office manages fine with just one photocopier.

PRESENT

I mark we mark
 you mark you mark
 he/she/it marks they mark
 • *The blue line marks the state boundary.*

PAST

I marked we marked
 you marked you marked
 he/she/it marked they marked
 • *I marked all the essays.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has marked

PAST PERFECT ... had marked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am marking we are marking
 you are marking you are marking
 he/she/it is marking they are marking
 • *He is marking the names as they are called.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was marking we were marking
 you were marking you were marking
 he/she/it was marking they were marking
 • *We were marking all the sale items.*

FUTURE ... will mark

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be marking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have marked

PAST PASSIVE

I was marked we were marked
 you were marked you were marked
 he/she/it was marked they were marked
 • *The new rug was marked by dirty footprints.*

COMPLEMENTS

mark *become stained/dirty*

This flooring marks too easily.
 The surface marks everywhere you touch it.

mark _____ *identify [something] by writing on it*

OBJECT

I marked **all the boxes that are to be shipped**.
 Did you mark **all the books that the kids are taking to school**?
 The items on sale are marked with a green tag.
 We marked **what we are taking with us**.
 I marked **how much each item cost**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

mark _____ *identify, characterize*

OBJECT

A marble plaque marks **the house where Mozart died**.
 The yellow line marks **the location of a buried gas line**.
 The fever marked **a new stage in his illness**.
 Gettysburg marked **the turning point of the Civil War**.
 The occasion was marked by a special concert.
 His robe marked **him as a judge**.
 Her clear diction marked **her as a professional actor**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

mark _____ *affect*

OBJECT

Being in combat marks **everyone who experiences it**.

mark _____ *grade, evaluate*

OBJECT

English teachers spend their free time marking **papers**.
 We need to mark **the applicants' résumés**.
 The exams were marked anonymously.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

mark SEP **down** *lower the price of*

They marked down their pizzas by 35%.

mark SEP **down** *make a note of*

Kyle will mark down the speech's important points.

mark SEP **off** *indicate the boundaries of*

A rope marks off the staff-only area.
 I marked off where we're going to put a vegetable garden.

mark SEP **up** *raise the price of*

The art dealer marks paintings up 200%.

mark SEP **up** *mar, deface*

Calvin marked up Susie's book with his crayons.
 Don't touch the photographs, you will mark them up.

PRESENT

I marry we marry
 you marry you marry
 he/she/it marries they marry

• *Many couples marry in June.*

PAST

I married we married
 you married you married
 he/she/it married they married

• *She just married an old friend of mine.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has married

PAST PERFECT ... had married

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am marrying we are marrying
 you are marrying you are marrying
 he/she/it is marrying they are marrying

• *I am not marrying anyone!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was marrying we were marrying
 you were marrying you were marrying
 he/she/it was marrying they were marrying

• *He was marrying for all the wrong reasons.*

FUTURE

... will marry

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be marrying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have married

PAST PASSIVE

I was married we were married
 you were married you were married
 he/she/it was married they were married

• *We were married in 2005.*

COMPLEMENTS

marry enter into marriage

Will they ever marry?

We want to marry as soon as we can.

We are not marrying anytime soon.

marry fit together, be compatible

The fish and wine did not marry well at all.

The two pieces have to marry perfectly.

The two companies will never marry successfully.

marry _____ become the husband/wife of

OBJECT

John married **Marsha**.

He asked her to marry **him**.

Gwendolen could only marry **someone named Ernest**.

He was never married.

PASSIVE

marry _____ join as husband and wife

OBJECT

My brother married **Michael and Kathy** last week.

An ordained minister married **the happy couple**.

We were married at my parents' home.

PASSIVE

marry _____ combine, fit together

OBJECT

Clint taught Dan how to marry **red wine with Italian food**.

Wine and food must be married carefully.

The two power cables were never married properly.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

marry above [oneself] marry someone of a higher social class

Jane married above herself.

marry below/beneath [oneself] marry someone of a lower social class

My cousin married beneath herself.

marry into _____ become a member of by marrying someone who is a member

Diana married into royalty.

Wilton married into an old New England family.

marry SEP off give in marriage

The Bennets married off three daughters in one year.

EXPRESSIONS

marry money marry a rich person

When she finishes college, my niece wants to marry money.

PRESENT

I match we match
 you match you match
 he/she/it matches they match
 • *He matches the description.*

PAST

I matched we matched
 you matched you matched
 he/she/it matched they matched
 • *I finally matched all the socks.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has matched

PAST PERFECT ... had matched

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am matching we are matching
 you are matching you are matching
 he/she/it is matching they are matching
 • *He is not matching our expectations.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was matching we were matching
 you were matching you were matching
 he/she/it was matching they were matching
 • *He was matching me step for step.*

FUTURE

... will match

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be matching

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have matched

PAST PASSIVE

I was matched we were matched
 you were matched you were matched
 he/she/it was matched they were matched
 • *The two teams were evenly matched.*

COMPLEMENTS

match go well together

The jacket and trousers do not match.
 Do you think the colors will match?
 The music and the occasion matched perfectly.

match _____ go/fit well together with

OBJECT

The film's audio doesn't match **the video**.
 His actions don't match **his words**.
 The carpet matches **the drapes** perfectly.
 The bedroom curtains were matched by the bedspread.

PASSIVE

match _____ be equal to, be as good as

OBJECT

The punishment must match **the crime**.
 My enthusiasm matched **hers**.
 I think this year's team matches **last year's**.
 The price in yen doesn't match **the price in dollars**.

match _____ succeed in equaling

OBJECT

I can't match **their price**.
 Will they match **your offer**?
 Our performance matches **expectations**.
 Their bid was never matched.
 I can't match **what they offered you**.
 They will match **whatever bid we make**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

match _____ make/get something equal to

OBJECT

Can you match **this silverware pattern**?
 I'd like to match **the golden oak finish of the dresser**.

match _____ make a connection between, compare

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The pupils need to match **each animal picture with its name**.
 The lab tries to match **each DNA sample with DNA in its database**.

PRESENT

I mean we mean
 you mean you mean
 he/she/it means they mean
 • *A warm wind means that it will rain.*

PAST

I meant we meant
 you meant you meant
 he/she/it meant they meant
 • *I always meant to try skydiving.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has meant

PAST PERFECT ... had meant

PAST PASSIVE

I was meant we were meant
 you were meant you were meant
 he/she/it was meant they were meant
 • *No harm was meant.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meaning we are meaning
 you are meaning you are meaning
 he/she/it is meaning they are meaning
 • *We are meaning to go to town tomorrow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meaning we were meaning
 you were meaning you were meaning
 he/she/it was meaning they were meaning
 • *I was meaning to fix that.*

FUTURE ... will mean

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be meaning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have meant

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *mean* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense “intend, plan.”

mean _____ signify, indicate

OBJECT

“Aloha” means **both “hello” and “goodbye”** in Hawaiian.
 A rainbow means **good luck**.
 It doesn’t mean **anything**.
 Thanks. That meant **a lot to me**.
 This means **war!**

THAT-CLAUSE

The flare means **that there has been an accident**.
 The whistle means **that it is time to quit**.
 A heavy snowfall means **that there will be no school**.
 It can’t mean **what I think it means**.
 It means **whatever you want it to mean**.

WH-CLAUSE

mean _____ intend, plan

(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I meant (for) **you to do that**.
 He was meaning (for) **us to finish up here**.
 The truck was meant **to stay with the crew**.
 We meant **to stop off and do some shopping**.
 They didn’t mean **to do anything wrong**.
 I was meaning **to tell you about that**.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

mean _____ intend [TO EXPLAIN A PREVIOUS STATEMENT]

THAT-CLAUSE

I meant **that you should wait in my office**.
 He meant **that he might have made a mistake**.

EXPRESSIONS

mean business *be serious*

He jokes with reporters, but he means business.

mean everything / the world to _____
be very important to

Jeanine’s fiancé means everything to her.

My environmental work means the world to me.

mean nothing to _____ *not be very important to*

Her criticism means nothing to me.

mean nothing to _____ *not make sense to*

This paragraph will mean nothing to the reader.

mean well *have good intentions*

Ed is a little eccentric, but he means well.

PRESENT

I measure we measure
you measure you measure
he/she/it measures they measure
• *The bedroom measures 10 by 12 feet.*

PAST

I measured we measured
you measured you measured
he/she/it measured they measured
• *I already measured the rug.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has measured

PAST PERFECT ... had measured

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am measuring we are measuring
you are measuring you are measuring
he/she/it is measuring they are measuring
• *I am measuring the desk now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was measuring we were measuring
you were measuring you were measuring
he/she/it was measuring they were measuring
• *They were measuring the kitchen.*

FUTURE ... will measure

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be measuring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have measured

PAST PASSIVE

I was measured we were measured
you were measured you were measured
he/she/it was measured they were measured
• *The rooms were never measured.*

COMPLEMENTS

measure _____ *be a certain size/amount/extent*

OBJECT

The carpet measures **9 feet by 12 feet**.
The pool measures **30 feet long**.
The material measures **45 inches wide**.

measure _____ *determine the size/amount/extent of*

OBJECT

We need to measure **the square footage**.
The pollsters measured **the extent of Senator Blather's support**.

We measured **the time it took to place an order**.

How do we measure **the value of his proposal**?

Wall Street measures **success** in monetary terms.

The flow of the river is measured by the water department.

They measured **how far each contestant threw the discus**.

The recording engineer measured **exactly how long each segment lasted**.

We measured **how heavy the average box was**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

measure _____ *get exact portions of*

OBJECT

Before you start baking, you should measure **all the ingredients**.

measure _____ *moderate, make less strong*

OBJECT

You need to measure **your words** carefully.

Politicians always measure **their criticisms of each other**.

Both criticism and blame should be measured.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

measure SEP **off** *mark the boundaries / the beginning and end of*

Andy measured off half an acre to grow tomatoes on.

Would you measure off 200 feet of kite string?

measure up *be good enough*

The candidates have been chosen; we hope they measure up.
This new brand of paper towels just doesn't measure up.

measure up to _____ *be as good as*

The coffee doesn't measure up to Oregon Trail's.
She doesn't measure up to her teacher's expectations.
The movie doesn't measure up to the book.

PRESENT

I meet	we meet
you meet	you meet
he/she/it meets	they meet

• *The stationmaster meets every train.*

PAST

I met	we met
you met	you met
he/she/it met	they met

• *I never met your brother.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has met

PAST PERFECT ... had met

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meeting	we are meeting
you are meeting	you are meeting
he/she/it is meeting	they are meeting

• *Excuse me, I am meeting someone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meeting	we were meeting
you were meeting	you were meeting
he/she/it was meeting	they were meeting

• *We were meeting in the conference room.*

FUTURE ... will meet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be meeting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have met

PAST PASSIVE

I was met	we were met
you were met	you were met
he/she/it was met	they were met

• *We were met at the airport by the tour guide.*

COMPLEMENTS

meet *come together for a particular purpose*

We will meet next Tuesday.
 “When shall we three meet again?” [SHAKESPEARE]
 Can we meet for lunch tomorrow?
 These same two teams will meet in the playoffs.

meet *be joined*

The hiking paths meet at the top of the hill.

meet *become acquainted, be introduced*

Our in-laws will meet in person for the first time.
 It is amazing that we never met before.

meet *come into contact*

The gates have never met properly because they sag.
 Their lips met tenderly.
 The sliding doors met with a thud.

meet _____ *come together by arrangement*

OBJECT

I met **Carrie** for lunch today.
 I can't meet **them** until next week.
 You will meet **with the search committee** this afternoon.

with OBJECT

meet _____ *become acquainted with*

OBJECT

When did you first meet **your husband**?
 Guess **whom** I met today!

meet _____ *fulfill, satisfy, pay*

OBJECT

I still have to meet **my undergraduate science requirement**.
 Can he meet **the deadline for the grant application**?
 Her organization works to meet **the needs of the homeless**.
 If you meet **our demands**, no one will get hurt.
 They might not be able to meet **their mortgage payment**.
 The terms of the agreement have not been met.

PASSIVE

meet _____ *be present at the arrival of*

OBJECT

Someone needs to meet **the train**.
 We should meet **their plane** tomorrow.
 Everyone will meet **the boats** when they cross the finish line.

meet _____ *encounter, experience*

OBJECT

Our plans really met **an obstacle** today.
 My great-great-grandfather met **his death** in the Great War.
 The proposal met **a stone wall** in the committee hearing.

PRESENT

I mention we mention
you mention you mention
he/she/it mentions they mention
• *He always mentions your name.*

PAST

I mentioned we mentioned
you mentioned you mentioned
he/she/it mentioned they mentioned
• *I mentioned the problem to him.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has mentioned

PAST PERFECT ... had mentioned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mentioning we are mentioning
you are mentioning you are mentioning
he/she/it is mentioning they are mentioning
• *I am never mentioning it again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mentioning we were mentioning
you were mentioning you were mentioning
he/she/it was mentioning they were mentioning
• *I was just mentioning that.*

FUTURE

... will mention

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be mentioning

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have mentioned

PAST PASSIVE

I was mentioned we were mentioned
you were mentioned you were mentioned
he/she/it was mentioned they were mentioned
• *He was mentioned as a possible candidate.*

COMPLEMENTS

mention _____ speak/write about briefly

OBJECT

He mentioned **the problem** briefly.
They never mentioned **anything about it**.
He mentioned **some of his concerns**.
The report mentioned **the possibility of tornadoes**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The issue was barely mentioned at the meeting.
Somebody mentioned **it to me**.
Terry mentioned **his concern to some of his friends**.
She never mentioned **her trip to anyone**.

to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

I mentioned **to him that we were out of eggs**.
Harold mentioned **to Betty that they needed new snow tires**.
She mentioned **to me that she was leaving early**.

THAT-CLAUSE

Jack mentioned **that they were going out to dinner**.
I mentioned **that we would miss the game**.
Did he mention **that we need to get a speaker for the conference?**

WH-CLAUSE

I mentioned **what we have been working on**.
They never mentioned **why the project was postponed**.
Did he mention **how much it would cost?**

mention _____ suggest / refer to as noteworthy

OBJECT + as OBJECT

They mentioned **Steve as a possible replacement**.

OBJECT + for OBJECT

Meredith mentioned **Ava for treasurer**.

PASSIVE

She is being mentioned **for secretary of state**.

He was mentioned **for the vacant Senate seat**.

EXPRESSIONS

not to mention and also

I can't believe all the cooking and cleaning I have to do, not to mention the grocery shopping and laundry.

PRESENT

I miss we miss
 you miss you miss
 he/she/it misses they miss
 • *He misses all of his old friends.*

PAST

I missed we missed
 you missed you missed
 he/she/it missed they missed
 • *I never missed a class.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has missed

PAST PERFECT ... had missed

PAST PASSIVE

I was missed we were missed
 you were missed you were missed
 he/she/it was missed they were missed
 • *He was missed by everyone.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am missing we are missing
 you are missing you are missing
 he/she/it is missing they are missing
 • *I am missing my TV program.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was missing we were missing
 you were missing you were missing
 he/she/it was missing they were missing
 • *We were missing the final three pages of the report.*

FUTURE ... will miss

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be missing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have missed

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *miss* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense “be lacking.”**miss** *be lacking*

The veteran's right arm is missing.
 Help! All my jewelry is missing.

miss *fail to succeed*

With our pitching staff, we can't miss.

miss *fail to hit/strike*

The batter swings and misses.
 The bullet missed by inches.

miss _____ *be lacking*

OBJECT

This computer is missing **its hard drive**.
 Our six-year-old is missing **her two front teeth**.

miss _____ *fail to hit/strike*

OBJECT

The arrow missed **the target** by a foot.
 We just missed **a deer on the road** coming home last night.

miss _____ *fail to hear/notice/understand*

OBJECT

I missed **his first few words**.
 We must have missed **the last turn**.
 He missed **the whole point of the presentation**.
 I missed **what you just said**.

WH-CLAUSE

miss _____ *fail to attend/keep*

OBJECT

He missed **three meetings in a row**.
 Randy missed **his doctor's appointment** yesterday.
 Rhonda missed **the application deadline**.

miss _____ *fail to reach/meet/catch/see*

OBJECT

He went home early. You just missed **him**.
 We are going to miss **the train** if we don't hurry.

miss _____ *avoid*

OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We really want to miss **the afternoon traffic**.
 The bicyclist just missed **being hit by a drunk driver**.

miss _____ *feel the absence/loss of*

OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Did you miss **me** while I was gone?
 I really miss **Cassie the cat**—she had lots of personality.
 I don't miss **having to work so hard**.

PRESENT

I mix we mix
 you mix you mix
 he/she/it mixes they mix
 • *He only mixes what he needs.*

PAST

I mixed we mixed
 you mixed you mixed
 he/she/it mixed they mixed
 • *I already mixed the batter for pancakes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has mixed

PAST PERFECT ... had mixed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mixing we are mixing
 you are mixing you are mixing
 he/she/it is mixing they are mixing
 • *She is mixing punch for the children.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mixing we were mixing
 you were mixing you were mixing
 he/she/it was mixing they were mixing
 • *He was always mixing metaphors.*

FUTURE ... will mix

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be mixing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have mixed

PAST PASSIVE

I was mixed we were mixed
 you were mixed you were mixed
 he/she/it was mixed they were mixed
 • *The album was mixed in a professional recording studio.*

COMPLEMENTS

mix *blend*

Oil and water don't mix.
 Drinking and driving don't mix.
 We need to wait a few minutes while the dough is mixing.
 They really mix well at social gatherings.

mix *associate, interact*

mix _____ *combine, join*

OBJECT

To make concrete, you mix **sand, cement, and water**.
 The conference mixes **experts from different fields**.
 The studio can mix **eight tracks** simultaneously.
 The salesman mixes **business with pleasure**.
 Our teacher mixes **math with humor**.
 I will only mix **what I can use in a few hours**.
 They mix **whatever spices will go together**.
 We mix **however much we can sell in one day**.

OBJECT + *with* OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

mix _____ *make by combining [items, elements]*

OBJECT

He mixed **the final version of the CD** in just a couple of weeks.
 I'll mix **drinks** while you make the salad.
 All the paint was mixed at one time to keep the color uniform.

PASSIVE

mix _____ *cause to interact*

OBJECT

Their parties mix **artists and business people**.
 The training mixes **people from different social and ethnic backgrounds**.

PHRASAL VERBS

mix SEP *in* *stir in*

mix SEP *up* *confuse [someone/something] with [someone/something else]*

be mixed up *be confused*

be mixed up in _____ *be involved in*

Gradually mix in two cups of flour.

She's always mixing her granddaughters up.

The boss usually mixes up our names.

With all these options, I'm really mixed up.

He got mixed up in a scheme to defraud Medicare.

PRESENT

I mount we mount
 you mount you mount
 he/she/it mounts they mount
 • *The store mounts prints and photos.*

PAST

I mounted we mounted
 you mounted you mounted
 he/she/it mounted they mounted
 • *I never mounted a horse before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has mounted

PAST PERFECT ... had mounted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was mounted they were mounted

• *The attack was mounted at six in the morning.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mounting we are mounting
 you are mounting you are mounting
 he/she/it is mounting they are mounting
 • *Our debt is mounting day by day.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mounting we were mounting
 you were mounting you were mounting
 he/she/it was mounting they were mounting
 • *He was mounting the stairs two steps at a time.*

FUTURE ... will mount

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be mounting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have mounted

COMPLEMENTS

mount increase, rise

The excitement is mounting.
 The noise in the stadium was mounting to a fever pitch.
 Our anxiety mounted as the minutes passed.
 The company's debts had been mounting for months.

mount _____ climb up/onto

OBJECT

We mounted **our bicycles** and rode off.
 Someone was mounting **the steps** to the front door.
 The conductor mounted **the podium**.

mount _____ undertake

OBJECT

They are going to mount **a new ad campaign**.
 Senator Blather mounted **a spirited defense of his record**.
 The unhappy parents mounted **an attack on the school board**.

mount _____ place/install

OBJECT

We mounted **a new light fixture** in the dining room.
 They mounted **the garbage disposal** under the sink.
 In the old Volkswagens, the engine was mounted in the rear.

PASSIVE

mount _____ arrange/fix [in a support/frame]

OBJECT

We mounted **the pictures** in simple black frames.
 The jeweler mounted **four diamonds** in a gold setting.
 The technician mounted **the slides for the biology lecture**.
 Her exhibit had been beautifully mounted.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

mount up get on a horse

Once the horses are saddled,
 we'll mount up.

PRESENT

I move we move
 you move you move
 he/she/it moves they move
 • *The new plan moves the deadline back.*

PAST

I moved we moved
 you moved you moved
 he/she/it moved they moved
 • *They moved my desk again.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has moved

PAST PERFECT ... had moved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am moving we are moving
 you are moving you are moving
 he/she/it is moving they are moving
 • *They are moving to Dallas next week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was moving we were moving
 you were moving you were moving
 he/she/it was moving they were moving
 • *I was moving as fast as I could.*

FUTURE ... will move

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be moving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have moved

PAST PASSIVE

I was moved we were moved
 you were moved you were moved
 he/she/it was moved they were moved
 • *The audience was quite moved by her performance.*

COMPLEMENTS

move *change position*

They are taking your picture, so don't move.
 The policeman raised his gun and yelled, "Don't move!"
 The car is moving, and there's no driver in it!

move *change one's residence*

My family moved from Santa Monica in 1955.

move *take action*

The board decided to move quickly.

move *make progress*

The film moves slowly in the beginning.

move *be sold*

The new iPods are moving like crazy.
 Those handbags are not moving at all.

move _____ *go*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Move **closer** so you can hear the speaker.
 Everyone's eyes moved **toward the person who just entered**.
 I moved **out of the hot sun**.
 Can we move **to a new topic**?

move _____ *cause to go, place*

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

Susanna moved **the refrigerator** by herself.
 We moved **the couch under the window**.
 The nurse moved **the patient out of the emergency room**.
 The boss moved **me into a new job**.
 We moved **our checking account to a new bank**.
 The refugees were moved **to a different camp**.

PASSIVE

move _____ *sell*

OBJECT

We are finally beginning to move **the condos**.
 They can't move **those cars** without big discounts.

move _____ *affect emotionally*

OBJECT

Her performance totally moved **the audience**.
 The story moved **all of us**.

PASSIVE

move _____ *cause, provide a reason for*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We were deeply moved by what happened.

His story moved **the jury to acquit him**.
 The accident moved **us to reconsider what we were doing**.
 Nothing could move **him to change his mind**.



move _____ formally propose

for OBJECT

INFINITIVE

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The defense attorney moved **for dismissal of all charges**.
I moved **to adjourn the meeting until tomorrow afternoon**.

Mr. Chairman, I move **that the motion be tabled**.
I move **that we accept the company's offer**.
He moved **that the amendment be adopted**.

PHRASAL VERBS

move away/back/off/etc. go in a specified direction

move in go closer

move in/out change one's residence

The cop ordered us to move back.
The deer moved off in the opposite direction.

The students moved in for a closer look.

When will the new neighbors move in?

Roger and Denise moved in last summer, then moved out in April.

The FBI is moving in on the leader of the drug cartel.

To save expenses, I moved in with my sister.

move in on _____ get closer to

move in with _____ take up residence with [someone]

move into _____ advance to

move _____ on cause to go away

move on (to _____) change (to [a different activity/subject])

The Grizzlies moved into first place with a win last night.

The police moved the crowd on.

Congress should move on to more important issues.

move over shift one's position slightly

move up become successful

move up _____ advance in/on

move up to _____ get [something] better

Would you move over? I need more room.

Our son is moving up in the corporate world.

Alison has been moving up the corporate ladder.

Our neighbors have moved up to a hybrid car.

EXPRESSIONS

move a mile a minute move extremely fast

The typist's fingers were moving a mile a minute.

move into full swing / into high gear reach the peak of activity

The hockey season has moved into full swing.
The global warming debate has moved into high gear on Capitol Hill.

move it start going quickly

It's almost time for class—we'd better move it.

move _____ to tears cause to cry

The novel moved Jackie to tears.

move up in the world become successful

Look at Jonathan's fancy new car. He's really moved up in the world.

moved emotionally affected

We were moved by the president's kind gesture.

moving causing strong emotions

I loved the moving scene in which the boy was reunited with his parents.

PRESENT

I name we name
 you name you name
 he/she/it names they name
 • *A good reporter never names his sources.*

PAST

I named we named
 you named you named
 he/she/it named they named
 • *We named our dog Scotty.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has named

PAST PERFECT ... had named

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am naming we are naming
 you are naming you are naming
 he/she/it is naming they are naming
 • *Nobody is naming the ones responsible.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was naming we were naming
 you were naming you were naming
 he/she/it was naming they were naming
 • *They were naming students to the school council.*

FUTURE ... will name

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be naming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have named

PAST PASSIVE

I was named we were named
 you were named you were named
 he/she/it was named they were named
 • *She was just named to a cabinet position.*

COMPLEMENTS

name _____ give a name to
 OBJECT (+ PREDICATE NOUN)

PASSIVE

Have you named **your yacht** yet?
 They will name **their first daughter Harriet**.
 President Washington named **the first major ship the USS Constitution**.

The atoll was named **Midway** because it was halfway between North America and Asia.
 I was named **Walter** after my grandfather.

name _____ appoint, choose
 OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The president named **her ambassador to India**.
 We named **them acting chairs**.
 He was named **student athlete of the year**.
 The court will name **him to oversee the election**.
 The committee named **me to fill the vacant position**.
 We were named **to administer the contract**.

name _____ give the name of, identify
 OBJECT

Can you name **all the presidents**?
 Name **three foods that are rich in vitamins**.

name _____ set, fix
 OBJECT

Have they named **a date for the grand opening**?

EXPRESSIONS

name names identify people involved in something

The witness in the fraud case threatened to name names.

name [one's] price indicate how much one wants to buy/sell something for

The car dealer's lot is full, so you can name your price. No reasonable offer will be refused.

Everyone wants the new GPS—the manufacturer can name his price.

PRESENT

I need we need
 you need you need
 he/she/it needs they need

• *He needs help right away.*

PAST

I needed we needed
 you needed you needed
 he/she/it needed they needed

• *The company needed more office space.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has needed

PAST PERFECT ... had needed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Need is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Need is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will need

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have needed

PAST PASSIVE

I was needed we were needed
 you were needed you were needed
 he/she/it was needed they were needed

• *The rain was desperately needed.*

COMPLEMENTS

need _____ require

OBJECT

Man, I need **a break** now.

The engine needs **a quart of oil**.

I don't need **any more problems** right now.

Reinforcements are needed right away.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I need **a dictionary (to be) handy** when I'm reading English novels.

Grandpa needs **the type (to be) large and bold**.

I need **you to do something for me**.

We need **a truck to haul all the trash away**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

An editor will be needed **to write the final version**.

I need **something done** right away.

Kyle needs **his cut cleaned and bandaged**.

We need **the newspapers taken to the recycling center**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

My car really needs **washing**.

He needs **convincing to do the right thing**.

The knives need **sharpening**.

need _____ must, should

INFINITIVE

My car really needs **to be washed**.

I need **to get something to eat**.

Everybody needs **to slow down a little**.

This letter needs **to be sent special delivery**.

need _____ back/in/out/etc. require
 to be in a specified position

The library needs the books back
 in two weeks.

I need the splinter out before I can continue.

PHRASAL VERBS

PRESENT

I note we note
 you note you note
 he/she/it notes they note
 • *She always notes customer preferences.*

PAST

I noted we noted
 you noted you noted
 he/she/it noted they noted
 • *We noted the problem you mentioned.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has noted

PAST PERFECT ... had noted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am noting we are noting
 you are noting you are noting
 he/she/it is noting they are noting
 • *I am noting it now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was noting we were noting
 you were noting you were noting
 he/she/it was noting they were noting
 • *We were noting all the discrepancies.*

FUTURE ... will note

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be noting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have noted

PAST PASSIVE

I was noted we were noted
 you were noted you were noted
 he/she/it was noted they were noted
 • *Your complaint was noted by the secretary.*

COMPLEMENTS

note _____ notice, observe

OBJECT

The detective noted **the bloodstain on the rug.**
 I note **a sense of despair in your voice.**

PASSIVE

Details of Paul's odd behavior were noted by his fellow students.

THAT-CLAUSE

Did you note **that most of the new jobs pay better than average wages?**
 The guard immediately noted **that something was wrong.**

WH-CLAUSE

Did you note **who was invited to the meeting?**
 "The world will little note, nor long remember, **what we say here.**"
 [LINCOLN'S GETTYSBURG ADDRESS]

I noted **how much more they were charging.**

note _____ make a record of

OBJECT

The secretary will note **all motions.**

Please note **all students who are absent.**

Please note **the date and time** on your reports.

PASSIVE

The reporter noted **the main points of the news conference.**

All the extra costs must be noted and reported.

WH-CLAUSE

The detective carefully noted **what the witnesses said.**

PASSIVE

Who enters the building is always noted by the guards.

note _____ mention

OBJECT

The library committee chair noted **the large number of overdue books.**

In his speech, the president noted **the upcoming summit.**

THAT-CLAUSE

The mayor noted **that the flags were at half-mast.**

The principal noted **that school uniforms will be worn at all times.**

DIRECT QUOTATION

"**The company is financially sound,**" the accountant noted.

The store manager noted in passing, "**We served our millionth customer yesterday.**"

PRESENT

I notice we notice
 you notice you notice
 he/she/it notices they notice
 • *The guard notices everything.*

PAST

I noticed we noticed
 you noticed you noticed
 he/she/it noticed they noticed
 • *I noticed that the Internet was really slow.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has noticed

PAST PERFECT ... had noticed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am noticing we are noticing
 you are noticing you are noticing
 he/she/it is noticing they are noticing
 • *We are noticing more squirrels in the yard.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was noticing we were noticing
 you were noticing you were noticing
 he/she/it was noticing they were noticing
 • *I was just noticing your new suit.*

FUTURE ... will notice

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be noticing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have noticed

PAST PASSIVE

I was noticed we were noticed
 you were noticed you were noticed
 he/she/it was noticed they were noticed
 • *Fortunately, my mistake was never noticed.*

COMPLEMENTS

notice pay attention

Who would ever notice?
 He was too busy to notice.
 Men never notice!

notice _____ observe, become aware of

OBJECT

Everyone noticed **her new coat**.

PASSIVE

I noticed **an odd flickering on my computer screen**.

Anne's performance was eventually noticed by the CEO.

She was first noticed in a small off-Broadway play.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I noticed **a car turning into our driveway**.Did you notice **him doing anything unusual?**

PASSIVE

The suspect was noticed **hanging around the store earlier**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I noticed **that the animals were not in their pens**.He noticed **that the road would be closed next week**.The doctor noticed **that my right knee was swollen**.

WH-CLAUSE

Did you notice **what time the airport shuttle comes?**I noticed **how slippery the roads were getting**.I didn't notice **how late it was getting**.

PRESENT

I observe we observe
 you observe you observe
 he/she/it observes they observe
 • *The school observes all major holidays.*

PAST

I observed we observed
 you observed you observed
 he/she/it observed they observed
 • *I have observed some problems.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has observed

PAST PERFECT ... had observed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am observing we are observing
 you are observing you are observing
 he/she/it is observing they are observing
 • *Scientists are observing animal behavior in the wild.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was observing we were observing
 you were observing you were observing
 he/she/it was observing they were observing
 • *The entire country was observing a minute of silence.*

FUTURE ... will observe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be observing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have observed

PAST PASSIVE

I was observed we were observed
 you were observed you were observed
 he/she/it was observed they were observed
 • *The accident was observed by dozens of witnesses.*

COMPLEMENTS

observe *engage in watching*
 (as opposed to participating in)

The staff can only observe.
 Their job is to observe.
 Will they let us observe?

observe _____ *pay careful attention to*
 OBJECT

The class observed **the debate** with interest.
 The engineers observed **the re-creation of the accident**
 in slow motion.
 The experimental procedure was observed by the entire staff.

PASSIVE

observe _____ *notice, watch*
 OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

I did not observe **him actually do it**.
 Did you observe **anyone leave the room?**
 I observed **my friends turn green with envy**.
 I observed **him pacing back and forth in his office**.
 We observed **the fishermen getting the nets ready**.
 He was observed **leaving the scene of the crime**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

PASSIVE

observe _____ *follow, be guided by*
 OBJECT

If the players don't observe **the rules**, they will be disqualified.
 Does your class observe **the custom of exchanging valentines**
on February 14?

observe _____ *celebrate, commemorate*
 OBJECT

The United States observes **Independence Day** on July 4.
 We observed **a moment of silence in honor of the earthquake**
victims.
 Christmas is observed on December 25.

PASSIVE

observe _____ *comment, remark*
 THAT-CLAUSE

The spokesperson observed **that the Senate is considering**
a bill to reduce the speed limit.

DIRECT QUOTATION

"A single man in possession of a good fortune," Jane Austen
 observed, **"must be in want of a wife."**

PRESENT

I obtain we obtain
 you obtain you obtain
 he/she/it obtains they obtain
 • *Commodity prices obtain everywhere.*

PAST

I obtained we obtained
 you obtained you obtained
 he/she/it obtained they obtained
 • *He obtained a law degree recently.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has obtained**PAST PERFECT** ... had obtained**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was obtained they were obtained
 • *All of our paintings were obtained legally.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am obtaining we are obtaining
 you are obtaining you are obtaining
 he/she/it is obtaining they are obtaining
 • *He is obtaining some euros for our vacation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was obtaining we were obtaining
 you were obtaining you were obtaining
 he/she/it was obtaining they were obtaining
 • *They were obtaining as much land as they could.*

FUTURE ... will obtain**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be obtaining**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have obtained**COMPLEMENTS****obtain** _____ *get, acquire*

OBJECT

It is difficult to obtain **a classic MG in good condition.**They finally obtained **U.S. citizenship.**You must obtain **all components** from local suppliers.

PASSIVE

An export license was obtained.

WH-CLAUSE

Very few of us obtain **what we really wish for.**He never obtained **whatever he was looking for.**You can only obtain **however many trucks the dealership is authorized to sell you.****obtain** _____ *be in force/use*

ADVERB OF TIME

This price will obtain **for the next few days.**The exchange rate obtains **until the central bank changes it.**The law obtains **until Congress changes it.**

ADVERB OF PLACE

The same price obtains **everywhere in the world.**Standard pricing obtains **at all of our dealerships.**The laws on torture obtain **everywhere.**

PRESENT

— —
 — —
 it occurs they occur
 • *The solstice occurs on June 20 or 21.*

PAST

— —
 — —
 it occurred they occurred
 • *The same thought occurred to all of us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has occurred

PAST PERFECT ... had occurred

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it is occurring they are occurring
 • *Attacks are occurring as we speak.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was occurring they were occurring
 • *The epidemic was occurring everywhere.*

FUTURE ... will occur

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be occurring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have occurred

PAST PASSIVE

Occur is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

occur *happen, take place*

Bad things occur all the time.
 Accidents occur when you least expect them.
 A solar eclipse occurs when the moon passes between the sun and the earth.
 When did the meeting occur?
 Where did the assault occur?

occur *exist, be found*

A certain level of radiation occurs everywhere.
 Corruption occurs in every secretive organization.
 Flooding always occurs during the spring runoff.

occur _____ *come into [someone's] mind*
 to OBJECT

A solution just occurred **to Johanna**.
 This just occurred **to me**: Why not plug the router directly into the cable modem?
 A drawback to the plan just occurred **to the attorney**.

it + occur + to OBJECT + INFINITIVE

It never occurred **to her to register to vote**.
 It didn't occur **to us to postpone the trip**.
 Did it ever occur **to you to try to find a job**?

it + occur + to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

It occurred **to me that I was running quite late**.
 It soon occurred **to everyone that we were completely wrong**.
 It has occurred **to us that we owe you an apology**.

PRESENT

I offer we offer
 you offer you offer
 he/she/it offers they offer
 • *The idea offers us a great opportunity.*

PAST

I offered we offered
 you offered you offered
 he/she/it offered they offered
 • *I offered the job to Pat.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has offered

PAST PERFECT ... had offered

PAST PASSIVE

I was offered we were offered
 you were offered you were offered
 he/she/it was offered they were offered
 • *I was offered a small raise.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am offering we are offering
 you are offering you are offering
 he/she/it is offering they are offering
 • *I am offering a reward for finding my dog.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was offering we were offering
 you were offering you were offering
 he/she/it was offering they were offering
 • *They were only offering the minimum wage.*

FUTURE ... will offer

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be offering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have offered

COMPLEMENTS

offer _____ express, suggest

OBJECT

May I offer **a comment or two**?
 Matthew offered **two proposals** at the last meeting.
 Senator Blather offered **his reasons for voting against the bill**.

offer _____ present for [someone] to accept or refuse

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

They offered **us an interesting proposition**.
 The director offered **Tom some useful advice**.
 The guide offered **the tourists a special deal**.
 Lucy offered **Charlie Brown psychiatric help** for five cents.
 Charlie Brown offered **Lucy five cents** for psychiatric help.
 They offered **an interesting proposition to us**.
 The director offered **some useful advice to Tom**.
 The guide offered **a special deal to the tourists**.

TO PARAPHRASE

offer _____ present, hand

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The waiter offered **each of us menus**.
 He offered **me his business card**.
 Everyone offered **the couple their congratulations**.
 The waiter offered **menus to each of us**.
 He offered **his business card to me**.
 Everyone offered **their congratulations to the couple**.

TO PARAPHRASE

offer _____ indicate that one is willing

INFINITIVE

He offered **to drive us to the airport**.
 They are offering **to buy the bonds at par**.
 We offered **to replace the broken coffee pot**.

offer _____ provide

OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)

The job offers **an excellent health plan**.
 The road offers **easy access back to the freeway**.
 The city offers **many cultural opportunities to residents and tourists**.
 Their team will not offer **much resistance to the new rules**.

PRESENT

I open we open
 you open you open
 he/she/it opens they open
 • *The office opens at 9 o'clock.*

PAST

I opened we opened
 you opened you opened
 he/she/it opened they opened
 • *They opened all the windows upstairs.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has opened

PAST PERFECT ... had opened

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am opening we are opening
 you are opening you are opening
 he/she/it is opening they are opening
 • *I am opening a new office in Cheyenne.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was opening we were opening
 you were opening you were opening
 he/she/it was opening they were opening
 • *The kids were opening their presents.*

FUTURE ... will open

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be opening

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have opened

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was opened they were opened
 • *The bids were opened last Monday at noon.*

COMPLEMENTS

open *become open*

His eyes slowly opened.
 His mouth opened in astonishment.
 The door suddenly opened, and in walked my mother-in-law.
 The windows in the living room won't open.
 The lilies opened in the warm summer sun.

open *start operating*

The stores open at 10 o'clock.
 New businesses are opening at the shopping mall.

open *begin*

The opera opens with a rousing chorus of happy peasants.
 You must have a pair of jacks or better to open.

open *become free of obstruction*

The tangle of trees and bushes abruptly opened in front of us.

open _____ *cause to become open*

OBJECT

I opened **the doors to the patio**.
 The waiter opened **another bottle of wine**.
 She opened **the drawer** and took out a notebook.
 He opened **his mouth**, but said nothing.
 The book was opened to the last chapter.

PASSIVE

open _____ *start the operation of*

OBJECT

He plans to open **a coffee shop**.
 They're opening **an auto parts store** on Lebanon Avenue.
 The new bridge will be opened in January.

PASSIVE

open _____ *begin*

OBJECT

Beethoven's third piano concerto will open **the concert**.

open _____ *establish*

OBJECT

I need to open **a checking account**.

open _____ *begin to use [a file/program]* [COMPUTERS]

OBJECT

He opened **the spreadsheet** and began to enter data.
 I opened **Photoshop** to resize some photographs.

open _____ *lead*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

This door opens **onto a sun porch**.

PRESENT

I operate we operate
 you operate you operate
 he/she/it operates they operate
 • *The firm operates foreign subsidiaries.*

PAST

I operated we operated
 you operated you operated
 he/she/it operated they operated
 • *I never operated a forklift before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has operated

PAST PERFECT ... had operated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am operating we are operating
 you are operating you are operating
 he/she/it is operating they are operating
 • *The company is operating at a loss.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was operating we were operating
 you were operating you were operating
 he/she/it was operating they were operating
 • *The surgeon was operating with a robotic device.*

FUTURE

... will operate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be operating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have operated

PAST PASSIVE

I was operated we were operated
 you were operated you were operated
 he/she/it was operated they were operated
 • *The controls were operated electronically.*

COMPLEMENTS

operate *function, work*

The elevator only operates during business hours.
 The motor operates at variable speeds.
 The sleeping pill operated very quickly.
 His network of spies has operated for years.
 Gangs have always operated on the fringes of society.
 The Seventh Fleet operates in the western Pacific.
 Gretchen was operating on four hours of sleep.

operate *perform surgery*

When will they operate?
 They couldn't operate because he still had a high temperature.
 The surgeon will operate as soon as she can.

operate *exert influence*

A lot of factors are operating here.
 Political influences always operate in making major decisions.

operate _____ *run, control the functioning of*

OBJECT

My father operated **a drill press** for 20 years.

PASSIVE

The device is operated by remote control.

operate _____ *direct, manage*

OBJECT

They operate **a small jewelry supply business**.
 Nobody can operate **a company** without accurate financial information.

operate _____ *perform surgery*

on OBJECT

They will operate **on Douglas** tomorrow.
 We have to operate **on his left wrist** as soon as possible.
 Gail was operated on for appendicitis.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I oppose we oppose
 you oppose you oppose
 he/she/it opposes they oppose
 • *The committee opposes the referendum.*

PAST

I opposed we opposed
 you opposed you opposed
 he/she/it opposed they opposed
 • *I always opposed relocating the firm.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has opposed

PAST PERFECT ... had opposed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am opposing we are opposing
 you are opposing you are opposing
 he/she/it is opposing they are opposing
 • *I am opposing the bill on general principle.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was opposing we were opposing
 you were opposing you were opposing
 he/she/it was opposing they were opposing
 • *He was opposing the proposal because of its cost.*

FUTURE ... will oppose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be opposing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have opposed

PAST PASSIVE

I was opposed we were opposed
 you were opposed you were opposed
 he/she/it was opposed they were opposed
 • *The plan was opposed by nearly everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

oppose _____ *be/argue against, disagree with*

OBJECT

Republicans generally oppose **any kind of tax increase**.
 The board will strongly oppose **the merger**.
 Lincoln opposed **slavery** from the beginning.

PASSIVE

The initiative was opposed by environmentalists.

WH-CLAUSE

I really opposed **what they were recommending**.
 They will oppose **whoever is nominated**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They have consistently opposed **whatever we have tried to do**.
 I opposed **postponing the decision indefinitely**.
 He opposed **spending so much money on landscaping**.
 He never opposed **our going to France this year**.

oppose _____ *fight, act against*

OBJECT

Overwhelming forces opposed **the fleet**.
 Napoleon's 72,000 soldiers opposed **Wellington's army of 67,000**
 at Waterloo.

PASSIVE

The senator was opposed by a respected ex-governor.
 The mob was opposed by a handful of poorly trained soldiers.

PRESENT

I order we order
 you order you order
 he/she/it orders they order
 • *He always orders red wine with fish.*

PAST

I ordered we ordered
 you ordered you ordered
 he/she/it ordered they ordered
 • *I ordered the replacement parts.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ordered

PAST PERFECT ... had ordered

PAST PASSIVE

I was ordered we were ordered
 you were ordered you were ordered
 he/she/it was ordered they were ordered
 • *The soldiers were ordered to return to camp.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ordering we are ordering
 you are ordering you are ordering
 he/she/it is ordering they are ordering
 • *I am ordering you to do it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ordering we were ordering
 you were ordering you were ordering
 he/she/it was ordering they were ordering
 • *He was ordering takeout.*

FUTURE ... will order

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ordering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ordered

COMPLEMENTS

order request service

Are you ready to order?

We should order as soon as we can.

order _____ command

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The teacher ordered **the class to be silent.**The captain ordered **the troops to hold their fire.**

PASSIVE

I was ordered **to report on Tuesday.**

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

The officer ordered **the rioters arrested.**The king ordered **the duke placed in irons.**

PASSIVE

The fleet was ordered **held in readiness.**

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The judge ordered **that the defendant be released.**The dean ordered **that the students be expelled.**

order _____ request [food, merchandise]

OBJECT

Peter ordered **a martini**, and I ordered **a glass of wine.**We have to order **more copier paper** today.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I ordered **you a tuna sandwich.**Peggy ordered **her husband a new jacket** online.

for PARAPHRASE

I ordered **a tuna sandwich for you.**Peggy ordered **a new jacket for her husband** online.

order _____ officially direct to be done

OBJECT

The sergeant ordered **an inspection of the barracks.**The doctor ordered **a whole battery of tests.**

PASSIVE

A new hearing was ordered by the judge.

order _____ arrange, organize

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

He always orders **his books alphabetically.**Some kids like to order **their toys in neat rows.**

PASSIVE

The letters were ordered **in careful piles on his desk.**

PHRASAL VERBS

order SEP away/back/in/off/out/over/up/etc. command to go in a specified direction

The guard ordered the student out.

The general ordered up reinforcements.

order (SEP) in/out request [food] to be delivered to one

Let's order in Chinese and watch a movie.

I'm tired of cooking; let's order out.

PRESENT

I organize we organize
you organize you organize
he/she/it organizes they organize
• *He always organizes the kids' games.*

PAST

I organized we organized
you organized you organized
he/she/it organized they organized
• *I organized the data into a chart.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has organized

PAST PERFECT ... had organized

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am organizing we are organizing
you are organizing you are organizing
he/she/it is organizing they are organizing
• *I am organizing a fund-raising drive.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was organizing we were organizing
you were organizing you were organizing
he/she/it was organizing they were organizing
• *They were organizing transportation for the visitors.*

FUTURE ... will organize

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be organizing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have organized

PAST PASSIVE

I was organized we were organized
you were organized you were organized
he/she/it was organized they were organized
• *The strike was organized by an ad-hoc committee.*

COMPLEMENTS

organize *form a group*

We have to organize.
The workers are organizing.
They will never organize by themselves.

organize _____ *arrange into groups*

OBJECT

Grains of sand and silt naturally organize **themselves** by size.
For gym, we organize **the children** by age and sex.
I have to organize **my workspace** better.
The memos were organized by topic.

PASSIVE

organize _____ *make part of a group*

OBJECT

They organized **the farm workers in the Southwest**.
He will help organize **the voters in the fifth district**.

organize _____ *form, start, arrange*

OBJECT

Richard organized **a Latin club** for interested students.
I am organizing **a garden party** for my church.
We organized **Earth Day events** at local schools.
Rachel organized **an impromptu group** to perform the song.
We need to organize **a rapid response team**.
Jane helped organize **the fortieth class reunion**.
The strike was organized by the union.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I overcome we overcome
 you overcome you overcome
 he/she/it overcomes they overcome
 • *He always overcomes his problems.*

PAST

I overcame we overcame
 you overcame you overcame
 he/she/it overcame they overcame
 • *She always overcame obstacles.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has overcome

PAST PERFECT ... had overcome

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am overcoming we are overcoming
 you are overcoming you are overcoming
 he/she/it is overcoming they are overcoming
 • *He is overcoming a serious injury.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was overcoming we were overcoming
 you were overcoming you were overcoming
 he/she/it was overcoming they were overcoming
 • *They were gradually overcoming their opposition.*

FUTURE ... will overcome

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be overcoming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have overcome

PAST PASSIVE

I was overcome we were overcome
 you were overcome you were overcome
 he/she/it was overcome they were overcome
 • *He was overcome with emotion.*

COMPLEMENTS

overcome prevail, fight and win

“We shall overcome.” [GOSPEL SONG]
 They have finally overcome.

overcome be strongly affected
 [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

They were overcome with emotion.
 The children were overcome with excitement.
 Mr. Darcy was overcome by Elizabeth’s goodness.
 Three firemen were overcome by smoke.

overcome _____ prevail over, defeat, get control of

OBJECT

The prisoners overcame **their guards**.
 He overcame **all of his personal problems**.
 She overcame **her addiction to cigarette smoking**.
 The revised proposal overcame **the board’s initial resistance**.
 Mr. Knightley eventually overcomes **his concerns about Emma’s foolishness**.

PASSIVE

The guards were overcome by the prisoners.

PRESENT

I owe we owe
 you owe you owe
 he/she/it owes they owe

• *He owes a lot of money.*

PAST

I owed we owed
 you owed you owed
 he/she/it owed they owed

• *I never owed anything to anybody.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has owed

PAST PERFECT ... had owed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Owe is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Owe is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will owe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have owed

PAST PASSIVE

I was owed we were owed
 you were owed you were owed
 he/she/it was owed they were owed

• *We were owed a small fortune.*

COMPLEMENTS

owe _____ be in debt for

OBJECT

He owes **a lot of money**.
 The company owes **millions of dollars**.
 He owes **a week's work**.

owe _____ be in debt to

OBJECT

You owe **me!**
 He owes **everybody in town**.
 Thanks for your help. I really owe **you**.

owe _____ be obligated to pay/repay

OBJECT

The couple owes **\$6,000** in student loans.
 She owes **\$13,000** on her new car.
 Did you owe **any income tax** last year?
 We owe **the bank \$200,000**.
 We owe **\$200,000 to the bank**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

owe _____ be indebted to [someone] for [something]

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

I owe **you my life**.
 I owe **my life to you**.

owe _____ need to [do/give]

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

You owe **Uncle Joe a letter**.
 I owe **you an explanation**.
 You owe **a letter to Uncle Joe**.
 I owe **an explanation to you**.

it + to OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We owe it **to returning veterans to be sure they have jobs**.
 You owe it **to yourself to take a vacation**.

EXPRESSIONS

owe [someone] a debt of gratitude
 feel the need to thank [someone]

owing to _____ because of

For all the hard work you have done,
 the school owes you a debt of gratitude.

Owing to the recent flooding, the ferry is not operating.

PRESENT

I own we own
 you own you own
 he/she/it owns they own
 • *He owns the only hotel in town.*

PAST

I owned we owned
 you owned you owned
 he/she/it owned they owned
 • *I owned several businesses in the 1990s.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has owned**PAST PERFECT** ... had owned**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE***Own* is never used in the progressive tenses.**PAST PROGRESSIVE***Own* is never used in the progressive tenses.**FUTURE**

... will own

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have owned

PAST PASSIVE

I was owned we were owned
 you were owned you were owned
 he/she/it was owned they were owned
 • *The gun was owned by a man from Denver.*

COMPLEMENTS**own** _____ possess, hold as property

OBJECT

I own **my house** outright.Our family owns **a condo in Hawaii**.Claude and Maude own and operate **a pizza chain in town**.Zelda owns **a beautiful smile**.

The land is owned by a corporation.

PASSIVE

own _____ control

OBJECT

He is a powerful man who owns **the state legislature**.Their offense owns **the opposing team's defense**.**own** _____ take responsibility for

OBJECT

An honest man owns **his own mistakes**.**own** _____ acknowledge

THAT-CLAUSE

He owns **that he was responsible for the mistake**.They never owned **that they were in control behind the scenes**.I owned **that I was deeply in debt**.**PHRASAL VERBS****own up to** _____ admit, confess

The neighbor boy owned up to the vandalism.

The suspect eventually owned up to the robbery.

Marvin owned up to sneaking off to the football game.

Steve owned up to having eaten the last piece of cake.

PRESENT

I pack we pack
 you pack you pack
 he/she/it packs they pack
 • *My daughter packs her own suitcase.*

PAST

I packed we packed
 you packed you packed
 he/she/it packed they packed
 • *I packed last night for the trip.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has packed

PAST PERFECT ... had packed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am packing we are packing
 you are packing you are packing
 he/she/it is packing they are packing
 • *I'm packing right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was packing we were packing
 you were packing you were packing
 he/she/it was packing they were packing
 • *We were packing everything into boxes.*

FUTURE ... will pack

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be packing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have packed

PAST PASSIVE

I was packed we were packed
 you were packed you were packed
 he/she/it was packed they were packed
 • *The boxes were all packed for shipping.*

COMPLEMENTS

pack put items in containers [boxes, luggage]

pack _____ fill [a container]

OBJECT

PASSIVE

pack _____ put into a container for transport/storage

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

pack _____ crowd, fill to/beyond capacity

OBJECT

PASSIVE

pack _____ put [a large number of people] into [a place]

OBJECT + into OBJECT

PASSIVE

pack _____ be able to be put [somewhere] for transport

ADVERB OF PLACE

pack _____ stuff, fill

OBJECT + with OBJECT

PASSIVE

We should pack as soon as possible.

I will be packing all week.

I quickly packed **my bags** and checked out.

We packed **the boxes** full of gifts.

The cartons were packed at the warehouse.

Did you pack **your walking shoes**?

I forgot to pack **my toothpaste**.

Apparently the brochures were never packed.

We packed **our camping equipment** *into the truck*.

The squirrels packed **nuts** *in their cheeks*.

Job applicants packed **the hallways**.

The nightclub was packed with hundreds of people.

Organizers packed **2,700 people** *into Symphony Hall*.

The passengers were packed *into three subway cars*.

The tent packs **into a little cube**.

The equipment packed **into a small trailer**.

The doctor packed **the wound** *with cotton*.

The medicine container was packed *with dry ice*.

PHRASAL VERBS

pack SEP away store

pack SEP down compress, make compact

pack SEP in crowd, push in

pack up fill one's luggage

pack SEP up gather [items] for transport

Gene and Louise packed away the baby clothes.

Traffic packed the snow down on the streets.

The promoters packed people in as tightly as possible.

We need to pack up tonight for our early-morning flight.

Be sure to pack up all your tools before leaving.

PRESENT

I paint we paint
 you paint you paint
 he/she/it paints they paint
 • *He paints large landscapes.*

PAST

I painted we painted
 you painted you painted
 he/she/it painted they painted
 • *We painted the entire second floor.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has painted

PAST PERFECT ... had painted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am painting we are painting
 you are painting you are painting
 he/she/it is painting they are painting
 • *I am painting the walls green.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was painting we were painting
 you were painting you were painting
 he/she/it was painting they were painting
 • *We were painting with an oil-based enamel.*

FUTURE ... will paint

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be painting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have painted

PAST PASSIVE

I was painted we were painted
 you were painted you were painted
 he/she/it was painted they were painted
 • *The portrait was painted in 1860.*

COMPLEMENTS

paint engage in painting

I try to paint as often as I can.
 They will be painting all afternoon.

paint _____ cover [a surface/area] with paint

OBJECT

We need to paint **the kitchen walls**.
 Our neighbors will paint **their house** this summer.
 The deck has never been painted.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I painted **our bedroom a light tan**.
 You should paint **the exterior gray**.

PASSIVE

paint _____ make a picture of with paint

OBJECT

The porch ceiling was painted **sky blue**.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Gilbert Stuart painted **George Washington** many times.
 Linda painted **clouds and airplanes** on Tim's bedroom walls.
 His ancestors were painted by Thomas Gainsborough.

for PARAPHRASE

He painted **us a family portrait**.
 She painted **them a picture of their old farm**.
 He painted **a family portrait for us**.
 She painted **a picture of their old farm for them**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He painted **her laughing in the sunlight**.
 She painted **the family working in the garden**.
 Gentlemen were painted **posing in front of their mansions**.

PASSIVE

paint _____ describe, usually in a colorful way

OBJECT + (as) PREDICATE NOUN

The article painted **him (as) a complete fool**.
 The newspaper painted **the administration (as) a disaster**.
 The candidate was painted **(as) a hopeless loser**.
 The article painted **the flat tax proposal as ludicrous**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

paint _____ apply makeup to

OBJECT

Mindy paints **her lips** with bright red lipstick.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

She paints **her nails bright purple**.

PHRASAL VERBS

paint SEP out/over cover with paint

She painted the dog out and replaced it with a cat.
 City workers will paint over the graffiti.

PRESENT

I park we park
 you park you park
 he/she/it parks they park
 • *He parks in a garage on Locust Street.*

PAST

I parked we parked
 you parked you parked
 he/she/it parked they parked
 • *We parked our car on the lawn.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has parked

PAST PERFECT ... had parked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am parking we are parking
 you are parking you are parking
 he/she/it is parking they are parking
 • *I am parking in their garage temporarily.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was parking we were parking
 you were parking you were parking
 he/she/it was parking they were parking
 • *The visitors were parking on the side streets.*

FUTURE

... will park

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be parking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have parked

PAST PASSIVE

I was parked we were parked
 you were parked you were parked
 he/she/it was parked they were parked
 • *Cars were parked everywhere.*

COMPLEMENTS

park engage in parking a vehicle

He is just parking now.
 I will park as soon as I can.
 Many drivers park in gear so the car won't roll.

park _____ stop [a vehicle] temporarily

OBJECT

We parked **the car** to listen to the end of the game.
 They parked **the truck** during the worst of the storm.
 Cars were parked along the interstate until the snowplow came through.

PASSIVE

park _____ leave a vehicle [in a certain place]

ADVERB OF PLACE

I always park **there**.
 You can't park **in a handicapped space**.
 He usually parks **in front of my house**.
 They will park **anywhere they can find a space**.

park _____ leave [a vehicle usually, in a certain place]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I parked **the car in a lot behind the office**.
 He always parks **his van on the street**.
 You can park **your luggage in the entryway**.
 Their car was parked **in the neighbor's driveway**.

PASSIVE

park _____ settle in [INFORMAL]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

They parked **themselves on my doorstep**.
 He parked **the kids with his mother** for the afternoon.
 Bob parked **himself in front of the TV** and watched the game.

PRESENT

I participate we participate
 you participate you participate
 he/she/it participates they participate
 • *He participates in all group activities.*

PAST

I participated we participated
 you participated you participated
 he/she/it participated they participated
 • *I never participated in organized sports.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has participated**PAST PERFECT** ... had participated**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am participating we are participating
 you are participating you are participating
 he/she/it is participating they are participating
 • *I am already participating in two events.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was participating we were participating
 you were participating you were participating
 he/she/it was participating they were participating
 • *They were participating in planning the retreat.*

FUTURE

... will participate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be participating**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have participated**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was participated they were participated

• *The parade was participated in by the entire community.***COMPLEMENTS****participate** take part in an event/activity

There's a conference on global warming
 in May, and I think our company should participate.
 The county fair is holding a photography contest,
 and grade-schoolers can participate.

participate _____ take part, be involved
in OBJECT

I couldn't participate **in the discussion**.
 Everyone should participate **in citizen referendums**.
 I participated **in most school activities**.

PASSIVE
in WH-CLAUSE

Elections may be participated in by every eligible voter.
 Participate **in what you find most helpful**.
 I couldn't participate **in what you recommended**.
 I participated **in whatever activities fit my schedule**.

in PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We will participate **in planning the conference**.
 I am participating **in locating the new office**.
 We all participated **in cleaning up the beach**.

PRESENT

I pass we pass
 you pass you pass
 he/she/it passes they pass
 • *Time passes slowly in the mountains.*

PAST

I passed we passed
 you passed you passed
 he/she/it passed they passed
 • *I passed my last exam.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has passed

PAST PERFECT ... had passed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am passing we are passing
 you are passing you are passing
 he/she/it is passing they are passing
 • *I am passing the message on to my boss.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was passing we were passing
 you were passing you were passing
 he/she/it was passing they were passing
 • *The rain shower was passing.*

FUTURE

... will pass

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be passing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have passed

PAST PASSIVE

I was passed we were passed
 you were passed you were passed
 he/she/it was passed they were passed
 • *The bill was passed by a narrow majority.*

COMPLEMENTS

pass go by, proceed

Slow down and let the truck pass.
 The day passed slowly.

pass happen, come to an end

The danger has passed.
 His moment of fame has already passed.

pass go past each other, cross

Our letters must have passed in the mail.
 The two ships passed in the night.
 We must have passed without seeing each other.

pass succeed in an examination/course

He finally passed.
 Do you think I will pass?

pass be officially approved

The bill passed without a dissenting vote.

pass change from one state to another

Water passes from a liquid to a gas at 100 degrees Celsius.

pass _____ go by, move past

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The steamboat passed **under the bridge** at 2 o'clock.
 We passed **through Springfield** on our way to Chicago.

OBJECT

He passed **every vehicle on the road**.
 Michelle passes **our house** on her way to school.
 Have we already passed **the post office**?

pass _____ succeed in [an examination/course]

OBJECT

All the recruits passed **their physicals**.
 I will pass **calculus** without a problem.

pass _____ approve officially

OBJECT

The committee passed **all the candidates**.
 The motion was passed by consensus.

PASSIVE

pass _____ transfer

OBJECT

Pass **the biscuits**, please.
 I passed **him the envelope**.
 Please pass **Mary the salad**.
 Wickenheiser passed **Pavese the puck**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I passed **the envelope to him**.
 Please pass **the salad to Mary**.
 Wickenheiser passed **the puck to Pavese**.

to PARAPHRASE



pass _____ *spend, occupy [time]*

OBJECT

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

pass _____ *use illegally as money*

OBJECT

Bill and Melinda passed **the day** in meetings.
What would you do to pass **the time on the plane**?
The family passed **the day working in the garden**.

They were able to pass **the counterfeit bills** easily.
Someone was passing **bad checks** at local businesses.

PHRASAL VERBS

pass SEP **back/down/in/over/under/etc.** *transfer in a specified direction*

Would you pass the butter back when you're finished?
We passed our homework in at the beginning of class.

pass SEP **along** *relay [information]*

Joanie always passes along the latest gossip.

pass SEP **along/on** *transfer [a price change]*

The store passed along the price increase to its customers.

pass SEP **around/out** *distribute*

Please pass the cookies around for me.

The students will pass out flyers at the rally.

pass **as/for** _____ *be mistakenly recognized as*

With his beard, he easily passes as an adult.
He could pass for a professional football player.
The magician is 55, but he could pass for 40.

pass **away/on** *die*

Great-aunt Amelia passed away at the age of 83.

pass SEP **by** *ignore*

The boss passed Lana by for promotion.
Sometimes I feel that life has passed me by.

pass SEP **down/on** *hand down, give to a younger family member*

Aunt Clara passed the rocking chair down to my sister.

pass _____ **off as** *succeed in presenting [oneself/something] as*

The nurse's aide passed herself off as a doctor.
He tried to pass the work off as his own.

pass _____ **off on** *sell as genuine to*

He passed the fake watch off on an unsuspecting passerby.

pass **on** _____ *skip, not accept*

Donald passed on the pie because he's diabetic.

pass **on to** _____ *move on to, change to*

The discussion group passed on to the issue of health care.

pass **out** *faint, fall asleep*

Doris passed out right in the middle of the sermon.

pass SEP **over/up** *skip, not choose*

John passed out after two beers.

pass SEP **up** *not accept*

The coach passed over Scotty and picked Lamar.

pass SEP **up** *go past without stopping*

I'll pass the main course up and go straight for dessert.

Don't pass up the chance to go to college.

We passed up three nice restaurants and ended up at this dump.

EXPRESSIONS

pass **judgment (on _____)** *express a strong opinion (about [someone/something])*

Don't pass judgment on the book until you've read it.

pass **over [someone's] head** *be too difficult for [someone] to understand*

I'm afraid his lecture on black holes passed over the audience's head.

pass **the buck** *give the responsibility for something to someone else*

They passed the buck from one bureaucrat to the next.

pass **the hat (around)** *seek donations*

The organizers passed the hat around after the concert.

pass **the time (of day)** *talk casually*

The old men passed the time of day on a bench in front of the general store.

PRESENT

I pay we pay
 you pay you pay
 he/she/it pays they pay
 • *The company pays pretty good wages.*

PAST

I paid we paid
 you paid you paid
 he/she/it paid they paid
 • *I already paid the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has paid

PAST PERFECT ... had paid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am paying we are paying
 you are paying you are paying
 he/she/it is paying they are paying
 • *I am paying for my own health insurance.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was paying we were paying
 you were paying you were paying
 he/she/it was paying they were paying
 • *They were paying him to mow the grass.*

FUTURE ... will pay

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be paying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have paid

PAST PASSIVE

I was paid we were paid
 you were paid you were paid
 he/she/it was paid they were paid
 • *They were paid \$200 for the job.*

COMPLEMENTS

pay give money for goods/services

The job pays pretty well.
 “Who’s going to pay?” “I’ll pay this time.”

pay be worthwhile

Crime doesn’t pay.

pay _____ give money to [for goods / services / settlement of a bill/debt]

OBJECT

I paid **the plumber** today.

OBJECT + for OBJECT

I paid **the cashier for the book.**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We will pay **the kids to clean out the basement.**

PASSIVE

The firm was paid **to run a call center for us.**

OBJECT + for PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We will pay **the kids for cleaning out the basement.**

PASSIVE

The firm was paid **for running a call center for us.**

pay _____ give money for [services / settlement of a bill/debt]

OBJECT

We have to pay **our car insurance** this month.

PASSIVE

Did you pay **the credit card bill?**

The dentist’s bill has already been paid.

pay _____ give [a certain amount of money] for goods/services

OBJECT

The job pays **\$30,000 a year.**

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

He pays **\$15 an hour.**

to PARAPHRASE

He pays **his employees a commission.**

Would you pay **me \$30** for this lamp?

He pays **a commission to his employees.**

pay _____ be worthwhile

it + pay + INFINITIVE

It pays **to be careful.**

It never pays **to be in a hurry.**

PHRASAL VERBS

pay SEP **back** return money borrowed from [someone]

Wimpy will gladly pay you back on Tuesday for a hamburger today.

pay SEP **even** get even with

We’ll pay them back for stealing our tickets.

pay off result in a profit/benefit

Working overtime has really paid off.

pay SEP **off** settle [a debt] by paying all that is owed

We hope to pay the car loan off in three years.

PRESENT

I perform we perform
 you perform you perform
 he/she/it performs they perform
 • *She performs in Los Angeles.*

PAST

I performed we performed
 you performed you performed
 he/she/it performed they performed
 • *I performed that operation once before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has performed

PAST PERFECT ... had performed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am performing we are performing
 you are performing you are performing
 he/she/it is performing they are performing
 • *I am performing a tricky balancing act.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was performing we were performing
 you were performing you were performing
 he/she/it was performing they were performing
 • *The company was performing below expectations.*

FUTURE

... will perform

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be performing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have performed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was performed they were performed
 • *The play was last performed in 1989.*

COMPLEMENTS

perform do / carry out an action/
 task/function

perform do, function [in terms of
 success/effectiveness]

perform _____ do, carry out

OBJECT

perform _____ entertain an audience by acting/singing/dancing/etc. in

OBJECT

PASSIVE

The violinist cannot perform because
 of a sprained wrist.

The candidates all performed well on the first interview.
 The band will perform again at ten.

None of my stocks is performing satisfactorily.
 How is your new hybrid car performing?

Jeanette has always performed **her job** well.
 The veterinarian performed **two surgeries** this afternoon.
 My brother performed **three wedding ceremonies** last year.
 She performed a **complicated experiment for the science fair**.

_____ acting/singing/dancing/etc. in

The kids' class is performing a **play that they wrote**.
 The cast of *Saturday Night Live* performs **its comedy sketches** before a live audience.

What roles have you performed?

Penn and Teller performed the "**Sawing a Woman in Half**" **illusion** on television.

At the 77th Academy Awards, Beyoncé performed **three songs nominated for Best Original Song**.

My boss performed a **little dance** when he heard the good news.

Shakespeare's *Henry VIII* is almost never performed.

PRESENT

I permit we permit
 you permit you permit
 he/she/it permits they permit
 • *He never permits parking on the lawn.*

PAST

I permitted we permitted
 you permitted you permitted
 he/she/it permitted they permitted
 • *We permitted them to watch TV tonight.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has permitted

PAST PERFECT ... had permitted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am permitting we are permitting
 you are permitting you are permitting
 he/she/it is permitting they are permitting
 • *The judge is permitting the trial to proceed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was permitting we were permitting
 you were permitting you were permitting
 he/she/it was permitting they were permitting
 • *They were permitting weekend rentals for a while.*

FUTURE ... will permit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be permitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have permitted

PAST PASSIVE

I was permitted we were permitted
 you were permitted you were permitted
 he/she/it was permitted they were permitted
 • *Smoking was permitted only in the parking lot.*

COMPLEMENTS

permit allow, make possible

We will eat outside if the weather permits.
 If time permits, I will take questions from the audience.
 We will sail back tomorrow if the winds permit.

permit _____ allow, give permission for

OBJECT

I will not permit **a failure on my watch**.
 The court cannot permit **such an injustice**.
 Such behavior is not permitted here.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I will permit **you to ask one more question**.
 The law permits **18-year-olds to vote**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

High school students are permitted **to enroll in university classes**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The school does not permit **freshmen living off campus**.
 The library does not permit **books being copied without permission**.

Her mother does not permit **Harriet staying out late**.

Oregon doesn't permit **pumping your own gas**.

We don't permit **eating in the living room**.

Hawaii does not permit **importing snakes or other reptiles**.

PHRASAL VERBS

permit _____ **in/out/through/up/etc.**
 allow to go in a specified direction /
 be in a specified position

The teacher permitted the boys in
 after recess.

The doctor permitted the patient up for half an hour.

PRESENT

I persuade we persuade
 you persuade you persuade
 he/she/it persuades they persuade
 • *He persuades us with excellent arguments.*

PAST

I persuaded we persuaded
 you persuaded you persuaded
 he/she/it persuaded they persuaded
 • *I persuaded him to go along with my joke.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has persuaded

PAST PERFECT ... had persuaded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am persuading we are persuading
 you are persuading you are persuading
 he/she/it is persuading they are persuading
 • *Donna is persuading all of us to become vegans.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was persuading we were persuading
 you were persuading you were persuading
 he/she/it was persuading they were persuading
 • *They were persuading her to give them more dessert.*

FUTURE ... will persuade

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be persuading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have persuaded

PAST PASSIVE

I was persuaded we were persuaded
 you were persuaded you were persuaded
 he/she/it was persuaded they were persuaded
 • *They were persuaded that it was a good investment.*

COMPLEMENTS

persuade _____ convince [to do]

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The players persuaded **the coach to cut practice short**.
 The report persuaded **a lot of people to sell their shares**.
 I couldn't persuade **them to do anything**.

PASSIVE

The judge was persuaded **to allow the testimony**.

NOTE: In conversation, the infinitive following *persuade* is often left unspoken.

Okay, okay. You've persuaded me. [INSTEAD OF Okay, okay.
 You've persuaded me to go along.]
 What can I do to persuade you?

persuade _____ convince [of the truth/value of]

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

He persuaded **us that he was right after all**.
 Roberta persuaded **the committee that her proposal
 deserved extra funding**.

PASSIVE

I was persuaded **that the report contained factual errors**.

PRESENT

I pick we pick
 you pick you pick
 he/she/it picks they pick
 • *He only picks the ripest fruit.*

PAST

I picked we picked
 you picked you picked
 he/she/it picked they picked
 • *They picked the best players first.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has picked

PAST PERFECT ... had picked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am picking we are picking
 you are picking you are picking
 he/she/it is picking they are picking
 • *We are picking blackberries this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was picking we were picking
 you were picking you were picking
 he/she/it was picking they were picking
 • *He was picking his way across the muddy field.*

FUTURE ... will pick

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be picking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have picked

PAST PASSIVE

I was picked we were picked
 you were picked you were picked
 he/she/it was picked they were picked
 • *We were picked to go first.*

COMPLEMENTS

pick choose, select

I get to pick this time.
 Who will pick first?

pick _____ choose, select

OBJECT

The kids picked **the programs they wanted to watch**.
 I picked **the best option open to me**.
 She will pick **Princeton** if she gets admitted.
 Their horse was picked as the favorite.

PASSIVE

pick _____ pluck, remove; gather, harvest

OBJECT

I had to pick **lint** from my coat before leaving the house.
 We need to pick **some flowers** for the party.
 These strawberries were picked this morning.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

pick SEP **apart** criticize in detail

Critics began to pick apart Senator Blather's budget proposal.

pick at _____ take small bites of [food]

The child had a fever and just picked at her food.

pick (away) at _____ criticize

The opposition party was picking away at the president's plan.

pick on _____ tease, annoy

Stop picking on Gary; he's doing his best.

pick SEP **out** find, single out

How can you pick anyone out in this crowd?

pick up resume, continue after an interruption

The discussion picked up where it had left off.

pick up increase, improve

Business has picked up since Christmas.

pick SEP **up** increase

The train is picking up speed now.

The runners picked the pace up after 20 miles.

pick SEP **up** lift

She picked her daughter up and gave her a hug.

pick SEP **up** stop for and take along

Would you pick us up at seven?

Don't pick up strangers along the highway.

pick SEP **up** learn easily

I picked up Italian over the summer.

pick SEP **up** acquire, buy

I picked some milk up on the way home.

pick SEP **up** capture, take into custody

Police picked up the robbery suspect.

pick SEP **up** make tidy

You must pick up your room before going out to play.

PRESENT

I place we place
you place you place
he/she/it places they place

• *The team usually places in the top ten.*

PAST

I placed we placed
you placed you placed
he/she/it placed they placed

• *I placed the memos on your desk.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has placed

PAST PERFECT ... had placed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am placing we are placing
you are placing you are placing
he/she/it is placing they are placing

• *I am placing an ad in the newspaper.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was placing we were placing
you were placing you were placing
he/she/it was placing they were placing

• *The kids were placing their toys on the stairs.*

FUTURE ... will place

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be placing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have placed

PAST PASSIVE

I was placed we were placed
you were placed you were placed
he/she/it was placed they were placed

• *The order was placed on December 12.*

COMPLEMENTS

place _____ put, position

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I placed **the groceries on the counter.**

He placed **the bicycles in the garage.**

You shouldn't place **your money in an uninsured account.**

The court temporarily placed **the children in foster care.**

The incident placed **me at a distinct disadvantage.**

I was placed **in an awkward position.**

PASSIVE

place _____ submit, arrange

OBJECT

I am placing **an order for pizza.**

You will need to place **a call for an overseas connection.**

The new restaurant placed **a large ad in the newspaper.**

They have placed **a contract for 10 heavy trucks.**

place _____ recall, find [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

OBJECT

We couldn't place **him** at all.

I can't place **his name.**

He can't place **his car keys.**

place _____ finish [in a certain position in a competition]

ADVERB OF PLACE

We placed **third.**

The Cougars placed **behind the rest of the teams.**

They hope to place **in the top five** this year.

place _____ rank

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The committee places **Geraldo second among the applicants.**

We place **environmental quality high on our list of priorities.**

In the 19th century, Milton was placed **first among English writers.**

PASSIVE

place _____ attach [importance/value/etc.] to

OBJECT + ON OBJECT

The president places **great value on perseverance.**

PHRASAL VERBS

place SEP aside/back/up/etc.
put in a specified position

The teacher placed the essays aside
until the weekend.

Place the books back where you found them.

place _____ with get [someone] a job at

The employment agency placed Wade with a law firm.

PRESENT

I plan we plan
 you plan you plan
 he/she/it plans they plan
 • *He plans to stay in Chicago.*

PAST

I planned we planned
 you planned you planned
 he/she/it planned they planned
 • *We planned a surprise for her birthday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has planned

PAST PERFECT ... had planned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am planning we are planning
 you are planning you are planning
 he/she/it is planning they are planning
 • *I'm planning to take a few days off.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was planning we were planning
 you were planning you were planning
 he/she/it was planning they were planning
 • *We were planning on getting married in June.*

FUTURE ... will plan

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be planning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have planned

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was planned they were planned
 • *The meeting was planned weeks in advance.*

COMPLEMENTS

plan _____ decide on, make arrangements for

OBJECT

She is planning **the fall conference**.
 The school is planning **a field trip for seniors**.
 We must plan **our strategy**.
 The prisoners had planned **their escape** for months.
 The senator's remarks were planned days in advance.
 He should plan **what he is going to do**.
 We are planning **where we are going on vacation**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

plan _____ intend, expect

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

He planned **for us to revise the contract**.
 The doctor plans **for him to undergo surgery Monday**.
 I had planned **for Diane to write the summary**.
 Dave and Kathy plan **to enjoy a glass of homemade wine**
 in front of a blazing fire.
 How do they plan **to finish the job**?
 The company plans **to open a branch in Phoenix**.

INFINITIVE

plan _____ depend on, expect

on OBJECT

We were planning **on good weather for the picnic**.
 Beth is planning **on Margaret's help with the editing**.
 We are all planning **on attending the meeting**.
 Are you planning **on going out tonight**?
 We weren't planning **on being delayed in traffic**.

on PRESENT PARTICIPLE

plan _____ design

OBJECT

An architect is planning **the new kitchen**.
 How soon can you plan **the extension**?
 He was hired to plan **the garden and reception area**.

PHRASAL VERBS

plan SEP out make complete arrangements for

Mom and Dad planned out our entire vacation.

play _____ act the part/role of

OBJECT

She is playing **Ophelia** in *Hamlet*.

play _____ perform music on [an instrument]

OBJECT

Katie plays **the violin** beautifully.

play _____ perform [a musical composition (by)]

OBJECT

She will play **a Haydn piano sonata**.

The symphony is playing **Beethoven** on Friday night.

play _____ pretend to be, behave [in a certain way]

PREDICATE NOUN

He always plays **the victim**.

The reporter played **the role of a mere bystander**.

The smuggler tried to play **a completely innocent deckhand**, but it didn't work.

He played **dead** during the attack.

I played **innocent**, acting like I didn't know where the noise was coming from.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

play along (pretend to) cooperate

Let's play along and see what the boss wants.

play _____ along keep [someone] waiting

The boss keeps playing us along; will we get a raise or not?

play (around) with _____ consider, usually not seriously

The company played around with the idea of a four-day workweek.

Mom and Dad played with moving to San Diego after the war.

play SEP down try to reduce the importance/likelihood/value of

News commentators played down the probability of a recession.

play _____ off against set in opposition to

Joe played the car dealers off against each other to get the best price.

play on _____ exploit, manipulate

The candidate played on our desire for world peace in order to win our votes.

play SEP out complete

We were behind by 12 runs but had to play the game out. The forward played out the rest of the season with a sore hamstring.

play _____ (straight) through perform all of

Agatha played the concerto straight through.

play SEP up emphasize, praise

The press release played up the politician's strong points.

play up to _____ flatter

Lisa is always playing up to the manager; she wants a promotion.

EXPRESSIONS

play a part/role in _____ be influential in

Genetics plays an important role in cancer. Our group plays a big part in keeping politicians honest.

play ball (with _____) cooperate (with [someone])

Will the players who used steroids play ball with the Senate subcommittee?

play _____ by ear decide what to do as a situation develops

The union will have to play it by ear with regard to future layoffs.

play (the) devil's advocate argue against a proposal in order to test its validity

Good journalists play devil's advocate when interviewing politicians.

play with fire take a serious risk

The governor is playing with fire by giving jobs to all his friends.

PRESENT

I play we play
 you play you play
 he/she/it plays they play
 • *He plays tennis on weekends.*

PAST

I played we played
 you played you played
 he/she/it played they played
 • *The two teams never played each other.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has played

PAST PERFECT ... had played

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am playing we are playing
 you are playing you are playing
 he/she/it is playing they are playing
 • *The actor is playing the part for the first time.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was playing we were playing
 you were playing you were playing
 he/she/it was playing they were playing
 • *The kids were playing in the backyard.*

FUTURE

... will play

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be playing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have played

PAST PASSIVE

I was played we were played
 you were played you were played
 he/she/it was played they were played
 • *The game was played last night.*

COMPLEMENTS

play *have fun, amuse oneself*

play *take part in a sport/game/recreation*

play *perform music*

play *be performed/shown* [ENTERTAINMENT]

play *be successful/convincing* [INFORMAL]

play _____ *take part in [a sport/game/recreation]*

OBJECT

play _____ *be at [a certain position] in a game/sport*

OBJECT

play _____ *put [a player] in a game*

OBJECT

play _____ *be a member of [a sports team]*

for OBJECT

play _____ *compete against* [SPORTS]

OBJECT

We promise not to play in the street.
 The kids have been playing all afternoon.

The manager will let Luis play tomorrow.
 Can I play, Coach?
 We never play for money.

The soloist will not be able to play because of an injury.
 The Beatles played at Busch Stadium on August 21, 1966.
 A band was playing in the distance.

What's playing on the radio right now?
The Lord of the Rings was playing downtown.

The senator's new ad is not playing well.
 Do you think my idea will play?
 We thought the ad campaign would play better than it did.

We play **softball** nearly every weekend.
 The Yankees are playing **three games** at home this week.
 Do you like to play **chess**?
 The kids love to play **Monopoly and other board games**.

I always played **left field**, and my sister played **shortstop**.
 He plays **left guard**.

The coach played **Felipe** in center field.

Willie Mays played **for the Giants**.
 Michael Jordan played **for the Bulls**.

The Seahawks are playing **the Rams** on Sunday.

Whom are we playing tomorrow?
 I am playing **Ben White** in the semifinal match.



PRESENT

I plead	we plead
you plead	you plead
he/she/it pleads	they plead

• *The defendant pleads innocent.*

PAST

I pleaded/pled	we pleaded/pled
you pleaded/pled	you pleaded/pled
he/she/it pleaded/pled	they pleaded/pled

• *He already pled his case.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pleaded/pled

PAST PERFECT ... had pleaded/pled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pleading	we are pleading
you are pleading	you are pleading
he/she/it is pleading	they are pleading

• *I am pleading innocent, Your Honor.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pleading	we were pleading
you were pleading	you were pleading
he/she/it was pleading	they were pleading

• *The prisoners were pleading with the guards.*

FUTURE ... will plead

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pleading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pleaded/pled

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was pleaded/pled	they were pleaded/pled

• *The case was pled before the district court.*

COMPLEMENTS

plead *make an emotional appeal, beg*

The women and children were pleading.
 Standing proudly, the men refused to plead.
 The convicts were pleading on their knees.

plead _____ *present/argue [a law case, one's position]*

OBJECT

The lawyer will plead **your case**.
 You shouldn't plead **your own case**.
 The state's attorney will plead **the government's case**.

plead _____ *formally declare oneself [innocent/guilty] in court*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He pled **guilty on all charges**.
 The gang members will plead **innocent**.
How do you plead?

plead _____ *ask/beg*

for OBJECT

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

with OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)

The condemned man was pleading **for his life**.
 We pleaded **for them to be careful**.
 I'm pleading **with you!** Let me go to the concert.
 They pleaded **with the manager to reconsider his decision**.
 I have pleaded **with Bob to look for a better job**.
 He pleaded **to come with us**.
 The children pleaded **to get a dog**.
 I pleaded **to get a bigger budget**.

INFINITIVE

plead _____ *give as an excuse*

OBJECT

Tanya pleaded **ignorance of the law**, but got a ticket anyway.
 The tobacco company heads pleaded **ignorance of the
 addictive properties of cigarette smoking**.

THAT-CLAUSE

Scott pleaded **that he didn't have enough time to complete
 the assignment**.
 Brandon pleaded **that he didn't see the speed limit sign**.

PRESENT

I please we please
 you please you please
 he/she/it pleases they please
 • *His behavior pleases no one.*

PAST

I pleased we pleased
 you pleased you pleased
 he/she/it pleased they pleased
 • *The decision pleased everyone but me.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pleased

PAST PERFECT ... had pleased

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pleasing we are pleasing
 you are pleasing you are pleasing
 he/she/it is pleasing they are pleasing
 • *He is pleasing everyone but himself.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pleasing we were pleasing
 you were pleasing you were pleasing
 he/she/it was pleasing they were pleasing
 • *They were just pleasing themselves.*

FUTURE ... will please

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pleasing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pleased

PAST PASSIVE

I was pleased we were pleased
 you were pleased you were pleased
 he/she/it was pleased they were pleased
 • *He was pleased by the reception.*

COMPLEMENTS

please give satisfaction/happiness

He just wants to please.
 We aim to please.
 Ruby's Derby pie was sure to please.
 Our salespeople are eager to please.

please wish, desire

Once dinner is over, you may do as you please.
 His parents allow him to watch whatever he pleases.

please _____ cause to be satisfied/happy

OBJECT

The presents really pleased **the children**.
 You can only please **him** by doing what he wants.
 The piano recital pleased **the audience** immensely.
 We were pleased by what you said.

PASSIVE

it + please + OBJECT + INFINITIVE

It pleased **him to get such good publicity**.
 It pleased **everyone to escape from harm**.
 "It has pleased **Almighty God to prolong our national life another year**." [ABRAHAM LINCOLN]

PRESENT

I point we point
 you point you point
 he/she/it points they point
 • *The compass always points north.*

PAST

I pointed we pointed
 you pointed you pointed
 he/she/it pointed they pointed
 • *The guide pointed out the monument.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pointed

PAST PERFECT ... had pointed

PAST PASSIVE

I was pointed we were pointed
 you were pointed you were pointed
 he/she/it was pointed they were pointed
 • *The gun was pointed right at us.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pointing we are pointing
 you are pointing you are pointing
 he/she/it is pointing they are pointing
 • *He is pointing at you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pointing we were pointing
 you were pointing you were pointing
 he/she/it was pointing they were pointing
 • *All economic signs were pointing to a recession.*

FUTURE ... will point

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pointing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pointed

COMPLEMENTS

point indicate direction by extending one's finger

Don't point; it's not polite.
 Grandma Yvette pointed with her cane.
 Look! He's pointing.

point _____ direct attention

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The sign pointed **up to the second floor**.
 Her fingers were pointing **downward**.
 He pointed **to a chair** and told me to sit down.
 The site's home page points **to several helpful links**.
 The children pointed **back the way they had come**.
 The teacher pointed **at a boy in the second row**.
 The guide pointed **at a picture above the doorway**.
 I pointed **at the watch in the showcase**.

at OBJECT

point _____ direct, aim

OBJECT + at/to/toward OBJECT

He pointed **his finger at me**.
 Never point **your gun at something** unless you mean to shoot it.
 An old man pointed **me to the post office**.
 He pointed **us toward the refreshment stand**.
 The flashlight was pointed **at a car in the ditch**.

PASSIVE

point _____ be oriented [in a certain direction]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The altars in medieval cathedrals point **to the east**.
 Our elbows point **backward**, but our knees point **forward**.
 The noonday sun always points **due south**.

point _____ indicate as a result

to OBJECT

Everything points **to a peaceful resolution**.
 The test results point **to cancer**.

PHRASAL VERBS

point SEP **out** say, mention

The astronomer pointed out that his conclusions were tentative.

point SEP **out** indicate, identify

Helen pointed out the misspellings in Kristen's paper.
 Can you point your grandfather out in this photograph?

point to/toward _____ mention

The CEO pointed to their funding of inner-city programs.

point SEP **up** emphasize

The volcanic eruptions point up the need for volcano monitoring.

PRESENT

I possess we possess
you possess you possess
he/she/it possesses they possess
• *He possesses a terrific sense of humor.*

PAST

I possessed we possessed
you possessed you possessed
he/she/it possessed they possessed
• *We never possessed a stereo system.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has possessed

PAST PERFECT ... had possessed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Possess is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Possess is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will possess

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have possessed

PAST PASSIVE

I was possessed we were possessed
you were possessed you were possessed
he/she/it was possessed they were possessed
• *He was possessed by a sudden desire to laugh.*

COMPLEMENTS

possess _____ *have, own*

OBJECT

I have never possessed **any stock in that company.**

Do they possess **any firearms?**

They possessed **a large amount of cash.**

They were suspected of possessing **illegal drugs.**

possess _____ *have as a characteristic*

OBJECT

She possesses **great natural singing ability.**

He possesses **a grumpy disposition.**

Volvos possess **a good safety record.**

The city possessed **a strong credit rating.**

possess _____ *take complete control of*

OBJECT

An uncontrollable rage possessed **him.**

PASSIVE

He was possessed by greed.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

What possessed **Donna to say she didn't keep a diary?**

PRESENT

I pour we pour
 you pour you pour
 he/she/it pours they pour

• *When it rains, it pours.*

PAST

I poured we poured
 you poured you poured
 he/she/it poured they poured

• *I just poured the tea.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has poured

PAST PERFECT ... had poured

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pouring we are pouring
 you are pouring you are pouring
 he/she/it is pouring they are pouring

• *I am pouring you some punch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pouring we were pouring
 you were pouring you were pouring
 he/she/it was pouring they were pouring

• *The contractor was pouring cement in the rain.*

FUTURE ... will pour

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pouring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have poured

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was poured they were poured

• *The coffee was poured and the dessert was served.*

COMPLEMENTS

pour *fall/flow steadily* [OF A LIQUID]

It has been pouring all night.

The milk was pouring down the baby's chin.

pour _____ *fill a glass/cup with [a liquid], serve [a liquid]*

OBJECT

Please pour **the wine**, will you?

Don't pour **the coffee** until the guests arrive.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We poured **the children some lemonade**.

The hostess poured **everyone a glass of wine**.

for PARAPHRASE

We poured **some lemonade for the children**.

The hostess poured **a glass of wine for everyone**.

pour _____ *dispense [a liquid]*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I poured **the marinade over the meat**.

He poured **the water down the drain**.

She carefully poured **the medicine into the dispenser**.

The unused olive oil was poured **back into the bottle**.

PASSIVE

pour _____ *spend, invest*

OBJECT + *into* OBJECT

We poured **all our savings into a dot-com start-up**.

The government poured **billions of dollars into student aid**.

PHRASAL VERBS

pour back/down/forth/in/out/through/
 etc. *flow in a specified direction*

The levee collapsed, and the
 floodwater poured in.

pour SEP *away/back/in/out/etc.*
cause to flow in a specified direction

Pour the milk back into the jug.

pour into / out of _____ *enter/exit in*
large numbers

The candidate's supporters poured into the arena.

Fans poured out of the stadium.

pour SEP *off* *drain from the top of a*
container of liquid

She poured off a little sauce before cooking.

pour [oneself] *into* _____ *become very*
involved in

After being laid off, he poured himself into finding a new job.

pour SEP *out* *discard [a liquid]*

The milk is past its expiration date; we need to pour it out.

pour SEP *out to [someone]* *tell [one's*
feelings] to [someone]

Layla poured her heart out to Eric.

PRESENT

I practice we practice
 you practice you practice
 he/she/it practices they practice
 • *He practices his Italian with a friend.*

PAST

I practiced we practiced
 you practiced you practiced
 he/she/it practiced they practiced
 • *I practiced law in Illinois and Oregon.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has practiced

PAST PERFECT ... had practiced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am practicing we are practicing
 you are practicing you are practicing
 he/she/it is practicing they are practicing
 • *I'm practicing my new magic trick.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was practicing we were practicing
 you were practicing you were practicing
 he/she/it was practicing they were practicing
 • *He was practicing medicine without a license.*

FUTURE ... will practice

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be practicing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have practiced

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was practiced they were practiced
 • *The dance routine was practiced for hours.*

COMPLEMENTS

practice *do something over and over to increase one's skill*

I seem to be practicing all the time.
 She practices whenever she has the time.
 "How do you get to Carnegie Hall?" "Practice, practice, practice."

practice _____ *do over and over to increase one's skill*

OBJECT

Philip practices **the trumpet** nearly every day.
 If you don't practice **a foreign language**, you quickly forget it.

PASSIVE

Every piece was practiced until it was perfect.

WH-CLAUSE

I practiced **what I would say to my boss**.
 We all practiced **what we would do in the event of an earthquake**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The apprentices were practicing **how to install ceramic tile**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He needs to practice **fielding ground balls**.

The orchestra practiced **coming in together**.

Nursing students will practice **giving injections** this week.

practice _____ *do regularly*

OBJECT

All people have the right to practice **their beliefs**.

Paulette practices **yoga** daily.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Kids should practice **being nice to the elderly**.

practice _____ *work in [LAW, MEDICINE]*

OBJECT

He practices **law** in the state of California.

Rachel is no longer practicing **medicine**.

practice _____ *train*

on OBJECT

I don't want a surgical intern to practice **on me!**

I'm learning to tattoo. Can I practice **on you?**

EXPRESSIONS

Practice what you preach. [PROVERB]
Do what you advise others to do.

When my boss harassed me for being late,
 I told him, "Practice what you preach."

PRESENT

I precede we precede
 you precede you precede
 he/she/it precedes they precede
 • *The national anthem precedes ballgames.*

PAST

I preceded we preceded
 you preceded you preceded
 he/she/it preceded they preceded
 • *Clearly, the good news preceded us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has preceded

PAST PERFECT ... had preceded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am preceding we are preceding
 you are preceding you are preceding
 he/she/it is preceding they are preceding
 • *The police are preceding the fire trucks.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was preceding we were preceding
 you were preceding you were preceding
 he/she/it was preceding they were preceding
 • *The lightning was barely preceding the thunder.*

FUTURE ... will precede

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be preceding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have preceded

PAST PASSIVE

I was preceded we were preceded
 you were preceded you were preceded
 he/she/it was preceded they were preceded
 • *The program was preceded by a short introduction.*

COMPLEMENTS

precede happen, come/go before

Group A precedes, Group B follows.

The professors precede, the graduates follow.

precede _____ happen, come/go before in space/time

OBJECT

Wind always precedes **rain**.Several minor tremors preceded **the main earthquake**.The wail of sirens preceded **the air raid**.An economic collapse preceded **Roosevelt's election**.Who preceded **John F. Kennedy** as president?

The infantry attack was preceded by an artillery barrage.

The children preceded **us there**.You should let your guests precede **you through the door**.Security forces always precede **the president into a building**.The boxer was preceded **into the ring** by his seconds.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

precede _____ come/go before in rank

OBJECT

In the army, a general precedes **a colonel**, and a colonel precedes **a major**.In the Roman Republic, consuls preceded **praetors**.In Jane Austen's time, a married daughter preceded **her unmarried sisters**.

precede _____ introduce, preface

OBJECT

The professor always preceded **his lecture** with a story from his childhood.

PRESENT

I prefer we prefer
 you prefer you prefer
 he/she/it prefers they prefer
 • *He prefers white wine.*

PAST

I preferred we preferred
 you preferred you preferred
 he/she/it preferred they preferred
 • *I preferred traveling by train as a child.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has preferred

PAST PERFECT ... had preferred

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Prefer is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Prefer is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will prefer

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have preferred

PAST PASSIVE

I was preferred we were preferred
 you were preferred you were preferred
 he/she/it was preferred they were preferred
 • *Jane's solution was preferred by most of us.*

COMPLEMENTS

prefer _____ like better

OBJECT

I prefer **chunky peanut butter**.
 Would you prefer **soup or salad**?
 The kids would prefer **their old babysitter**.
 Dino prefers **baseball** over football.
 Dina prefers **football** to baseball.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I prefer **my soup really hot**.
 Americans prefer **their drinks ice-cold**.
 John prefers **his memos short and decisive**.

(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Your mother would prefer (for) **you to stay home**.
 He would prefer (for) **the kids to rake the leaves**.
 They might prefer (for) **us to submit the report later**.

INFINITIVE

I would prefer **to do it myself**.
 Would you prefer **to eat in or go out**?
 Everyone would prefer **to be rich**.

(it) BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

Everyone would prefer (it) **that he stay in school**.
 The doctor would prefer (it) **that you undergo the treatment**.
 The board would prefer (it) **that we impose a moratorium on hiring**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I prefer **doing it myself**.
 Thomas really prefers **playing outside**.
 Do you prefer **watching dramas or crime shows** on TV?

prefer _____ formally bring [a charge] in court

OBJECT

My aunt preferred **charges against her neighbor for destroying her fence**.

PRESENT

I prepare we prepare
 you prepare you prepare
 he/she/it prepares they prepare
 • *He prepares his schedule a week ahead.*

PAST

I prepared we prepared
 you prepared you prepared
 he/she/it prepared they prepared
 • *I prepared a brief statement.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has prepared

PAST PERFECT ... had prepared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am preparing we are preparing
 you are preparing you are preparing
 he/she/it is preparing they are preparing
 • *I am preparing to go on a short trip.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was preparing we were preparing
 you were preparing you were preparing
 he/she/it was preparing they were preparing
 • *We were preparing dinner when we heard the news.*

FUTURE ... will prepare

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be preparing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have prepared

PAST PASSIVE

I was prepared we were prepared
 you were prepared you were prepared
 he/she/it was prepared they were prepared
 • *The report was prepared weeks ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

prepare _____ make ready

OBJECT

They were in the kitchen preparing **lunch**.

PASSIVE

Our group prepared **a position paper on the topic**.

OBJECT + for OBJECT

Evacuation plans were prepared in case the hurricane came ashore.

PASSIVE

Let's prepare **the car for driving in snow**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Robert prepared **the float for the homecoming parade**.The owner prepared **the store for the anniversary sale**.A brochure will be prepared **for the grand opening**.

PASSIVE

The nurses prepared **me to be transferred**.We prepared **them to hear some bad news**.The player prepared **himself to be overlooked in the draft**.The soldiers were prepared **to withstand the attack**.

prepare _____ get ready, make oneself ready

for OBJECT

Are you preparing **for your driving test**?We must prepare **for an economic downturn**.The sailors were preparing **for 12 months away from their families**.

INFINITIVE

Sandra prepared **to answer the committee's questions**.The actors are preparing **to go on stage for the second act**.The ships should prepare **to sail at dawn tomorrow**.

PRESENT

I present we present
 you present you present
 he/she/it presents they present
 • *He always presents the annual award.*

PAST

I presented we presented
 you presented you presented
 he/she/it presented they presented
 • *She presented a paper at the conference.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has presented

PAST PERFECT ... had presented

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am presenting we are presenting
 you are presenting you are presenting
 he/she/it is presenting they are presenting
 • *I am presenting my report this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was presenting we were presenting
 you were presenting you were presenting
 he/she/it was presenting they were presenting
 • *The economy was presenting new challenges.*

FUTURE

... will present

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be presenting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have presented

PAST PASSIVE

I was presented we were presented
 you were presented you were presented
 he/she/it was presented they were presented
 • *We were presented with an unusual problem.*

NOTE: The verb *present* is stressed on the second syllable, rhyming with *event*. The noun *present* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

present _____ introduce

OBJECT

He will present **the names of the winners**.
 The speaker presented **his wife and two children** at the end of his talk.

present _____ deliver

OBJECT

Diplomats must always present **their credentials**.
 Michael presented **a talk on scientific frauds and charlatans**.
 The architects have presented **their invoice**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Invitations must be presented at the door.
 You must present **your passport to the customs agent**.
 Present **your business card to the receptionist**.

present _____ display

OBJECT

The patient has presented **some unusual symptoms**.
 We must present **a united front against our adversaries**.

present _____ describe

OBJECT + as PREDICATE NOUN

He presented **himself as a humanitarian**.
 They presented **the plan as a big opportunity for us**.

PASSIVE

She was presented **as an old friend of the family**.

present _____ create, offer

OBJECT

The economy presented **a real challenge for the new president**.
 The meeting presented **an opportunity to get to know each other better**.

We hope that a suitable opportunity will present **itself** soon.

present _____ bring before the public

OBJECT

The network is presenting **an hour-long special about the epidemic**.
 The symphony will present **a concert under the stars**.

present _____ give as a gift

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The teacher presented **a book to each of us**.
 The booster club presented **a check for \$500 to the school**.

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The teacher presented **each of us with a book**.
 The booster club presented **the school with a check for \$500**.

PRESENT

I preserve we preserve
 you preserve you preserve
 he/she/it preserves they preserve
 • *John preserves every e-mail he gets.*

PAST

I preserved we preserved
 you preserved you preserved
 he/she/it preserved they preserved
 • *They preserved the entire downtown area.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has preserved

PAST PERFECT ... had preserved

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was preserved they were preserved
 • *The records were preserved for 10 years.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am preserving we are preserving
 you are preserving you are preserving
 he/she/it is preserving they are preserving
 • *I am preserving all my father's notes.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was preserving we were preserving
 you were preserving you were preserving
 he/she/it was preserving they were preserving
 • *We were preserving the raspberries.*

FUTURE ... will preserve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be preserving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have preserved

COMPLEMENTS

preserve _____ save, protect from harm/damage/destruction

OBJECT

I have preserved **all my grandmother's letters**.
 Immigrants often struggle to preserve **their native language**.
 They have a grant to preserve **several endangered species**.
 We must preserve **our right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

The dinosaur bones were preserved by the museum staff.
 We have preserved **what could be saved from the fire**.
 Preserve **whatever insurance documents you have**.

preserve _____ keep [food] from decaying by canning/freezing/etc.

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

We preserve **all of our summer fruit**.
 We preserve **what we grow**.

preserve _____ maintain

OBJECT

It is important that senior citizens preserve **their dignity**.
 The movie preserves **the eerie feel of the novel**.
 Despite his problems, he has preserved **his sense of humor**.
 Remarkably, the town has preserved **its unique charm**.

PRESENT

I press we press
 you press you press
 he/she/it presses they press
 • *He always presses his point too hard.*

PAST

I pressed we pressed
 you pressed you pressed
 he/she/it pressed they pressed
 • *We never pressed the issue.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pressed

PAST PERFECT ... had pressed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pressing we are pressing
 you are pressing you are pressing
 he/she/it is pressing they are pressing
 • *He is pressing charges against them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pressing we were pressing
 you were pressing you were pressing
 he/she/it was pressing they were pressing
 • *They were pressing apples to make cider.*

FUTURE ... will press

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pressing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pressed

PAST PASSIVE

I was pressed we were pressed
 you were pressed you were pressed
 he/she/it was pressed they were pressed
 • *The key was pressed too soon.*

COMPLEMENTS

press *try too hard*

The coach warned the team not to press.

press _____ *push (on) with steady force*

OBJECT

I pressed **the elevator button**.
 Press **any key** to continue. [COMPUTERS]
 He pressed **my hand** to reassure me.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I pressed **my foot on the accelerator**.
 She pressed **the cookie dough into tiny balls**.

PASSIVE

We were pressed **against the wall** by the crowd.

press _____ *crowd, push closely together*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The crowd pressed **into the arena**.
 Reporters pressed **around the president** as he entered the room.

press _____ *make smooth/flat*

OBJECT

I need to press **my shirt**.
 The kids were pressing **flower petals**.

press _____ *squeeze*

OBJECT

Everyone in the village helped press **the grapes**.

OBJECT + *from / out of* OBJECT

They pressed **oil from the olives**.
 She pressed **all the juice out of the lemon**.

press _____ *put forward continuously and forcefully*

OBJECT

The plaintiffs were pressing **their suit**.
 We should press **the issue** in the next debate.

press _____ *urge continuously*

for OBJECT

The union is pressing **for higher wages**.
 Senator Blather was pressing **for deregulation of banks**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The governor is pressing **the legislature to pass the bill**.
 Can you press **them to make a decision?**

PHRASAL VERBS

press back/forward/in/on/onward/
 etc. *push in a specified direction*

The mob pressed forward.
 The explorers pressed on against all odds.

press SEP **back/forward/in/on/**
 etc. *push in a specified direction*

The enemy was pressing us back.

PRESENT

I prevail we prevail
 you prevail you prevail
 he/she/it prevails they prevail
 • *The stronger team usually prevails.*

PAST

I prevailed we prevailed
 you prevailed you prevailed
 he/she/it prevailed they prevailed
 • *Optimism about the recovery prevailed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has prevailed

PAST PERFECT ... had prevailed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am prevailing we are prevailing
 you are prevailing you are prevailing
 he/she/it is prevailing they are prevailing
 • *Hope is prevailing over fear.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was prevailing we were prevailing
 you were prevailing you were prevailing
 he/she/it was prevailing they were prevailing
 • *Hurricane conditions were prevailing along the coast.*

FUTURE ... will prevail

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be prevailing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have prevailed

PAST PASSIVE

I was prevailed we were prevailed
 you were prevailed you were prevailed
 he/she/it was prevailed they were prevailed
 • *She was prevailed upon to say a few words.*

COMPLEMENTS

prevail *be dominant/widespread*

A sense of crisis prevails everywhere.
 Cloudy weather will prevail for the next few days.
 The New Year's Eve custom has prevailed there for nearly
 300 years.
 Similar unemployment rates prevail in most states.
 Mobile homes prevail on the west side of town.

prevail *be successful, win out*

In the long run, reason must prevail.
 It was not until 1945 that the Allies prevailed.
 Our soccer team prevailed against the No. 1 team in the country.

prevail _____ *persuade, get [to do]*
on/upon OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Can we prevail **on you to take notes for us?**
 The audience prevailed **upon the pianist to play an encore.**
 The board prevailed **upon the director to step aside.**
 I was prevailed on **to run for treasurer.**

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I prevent	we prevent
you prevent	you prevent
he/she/it prevents	they prevent

• *My illness prevents my going to work.*

PAST

I prevented	we prevented
you prevented	you prevented
he/she/it prevented	they prevented

• *We prevented a big mistake.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has prevented

PAST PERFECT ... had prevented

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am preventing	we are preventing
you are preventing	you are preventing
he/she/it is preventing	they are preventing

• *Am I preventing you from doing your homework?*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was preventing	we were preventing
you were preventing	you were preventing
he/she/it was preventing	they were preventing

• *The medicines were preventing an epidemic.*

FUTURE ... will prevent

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be preventing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have prevented

PAST PASSIVE

I was prevented	we were prevented
you were prevented	you were prevented
he/she/it was prevented	they were prevented

• *The ship was prevented from docking.*

COMPLEMENTS

prevent _____ stop from happening

OBJECT

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

prevent _____ stop [from doing]

OBJECT + from PRESENT PARTICIPLE

PASSIVE

Regular exercise can prevent **major health problems**.
Only YOU can prevent **forest fires**. [ADVERTISING SLOGAN]
We are trying to prevent **further damage from the flood**.
A collision was prevented by the truck driver's quick reaction.
We prevented **what could have been a bad mistake**.
It will prevent **whatever problems might have arisen**.
Lack of space prevents **our eating in the kitchen**.
Federal law prevents **building on a floodplain**.

She prevented **them from making a really big mistake**.
Nothing could prevent **me from watching the game**.
An outbreak of flu prevented **the kids from going to school**.
We were prevented **from working** by a power failure.

PRESENT

I print we print
 you print you print
 he/she/it prints they print
 • *He prints everything in color.*

PAST

I printed we printed
 you printed you printed
 he/she/it printed they printed
 • *I printed a copy of the e-mail for you.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has printed

PAST PERFECT ... had printed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am printing we are printing
 you are printing you are printing
 he/she/it is printing they are printing
 • *The newspaper is printing a correction.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was printing we were printing
 you were printing you were printing
 he/she/it was printing they were printing
 • *The company was printing about 20 titles a year.*

FUTURE ... will print

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be printing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have printed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was printed they were printed

• *The first collection of Shakespeare's plays was printed in 1623.*

COMPLEMENTS

print write in block letters
 (as opposed to cursive)

Please print.
 Most forms require you to print.
 I usually print, because nobody can read my handwriting.

print _____ work/function as a printer
 ADVERB OF MANNER

Does your copier print **in color**?
 He prints **with soy-based ink**.

print _____ produce [text/images on paper] using a printing press / photocopier / computer printer
 OBJECT

The newspaper prints **10,000 copies** a day.
 Always print **a copy of your correspondence** for the files.
 The university will print **my dissertation** in July.
 Art books are printed on special paper.

PASSIVE

print _____ publish in print, include in a publication
 OBJECT

The journal printed **a list of Isaac Asimov's 10 favorite books**.
 They printed **three of Hilary's poems** in the December issue.

print _____ issue
 OBJECT

The lawyers forced the magazine to print **a retraction**.
 It was like a license to print **money**.
 The tabloid newspaper will have to print **a formal apology**.

print _____ press/stamp onto a surface
 OBJECT

They can print **hundreds of millions of transistors** on a single microprocessor.

PHRASAL VERBS

print **SEP** out produce (a copy of)
 using a photocopier / computer printer

Would you print out six more copies of the report?
 I need to print the drawing out in a larger size.

PRESENT

I proceed	we proceed
you proceed	you proceed
he/she/it proceeds	they proceed

• *As the play proceeds, he becomes angrier.*

PAST

I proceeded	we proceeded
you proceeded	you proceeded
he/she/it proceeded	they proceeded

• *He proceeded to tell us his life story.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has proceeded

PAST PERFECT ... had proceeded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am proceeding	we are proceeding
you are proceeding	you are proceeding
he/she/it is proceeding	they are proceeding

• *I am proceeding as planned.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was proceeding	we were proceeding
you were proceeding	you were proceeding
he/she/it was proceeding	they were proceeding

• *The plane was proceeding to Monterey.*

FUTURE

... will proceed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be proceeding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have proceeded

PAST PASSIVE

Proceed is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

proceed *go ahead, continue*

Please proceed.
The trial is proceeding smoothly.
We must proceed without delay.

proceed _____ *go on after stopping for a while*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

After unloading, the truck proceeded **to the warehouse**.
After lunch, we proceeded **on our way**.
After clearing customs, we proceeded **to the baggage claim area**.

proceed _____ *begin and continue [to do]*

INFINITIVE

John stopped a policeman and proceeded **to tell him what had happened**.
I got the waiter's attention and proceeded **to order dinner**.
He got paid and promptly proceeded **to spend every penny**.
[USED IRONICALLY]
Aaron bought a new pair of skis and proceeded **to break his leg**.
[USED IRONICALLY]

PRESENT

I produce we produce
you produce you produce
he/she/it produces they produce
• *Our firm produces cases for cell phones.*

PAST

I produced we produced
you produced you produced
he/she/it produced they produced
• *His announcement produced a sensation.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has produced

PAST PERFECT ... had produced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am producing we are producing
you are producing you are producing
he/she/it is producing they are producing
• *Their vineyard is producing 30 tons of grapes a year.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was producing we were producing
you were producing you were producing
he/she/it was producing they were producing
• *They were producing 2,000 widgets an hour.*

FUTURE

... will produce

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be producing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have produced

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was produced they were produced
• *The play was first produced in 2003.*

NOTE: The verb *produce* is stressed on the second syllable, which rhymes with *loose*.
The noun *produce* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

produce show satisfactory results

The new ad campaign is finally producing.
Their division was eliminated because they weren't producing.

produce bear/yield food

Are the fruit trees producing yet?
The hens will start producing soon.
Cows stop producing during really hot weather.

produce _____ make, create, manufacture

OBJECT

The company produces **components** for airplanes.
Mozart produced **his compositions** at an amazing rate.
The mill produces **recycled paper** from post-consumer waste.
These parts were produced at our plant in Tennessee.
The company will only produce **what they have orders for**.
We can produce **whatever the industry calls for**.
They will produce **however much they need to**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

produce _____ supply [OF A STATE, COUNTRY, REGION]

OBJECT

Oregon produces **much of the world's supply of hops**.
The Midwest produces **huge amounts of corn and wheat**.
Huge amounts of corn and wheat are produced in the Midwest.

PASSIVE

produce _____ cause to happen/exist

OBJECT

The announcement produced **a financial panic**.
The discovery could produce **a whole new industry**.
Side effects are produced by every medicine.

PASSIVE

produce _____ show, make available

OBJECT

The court ordered them to produce **the documents**.
With a smile, he produced **a bouquet of roses**.
They must produce **evidence of the drug's effectiveness**.
The play was first produced on Broadway in 2001.

PASSIVE

produce _____ supervise the making of [an artistic production]

OBJECT

He has produced **many successful films**.
She is producing **her newest CD** herself.
I am producing **a revival of a 1960 musical**.

PRESENT

I promise we promise
you promise you promise
he/she/it promises they promise
• *It promises to be an eventful meeting.*

PAST

I promised we promised
you promised you promised
he/she/it promised they promised
• *I promised to take the kids to the movies.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has promised

PAST PERFECT ... had promised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am promising we are promising
you are promising you are promising
he/she/it is promising they are promising
• *He is always promising to fix the gate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was promising we were promising
you were promising you were promising
he/she/it was promising they were promising
• *It was promising to be a beautiful day after all.*

FUTURE ... will promise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be promising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have promised

PAST PASSIVE

I was promised we were promised
you were promised you were promised
he/she/it was promised they were promised
• *The job was never promised to anyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

promise _____ assure [that something will happen]

OBJECT

The weatherman promises **sunny weather all weekend.**

PASSIVE

The coach promised **a winning season.**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Record earnings were promised by Wall Street.

He promised **Janet to have his report done tomorrow.**

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

I promised **myself to take some time off.**

I promised **my folks that I would not be late.**

PASSIVE

You promised **the kids that we would play a game with them.**

INFINITIVE

We were promised **that the car would be ready today.**

I promise **to give you a call.**

THAT-CLAUSE

The hotel clerk promised **to forward my mail.**

The game promises **to be a sellout.**

I promised **that I would not be late.**

The salesman promised **that we could return the rug.**

We promise **that we will be careful.**

promise _____ pledge

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The coach promised **the fans a winning season.**

He promised **his staff a bonus.**

to PARAPHRASE

I never promised **the kids a puppy.**

The coach promised **a winning season to the fans.**

He promised **a bonus to his staff.**

I never promised **a puppy to the kids.**

promise _____ give a reason to expect

OBJECT

A rising barometer promises **clear weather.**

The dark thunderclouds promised **rain.**

INFINITIVE

This promises **to be a high-scoring game.**

EXPRESSIONS

promise the moon/stars/world to _____ / My boyfriend promised me the world.

promise _____ the moon/stars/world

make exaggerated promises to

PRESENT

I promote	we promote
you promote	you promote
he/she/it promotes	they promote

• *The publisher promotes all his books.*

PAST

I promoted	we promoted
you promoted	you promoted
he/she/it promoted	they promoted

• *The governor promoted wind energy.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has promoted

PAST PERFECT ... had promoted

PAST PASSIVE

I was promoted	we were promoted
you were promoted	you were promoted
he/she/it was promoted	they were promoted

• *She was promoted to associate dean.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am promoting	we are promoting
you are promoting	you are promoting
he/she/it is promoting	they are promoting

• *We are promoting a new product.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was promoting	we were promoting
you were promoting	you were promoting
he/she/it was promoting	they were promoting

• *The university was promoting its science programs.*

FUTURE ... will promote

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be promoting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have promoted

COMPLEMENTS

promote _____ raise to a higher rank/level/position

OBJECT

The captain will promote **three soldiers from our squad**.The teacher promoted **the entire class** to fifth grade.Did they ever promote **Ralph**?The candidate is promoting **his daughter** to campaign manager.

Sally was just promoted.

PASSIVE

promote _____ encourage, actively support

OBJECT

Senator Blather has always promoted **free enterprise**.The art department promotes **individual creativity**.

The hiring of minorities is promoted by the government.

PASSIVE

promote _____ give publicity to

OBJECT

We aggressively promote **all of our new products**.The athletic department has heavily promoted **the star of the basketball team**.

PASSIVE

Sugary breakfast cereals are constantly being promoted.

PRESENT

I propose we propose
you propose you propose
he/she/it proposes they propose
• *He proposes reducing the budget by 5%.*

PAST

I proposed we proposed
you proposed you proposed
he/she/it proposed they proposed
• *I proposed that we adopt the motion.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has proposed

PAST PERFECT ... had proposed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am proposing we are proposing
you are proposing you are proposing
he/she/it is proposing they are proposing
• *I am proposing a totally new plan.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was proposing we were proposing
you were proposing you were proposing
he/she/it was proposing they were proposing
• *We were only proposing it as a temporary measure.*

FUTURE ... will propose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be proposing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have proposed

PAST PASSIVE

I was proposed we were proposed
you were proposed you were proposed
he/she/it was proposed they were proposed
• *An acceptable agreement was finally proposed.*

COMPLEMENTS

propose _____ suggest for consideration

OBJECT

Shelly has proposed **an exciting idea**.
The dean proposed **the elimination of several programs**.

PASSIVE

The plan was proposed by someone I didn't know.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

The president will propose **him as ambassador**.
I proposed **Marty as a new member**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

He proposed **her plan as an alternative strategy**.

PASSIVE

He proposed **me to act as secretary**.

to OBJECT + BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

I proposed **a consulting firm to develop our marketing plan**.

Tom was proposed **to head the new branch**.

INFINITIVE

I proposed **to them that we rent out the cottage**.

Harry proposed **to us that we leave early**.

Charles proposed **to him that he delay the press release**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The major proposed **to attack their left flank**.

I proposed **to return via Boston**.

Bob proposed **to go out for pizza**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Someone proposed **that he delay the staff meeting**.

Who proposed **that John manage the reception?**

Nobody is proposing **that we stop working on it**.

We will propose **that the amendment be tabled**.

I proposed **taking a little break**.

No one wanted to propose **our giving up**.

She proposed **getting married in June**.

propose _____ ask to marry one

to OBJECT

Tim proposed **to Katie** on a horse-drawn carriage ride.

I'll propose **to Stephanie** when I'm home on leave.

propose _____ intend, plan

INFINITIVE

Do you propose **to leave us here alone?**

The engaged couple proposed **to honeymoon in Montreal**.

EXPRESSIONS

propose a toast honor publicly and drink to the health/happiness of

I propose a toast to the bride and groom.

I propose a toast to the President of the United States.

PRESENT

I protect	we protect
you protect	you protect
he/she/it protects	they protect

• *Sunscreen really protects children's skin.*

PAST

I protected	we protected
you protected	you protected
he/she/it protected	they protected

• *The umbrella protected us from the sun.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has protected

PAST PERFECT ... had protected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am protecting	we are protecting
you are protecting	you are protecting
he/she/it is protecting	they are protecting

• *I am not protecting you any longer.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was protecting	we were protecting
you were protecting	you were protecting
he/she/it was protecting	they were protecting

• *We were protecting ourselves as best we could.*

FUTURE ... will protect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be protecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have protected

PAST PASSIVE

I was protected	we were protected
you were protected	you were protected
he/she/it was protected	they were protected

• *We were protected from the strong winds by a line of trees.*

COMPLEMENTS

protect _____ keep safe from harm/damage/loss

OBJECT

You must protect **yourself** at all times.
 The senator is careful to protect **his reputation**.
 The cast protects **your arm** until the bone is healed.
 He protected **his money** by investing cautiously.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + from OBJECT

We were fully protected by our insurance policy.
 A healthy diet can help protect **us from heart disease**.
 A barrier reef protects **the island from waves**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + from PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The firefighters were protected **from the flames** by special fire-resistant clothing.

PASSIVE

Only good records protected **us from being sued**.
 The barrier protected **our car from colliding with oncoming traffic**.

Our house was protected **from being destroyed** by the quick response of the fire department.

PRESENT

I prove	we prove
you prove	you prove
he/she/it proves	they prove

• *His experiment proves that we are right.*

PAST

I proved	we proved
you proved	you proved
he/she/it proved	they proved

• *It proved to be much more difficult.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has proven

PAST PERFECT ... had proven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am proving	we are proving
you are proving	you are proving
he/she/it is proving	they are proving

• *Cal is proving to be a bit of a problem.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was proving	we were proving
you were proving	you were proving
he/she/it was proving	they were proving

• *Francine was proving to be a great success.*

FUTURE ... will prove

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be proving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have proven

PAST PASSIVE

I was proven	we were proven
you were proven	you were proven
he/she/it was proven	they were proven

• *His guilt was never proven.*

COMPLEMENTS

prove _____ demonstrate that something is true/correct

OBJECT

For homework, Johanna told the students to prove **the theorem**.

PASSIVE

I can prove **my claim**.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + AS PREDICATE NOUN

The validity of the will was proven in court.

Sandra has proven **herself as an astronaut**.

Emily has proven **herself as a teacher**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The lawyer proved **the defendant (to be) an innocent bystander**.

Her boyfriend's subsequent behavior proved **him (to be) a complete loser**.

Placido has proved **himself (to be) an excellent shortstop**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Our analysis proved **the plan (to be) feasible**.

Madeline has proved **herself (to be) fearless**.

to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

He proved **to us that he had been right all along**.

Can they prove **to the police that they were not involved in the crime?**

THAT-CLAUSE

In 1616, William Harvey proved **that blood circulates**.

The police proved **that the driver was lying**.

WH-CLAUSE

Can they prove **who caused the accident?**

I can prove **what I am saying**.

prove _____ turn out [to be]

(to be) PREDICATE NOUN

Our guide proved **(to be) a stranger to the region**.

Our hotel proved **(to be) a dumpsy guest house**.

Her suggestion proved **(to be) a stroke of pure genius**.

(to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The guide proved **(to be) quite unreliable**.

Their claim proved **(to be) false**.

Our best guess proved **(to be) totally wrong**.

PRESENT

I provide we provide
 you provide you provide
 he/she/it provides they provide
 • *The catering service provides great food.*

PAST

I provided we provided
 you provided you provided
 he/she/it provided they provided
 • *The barn provided shelter from the storm.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has provided

PAST PERFECT ... had provided

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am providing we are providing
 you are providing you are providing
 he/she/it is providing they are providing
 • *He is not providing much help.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was providing we were providing
 you were providing you were providing
 he/she/it was providing they were providing
 • *The staff was providing us with a lot of information.*

FUTURE

... will provide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be providing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have provided

PAST PASSIVE

I was provided we were provided
 you were provided you were provided
 he/she/it was provided they were provided
 • *The animals were provided with food and water.*

COMPLEMENTS

provide _____ supply

OBJECT

He provided **some helpful advice**.

PASSIVE

They didn't provide **enough food for the group**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Complete assembly instructions were provided.

for PARAPHRASE

The unlocked back door provided **them easy entry**.

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The annuity will provide **your parents an adequate income**.The unlocked back door provided **easy entry for them**.The annuity will provide **an adequate income for your parents**.The book provided **us with the answers**.The weather provides **you with a reason to cancel the party**.

provide _____ state

THAT-CLAUSE

The ordinance provides **that apartments must pass inspection before they can be rented**.The contract provides **that any legal disputes will be tried in Sangamon County**.

PHRASAL VERBS

provide against _____ prepare for

Have you provided against flood damage if the levee breaks?

provide for _____ allow

The employment contract provides for two weeks of paid vacation.

provide for _____ support

He provides for his wife, his two children, and his aging mother.

A trust provides for their daughter's education.

PRESENT

I publish	we publish
you publish	you publish
he/she/it publishes	they publish

• *The company publishes reference works.*

PAST

I published	we published
you published	you published
he/she/it published	they published

• *She recently published two fine essays.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has published

PAST PERFECT ... had published

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am publishing	we are publishing
you are publishing	you are publishing
he/she/it is publishing	they are publishing

• *The press is publishing a special series on evolution.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was publishing	we were publishing
you were publishing	you were publishing
he/she/it was publishing	they were publishing

• *The newspaper was publishing 30,000 copies a day.*

FUTURE ... will publish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be publishing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have published

PAST PASSIVE

I was published	we were published
you were published	you were published
he/she/it was published	they were published

• *The book was published by a university press.*

COMPLEMENTS

publish *have one's writing printed in a book/journal/etc.*

For many young academics, the motto is "Publish or perish."
There is great pressure on us to publish.
Do you want to publish or teach? It is hard to do both.

publish *prepare, print, and distribute books/magazines/newspapers/etc.*

The newspaper publishes daily.
How often does the magazine publish?
Some university presses can no longer afford to publish.

publish _____ *have one's writing printed in [a book/magazine/newspaper/etc.]*
OBJECT

Ross has published **his new book about climate change**.
I have published **a dozen articles in my field**.
He will publish **his study** in a linguistics journal.

publish _____ *prepare, print, and distribute [books/magazines/newspapers/etc. or parts thereof]*
OBJECT

The press only publishes **art books**.
University presses have an obligation to publish **scholarly works**.

PASSIVE

The newspaper will publish **a story about homelessness in America**.

publish _____ *make known*
OBJECT

Many of Shakespeare's plays were first published in pirated editions.

The drug company should publish **the study's findings**.

PHRASAL VERBS

pull away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. *move in a specified direction*

pull SEP along/aside/away/down/over/under/up/etc. *cause to move in a specified direction*

pull ahead *take the lead*

pull SEP apart *find fault with*

pull SEP apart *affect emotionally very strongly*

pull away *increase one's lead*

pull SEP down *reduce*

pull SEP down *make sad/depressed*

pull down/in _____ *earn*

pull for _____ *hope for the success of*

pull SEP in *attract*

pull SEP in *capture, take into custody*

pull in/up *arrive by car*

pull SEP off *perform successfully*

pull SEP on/off *put on / take off [clothing]*

pull out (of _____) *withdraw/retreat (from [something])*

pull SEP out *produce*

pull through *survive, recover from illness/difficulty*

pull SEP together *gather and organize*

pull up *come to a stop*

pull up *move forward*

The van pulled away slowly.

We're lost. Let's pull over and look at a map.

She pulled the child aside and told him to behave.

Can you pull the kids away from the TV?

Pull the shade down, please.

The cop pulled my brother over for speeding.

The secretary pulled up a chair and sat down.

Pull the weeds up, but leave the flowers.

The Brazilian runner pulled ahead at the 12-mile marker.

The accountants pulled apart my proposed budget.

The divorce was pulling my cousin apart.

The racehorse pulled away in the backstretch and won easily.

Higher unemployment pulled stock prices down.

The owner's death pulled the whole team down.

The stockbroker was pulling down \$200,000 a year.

Most of the crowd was pulling for the underdog.

Blackstone's magic show pulled in huge audiences.

Police pulled two of the suspects in last night.

Grandma and Grandpa just pulled in.

The James Brothers pulled off the perfect bank robbery.

He pulled the sweater on over his head.

They pulled their muddy uniforms off after the game.

The general decided to pull out before his army was surrounded.

The other company pulled out of the merger at the last minute.

Mom pulled out her checkbook and wrote me a check for \$400.

Scott has a nasty head injury, but he'll pull through.

The editor pulled together a team of reporters to investigate bribery at City Hall.

Would you pull the latest cost-of-living data together?

A truck is pulling up in front of our house.

A police car pulled up beside me.

EXPRESSIONS

pull a stunt/trick on _____ *fool, deceive*

pull out all the stops *use all available resources, hold nothing back*

pull (some) strings
use one's influence

pull [someone's] leg
fool, trick [someone]

pull the plug on _____
stop, put an end to

Grandpa was always pulling tricks on us kids.

When the polls showed the candidate losing, his campaign pulled out all the stops.

My sister pulled some strings and got me a job at her company.

He's not serious; he's just pulling your leg.

Investors pulled the plug on our latest venture.

PRESENT

I pull we pull
 you pull you pull
 he/she/it pulls they pull
 • *The steering wheel pulls to the right.*

PAST

I pulled we pulled
 you pulled you pulled
 he/she/it pulled they pulled
 • *Matt pulled his kayak into the water.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pulled

PAST PERFECT ... had pulled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pulling we are pulling
 you are pulling you are pulling
 he/she/it is pulling they are pulling
 • *The tide is pulling the boat out to sea.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pulling we were pulling
 you were pulling you were pulling
 he/she/it was pulling they were pulling
 • *He was pulling nails out of the recycled boards.*

FUTURE ... will pull

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pulling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pulled

PAST PASSIVE

I was pulled we were pulled
 you were pulled you were pulled
 he/she/it was pulled they were pulled
 • *The posts were pulled upright.*

COMPLEMENTS

pull *drag/tug/tow something*

We will all pull on the count of three.
 The horses were pulling as hard as they could.
 I couldn't keep pulling much longer.

pull _____ *drag, tug, tow*

OBJECT

The tractor was pulling a **big agricultural sprayer**.
 I don't think my car can pull **such a heavy trailer**.
 Will you pull **me** in the wagon?

PASSIVE

The barges were being pulled by a towboat.

pull _____ *move*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We pulled **into the parking lot**.
 The car pulled **to the side of the road**.
 The ship slowly pulled **out to sea**.

pull _____ *cause to move*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The pilot pulled **the plane into the hangar**.
 The brakes pull **the car to the right**.
 Pull **your chair closer**.

PASSIVE

All heavy trucks were pulled **to the side** by the police.

pull _____ *drag toward one*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I pulled **the children onto my lap**.
 I pulled **the book closer to me**.
 He pulled **the coins into a heap in front of him**.

pull _____ *remove*

OBJECT

We pulled **weeds** all afternoon.
 The dentist pulled **her wisdom teeth**.
 The manager pulled **the pitcher** after four innings.
 The robber pulled **a gun from his jacket**.
 I can't pull **the cork out of the wine bottle**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

pull _____ *injure by stretching*

OBJECT

The athlete pulled **a muscle** during his morning sprints.



PRESENT

I purchase	we purchase
you purchase	you purchase
he/she/it purchases	they purchase

• *He purchases old furniture to refinish.*

PAST

I purchased	we purchased
you purchased	you purchased
he/she/it purchased	they purchased

• *We purchased presents for the children.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has purchased**PAST PERFECT** ... had purchased**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am purchasing	we are purchasing
you are purchasing	you are purchasing
he/she/it is purchasing	they are purchasing

• *I am only purchasing useful items this Christmas.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was purchasing	we were purchasing
you were purchasing	you were purchasing
he/she/it was purchasing	they were purchasing

• *We were purchasing some drapes for the living room.*

FUTURE ... will purchase**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be purchasing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have purchased**PAST PASSIVE**

—	—
—	—
it was purchased	they were purchased

• *The items were purchased with a credit card.*

COMPLEMENTS**purchase** _____ buy

OBJECT

He purchased **everything we would need for the picnic**.We have never purchased **anything** at that store.We could purchase **the refrigerator** on an installment plan.

PASSIVE

Supplies are purchased by the office manager.

WH-CLAUSE

You should only purchase **what you need right away**.We will only purchase **what is on sale**.He can purchase **whatever he wants to**.**purchase** _____ acquire/achieve by sacrifice

OBJECT

The army purchased **its victory** at a very high price.

PASSIVE

Our goal was purchased at great expense.

The fortress was purchased by the sacrifice of many brave men.

PRESENT

I pursue we pursue
 you pursue you pursue
 he/she/it pursues they pursue
 • *He pursues moderation in all things.*

PAST

I pursued we pursued
 you pursued you pursued
 he/she/it pursued they pursued
 • *The company pursued a number of options.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pursued

PAST PERFECT ... had pursued

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pursuing we are pursuing
 you are pursuing you are pursuing
 he/she/it is pursuing they are pursuing
 • *I am pursuing a career in electronics.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pursuing we were pursuing
 you were pursuing you were pursuing
 he/she/it was pursuing they were pursuing
 • *We were pursuing an impossible goal.*

FUTURE ... will pursue

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pursuing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pursued

PAST PASSIVE

I was pursued we were pursued
 you were pursued you were pursued
 he/she/it was pursued they were pursued
 • *The stolen vehicle was pursued by several police cars.*

COMPLEMENTS

pursue _____ chase/follow in order to catch/attack

OBJECT

The hunters pursued **the elk** all day.
 Grant's army pursued **Lee's remaining forces** westward.
 A good salesman pursues **anyone who expresses the slightest interest in his product.**

PASSIVE

The suspect is being pursued by the police.

pursue _____ continue to work to achieve

OBJECT

Barbara is pursuing **a master's degree.**
 Becky is pursuing **a career in architecture.**
 We all must pursue **our own dreams.**
 Sam pursues **knowledge** for its own sake.
 An appeal to a higher court was pursued.

PASSIVE

pursue _____ carry further, continue

OBJECT

The teacher won't pursue **the matter.**
 Can we pursue **this discussion** after lunch?

pursue _____ engage in, practice

OBJECT

I pursue **letterpress printing** as a hobby.
 Melanie pursues **music**, and Kathy pursues **gardening.**

PRESENT

I push we push
 you push you push
 he/she/it pushes they push
 • *He always pushes things too far.*

PAST

I pushed we pushed
 you pushed you pushed
 he/she/it pushed they pushed
 • *I already pushed the elevator button.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pushed

PAST PERFECT ... had pushed

PAST PASSIVE

I was pushed we were pushed
 you were pushed you were pushed
 he/she/it was pushed they were pushed
 • *The table was pushed against the wall.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am pushing we are pushing
 you are pushing you are pushing
 he/she/it is pushing they are pushing
 • *The company is pushing its new insurance product.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was pushing we were pushing
 you were pushing you were pushing
 he/she/it was pushing they were pushing
 • *I was pushing the bike because it had a flat tire.*

FUTURE ... will push

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be pushing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have pushed

COMPLEMENTS

push shove, crowd forward

push press (against) something

push _____ cause to move ahead of one
OBJECTpush _____ press (against)
OBJECTpush _____ move with force
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROMpush _____ cause to move with force
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROMpush _____ promote, advocate
OBJECTpush _____ put pressure on
OBJECT
PASSIVE
OBJECT + INFINITIVE
PASSIVE

Stop pushing!

I hate it when people push.

Nothing happens when I push.

Push and hold for a few seconds.

Can you push **the stroller**?Don't push **the red button**!The crowd pushed **through the door**.The army was pushing **south**.He pushed **past the security guards**.The nurse pushed **the needle into my arm**.We had to push **the car off the road**.The company was pushing **its new allergy drug**.The Democrats were pushing **their defense policy**.The coach was pushing **his players**.

We were being pushed too hard.

We pushed **them to make a decision as soon as possible**.The sales force was being pushed **to sell more**.

PHRASAL VERBS

push **SEP** along/aside/away/back/
down/in/out/etc. cause to move
with force in a specified directionpush **off** leave, go awaypush **on** continue movingpush **SEP** through succeed in accomplishing

Maria pushed the baby carriage along.

Gwen pushed her plate away and left the table.

I couldn't push the lid down.

It's midnight—time to push off.

They hadn't eaten in days, and still they pushed on.

We finally managed to push the proposal through.

PRESENT

I put we put
 you put you put
 he/she/it puts they put
 • *He always puts his car in the garage.*

PAST

I put we put
 you put you put
 he/she/it put they put
 • *I put the package on his desk.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has put

PAST PERFECT ... had put

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am putting we are putting
 you are putting you are putting
 he/she/it is putting they are putting
 • *I am putting the dishes into the dishwasher.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was putting we were putting
 you were putting you were putting
 he/she/it was putting they were putting
 • *The kids were putting peanut butter on their fruit.*

FUTURE ... will put

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be putting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have put

PAST PASSIVE

I was put we were put
 you were put you were put
 he/she/it was put they were put
 • *The documents were put into the safe.*

COMPLEMENTS

put _____ place, set

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I always put **my keys on the dresser**.
 We put **the new rug in the living room**.
 The guards put **a barricade across the road**.
 She put **her hand under the kitten** to lift it.
 Terry put **her knitting aside** and picked up a book.
 The clerk put **a price of \$49.99 on the dress**.
 The coach put **pressure on the team**.
 The picture was put **above the fireplace**.

PASSIVE

put _____ insert

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I put **the key into the lock** and turned it.
 We put **the note under his door**.
 The telephone company will put **a new satellite into orbit**.
 You will need to put **your car into the garage**.
 The suitcases were put **into the closet**.

PASSIVE

put _____ cause to be in a certain condition/state

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

His lectures put **me to sleep** sometimes.
 The CEO's decision put **3,000 people out of work**.
 Don't put **yourself in danger**.
 He always puts **me in a good mood**.
 I'd like to put **the old lawn mower to good use**.

put _____ express, say

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I thought he put **it very well**.
 You will need to put **your ideas in a simpler form**.
 I put **my comments in writing**.
 His complaints were put **rather rudely**, I thought.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

put SEP **across** *communicate successfully*

put SEP **aside** *save*

put SEP **away** *store*

put SEP **away** *eat/drink a lot of*

put SEP **down** *overcome with force, suppress*

put SEP **down** *write down*

put SEP **down** *include on a list*

put SEP **down** *find fault with, insult*

put SEP **down** *pay as the first installment*

put **forth** _____ *grow [PLANTS]*

put SEP **forth/forward** *propose, suggest*

put SEP **in** *add*

put SEP **in** *install*

put **in for** _____ *formally request*

put SEP **off** *repel*

put SEP **off** *postpone*

put **on** _____ *pretend*

put _____ **on** *deceive [someone]*

put SEP **on** *dress in [clothing]*

put SEP **on** *add*

put SEP **on** *present [entertainment]*

put SEP **on** *apply [cosmetics]*

put SEP **on** *start [something] playing/working*

put SEP **out** *extinguish*

put SEP **out** *publish, issue*

put **out** _____ *generate a lot of*

put SEP **out** *make unconscious*

put SEP **through** *succeed in doing*

put _____ **through** *pay for [someone's] attendance at*

put SEP **up** *give lodging to*

put SEP **up** *offer*

put SEP **up** *provide*

put SEP **up** *build*

put SEP **up** *nominate*

put **up with** _____ *tolerate*

put **upon** _____ *take advantage of*

He managed to put across the complexity of the plan.

We put aside the income tax refund for our retirement.

We need to put away the good silverware.

Would you put the ketchup away, please?

Steve can really put away the potato chips.

The government put down a rebellion in the provinces.

It's important to put everything down on paper.

The campaign volunteer put me down as a "maybe."

She put him down in front of all their friends.

You can put 10% down and pay the rest in 90 days.

The daffodils are putting forth their blooms early.

She put forward her plan to save endangered species.

Could you put in a paragraph about offshore drilling?

We put in more shelves for our books.

The defendant put in for a change of venue.

Drake put in for the vacant Senate seat.

Bubba's vulgar language really puts me off.

We'll have to put the meeting off until next week.

Ron put on his fake French accent, and we all laughed.

Don't believe him; he's just putting you on.

Will I need to put my coat on?

Uncle Nelson has put on quite a bit of weight.

The senior class put on a musical.

She puts lipstick on in the morning and after lunch.

We put on some rock music for Dad.

Mom put a pot of coffee on for us.

The campers put the fire out with water from the pond.

They put out 40 titles a year.

The Beatles put "The White Album" out in 1968.

Your laptop puts out a lot of heat.

The anesthesia will put you out, and you won't remember the surgery.

The new CEO put the merger through.

Laurie put herself through law school at Georgetown.

We can put your parents up for one night.

The airline put the stranded passengers up at a hotel.

Our neighbors put their house up for sale.

John put up \$2,000 for the new playground.

They put up a new drugstore in just four months.

They put Renni up for a three-year term.

Martha couldn't put up with the noise anymore.

I don't like to be put upon by my friends.

PRESENT

I question	we question
you question	you question
he/she/it questions	they question

• *The committee questions our estimates.*

PAST

I questioned	we questioned
you questioned	you questioned
he/she/it questioned	they questioned

• *Nobody questioned his good intentions.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has questioned

PAST PERFECT ... had questioned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am questioning	we are questioning
you are questioning	you are questioning
he/she/it is questioning	they are questioning

• *The detective is questioning the suspect now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was questioning	we were questioning
you were questioning	you were questioning
he/she/it was questioning	they were questioning

• *The auditor was questioning our travel expenses.*

FUTURE ... will question

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be questioning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have questioned

PAST PASSIVE

I was questioned	we were questioned
you were questioned	you were questioned
he/she/it was questioned	they were questioned

• *He was questioned about the accident.*

COMPLEMENTS

question _____ request information from, ask

OBJECT

The police were questioning **everyone**.
Whom will they question next?

PASSIVE

The whole family was questioned.

OBJECT + *about* OBJECT

A policeman questioned **them about the accident**.
The whole office questioned **me about the memo**.

PASSIVE

We were questioned **about Alice's dinner party**.

OBJECT + *about* WH-CLAUSE

I questioned **the kids about who had started the fight**.
The reporter questioned **us about what had happened**.

OBJECT + *on* OBJECT

Parents always question **teenagers about where they are going**.
He questioned **me on the difference between banks and credit unions**.

PASSIVE

The students questioned **the professor on the uses of science and technology**.

The expert witness was questioned **on the validity of DNA testing**.

question _____ doubt, object to

OBJECT

The press questioned **Senator Blather's vague explanation**.
The detective questioned **the suspect's alibi**.

PASSIVE

Brent's honesty was never questioned.

WH-CLAUSE

I really question **what they are doing**.
Didn't you question **why Bobbie got in so late**?
We need to question **how much all of this is going to cost**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I question **spending any more money than we have to**.
The chair questioned **taking any more time on this issue**.
Everyone questioned **John's behaving so strangely at the party**.

PRESENT

I quit we quit
 you quit you quit
 he/she/it quits they quit
 • *He usually quits around 5 o'clock.*

PAST

I quit we quit
 you quit you quit
 he/she/it quit they quit
 • *I quit my job last year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has quit

PAST PERFECT ... had quit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am quitting we are quitting
 you are quitting you are quitting
 he/she/it is quitting they are quitting
 • *I am quitting next week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was quitting we were quitting
 you were quitting you were quitting
 he/she/it was quitting they were quitting
 • *He was quitting because he needed a full-time job.*

FUTURE ... will quit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be quitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have quit

PAST PASSIVE

Quit is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

quit *stop functioning*

My cell phone just quit.
 The engine quits if you give it too much gas.
 His poor old heart finally quit.

quit *stop working at the end of a work period*

When do they quit for the day?
 I am getting tired. How soon can we quit?
 We can't quit until the next shift comes in.

quit *resign from a job*

That's it. I quit!
 How many people quit in the course of a month?
 We are moving to a new town, so I will have to quit.

quit *admit defeat, give up*

You beat me again. I quit.
 No matter how bad things look, we will never quit.
 They quit before the game was half over.

quit _____ *voluntarily stop doing [a job, school, activity]*

OBJECT

I am going to quit **my job** at the end of the year.
 Tom quit **the police force** and went to law school.
 Mike quit **college** to join the Marines.
 He quit **the team** because he injured his knee.

WH-CLAUSE

You need to quit **what you are doing** and get a better job.
 Quit **whatever you are doing** and listen to this!

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I have to quit **smoking so much**.
 The company is going to quit **paying overtime**.
 He can't quit **worrying about what is going to happen**.

quit _____ *leave, move away from*

OBJECT

They quit **the suburbs** and moved into the city.

PHRASAL VERBS

quit on _____ *leave one's job without warning [someone]*

The carpenters quit on us in the middle of the renovation.

quit on _____ *stop functioning while [someone] is using it*

The lawn mower quits on me when I get into the tall grass.
 The furnace quit on us again.

PRESENT

I quote we quote
 you quote you quote
 he/she/it quotes they quote
 • *Margo quotes Jane Austen all the time.*

PAST

I quoted we quoted
 you quoted you quoted
 he/she/it quoted they quoted
 • *He quoted a price that was too high.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has quoted

PAST PERFECT ... had quoted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am quoting we are quoting
 you are quoting you are quoting
 he/she/it is quoting they are quoting
 • *I am quoting you; is that okay?*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was quoting we were quoting
 you were quoting you were quoting
 he/she/it was quoting they were quoting
 • *He was quoting something he heard on the radio.*

FUTURE ... will quote

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be quoting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have quoted

PAST PASSIVE

I was quoted we were quoted
 you were quoted you were quoted
 he/she/it was quoted they were quoted
 • *You were quoted in the newspaper yesterday.*

COMPLEMENTS

quote *repeat another's words/writing* Don't blame me; I was only quoting.
 You shouldn't quote without citing the original source.
 Why quote when you can write your own original material?

quote _____ *repeat / closely paraphrase another's words/writing*
OBJECT The reporter was quoting a **government official**.
 Can I quote **you** on that?
 You're quoting **Jane Austen** quite a lot in this book.
 Gregory likes to quote **Hamlet**. [THE CHARACTER]
 To quote **Hamlet**: "To be or not to be, that is the question."
PASSIVE Shakespeare is probably quoted more often than any other
 writer.
from **OBJECT** Gregory likes to quote from **Hamlet**. [THE PLAY]
 Omar quotes from **the Talmud** a lot.
 Manuel quotes from **Don Quijote**.

quote _____ *draw on or make allusions to previous work*
OBJECT The film quotes **1930s gangster movies**.
 The fourth movement quotes **themes from the opening movement**.
PASSIVE Classical references are often quoted in Renaissance literature.

quote _____ *make one's opinion/feelings public*
OBJECT + AS PRESENT PARTICIPLE They quoted **the CEO as rejecting the contract offer**.
PASSIVE The president was quoted **as having no regrets**.
 Senator Blather was quoted **as doubting the validity of global warming**.

quote _____ *give [the price of]*
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT He quoted **me a good price**.
 United Airlines quoted **us a fare of \$360**.
 The lawn service quoted **Judy a price of \$60 an hour**.
to **PARAPHRASE** He quoted **a good price to me**.
 United quoted **a fare of \$360 to us**.
 The lawn service quoted **a price of \$60 an hour to Judy**.

PRESENT

I raise we raise
 you raise you raise
 he/she/it raises they raise

• *He raises money for nonprofit groups.*

PAST

I raised we raised
 you raised you raised
 he/she/it raised they raised

• *My family raised cotton in Central Valley.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has raised

PAST PERFECT ... had raised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am raising we are raising
 you are raising you are raising
 he/she/it is raising they are raising

• *The campaign is raising awareness of breast cancer.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was raising we were raising
 you were raising you were raising
 he/she/it was raising they were raising

• *They were raising the anchor just as we boarded.*

FUTURE ... will raise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be raising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have raised

PAST PASSIVE

I was raised we were raised
 you were raised you were raised
 he/she/it was raised they were raised

• *The bid on the painting was raised to \$10,000.*

COMPLEMENTS

raise _____ lift, move to a higher position/level

OBJECT

I raised **my hand** to get the teacher's attention.
 The crane raised **the air conditioning unit** to the roof.
 A car raised **a cloud of dust** along the lane.
 The boats were all being raised off the sand by the tide.

PASSIVE

raise _____ increase the amount/strength of

OBJECT

The news raised **everyone's hopes**.
 The Fed announced that it would raise **the interest rate**.
 We will have to raise **our offer**.
 The boss raised **my salary** \$75 a week.
 The meeting raised **our hopes for a quick settlement**.
 The noise was raised to an unbearable level.

PASSIVE

raise _____ cause to grow [plants, animals]

OBJECT

Their farm raises **barley and lentils**.
 Everyone used to raise **a few chickens**.

raise _____ bring up [children]

OBJECT

We raised **three children** in that house.
 Grandma raised **her family** single-handedly.
 "I didn't raise **my boy to be a soldier**." [1915 ANTIWAR SONG]
 Children were raised **to respect their elders**.
 Our children weren't raised **to act like that**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

raise _____ amass, collect [money, resources]

OBJECT

The company has to raise **more capital**.
 We raised **money** for the hurricane victims.
 The rebels are raising **an army** in the mountains.

raise _____ bring up [an issue/topic for consideration]

OBJECT

He raised **a number of objections to the bill**.
 You raise **a good point**.

PASSIVE

The issue was raised earlier.

raise _____ cause to happen/exist

OBJECT

His bad jokes raised **a few groans from the audience**.

PRESENT

I range we range
 you range you range
 he/she/it ranges they range
 • *His territory ranges across California.*

PAST

I ranged we ranged
 you ranged you ranged
 he/she/it ranged they ranged
 • *The children ranged widely in age.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ranged

PAST PERFECT ... had ranged

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ranging we are ranging
 you are ranging you are ranging
 he/she/it is ranging they are ranging
 • *The wolves are ranging farther into the valley.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ranging we were ranging
 you were ranging you were ranging
 he/she/it was ranging they were ranging
 • *The scouts were ranging deep into enemy territory.*

FUTURE

... will range

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be ranging

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have ranged

PAST PASSIVE

Range is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

range _____ vary [between two limits], extend

ADVERB OF TIME

The Age of Discovery ranges **from the late 15th to the early 17th centuries.**

ADVERB OF PLACE

The children range **from six to nine in age.**

ADVERB OF MANNER

The area we service ranges **from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River.**

Our archaeological work ranged **across the entire Southwest.**

The rugs range **from inexpensive cotton ones to pricey handwoven wool ones.**

The Thai dishes ranged **from very spicy to extremely spicy.**

The wedding caterer's menu ranged **from mostaccioli and fried chicken to chateaubriand and pan-seared halibut.**

The cost ranges **between two and three hundred dollars.**

range _____ scan, wander

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

His eyes ranged **around the room.**

Her glance ranged **from face to face.**

range _____ live in

OBJECT

The sawfish ranged **the Atlantic Ocean from New York to Brazil.**

ADVERB OF PLACE

In 1850, 50 million bison ranged **over the North American prairie.**

PRESENT

I reach we reach
 you reach you reach
 he/she/it reaches they reach

• *His show reaches its intended audience.*

PAST

I reached we reached
 you reached you reached
 he/she/it reached they reached

• *The train reached St. Louis around 2:45.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has reached

PAST PERFECT ... had reached

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reaching we are reaching
 you are reaching you are reaching
 he/she/it is reaching they are reaching

• *We are reaching our limit.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reaching we were reaching
 you were reaching you were reaching
 he/she/it was reaching they were reaching

• *I was reaching for the salt.*

FUTURE

... will reach

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be reaching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have reached

PAST PASSIVE

I was reached we were reached
 you were reached you were reached
 he/she/it was reached they were reached

• *He was reached by phone this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

reach stretch one's hand to grasp something

reach _____ stretch one's hand to grasp

OBJECT

for OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

reach _____ arrive at

OBJECT

reach _____ extend/develop/increase to

OBJECT

reach _____ get in touch with, contact

OBJECT

reach _____ affect, influence

OBJECT

How far can you reach?

I am reaching as far as I can, but I still can't get it.

The little boy could barely reach **the door handle**.

Can you reach **the phone** for me?

I can't reach **the books on the top shelf**.

Peter and Gisela reached **for the milk jug** at the same time.

Clint reached in his pocket **for his keys**.

Reach **me my glasses**, please.

Can you reach **me the phone**?

Reach **my glasses for me**, please.

Can you reach **the phone for me**?

I reached **down** and picked up my shoes.

He reached **into the drawer** and took out a knife.

Alison reached **under her seat** and pulled out a package.

We should reach **Phoenix** soon.

The news didn't reach **us** until yesterday.

I reached **the finish line** totally exhausted.

The negotiators finally reached **an agreement** last night.

The tide had reached **its highest point**.

The extension cord won't reach **the desk**.

Our broadcast signal reaches **the entire metropolitan area**.

We can vote when we reach **18 years of age**.

It will reach **68 degrees** tomorrow.

Unemployment reached **its peak in 1933**.

Our Smart Car can reach **30 miles per hour** in 6.5 seconds.

The teacher's patience had finally reached **its limit**.

Were you able to reach **Samuel**?

Successful authors reach **their readers' hearts**.

PRESENT

I read we read
 you read you read
 he/she/it reads they read
 • *He never reads his e-mail.*

PAST

I read we read
 you read you read
 he/she/it read they read
 • *She read nothing but short stories.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has read

PAST PERFECT ... had read

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reading we are reading
 you are reading you are reading
 he/she/it is reading they are reading
 • *Be quiet! I'm reading.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reading we were reading
 you were reading you were reading
 he/she/it was reading they were reading
 • *I was just reading your note.*

FUTURE ... will read

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be reading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have read

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was read they were read
 • *The transcript was read aloud in court.*

NOTE: The present form of *read* rhymes with *seed*; the past forms of *read* rhyme with *bed*.

COMPLEMENTS

read *understand writing/printing*

Can any of the children read yet?

read *look at and understand the content of printed material*

I love to read.
 I always read on the airplane.

read _____ *speak [written/printed/on-screen words] aloud*
 ADVERB OF MANNER

She reads **beautifully**.
 DJ reads **with a different voice for each character**.
 He reads **too softly for everyone to hear**.

OBJECT

Thank you. You read **that** beautifully.
 Paul read **the memo** in a perfect imitation of the boss's voice.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Can you read **me a story**?
 The teacher reads **the class a book** for the last 15 minutes.
 Can you read **a story to me**?
 The teacher reads **a book to the class** for the last 15 minutes.

to PARAPHRASE

PASSIVE

We were read a story every night.

read _____ *decode and get information from [a set of letters/numbers/symbols]*
 OBJECT

I can't read **her handwriting**.
 He taught himself to read **Old Icelandic**.
 The gas man came to read **the meter** this morning.
 Yvonne can't read **music**, but she plays beautifully.
 Will my computer be able to read **this file**?

read _____ *look at and understand the content of [written/printed/on-screen material]*
 OBJECT

I read **the newspaper** every morning at breakfast.
 He read **your e-mail** and will get back to you.

PASSIVE

Julius Caesar was read in every tenth-grade classroom.

WH-CLAUSE

I read **what you said about me**.
 You need to read **what is in the fine print** very carefully.
 He will read **whatever he can get his hands on**.



read _____ learn from printed/on-screen material

THAT-CLAUSE

I read **that the company may be up for sale.**
The coach read **that we are favored to win.**
We read **that the parade may be cancelled.**

read _____ learn/interpret the meaning of

OBJECT

I couldn't read **her face** at all.
He is very good at reading **people's body language.**
Economists don't always read **inflationary signals** correctly.
Diplomatic experts read **the implications of every government action.**

OBJECT + *as* OBJECT

I read **his note as an apology.**
Everyone read **his press release as an announcement of his candidacy.**

read _____ measure and show

OBJECT

The speedometer reads **55 miles per hour.**
The thermometer reads **32 degrees Celsius.**

read _____ state

DIRECT QUOTATION

The sign reads, "**No shirt, no shoes, no service.**"

PHRASAL VERBS

read _____ **in/into** infer [additional ideas/messages] from reading

What did you read into Senator Blather's remarks?

read **SEP** **off** read aloud [a list]

The teacher read off the names of students who had won awards.

read **SEP** **over/through** read completely

Would you read over my paper before I turn it in?

read up on _____ study/learn by reading

We have to read up on the current drug laws before the conference next week.

EXPRESSIONS

read **between the lines** understand the intended but not explicit meaning of something said/written

She is good at reading between the lines of politicians' speeches.

read **lips** determine the words that someone is saying by watching him/her speak

When talking to someone who reads lips, you should talk normally.

Read **my lips.** Believe what I am about to tell you.

"Read my lips: No new taxes." [PRESIDENT GEORGE H.W. BUSH]

read [someone] **his/her rights** state [someone's] legal rights to [someone who has been arrested]

The arresting officer read the suspect his rights.

read [someone] **like a book** understand [someone] well

His calm manner doesn't fool me; I can read him like a book.

read [someone] **the riot act** scold severely

When Ed came home late, his father read him the riot act.

read [someone's] **mind/thoughts** understand what [someone] is thinking

How did you know I wanted pizza for dinner? You must have read my mind.

PRESENT

I realize	we realize
you realize	you realize
he/she/it realizes	they realize

• *He now realizes that he made a mistake.*

PAST

I realized	we realized
you realized	you realized
he/she/it realized	they realized

• *I realized how much it was going to cost.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has realized

PAST PERFECT ... had realized

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am realizing	we are realizing
you are realizing	you are realizing
he/she/it is realizing	they are realizing

• *Toni is realizing her potential as a platform diver.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was realizing	we were realizing
you were realizing	you were realizing
he/she/it was realizing	they were realizing

• *We were just realizing how much is at stake.*

FUTURE ... will realize

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be realizing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have realized

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was realized	they were realized

• *His worst fears were realized.*

COMPLEMENTS

realize _____ understand completely

OBJECT

I finally realized **my anxiety** for what it was.
Eventually they realized **the magnitude of the problem**.

PASSIVE

The full extent of the problem was never realized.

THAT-CLAUSE

I realized **that we were totally lost**.
No one had realized **that the car had a flat tire**.
Do you realize **that we are leaving in two days**?

WH-CLAUSE

He finally realized **who I was**.
Everyone realized **what was involved**.
I realize **how strange my proposal sounds**.

realize _____ make real, achieve

OBJECT

We were realizing **our dream vacation**.
Good coaching helps players realize **their full potential**.
Our goal was never realized.

PASSIVE

realize _____ earn

OBJECT

How soon can the business realize **a profit**?
We realized **\$200,000** from the sale of the property.

PASSIVE

The sum of \$240 was realized from the senior class car wash.

PRESENT

I recall we recall
 you recall you recall
 he/she/it recalls they recall
 • *The incident recalls a similar one in 2001.*

PAST

I recalled we recalled
 you recalled you recalled
 he/she/it recalled they recalled
 • *I finally recalled his name.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has recalled

PAST PERFECT ... had recalled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am recalling we are recalling
 you are recalling you are recalling
 he/she/it is recalling they are recalling
 • *We are recalling troops from the war zone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was recalling we were recalling
 you were recalling you were recalling
 he/she/it was recalling they were recalling
 • *The company was recalling all packaged spinach.*

FUTURE ... will recall

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be recalling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have recalled

PAST PASSIVE

I was recalled we were recalled
 you were recalled you were recalled
 he/she/it was recalled they were recalled
 • *The ambassador was recalled in protest.*

COMPLEMENTS

recall _____ remember

OBJECT

I can recall **the accident** like it was yesterday.
 He couldn't recall **the combination to his locker**.

PASSIVE

Many early memories are easily recalled.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Everyone recalled **Senator Blather promising to cut taxes**.
 I certainly recall **Kathi ordering a taxi for 9 A.M.**

THAT-CLAUSE

He recalled **that he had to go to another meeting**.

I recall **that you were pretty upset about it**.

Fortunately, Betty recalled **that we had already ordered the replacement part**.

WH-CLAUSE

He just recalled **who she is**.

I can't recall **what I was about to say**.

Can you recall **how much they charged us last year?**

WH-INFINITIVE

He couldn't recall **whom to ask for**.

Do you recall **where to go next?**

I am trying to recall **how to set my alarm clock**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Tom recalled **meeting them once before**.

He recalled **leaving his passport at the hotel**.

I dimly recall **hearing something about it**.

recall _____ bring to mind

OBJECT

What happened to him recalls **some similar events in my own life**.

Every pirate movie recalls **Stevenson's Treasure Island**.

Let us recall **the words of our Founding Fathers**.

The fourth movement recalls **themes from the first movement**.

recall _____ order the return of

OBJECT

India recalled **the ambassador** to demonstrate its concern over the incident.

Meat processors are recalling **ground beef** again.

Food products containing nuts are frequently recalled.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I receive we receive
 you receive you receive
 he/she/it receives they receive
 • *He receives a monthly pension check.*

PAST

I received we received
 you received you received
 he/she/it received they received
 • *I just received the package in the mail.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has received

PAST PERFECT ... had received

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am receiving we are receiving
 you are receiving you are receiving
 he/she/it is receiving they are receiving
 • *I am receiving a mixed message here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was receiving we were receiving
 you were receiving you were receiving
 he/she/it was receiving they were receiving
 • *We were receiving a dozen inquiries a day.*

FUTURE ... will receive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be receiving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have received

PAST PASSIVE

I was received we were received
 you were received you were received
 he/she/it was received they were received
 • *The visitors were received with open arms.*

COMPLEMENTS

receive _____ get/take [what has been given/sent]

OBJECT

The kids received **birthday presents** from their grandparents.
 Every struggling business wants to receive **a tax cut**.
 I typically receive **\$20 an hour**.
 I received **your shipment of 20,000 widgets** today.
 Your letter was received yesterday.

PASSIVE

receive _____ formally greet/welcome

OBJECT

The wedding party received **the guests** in the church hall.
 The company only receives **visitors** during working hours.
 We were received with great hospitality.

PASSIVE

receive _____ experience, be given

OBJECT

The play received **a standing ovation**.
 He received **a suspended sentence**.
 The senator's statement received **a lot of press coverage**.
 I only received **minor cuts and scrapes** in the accident.
 The Gulf Coast received **the full force of the hurricane**.
 Maude received **a liver transplant**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

The office received **the news that one of our deliverymen had been robbed**.
 He received **the feeling that they were not getting along very well**.
 I received **the distinct impression that they were hostile to the idea**.

receive _____ get [a radio/television signal]

OBJECT

We can only receive **AM radio** where we live.

PRESENT

I recognize we recognize
you recognize you recognize
he/she/it recognizes they recognize

• *Everyone recognizes the problem.*

PAST

I recognized we recognized
you recognized you recognized
he/she/it recognized they recognized

• *We recognized what she meant.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has recognized

PAST PERFECT ... had recognized

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Recognize is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Recognize is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE

... will recognize

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have recognized

PAST PASSIVE

I was recognized we were recognized
you were recognized you were recognized
he/she/it was recognized they were recognized

• *The suspect was recognized by a neighbor.*

COMPLEMENTS

recognize _____ identify [someone/something previously known]

OBJECT

I hardly recognized **him** with his mustache.
You may not recognize **me** after all these years.
I didn't even recognize **our old house** when I saw it.

recognize _____ identify on the basis of some characteristic

OBJECT

Most doctors today wouldn't recognize **a case of scurvy** if they saw one.

PASSIVE

The software can recognize **virtually any type font**.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

The scar was recognized by the murder victim's sister.

Jack recognized **the language as Catalan**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Apparently, the guards had not recognized **the man as a threat**.

I recognized **him to be a friend of my brother's**.

WH-CLAUSE

We finally recognized **the bird to be a kind of parrot**.

Don't you recognize **who she is**?

I quickly recognized **what the problem was**.

I didn't recognize **where we were**.

recognize _____ publicly give special notice to

OBJECT

We would like to recognize **all members of the armed forces**.

PASSIVE

Would Ms. Smith please stand and be recognized?

recognize _____ formally authorize to speak

OBJECT

The chair recognizes **Mr. Peabody**.

"The chair recognizes **the distinguished gentleman from**

California." [FORMAL LANGUAGE OF THE U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES]

recognize _____ acknowledge the existence/validity/legality of

OBJECT

I recognize **the problems you face**.

Everyone recognizes **Bob's many qualifications for the job**.

PASSIVE

Dual citizenship is not recognized in some countries.

THAT-CLAUSE

We recognize **that you have a legitimate claim**.

Everyone recognized **that the problem had gotten out of hand**.

PRESENT

I recommend we recommend
you recommend you recommend
he/she/it recommends they recommend
• *The chef recommends the grilled trout.*

PAST

I recommended we recommended
you recommended you recommended
he/she/it recommended they recommended
• *She recommended that we eat lunch here.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has recommended

PAST PERFECT ... had recommended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am recommending we are recommending
you are recommending you are recommending
he/she/it is recommending they are recommending
• *I am recommending her for the job.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was recommending we were recommending
you were recommending you were recommending
he/she/it was recommending they were recommending
• *Her doctor was recommending antibiotics.*

FUTURE ... will recommend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be recommending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have recommended

PAST PASSIVE

I was recommended we were recommended
you were recommended you were recommended
he/she/it was recommended they were recommended
• *The play was highly recommended.*

COMPLEMENTS

recommend _____ suggest favorably / as advice

OBJECT

Can you recommend **a plumber?**

The architect recommends **a granite countertop.**

PASSIVE

Term life insurance is recommended for young couples.

to OBJECT + BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

I will recommend **to Bob that he look for a better job.**

She recommended **to her parents that they travel while they still can.**

The agent recommended **to Jayne that she take the train instead of flying.**

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The committee recommended **that he be hired.**

The doctor recommends **that I be seen by a specialist.**

Alex is recommending **that he stay home today.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He recommended **our staying overnight in Monterey.**

Would anybody recommend **doing that?**

They recommend **setting the thermostat at 65 degrees.**

PRESENT

I record we record
 you record you record
 he/she/it records they record
 • *The device records blood pressure.*

PAST

I recorded we recorded
 you recorded you recorded
 he/she/it recorded they recorded
 • *I recorded all of our expenses.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has recorded

PAST PERFECT ... had recorded

PAST PASSIVE

I was recorded we were recorded
 you were recorded you were recorded
 he/she/it was recorded they were recorded
 • *Our telephone conversation was recorded.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am recording we are recording
 you are recording you are recording
 he/she/it is recording they are recording
 • *I am recording every word of the speech.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was recording we were recording
 you were recording you were recording
 he/she/it was recording they were recording
 • *The band was recording in the 1950s.*

FUTURE ... will record

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be recording

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have recorded

NOTE: The verb *record* is stressed on the second syllable, which rhymes with *board*.
 The noun *record* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

record *make an audio or visual recording*

Are we recording now?
 The band first recorded in 1985.

record _____ *make an audio or visual recording of*

OBJECT

She is recording **her first album**.
 The studio is recording **all of his songs**.

PASSIVE

All of her stage performances have been recorded.
 All 911 calls are recorded.

record _____ *write down for later use*

OBJECT

We need to record **all of our appointments**.
 The doctor asked him to record **everything he eats**.
 The coroner recorded **a verdict of accidental death**.
 The minutes of all our meetings are recorded.
 The committee recorded **that it could not reach a decision**.
 His notes recorded **that there had been an earthquake that day**.

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

The police recorded **who went in and out of the building**.
 I carefully recorded **what our expenses were**.
 Did you record **how long it took**?

record _____ *achieve*

OBJECT

Our team recorded **its first victory of the season**.

record _____ *measure and show*

OBJECT

The thermometer recorded **a high of 103** today.
 Electrocardiography records **the heart's electrical signals**.

PRESENT

I reduce we reduce
 you reduce you reduce
 he/she/it reduces they reduce
 • *The software reduces background noise.*

PAST

I reduced we reduced
 you reduced you reduced
 he/she/it reduced they reduced
 • *The government reduced the speed limit.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has reduced

PAST PERFECT ... had reduced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reducing we are reducing
 you are reducing you are reducing
 he/she/it is reducing they are reducing
 • *We are reducing our fixed costs.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reducing we were reducing
 you were reducing you were reducing
 he/she/it was reducing they were reducing
 • *The storm was reducing visibility.*

FUTURE ... will reduce

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be reducing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have reduced

PAST PASSIVE

I was reduced we were reduced
 you were reduced you were reduced
 he/she/it was reduced they were reduced
 • *Their wages were reduced by 10%.*

COMPLEMENTS

reduce lose weight

reduce _____ make less/smaller

OBJECT

After Christmas, everyone is trying to reduce.

We used mufflers to reduce **the noise**.

I have reduced **my waist** by two inches.

The stimulus program should reduce **unemployment** by 3.5 million people.

The company reduced **my work hours**.

Erosion is reducing **the thickness of the topsoil**.

She reduced **her dress size** from 18 to 14.

Before serving, reduce **the sauce** until it is thick and glossy.

The swelling had been reduced by 50%.

PASSIVE

reduce _____ change the state/condition of (usually smaller/lower/weaker/poorer)

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The storm reduced **the town to rubble**.

The news reduced **us to stunned silence**.

Hyperinflation had reduced **the currency to play money**.

Termites were reducing **the table to a pile of dust**.

The transportation department reduced **the highway to one lane**.

The prosecutor reduced **the charge to a misdemeanor**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The populations of entire communities were reduced **to beggars**.

The foreclosure reduced **the family to living out of their car**.

reduce _____ simplify

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Good teachers can reduce **complex ideas to their basic elements**.

He reduced **the whole process to three simple steps**.

PASSIVE

Wedding planning can't be reduced **to a list of do's and don'ts**.

PRESENT

I refer we refer
 you refer you refer
 he/she/it refers they refer
 • *He never refers to notes when he speaks.*

PAST

I referred we referred
 you referred you referred
 he/she/it referred they referred
 • *She referred me to the research librarian.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has referred

PAST PERFECT ... had referred

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am referring we are referring
 you are referring you are referring
 he/she/it is referring they are referring
 • *I know what you are referring to.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was referring we were referring
 you were referring you were referring
 he/she/it was referring they were referring
 • *Perhaps you were referring to something else.*

FUTURE ... will refer

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be referring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have referred

PAST PASSIVE

I was referred we were referred
 you were referred you were referred
 he/she/it was referred they were referred
 • *I was referred to a specialist.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *refer* is always used with *to*.

refer _____ mention, speak of

to OBJECT

He is always referring **to his famous friends**.Are you referring **to me**?The title of the movie refers **to a term from classical Greek rhetoric**.

to OBJECT + as PREDICATE NOUN

They refer **to their pets as their children**.The general referred **to his own soldiers as rabble**.

PASSIVE

New York is referred to **as the Big Apple**.

refer _____ go for help/information/etc.

to OBJECT

Applicants may refer **to the company's policy manual**.Students should refer **to the map on page 354**.The carpenters referred **to the architect's blueprints**.

refer _____ tell/direct to go for help/information/etc.

OBJECT + to OBJECT

John referred **them to his lawyer**.The instructions refer **you to the company's website**.Alice was referred **to yet another office**.

PASSIVE

refer _____ direct

OBJECT + to OBJECT

We must refer **this matter to the whole committee**.

refer _____ concern, be about

to OBJECT

This paragraph refers **to the use of solar energy for heating and cooling**.His remark refers **to his son's graduation five years before**.

PHRASAL VERBS

refer _____ back return

The court referred the case back to the prosecutor's office.

I referred the complaint back to Customer Service.

PRESENT

I reflect we reflect
 you reflect you reflect
 he/she/it reflects they reflect
 • *The mirror reflects the sun into the box.*

PAST

I reflected we reflected
 you reflected you reflected
 he/she/it reflected they reflected
 • *I reflected on what my wife had just said.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has reflected

PAST PERFECT ... had reflected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reflecting we are reflecting
 you are reflecting you are reflecting
 he/she/it is reflecting they are reflecting
 • *That light is reflecting right in my face.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reflecting we were reflecting
 you were reflecting you were reflecting
 he/she/it was reflecting they were reflecting
 • *He was reflecting on the problem.*

FUTURE

... will reflect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be reflecting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have reflected

PAST PASSIVE

I was reflected we were reflected
 you were reflected you were reflected
 he/she/it was reflected they were reflected
 • *The car was reflected in the mirror.*

COMPLEMENTS

reflect _____ throw back energy [light, sound, heat]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The sun was reflecting **into my eyes**.

The sound reflects **off the walls**.

An amazing amount of heat was reflecting **from the building**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The sun reflects **light off the water**.

The walls reflected **the sound all around the square**.

The building reflects **the heat into the courtyard**.

reflect _____ throw back the image of

OBJECT

The still pond reflected **the trees** in the moonlight.

The mirror didn't reflect **the face of Count Dracula, who was standing right in front of it**.

The statue was reflected in the wading pool.

PASSIVE

reflect _____ be the same as

OBJECT

His feelings seemed to reflect **my own**.

The review certainly reflected **my feelings about the play**.

The Dow generally reflects **the market as a whole**.

reflect _____ bring [credit/discredit] as a result

ADVERB OF MANNER + on OBJECT

His behavior reflected **badly on the school**.

The incident reflects **poorly on his judgment**.

Their actions reflect **well on the entire division**.

OBJECT + on OBJECT

This award reflects **credit on our whole organization**.

reflect _____ think seriously

on OBJECT

He reflected **on the misery he had caused his family**.

He reflected **that things had turned out surprisingly well**.

I reflected **that I had jumped to conclusions**.

Guy reflected **that he should have been more careful**.

THAT-CLAUSE

He reflected **on what had just happened**.

We were reflecting **on how it had all started**.

on WH-CLAUSE

I reflected **on how much he had learned**.

PRESENT

I refuse we refuse
 you refuse you refuse
 he/she/it refuses they refuse
 • *He refuses to admit his mistakes.*

PAST

I refused we refused
 you refused you refused
 he/she/it refused they refused
 • *The car refused to start.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has refused

PAST PERFECT ... had refused

PAST PASSIVE

I was refused we were refused
 you were refused you were refused
 he/she/it was refused they were refused
 • *Our offer was flatly refused.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am refusing we are refusing
 you are refusing you are refusing
 he/she/it is refusing they are refusing
 • *She is refusing to get involved.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was refusing we were refusing
 you were refusing you were refusing
 he/she/it was refusing they were refusing
 • *They were refusing to cooperate.*

FUTURE ... will refuse

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be refusing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have refused

NOTE: The verb *refuse* is stressed on the second syllable and rhymes with *accuse*.
 The noun *refuse* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

refuse *not accept something*

I am sure they will refuse.
 If I were in their shoes, I would refuse too.
 It is too late to refuse now.

refuse _____ *reject, not accept*

OBJECT

We decided to refuse **the offer**.
 I steadfastly refused **the dessert menu**.
 All offers of help were politely refused.

PASSIVE

refuse _____ *not allow*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The theater refused **them admission** because they were only 15 years old.
 I refused **her the satisfaction of seeing me upset**.
 The restaurant refused **them a table** without a reservation.

refuse _____ *say that one is unwilling*

INFINITIVE

He refused **to talk to us**.
 They refused **to be drawn into the controversy**.

refuse _____ *fail*

INFINITIVE

This door refuses **to stay closed**.
 My computer absolutely refuses **to talk to my printer**.

PRESENT

I regard we regard
 you regard you regard
 he/she/it regards they regard
 • *He regards the situation with optimism.*

PAST

I regarded we regarded
 you regarded you regarded
 he/she/it regarded they regarded
 • *I regarded the strange food suspiciously.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has regarded

PAST PERFECT ... had regarded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Regard is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Regard is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will regard

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have regarded

PAST PASSIVE

I was regarded we were regarded
 you were regarded you were regarded
 he/she/it was regarded they were regarded
 • *He was regarded as a potential leader.*

COMPLEMENTS

regard _____ look at, consider

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I regarded **my empty wallet** *sadly*.
 The hikers regarded **the rope bridge** *with apprehension*.
 Rob regarded **the senator's campaign** *with disdain*.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

The economic downturn is regarded *with great concern*.
 She regarded **Barbara** *as a second daughter*.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The company regards **Nebraska** *as its test market*.
 I have always regarded **him** *as something of a lightweight*.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE + ADVERB OF MANNER

Arizona has always been regarded *as our winter home*.
 The agency regards **the safety of children** *as paramount*.
 The prosecutor regarded **the governor's actions** *as fraudulent*.
 His last novel is regarded *as foolishly sentimental*.

PASSIVE

regard _____ concern, be about

OBJECT

I regarded **where he had parked his car** *with disbelief*.
 We regarded **how much we had earned** *with amazement*.
 What we had accomplished was regarded *with satisfaction*.

This letter regards **your mining company's intention to blast off the top of Black Mountain**.

PRESENT

I register we register
 you register you register
 he/she/it registers they register
 • *He always registers as an Independent.*

PAST

I registered we registered
 you registered you registered
 he/she/it registered they registered
 • *I registered my purchases with Customs.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has registered

PAST PERFECT ... had registered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am registering we are registering
 you are registering you are registering
 he/she/it is registering they are registering
 • *I am registering to vote this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was registering we were registering
 you were registering you were registering
 he/she/it was registering they were registering
 • *We were registering about 20 participants an hour.*

FUTURE ... will register

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be registering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have registered

PAST PASSIVE

I was registered we were registered
 you were registered you were registered
 he/she/it was registered they were registered
 • *My complaint was duly registered.*

COMPLEMENTS

register *enroll oneself in an activity / school*

Every participant has to register at the front desk.

register *be recognized*

The students will be registering all this week.
 When can we register?

register *measure and show a reading [OF INSTRUMENTS]*

The importance of what she said didn't register until later.
 His remark didn't register with me at all.

register _____ *enroll oneself*
 INFINITIVE

The dial didn't register at all.
 Such a small earth tremor won't register.

register _____ *enroll on a list*
 OBJECT

He registered **to vote** in 1945.
 I registered **to join the debate club**.
 Ten thousand people registered **to run in this year's marathon**.

PASSIVE

register _____ *give notice of, express*
 OBJECT

We registered **the boat** with the Coast Guard.
 Our precinct usually registers **several hundred new voters**.
 You must register **all documents**.
 The bride registered **her gift list** with Neiman Marcus.
 Two thousand incoming freshmen were registered this year.

register _____ *achieve*
 OBJECT

I would like to register **a complaint**.
 He certainly registered **his opposition**.
 We registered **our support of the bill** publicly.
 Her face registered **complete surprise**.

register _____ *measure and show*
 OBJECT

Our team registered **its first win in two weeks**.
 Rob's company will register **one million dollars in sales** this year.

The thermometer registers **54 degrees**.
 The rain gauge registered **1.3 inches**.

PRESENT

I reject we reject
 you reject you reject
 he/she/it rejects they reject
 • *He rejects all offers of help.*

PAST

I rejected we rejected
 you rejected you rejected
 he/she/it rejected they rejected
 • *We rejected their proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rejected

PAST PERFECT ... had rejected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rejecting we are rejecting
 you are rejecting you are rejecting
 he/she/it is rejecting they are rejecting
 • *We are rejecting your application.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rejecting we were rejecting
 you were rejecting you were rejecting
 he/she/it was rejecting they were rejecting
 • *He was rejecting all solid food.*

FUTURE ... will reject

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rejecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rejected

PAST PASSIVE

I was rejected we were rejected
 you were rejected you were rejected
 he/she/it was rejected they were rejected
 • *No reasonable offer was rejected.*

COMPLEMENTS

reject _____ not accept, refuse to believe / use / agree to

OBJECT

We rejected **all the bids**.
 The union rejected **the first offer the company made**.
 Harvard might reject **my application**.
 He rejects **the idea that HIV causes AIDS**.
 The publisher has rejected **all three of my manuscripts**.

PASSIVE

The first draft of our proposal was rejected.
 Organ transplants are sometimes rejected by the recipient's immune system.

WH-CLAUSE

The committee will reject **whomever the president nominates**.
 They rejected **whatever we proposed**.
 Smith always rejects **whichever proposal is the most expensive**.

reject _____ refuse to love / care for

OBJECT

The mother bird rejected **all the chicks**.

PASSIVE

Bobby was just rejected by his girlfriend.
 Nobody likes being rejected.

PRESENT

I relate we relate
 you relate you relate
 he/she/it relates they relate

• *Your son relates well to other children.*

PAST

I related we related
 you related you related
 he/she/it related they related

• *I related the story as best I could.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has related

PAST PERFECT ... had related

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am relating we are relating
 you are relating you are relating
 he/she/it is relating they are relating

• *He is relating global warming to rainfall patterns.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was relating we were relating
 you were relating you were relating
 he/she/it was relating they were relating

• *My boyfriend was relating all his troubles.*

FUTURE

... will relate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be relating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have related

PAST PASSIVE

I was related we were related
 you were related you were related
 he/she/it was related they were related

• *Stories of Eudora Welty's childhood were related in her memoir.*

COMPLEMENTS

relate *feel a bond with people / a performance*

Shy people have a hard time relating.
 The new kid is relating surprisingly well.
 Some people liked the music, but I just couldn't relate.

relate _____ *feel a bond with, interact with*
 to OBJECT

The kids really relate **to Uncle Charlie**.
 Philip never did relate **to his music teacher**.
 The audience related **to her performance of the Mendelssohn violin concerto**.

relate _____ *tell about, give an account of*
 OBJECT

He related **the events leading up to the strike**.
 The movie related **the lives of a family in New England**.
 The entire story of his summer vacation was related in agonizing detail.

PASSIVE

relate _____ *concern, be about*
 to OBJECT

The legislation relates **to interstate commerce**.
 Your suggestion does not relate **to the issue**.
 My proposal relates **to reducing copying expenses**.
 The article relates **to making foreign travel easier**.

to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

relate _____ *connect, link, associate*
 OBJECT + to/and/with OBJECT

The study related **road accidents to cell phone use**.
 Florence Nightingale related **hospital sanitation and mortality rates**.
 Studies have related **lung cancer with smoking**.

be related _____ *be connected/linked* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]
 to OBJECT

Earthquakes are related to tectonic plate movements.
 Levels of vitamin D are related to sunshine.
 The company's success is related to the economy.

be related _____ *be connected by blood or marriage* [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]
 to OBJECT

I am related to Perry on my mother's side.
 He is related to my cousin.
 Whom she is related to?

PRESENT

I release we release
 you release you release
 he/she/it releases they release
 • *He releases the fish that he catches.*

PAST

I released we released
 you released you released
 he/she/it released they released
 • *He released the information to the press.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has released

PAST PERFECT ... had released

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am releasing we are releasing
 you are releasing you are releasing
 he/she/it is releasing they are releasing
 • *Watch out—I'm releasing the brake.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was releasing we were releasing
 you were releasing you were releasing
 he/she/it was releasing they were releasing
 • *The chemical plant was releasing sulfur dioxide.*

FUTURE

... will release

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be releasing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have released

PAST PASSIVE

I was released we were released
 you were released you were released
 he/she/it was released they were released
 • *The movie was released in 2002.*

COMPLEMENTS

release allow something to return to its normal position

Flex your muscles, then release.
 Push the button down, then release.

release allow something to escape

Hold your breath, then release.

release _____ set free, allow to escape

OBJECT

I released **the butterflies that I had captured**.
 The children released **the balloons**.
 The judge released **the three suspects** without bail.
 The fumes were released harmlessly into the air.

PASSIVE

release _____ free from obligation

OBJECT

The candidate released **her delegates** to vote for whomever they chose.

PASSIVE

release _____ make available

OBJECT

The king released **the duke** from his oath.
 Our inheritance was finally released from escrow.

The senator released **his tax returns** to the press.
 The campaign will release **its list of donors** tomorrow.
 The administration wouldn't release **the names of the prisoners**.

PRESENT

I relieve we relieve
 you relieve you relieve
 he/she/it relieves they relieve
 • *Aspirin usually relieves my headache.*

PAST

I relieved we relieved
 you relieved you relieved
 he/she/it relieved they relieved
 • *The good news relieved all our worries.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has relieved

PAST PERFECT ... had relieved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am relieving we are relieving
 you are relieving you are relieving
 he/she/it is relieving they are relieving
 • *Captain Picard is relieving him next month.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was relieving we were relieving
 you were relieving you were relieving
 he/she/it was relieving they were relieving
 • *The medication was finally relieving my congestion.*

FUTURE ... will relieve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be relieving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have relieved

PAST PASSIVE

I was relieved we were relieved
 you were relieved you were relieved
 he/she/it was relieved they were relieved
 • *The guard was relieved at midnight.*

COMPLEMENTS

relieve _____ reduce, get rid of

OBJECT

I need something to relieve **the itching**.Exercise helps relieve **stress**.Another lane would relieve **the traffic congestion**.Eating locally grown food would relieve **pressure on the environment**.

PASSIVE

Our anxiety was relieved by the doctor's reassuring words.

relieve _____ release from responsibility

OBJECT + of OBJECT

The agreement relieved **the defendant of liability in the matter**.The Air Force relieved **the colonel of his command**.Her employer relieved **her of all management responsibilities**.

relieve _____ release from duty/work by replacing

OBJECT

You must relieve **the sentries** every two hours.Franklin relieved **Motte** in the ninth inning.Col. Wright relieved **Col. Franks** in a formal retirement ceremony.

PASSIVE

The drivers must be relieved periodically.

relieve _____ make more pleasant

OBJECT

Only the children's laughter relieved **the gloomy family dinner**.Shakespeare usually relieves **his tragedies** with comic interludes.

His dark paintings are relieved only by tiny threads of color.

PASSIVE

relieve _____ bring help to

OBJECT

The agency rushed to relieve **the flooded city**.We hired temps to relieve **the store** during the Christmas rush.

Leningrad was relieved after 872 days of fighting.

PASSIVE

relieve _____ urinate

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

Where can I relieve **myself**?Call the nurse if you need to relieve **yourself**.The patient may have difficulty relieving **himself** for a few days.NOTE: The use of *relieve* in this sense is acceptable in a clinical setting.

PRESENT

I remain we remain
 you remain you remain
 he/she/it remains they remain
 • *The problem still remains to be dealt with.*

PAST

I remained we remained
 you remained you remained
 he/she/it remained they remained
 • *We remained inside until the rain stopped.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has remained

PAST PERFECT ... had remained

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am remaining we are remaining
 you are remaining you are remaining
 he/she/it is remaining they are remaining
 • *I am remaining here in the shade.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was remaining we were remaining
 you were remaining you were remaining
 he/she/it was remaining they were remaining
 • *Two soldiers were remaining behind.*

FUTURE ... will remain

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be remaining

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have remained

PAST PASSIVE

Remain is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

remain *stay, linger*

The teacher asked me to remain after class.
 I can only remain for a few seconds.

remain *continue to exist, be left*

After the fire, only the chimney and foundation remained.
 The snow remained for weeks.
 The bad smell from the fire remained for days.
 Only three slices of cake remain.

remain _____ *continue to be*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Please remain **here**.
 Please remain **in the car**.
 Please remain **where you are**.

PREDICATE NOUN

The platoon still remained **an effective fighting unit**.
 Paul remained **sheriff** for years.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Storms remained **a major threat to shipping**.
 Fortunately, the guards had remained **alert**.
 I couldn't remain **awake** during the long drive.
 Despite the accident, we all remained **friendly** with each other.

remain _____ *be left [to deal with / do]*

INFINITIVE

Nothing remains **to be done**.
 A thorough cleaning remained **to be done**.
 The full extent of the damage remains **to be seen**.

PHRASAL VERBS

remain ahead/behind/down/under/up/etc. *stay in a specified position*

Our hockey team remained ahead after two periods.
 The player remained down for several minutes.

remain up *stay awake and out of bed*

The kids were allowed to remain up on Christmas Eve.

PRESENT

I remember we remember
 you remember you remember
 he/she/it remembers they remember
 • *He never remembers to turn off the light.*

PAST

I remembered we remembered
 you remembered you remembered
 he/she/it remembered they remembered
 • *I remembered what I was going to do.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has remembered

PAST PERFECT ... had remembered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am remembering we are remembering
 you are remembering you are remembering
 he/she/it is remembering they are remembering
 • *I am not remembering anything these days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was remembering we were remembering
 you were remembering you were remembering
 he/she/it was remembering they were remembering
 • *We were just remembering something he said.*

FUTURE

... will remember

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be remembering

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have remembered

PAST PASSIVE

I was remembered we were remembered
 you were remembered you were remembered
 he/she/it was remembered they were remembered
 • *He was remembered with great fondness.*

COMPLEMENTS

remember recall something

I am trying to remember.
 Sorry, I can't remember.

remember _____ recall, think about again

OBJECT

I finally remembered **his name**.

PASSIVE

Do you remember **the day we met**?

THAT-CLAUSE

The accident will be remembered for a long time.

I remembered **that I had an appointment at 10 o'clock**.

We remembered just in time **that the train was running
 on a holiday schedule**.

NOTE: The imperative of *remember* with THAT-CLAUSES is also used to emphasize the importance of something, in the sense "don't forget."

Please remember **that the meeting time has been changed**.
 Remember **that your homework must be finished before
 you can watch TV**.

WH-CLAUSE

You must remember **that this information is confidential**.Sure, I remember **who you are**.Everybody remembers **what happened next**.I couldn't remember **where I was supposed to go next**.

WH-INFINITIVE

John tried to remember **what to do in case of fire**.Sam couldn't remember **where to put the commas**.I hope the children remember **how to behave**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I distinctly remember **putting the keys on the desk**.Do you remember **getting a call from a Mr. Rex**?He doesn't remember **locking the door**.

remember _____ do [what one intends to / should do]

INFINITIVE

I finally remembered **to mail the letter in my pocket**.Did you remember **to set the alarm system**?The kids never remember **to hang up their coats**.

remember _____ think about respectfully

OBJECT

Let us remember **those who have died that we might be free**.

remember _____ give a gift/card to

OBJECT

Grandmother always remembers **me** on my birthday.
 Ruby remembered **us** on our anniversary.

PRESENT

I remind we remind
 you remind you remind
 he/she/it reminds they remind
 • *She reminds me of my mother.*

PAST

I reminded we reminded
 you reminded you reminded
 he/she/it reminded they reminded
 • *He reminded us to keep the door locked.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has reminded

PAST PERFECT ... had reminded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reminding we are reminding
 you are reminding you are reminding
 he/she/it is reminding they are reminding
 • *I am reminding everyone to turn in their time sheets.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reminding we were reminding
 you were reminding you were reminding
 he/she/it was reminding they were reminding
 • *He was reminding the tour group where to meet.*

FUTURE

... will remind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be reminding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have reminded

PAST PASSIVE

I was reminded we were reminded
 you were reminded you were reminded
 he/she/it was reminded they were reminded
 • *I was reminded that we must finish by 4 o'clock.*

COMPLEMENTS

remind _____ cause to remember / think of

OBJECT + of OBJECT

My secretary reminded **me of the luncheon date**.
 The coach reminded **his players of the early curfew**.
 His hearty laugh reminded **us of his father**.
 Those limestone bluffs remind **me of my childhood**.

PASSIVE

They were reminded **of the time Randy broke his arm**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We reminded **the boys to set their alarms**.

PASSIVE

Please remind **me to call Mr. Ross**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

The passengers were reminded **to pick up their customs declarations**.

PASSIVE

We reminded **the guests that breakfast was at eight**.

Remind **the staff that they need to replace their ID cards**.

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

They were reminded **that smoking is not permitted anywhere in the building**.

PASSIVE

I reminded **Charles what he needed to bring to the meeting**.

He reminded **us where we would have to park**.

OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE

We were all reminded **how much we missed her**.

PASSIVE

Remind **us what to do**.

Cary reminded **the participants where to get the handouts**.

The students were reminded **how to fill out the forms**.

PRESENT

I remove we remove
 you remove you remove
 he/she/it removes they remove
 • *Acetone removes fingernail polish.*

PAST

I removed we removed
 you removed you removed
 he/she/it removed they removed
 • *We removed our hats and went inside.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has removed

PAST PERFECT ... had removed

PAST PASSIVE

I was removed we were removed
 you were removed you were removed
 he/she/it was removed they were removed
 • *Ground beef products were removed from stores in seven states.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am removing we are removing
 you are removing you are removing
 he/she/it is removing they are removing
 • *The nurse is removing the bandages now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was removing we were removing
 you were removing you were removing
 he/she/it was removing they were removing
 • *The children were removing their jackets.*

FUTURE

... will remove

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be removing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have removed

COMPLEMENTS

remove _____ take away, eliminate

OBJECT

First, we need to remove **all the rust**.
 Remove **the lids** and mix the paint.
 The surgeon decided to remove **the tumor**.
 The editor removed **three chapters of the book**.
 Congress voted to remove **the sanctions**.
 Nothing can be removed from the scene of the crime.

PASSIVE

remove _____ dismiss [from a position/office]

OBJECT

The committee members voted to remove **the chair**.
 The governor of Illinois was removed from office in 2009.

PASSIVE

remove _____ take off [clothing, etc.]

OBJECT

Please remove **your outer garments**.
 I removed **my muddy boots** and went inside.
 He removed **his watch and glasses** and dove into the pool.

PRESENT

I repeat we repeat
 you repeat you repeat
 he/she/it repeats they repeat
 • *He repeats what he's read in the paper.*

PAST

I repeated we repeated
 you repeated you repeated
 he/she/it repeated they repeated
 • *He repeated that we would have to leave.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has repeated

PAST PERFECT ... had repeated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am repeating we are repeating
 you are repeating you are repeating
 he/she/it is repeating they are repeating
 • *The speaker is repeating himself.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was repeating we were repeating
 you were repeating you were repeating
 he/she/it was repeating they were repeating
 • *They were repeating the course.*

FUTURE ... will repeat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be repeating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have repeated

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was repeated they were repeated
 • *The announcement was repeated several times.*

COMPLEMENTS

repeat *happen again, do something again*

The noise repeats at regular intervals.
 The theme repeats in the third movement.
 Do you think the champions can repeat?
 Repeat after me: "On my honor I will do my best..."
 The shawl's lace pattern repeats every 16 rows.

repeat _____ *say again*

OBJECT

The teacher repeated **the question**.
 Please repeat **the oath** after me.
 Nick repeated **the secret** to Nora.

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

The storm warning was repeated every 10 minutes.
 The waiter repeated **that the tip was not included**.
 The weatherman repeated **that there would be a severe winter storm**.

WH-CLAUSE

I had to repeat several times **that their party was too loud**.
 Please repeat **what you just said**.
 I can't repeat **what I heard**.
 The parrot will repeat **whatever you say**.

repeat _____ *do/perform again*

OBJECT

The band kept repeating **the only tunes they knew**.
 The hackers repeated **their attack on the server**.
 The program is repeated every few months.
 Other scientists must be able to repeat **what you did**.
 We don't need to repeat **whatever mistakes they made**.
 Young children always repeat **whatever their parents do**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

repeat _____ *say/do [something] again*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

You should be careful not to repeat **yourself**.
 History seldom repeats **itself** exactly the same way.

PRESENT

I replace we replace
 you replace you replace
 he/she/it replaces they replace
 • *He never replaces burned-out lightbulbs.*

PAST

I replaced we replaced
 you replaced you replaced
 he/she/it replaced they replaced
 • *I finally replaced my old truck.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has replaced

PAST PERFECT ... had replaced

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am replacing we are replacing
 you are replacing you are replacing
 he/she/it is replacing they are replacing
 • *The company is replacing the strikers.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was replacing we were replacing
 you were replacing you were replacing
 he/she/it was replacing they were replacing
 • *They were replacing the old badges.*

FUTURE ... will replace

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be replacing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have replaced

PAST PASSIVE

I was replaced we were replaced
 you were replaced you were replaced
 he/she/it was replaced they were replaced
 • *The faulty printer was replaced.*

COMPLEMENTS

replace _____ take the place of

OBJECT

Sunshine soon replaced **the dreary fog**.Nobody can replace **Roberta**.Johnson will replace **Smith** at quarterback in the second half.Smiles soon replaced **the tears on the kids' faces**.

Will translators be replaced by robots?

PASSIVE

replace _____ put [someone/something new] in the place of

OBJECT (+ with OBJECT)

We must replace **the clutch** before the car breaks down somewhere.Oboe players must replace **their reeds** frequently.Her doctor said it was necessary to replace **her right knee joint**.The company replaced **all its computers** at once.The board is going to replace **the entire management team**.The gardener replaced **the roses with more heat-resistant varieties**.We should replace **our incandescent bulbs with compact fluorescents**.They replaced **their standard copier paper with a brighter white paper**.

WH-CLAUSE

replace _____ take the place of

OBJECT

We replaced **what we thought caused the problem**.They are going to replace **whoever can't meet the quota**.Find and replace **whatever is broken**.High-definition TVs have almost entirely replaced **conventional ones**.Automatic transmissions began to replace **manual transmissions** in the 1950s.

replace _____ put back where it belongs

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I carefully replaced **the vase on the shelf**.He replaced **the blanket on the bed**.

PASSIVE

The pictures were all replaced **in the album**.

PRESENT

I reply we reply
 you reply you reply
 he/she/it replies they reply
 • *He always replies promptly.*

PAST

I replied we replied
 you replied you replied
 he/she/it replied they replied
 • *I replied to him yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has replied

PAST PERFECT ... had replied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am replying we are replying
 you are replying you are replying
 he/she/it is replying they are replying
 • *I am replying to her e-mail right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was replying we were replying
 you were replying you were replying
 he/she/it was replying they were replying
 • *We were replying as soon as we could.*

FUTURE ... will reply

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be replying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have replied

PAST PASSIVE

I was replied we were replied
 you were replied you were replied
 he/she/it was replied they were replied
 • *His comments were never replied to.*

COMPLEMENTS

reply answer, respond

I never got around to replying.
 There is no point in writing because he never replies.
 How soon can you reply?

reply respond to an action with a similar action

Their artillery shelled us, and we promptly replied.
 They sued us, so naturally we replied by countersuing.
 Their country expelled our diplomats, so we replied the same way.

reply _____ answer, respond
 to OBJECT

I will reply **to him** as soon as I can.
 He never replied **to our e-mail**.
Whom did she reply **to**?

PASSIVE

Our letters were not replied to.

to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

I replied **to Don that the meeting time was fine**.
 The receptionist replied to us **that an agent would call back later**.
 Ralph replied **to Frank that they should get together sometime**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I replied **that we would be glad to meet with them**.
 Shirley replied **that she could meet us in Chicago**.
 Did they reply **that it would be okay**?

DIRECT QUOTATION

“No,” Arthur replied, **“I’m not leaving until tomorrow.”**

PRESENT

I report we report
 you report you report
 he/she/it reports they report
 • *She reports business news on CNN.*

PAST

I reported we reported
 you reported you reported
 he/she/it reported they reported
 • *The school reported record enrollment.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has reported

PAST PERFECT ... had reported

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reporting we are reporting
 you are reporting you are reporting
 he/she/it is reporting they are reporting
 • *We are reporting the incident to the police.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reporting we were reporting
 you were reporting you were reporting
 he/she/it was reporting they were reporting
 • *The radio was reporting record snowfalls.*

FUTURE ... will report

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be reporting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have reported

PAST PASSIVE

I was reported we were reported
 you were reported you were reported
 he/she/it was reported they were reported
 • *The governor was reported to be involved in bribery.*

COMPLEMENTS

report _____ tell about, give an account of; announce; tell [someone in authority] about [an accident/crime/etc.]

OBJECT

The police reported **an accident on Route 9.**The mayor reported **an unexpected drop in city revenues.**

PASSIVE

All schoolyard accidents must be reported to the principal.

ON OBJECT

As a society writer, I report **on the lives of famous people.**Jack reported **on the need to make Horse Creek flood proof.**

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

My neighbor reported **an attempted burglary to the police.**Gayle reported **the shoplifting to the store manager.**Senator Blather reported **his achievements to a skeptical audience.**

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The captain reported **the soldiers ready for duty.**The doctor reported **the patient strong enough to go home.**

PASSIVE

He was reported **unhappy with the settlement.**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The captain reported **the soldiers to be ready.**

PASSIVE

He was reported **to be the nominee.**The company was reported **to be going public.**

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The paper reported **him working in Denver.**The teacher reported **Johnny misbehaving in class.**

PASSIVE

The escaped convict was reported **hiding in a barn.**

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

Henry reported **his flight cancelled due to mechanical problems.**

PASSIVE

The boat was reported **sunk in the storm.**The car was reported **stolen.**

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The coach reported **that two players had been suspended.**The treasurer reported **to the board that revenues were down.**

WH-CLAUSE

The watchman reported **what he had seen.**The radio reported **which areas were likely to flood.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The patient reports **feeling dizzy when he stands up.**

PHRASAL VERBS

report for _____ appear /
 be present for the purpose of

The recruits reported for duty at 6 A.M.

Managers must report for work an hour early.

report to _____ appear /
 be present at

Report to your commander—on the double.

New employees should report to the Human Resources department.

PRESENT

I represent we represent
you represent you represent
he/she/it represents they represent
• *John represents a nonprofit organization.*

PAST

I represented we represented
you represented you represented
he/she/it represented they represented
• *The idea represented a bold approach.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has represented

PAST PERFECT ... had represented

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am representing we are representing
you are representing you are representing
he/she/it is representing they are representing
• *He is representing them in court.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was representing we were representing
you were representing you were representing
he/she/it was representing they were representing
• *I was representing our company at the trade show.*

FUTURE

... will represent

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be representing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have represented

PAST PASSIVE

I was represented we were represented
you were represented you were represented
he/she/it was represented they were represented
• *Our district was represented by Ms. Santos for 14 years.*

COMPLEMENTS

represent _____ *be an official agent for*

OBJECT

He represents **Italy** in international trade negotiations.
She is representing **a company in Dallas**.
He represents **the fifth congressional district in Oregon**.
They will represent **the United States** in figure skating
at the next Winter Olympics.

PASSIVE

We were represented at the trial by Browne and Forbes.

NOTE: For the following two meanings, *represent* is not used in the progressive tenses.

represent _____ *constitute, make up*

OBJECT

Her sales represent **half of the company's total**.
The dessert alone represented **475 calories**.

represent _____ *portray, stand for, signify*

OBJECT

The picture represents **a storm at sea**.
The scale is a symbol that represents **justice**.
The availability of the land represents **a real opportunity for us**.
The sample represents **a typical population**.
She represents **all that is best about our country**.
The schwa represents **the unstressed "uh" sound in English words**.

PASSIVE

Terrorist strongholds are represented by the green areas
on the map.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

The lawyer represented **our client as a greedy crook**.
The agent represented **the screenplay as a surefire hit**.

PASSIVE

The merger was represented **as our last hope**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I represented **the proposal as risky and costly**.
The salesman represented **the car as almost new**.

PASSIVE

The hotel was represented **as highly desirable**.

PRESENT

I require we require
 you require you require
 he/she/it requires they require
 • *This paint requires extra drying time.*

PAST

I required we required
 you required you required
 he/she/it required they required
 • *The rental agency required a deposit.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has required

PAST PERFECT ... had required

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am requiring we are requiring
 you are requiring you are requiring
 he/she/it is requiring they are requiring
 • *They are requiring a photo ID now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was requiring we were requiring
 you were requiring you were requiring
 he/she/it was requiring they were requiring
 • *We were requiring registration in advance.*

FUTURE ... will require

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be requiring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have required

PAST PASSIVE

I was required we were required
 you were required you were required
 he/she/it was required they were required
 • *He was required to appear in traffic court.*

COMPLEMENTS

require _____ need

OBJECT

The project requires **a larger budget**.
 The soup requires **more seasoning**.
 The patient is going to require **urgery**.
 Organic certification requires **avoidance of most synthetic fertilizers and pesticides**.

PASSIVE

Some assembly is required.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The floors require **finishing**.
 The food requires **microwaving for five minutes on high**.
 The plants require **watering every other day**.

require _____ order, demand, make necessary

OBJECT

The company requires **drug tests** of all applicants.
 This job requires **the ability to multitask**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The government requires **us to file form 990-N annually**.
 The airline requires **you to stay over Saturday night**.
 The building code requires **public buildings to have automatic sprinkler systems**.

PASSIVE

You are required **to have a valid driver's license for this job**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The law requires **that he be informed of his rights**.
 The committee requires **that each candidate have a current résumé**.
 The court required **that the children be placed in foster care**.

PRESENT

I respond we respond
you respond you respond
he/she/it responds they respond
• *The dog always responds when he's called.*

PAST

I responded we responded
you responded you responded
he/she/it responded they responded
• *The firemen responded to the fire quickly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has responded

PAST PERFECT ... had responded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am responding we are responding
you are responding you are responding
he/she/it is responding they are responding
• *The patient is not responding, Doctor.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was responding we were responding
you were responding you were responding
he/she/it was responding they were responding
• *They were finally responding to the problem.*

FUTURE ... will respond

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be responding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have responded

PAST PASSIVE

I was responded we were responded
you were responded you were responded
he/she/it was responded they were responded
• *Our complaint was never responded to.*

COMPLEMENTS

respond *reply, answer*

There is no need to respond.
They will respond if they want to.
Jim responded without enthusiasm.
Marty responded by quoting their own words back to them.

respond *show a reaction*

The accident victim wasn't responding.

respond _____ *say/do in answer, react*

to OBJECT

I need to respond **to his letter**.
You must respond **to their complaint** in writing.
The police responded **to the emergency** within minutes.
The newspaper editorial must be responded to promptly.
I responded immediately **to what had happened**.
We will respond with a press release **to whatever claim they make**.
The fleet will respond **to whatever move the enemy makes**.

PASSIVE

to WH-CLAUSE

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

They responded **that they would be delighted to come**.
Carl responded **to her that she should come to his house instead**.
I responded **to the group that our plans had changed**.

DIRECT QUOTATION

The tour guide responded, "Sorry, **there is no restroom on this bus.**"

respond _____ *react favorably*

to OBJECT

The infection was finally responding **to antibiotics**.
Will the cancer respond **to chemotherapy**?

PRESENT

I rest we rest
 you rest you rest
 he/she/it rests they rest
 • *He always rests his arm on the table.*

PAST

I rested we rested
 you rested you rested
 he/she/it rested they rested
 • *The children rested under the tree.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rested

PAST PERFECT ... had rested

PAST PASSIVE

I was rested we were rested
 you were rested you were rested
 he/she/it was rested they were rested
 • *The horses were rested for two days.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am resting we are resting
 you are resting you are resting
 he/she/it is resting they are resting
 • *Not now! I'm resting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was resting we were resting
 you were resting you were resting
 he/she/it was resting they were resting
 • *We were resting when the call came.*

FUTURE ... will rest

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be resting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rested

COMPLEMENTS

rest relax, stop working, stop an activity

Let's take a break. I need to rest.
 We can rest when we get done.
 "Let us cross over the river, and rest under the shade of the trees." [GENERAL STONEWALL JACKSON'S LAST WORDS]
 Darla couldn't rest until she learned who her father was.
 Just let it rest!
 And there the matter rests.

rest stay unchanged, be still

rest _____ support, lay, lean
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

He rested **his elbows on the table**.
 I lightly rested **my hand on his shoulder** to warn him.
 Jeff rested **his hands briefly on the wall**, and then he vaulted over.

rest _____ be supported, lie, be fixed
ADVERB OF PLACE

My arm rested **on the wheel**, ready to turn it in an instant.
 His hand was resting **on the gun in his holster**.
 His arm rested **on her shoulder**.
 Her eyes rested briefly **on my face**.
 The shovel rested **against the tree**.

rest _____ cause to relax / be inactive
OBJECT

I have to rest **my eyes** after working on the computer.
 The coach will probably rest **some of the best players** in the second half.
 I should rest **my legs** before we start hiking again.
 The fields are rested every other year.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

rest in/on/upon _____ be based on

His success rests in his ability to delegate.

rest on/upon _____ depend on

The team's fate rests on its All-American point guard.

rest up for _____ relax before exertion

The runner needs to rest up for the marathon.

rest up from _____ relax after exertion

She needs to rest up from the 17-hour flight.

rest with _____ be the responsibility of

The success of the class reunion rests with its organizers.

PRESENT

— —
 — —
 it results they result
 • *Rickets results from a lack of vitamin D.*

PAST

— —
 — —
 it resulted they resulted
 • *Deregulation resulted in disaster.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has resulted

PAST PERFECT ... had resulted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it is resulting they are resulting
 • *The decision is resulting in a lot of grief.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was resulting they were resulting
 • *His thoughtless action was resulting in hard feelings.*

FUTURE ... will result

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be resulting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have resulted

PAST PASSIVE

Result is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

result _____ *cause to happen*
 in OBJECT

Haste always results **in confusion**.
 The storm resulted **in a massive power failure**.
 The committee's rash actions resulted **in a lawsuit**.

result _____ *be caused by*
 from OBJECT

Our failure resulted **from inadequate planning**.
 The team's success resulted **from its ability to recruit good players**.
 The increase in shipping rates results **from the high cost of insurance**.
 A lot of our health problems result **from too much stress in our lives**.

PRESENT

I retain we retain
 you retain you retain
 he/she/it retains they retain
 • *Grandpa retains his sense of humor.*

PAST

I retained we retained
 you retained you retained
 he/she/it retained they retained
 • *The dam retained all of the floodwaters.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has retained**PAST PERFECT** ... had retained**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am retaining we are retaining
 you are retaining you are retaining
 he/she/it is retaining they are retaining
 • *The company is retaining its high-value employees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was retaining we were retaining
 you were retaining you were retaining
 he/she/it was retaining they were retaining
 • *I was retaining fluid and gaining weight.*

FUTURE ... will retain**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be retaining**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have retained**PAST PASSIVE**

I was retained we were retained
 you were retained you were retained
 he/she/it was retained they were retained
 • *Mary was retained as counsel in the case.*

COMPLEMENTS**retain** _____ keep, hold

OBJECT

Fortunately, our house has retained **its value**.
 It is hard to retain **a foreign language** unless you use it.
 We seem to retain **our childhood memories** all our lives.
 Glass cookware retains **heat** better than metal.
 Democrats retained **their majority in the Senate**.
 Terry retained **her birth surname** when she married.
 The country must retain **its young scientists**.
 Capital letters are retained, as in the original document.

PASSIVE

retain _____ hire by payment of a fee

OBJECT

You need to retain **a good lawyer**.
 The hotel has always retained **an excellent staff**.
 We will have to retain **someone to look after the house while we are away**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + AS OBJECT

The services of an independent auditor have been retained.
 They retained **Ms. Locke as a consultant**.
 The restaurant retained **her as executive chef**.
 I was retained **as an assistant to the treasurer**.

PASSIVE

retain _____ remember, keep in mind

OBJECT

Nine-year-old David John retains **everything he reads**.

PRESENT

I retire we retire
 you retire you retire
 he/she/it retires they retire
 • *He retires next January.*

PAST

I retired we retired
 you retired you retired
 he/she/it retired they retired
 • *The ladies retired to the drawing room.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has retired

PAST PERFECT ... had retired

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am retiring we are retiring
 you are retiring you are retiring
 he/she/it is retiring they are retiring
 • *I am retiring next year.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was retiring we were retiring
 you were retiring you were retiring
 he/she/it was retiring they were retiring
 • *The attackers were retiring into the woods.*

FUTURE ... will retire

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be retiring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have retired

PAST PASSIVE

I was retired we were retired
 you were retired you were retired
 he/she/it was retired they were retired
 • *The mortgage was retired in 1995.*

COMPLEMENTS

retire *quit working permanently*

He couldn't wait to retire.
 When will you retire?
 I won't retire for at least 10 years.
 Judy and Rich will eventually retire to their cabin in Virginia.

retire *give up one's career/profession*

The team's quarterback had to retire because of knee injuries.
 Dancers often retire from the stage in their thirties.
 Four senators retired, and three others lost re-election.
 Many actors retire because they can't get enough jobs to support themselves full-time.

retire *go to bed*

My parents usually retire around eleven.
 We can't retire until the kids get back home.
 When do you normally retire?

retire *withdraw, retreat*

In times of stress, Mr. Bennet retired to his library.
 The actors retired in confusion after the stage set collapsed.
 The committee has retired into the conference room.
 The troops retired from the battlefield.

retire _____ *remove from a position/office*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

The law retires **judges** when they reach age 75.
 The Pentagon retired **three generals** yesterday.
 He was involuntarily retired by the new administration.

retire _____ *remove from use/production*

OBJECT

It's time to retire **this old baseball glove**.
 The U.S. government is retiring **its fleet of gas guzzlers**.
 The company will retire **its cosmetics line** next fall.

retire _____ *pay off [a debt]*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

The company retired **the bonds** ten years early.
 You should retire **your mortgage** as soon as possible.
 Older notes and debts are usually retired first.

PRESENT

I return we return
 you return you return
 he/she/it returns they return
 • *He returns to Los Angeles next week.*

PAST

I returned we returned
 you returned you returned
 he/she/it returned they returned
 • *I returned the book to the library yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has returned

PAST PERFECT ... had returned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am returning we are returning
 you are returning you are returning
 he/she/it is returning they are returning
 • *I am returning your call.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was returning we were returning
 you were returning you were returning
 he/she/it was returning they were returning
 • *We were returning home when the car broke down.*

FUTURE ... will return

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be returning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have returned

PAST PASSIVE

I was returned we were returned
 you were returned you were returned
 he/she/it was returned they were returned
 • *The letter was returned by the post office.*

COMPLEMENTS

return *go/come back*

The visitors will return after lunch.
 “I came through and I shall return.”
 [GENERAL DOUGLAS MACARTHUR]
 The rains have finally returned.
 Her good humor quickly returned.
 My appetite has returned.

return _____ *go/come back*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

When will our neighbors return **from vacation**?
 He will return **to his country** in the fall.
 Shouldn't they return **home**?
 Johanna and Tim just returned **from Vietnam**.
 Larry returned **to work** two weeks after surgery.
 She gradually returned **to full health**.
 After the interruption, I returned **to my book**.

return _____ *send/give/carry/put back*

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

Nikki returned **the skirt** for a larger size.
 Fill out this form and return **it to this address**.
 Return **visitor passes here** when you are ready to leave.
 My son returned **the ladder to the garage**.
 Harrison returned **the opening kickoff to the 40-yard line**.
 Voters returned **the governor to office**.
 Keys must be returned **to the front desk**.

PASSIVE

return _____ *respond to in the same way*

OBJECT

She returned **his kiss**.
 We will return **your hospitality** as soon as we can.

return _____ *yield, produce*

OBJECT

The bonds will return **10% a year**.
 We hope to return **a profit** in our second year.
 Our investment didn't return **a penny**.

return _____ *send something back in a certain condition*

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

The post office returned **the package marked “undeliverable.”**
 She returned **his letter unopened**.
 His manuscript was returned **unread**.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I reveal we reveal
 you reveal you reveal
 he/she/it reveals they reveal
 • *He never reveals what he is going to do.*

PAST

I revealed we revealed
 you revealed you revealed
 he/she/it revealed they revealed
 • *Jane's letter revealed some terrible news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has revealed

PAST PERFECT ... had revealed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am revealing we are revealing
 you are revealing you are revealing
 he/she/it is revealing they are revealing
 • *I am not revealing any secrets.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was revealing we were revealing
 you were revealing you were revealing
 he/she/it was revealing they were revealing
 • *The CEO was revealing his master plan to the board.*

FUTURE ... will reveal

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be revealing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have revealed

PAST PASSIVE

I was revealed we were revealed
 you were revealed you were revealed
 he/she/it was revealed they were revealed
 • *The information was revealed at a press conference.*

COMPLEMENTS

reveal _____ show / make known [what was unknown/secret]

OBJECT

John revealed **the new budget** at the meeting.
 The lawyers will not reveal **the contents of the will**.
 His book revealed **previously classified information about the war**.
 The report reveals **her role in health care reform**.

PASSIVE

The president's nominee will be revealed at a press conference today.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The evidence revealed **her to have been murdered**.
 The audit revealed **the company to be running at a loss**.
 Harold revealed **their decision to have been a mistake**.

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The museum revealed **that the artifacts had been improperly obtained**.
 He revealed **to the employees that the company would be sold**.
 Marsha revealed **to her friends that she had been secretly married to John**.

WH-CLAUSE

The police will not reveal **whom they suspect**.
 I can't reveal **what was decided**.
 He never revealed **why he did it**.

PRESENT

I rid we rid
 you rid you rid
 he/she/it rids they rid

• *The cat rids the barn of mice.*

PAST

I rid we rid
 you rid you rid
 he/she/it rid they rid

• *They rid themselves of all their coats.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rid

PAST PERFECT ... had rid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ridding we are ridding
 you are ridding you are ridding
 he/she/it is ridding they are ridding

• *The store is ridding itself of unsold merchandise.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ridding we were ridding
 you were ridding you were ridding
 he/she/it was ridding they were ridding

• *I was ridding myself of all my junk.*

FUTURE ... will rid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ridding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rid

PAST PASSIVE

I was rid we were rid
 you were rid you were rid
 he/she/it was rid they were rid

• *We were finally rid of unwanted visitors.*

COMPLEMENTS

rid _____ free from [someone/something not wanted]

OBJECT + of OBJECT

They hoped to rid **the world of nuclear weapons**.

I can't rid **myself of this miserable cold**.

You must rid **yourself of all debt**.

They were trying to rid **the field of all noxious weeds**.

The alderman wants to rid **the city of one-way streets**.

The sheriff is trying to rid **the county of drug dealers**.

"Will no one rid **me of this troublesome priest**?" [HENRY II,

LEADING TO THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET IN 1170]

PASSIVE

The tent was rid **of all mosquitoes**.

PRESENT

I ride we ride
 you ride you ride
 he/she/it rides they ride
 • *He rides the bus to work every day.*

PAST

I rode we rode
 you rode you rode
 he/she/it rode they rode
 • *I rode my bicycle to the store yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ridden

PAST PERFECT ... had ridden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am riding we are riding
 you are riding you are riding
 he/she/it is riding they are riding
 • *Our hopes are riding on the new government.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was riding we were riding
 you were riding you were riding
 he/she/it was riding they were riding
 • *He was riding in the first race.*

FUTURE ... will ride

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be riding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ridden

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was ridden they were ridden
 • *That horse was last ridden a week ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

ride sit on a horse/bicycle/motorcycle/
 etc. and make it move along

Do you know how to ride?
 She rides quite well.
 You never forget how to ride.
 The cowboys rode 70 miles the first day.

ride move along in a vehicle

He never rides when he can walk.
 I rode to work that day.
 They rode in a school bus to the meeting.

ride _____ sit on and make move along
 OBJECT

The kids were riding **their bicycles** in the park.
 We rented horses and rode **them** all afternoon.

ride _____ move along in/on
 OBJECT

We rode **the train** when we were in Germany.
 I usually ride **the bus** to work.
 They rode **every ride** at Disneyland.

ride _____ be carried along on/by
 OBJECT

The surfers were riding **the waves**.
 Investors rode **the boom in housing** for 20 years.
 The TV networks were still riding **the fad of reality TV**.

ride _____ tease, nag
 OBJECT

The girls are constantly riding **each other** about music.
 I had better get back to work. The boss is really riding **us**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ride away/down/off/out/up/etc.
 move along in a specified direction

Marvin stopped by to talk, then rode off.
 We rode out to the ferry landing this morning.

ride on _____ depend on

The company's reputation is riding on these negotiations.
 All his hopes are riding on being promoted to news anchor.

ride SEP out survive in safety

We rode the storm out in the basement.
 Can our company ride out these perilous economic times?

ride up move upward out of place

His jeans rode up as he jogged across the parking lot.

PRESENT

I ring we ring
 you ring you ring
 he/she/it rings they ring
 • *The bell rings on the quarter hour.*

PAST

I rang we rang
 you rang you rang
 he/she/it rang they rang
 • *The phone rang as I was doing dishes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rung

PAST PERFECT ... had rung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ringing we are ringing
 you are ringing you are ringing
 he/she/it is ringing they are ringing
 • *Your alarm clock is ringing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ringing we were ringing
 you were ringing you were ringing
 he/she/it was ringing they were ringing
 • *The phone was ringing all morning.*

FUTURE ... will ring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rung

PAST PASSIVE

I was rung we were rung
 you were rung you were rung
 he/she/it was rung they were rung
 • *The church bell was rung every Sunday for years.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *ring* is presented here. The regular verb *ring* (*ring* | *rings* · *ringed* · *ringed*) means “surround, form a circle around,” as in *Cypress trees ring the lake*.

COMPLEMENTS

ring *make the sound of a bell*

All of the church bells were ringing.
 Good wine glasses will ring if you tap them.

ring *call for service by telephone/bell*

If you need help, just ring.
 We rang, but nobody came.
 Please ring for service.

ring *fill a place with sound*

The sound of cannons rang through the air.

ring *be filled with sound*

The halls rang with laughter as the students left for the holiday.
 After the explosion, my ears rang for half an hour.

ring _____ *cause [a bell/alarm] to sound*

OBJECT

I knocked and rang **the doorbell**.
 It takes a lot of practice to ring **the big church bells**.

PASSIVE

The bells are always rung on Easter.

ring _____ *seem to be*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The immigrant's story rings **true**.
 Harry's apology rang **hollow**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ring out *sound clearly and loudly*

Three shots rang out in the crisp
 autumn air.

ring SEP up *record the price of [something] on a cash register*

The cashier rang up the cauliflower at \$1.99 a head.

EXPRESSIONS

ring a bell *seem familiar*

You're right—that name rings a bell.

ring in the new (year), ring out the old *celebrate the beginning of the new year*

We ring in the new year by watching the ball drop
 at New York's Times Square.

ring off the hook *ring constantly*

I got nothing done this morning—the phone was ringing
 off the hook.

PRESENT

I rise we rise
 you rise you rise
 he/she/it rises they rise
 • *The land slowly rises toward the hills.*

PAST

I rose we rose
 you rose you rose
 he/she/it rose they rose
 • *The river rose until the banks overflowed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has risen

PAST PERFECT ... had risen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rising we are rising
 you are rising you are rising
 he/she/it is rising they are rising
 • *His temperature is still rising.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rising we were rising
 you were rising you were rising
 he/she/it was rising they were rising
 • *Prices were steadily rising.*

FUTURE ... will rise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have risen

PAST PASSIVE

Risen is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

rise *go to a higher level*

The tide will be rising until four.
 The moon was just rising above the trees.
 A loud cheer rose from the spectators.
 White smoke was rising from the chimney.
 The Beatles rose to fame overnight.
 Carly rose to be CEO of a Fortune 500 company.
 He rose from office boy to company director.

rise *stand/get up*

All rise! [COMMAND ISSUED WHEN A JUDGE ENTERS
 A COURTROOM]
 He rose from the couch and turned off the TV.
 We usually rise before dawn.

rise *become greater/higher/stronger*

As we start going downhill, our speed will rise rapidly.
 The Roman Empire rose and fell.
 Stock prices rose two percent today.
 My income has not risen as much as inflation has.
 During the concert, the noise rose to unbearable levels.
 The hills steadily rose as we drove northward.
 The bread dough was rising quickly.
 His voice rose to a pitiful squeak.
 Gas prices have been rising lately.
 The wind rose to near gale force.

PHRASAL VERBS

rise above _____ *ignore [a bad situation]*

The legislators rose above their petty disagreements and passed an excellent bill.

rise up (against _____) *rebel/revolt (against [someone/something])*

The colonists rose up against George III and his army.

EXPRESSIONS

rise and shine *get out of bed and be energetic*

Rise and shine! We've got a big day ahead of us.

rise to the occasion *succeed in dealing with a difficult situation*

The president rose to the occasion and delivered a forceful, inspiring speech.

PRESENT

I roll we roll
 you roll you roll
 he/she/it rolls they roll

• *Sometimes the ball rolls into the gutter.*

PAST

I rolled we rolled
 you rolled you rolled
 he/she/it rolled they rolled

• *I rolled the wheelbarrow out of the garage.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rolled

PAST PERFECT ... had rolled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rolling we are rolling
 you are rolling you are rolling
 he/she/it is rolling they are rolling

• *The ship is rolling pretty badly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rolling we were rolling
 you were rolling you were rolling
 he/she/it was rolling they were rolling

• *The waves were rolling onto the beach.*

FUTURE ... will roll

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rolling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rolled

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was rolled they were rolled

• *The dough was rolled out until it was quite thin.*

COMPLEMENTS

roll *move on wheels*

roll *move by turning over and over*

roll *move/rock back and forth*

roll _____ *move on wheels/rollers*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

roll _____ *turn over and over*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

roll _____ *form into a ball/tube*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Look out—the car is rolling!

The kittens rolled all over the bed.

The ball rolled down the driveway and into the street.

Her necklace broke and the beads rolled across the floor.

The plane was rolling uncontrollably.

The ship was rolling in a most uncomfortable way.

We rolled **the car down the driveway.**

I rolled **the grocery cart to the checkout.**

The patient was rolled **into Radiology.**

We rolled **the logs down the hill.**

The kids rolled **the ball back and forth.**

He rolled **the cookie dough into balls.**

She rolled **the rugs into tight cylinders.**

PHRASAL VERBS

roll **about/away/back/by/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc.** *move in a specified direction*

A late-model Porsche just rolled by.

The puppy rolled over.

roll **SEP** *away/back/in/out/up/etc.*
cause to move in a specified direction

The trash men rolled the barrels away.

Roll the windows up; it's windy.

roll **around** *happen, arrive*

When fall rolls around, we'll get out our winter clothing.

roll **SEP** *back* *reduce*

The drugstore rolled back prices on vitamins.

roll **by** *move past*

The years roll by.

roll **SEP** *out* *introduce*

The company rolled out its latest allergy drug.

roll **SEP** *out* *flatten*

Mom was rolling out the pie dough.

PRESENT

I rule we rule
 you rule you rule
 he/she/it rules they rule
 • *The court rules in favor of the defendant.*

PAST

I ruled we ruled
 you ruled you ruled
 he/she/it ruled they ruled
 • *Henry VIII ruled from 1509 to 1547.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ruled

PAST PERFECT ... had ruled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ruling we are ruling
 you are ruling you are ruling
 he/she/it is ruling they are ruling
 • *We are ruling in the defendant's favor.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ruling we were ruling
 you were ruling you were ruling
 he/she/it was ruling they were ruling
 • *Fear was ruling everyone's life.*

FUTURE ... will rule

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ruling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ruled

PAST PASSIVE

I was ruled we were ruled
 you were ruled you were ruled
 he/she/it was ruled they were ruled
 • *The law was eventually ruled unconstitutional.*

COMPLEMENTS

rule *make an official decision*

When will the judge rule?
 The judge ruled against admitting new evidence.

rule *prevail, govern*

During the conflict, chaos ruled.
 When the financial markets are fluctuating wildly, caution rules.
 In the long run, the law of supply and demand always rules.

rule _____ *decide officially*

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The referee ruled **the personal foul (to be) a flagrant one.**
 The judge ruled **the crime (to be) a misdemeanor.**

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The court ruled **us (to be) legally responsible for the accident.**
 The judge ruled **the defendant (to be) innocent.**
 The judge ruled **the driver of the van (to be) guilty.**

THAT-CLAUSE

The court ruled **that the defendant was guilty.**
 The judge ruled **that the motion was out of order.**
 The committee ruled **that Henry was due overtime pay.**

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The court ruled **that the defendant be sentenced to five years in the state penitentiary.**
 The judge ruled **that he be released without charges.**
 He ruled **that the company be charged with tax evasion.**

rule _____ *govern, have power/control over*

OBJECT

Elizabeth I ruled **England, Ireland, and Wales.**
 During the Napoleonic era, England ruled **the oceans.**
 Fear of the plague ruled **the city.**

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

Our day-to-day lives are ruled by convention and habit.
 The king ruled **who could and could not become a noble.**
 The referee ruled **which team would be considered the visitors.**
 Our budget rules **how much we can afford to spend.**

PHRASAL VERBS

rule SEP **out** *eliminate from consideration*

We ruled three applicants out because they didn't have a college degree.
 Senator Blather isn't ruling out running for president.
 The legislators wouldn't rule out a tax increase on cigarettes.

run _____ perform

OBJECT

Can you run **some errands** for me?
The doctor will need to run **some tests**.

run _____ cost [INFORMAL]

(INDIRECT OBJECT +) DIRECT OBJECT

The shipping will run **\$8.95**.
The trip will run **you about \$500**.

run _____ publish

OBJECT

The newspaper ran **a series of articles on homeless people**.
Our company ran **an ad** in the July issue.

run _____ be [at a certain level]

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The store is running **low** on toilet paper.
We ran **late** getting to the theater.

PHRASAL VERBS

run across _____ come upon by chance

We ran across our cousins at the farmers' market.
We ran across old photos of Great-grandfather.

run against _____ be a candidate
opposing

Senator Blather ran against gun control.
She ran against another alderman in the primary.

run along go away

Why don't you kids run along? Be back here in two hours.

run (around) with _____ socialize with

Tara runs around with her friends from high school.

run _____ by/past seek advice about /
approval for [something] from

Sam ran the speech by Toby.

run SEP down drain all the power from

Stop trying to start the car; you're running the battery down.

run SEP down criticize

Brandi ran down the rest of the group.

run for _____ be a candidate for

The governor is running for a fourth term.

run _____ for support [someone] as a
candidate for

The party ran an unknown businessman for mayor.

run into _____ collide with

My sister ran into a deer on the highway.

run into _____ meet by chance

Janey ran into Hulga at the grocery store.

run SEP off print, make copies of

I ran off several extra sets for you.

run on _____ use for power

Our hybrid car runs on gasoline and an NiMH battery.

run on continue without stopping

The presentation of awards ran on forever.

run out come to an end, be used up

Time is running out, and I still have four questions to answer.

run out of _____ use up

Our supply of helium ran out—no more balloons!

Mom finally ran out of patience with us kids.

They ran out of popcorn before the second show.

run over overflow

Quick! The bathtub is running over.

run over _____ knock down while driving

Her friend ran over a skunk.

run over _____ exceed a limit

The class was supposed to last an hour, but it ran over.

run SEP over bring [something]

Would you run the latest proposal over to my office?

run through _____ use up

Shane ran through his inheritance in a year.

run to _____ amount to

The grocery bill runs to \$123.44.

Homer's *Odyssey* runs to more than 12,000 lines.

George ran up a sizable tab at the luxury hotel.

run SEP up
accumulate [debt]

Technology gains ran stock prices up.

run SEP up cause
to increase

The Cobras ran up a big lead, then benched their starters.

run up against _____
encounter

He finally ran up against a problem he couldn't solve.

PRESENT

I run we run
 you run you run
 he/she/it runs they run
 • *The road runs west to the river.*

PAST

I ran we ran
 you ran you ran
 he/she/it ran they ran
 • *The children ran through the door.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has run

PAST PERFECT ... had run

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am running we are running
 you are running you are running
 he/she/it is running they are running
 • *He is running in the Boston Marathon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was running we were running
 you were running you were running
 he/she/it was running they were running
 • *The program was running a little late.*

FUTURE ... will run

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be running

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have run

PAST PASSIVE

I was run we were run
 you were run you were run
 he/she/it was run they were run
 • *The store was run by Harry and his children.*

COMPLEMENTS

run go by moving one's legs faster than in walking

run flow [OF LIQUIDS]

run spread, move freely

run operate, be in use/action

run _____ operate
 OBJECT

run _____ manage
 OBJECT

run _____ go
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

run _____ transport
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

run _____ continue, extend
 ADVERB OF TIME

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

run _____ cause to continue/extend
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids never stop running.
 I try to run two miles every day.
 The tiger has escaped! Run!

The Missouri River runs into the Mississippi River at St. Louis.
 The paint was too thin. It was running down the wall in streaks.

A murmur ran through the crowd.
 A light breeze ran through the tall grass.

The train runs three times a day.
 The engine is not running very smoothly.
 The network servers are not running.

Do you know how to run **this printing press**?
 She can run **any equipment in the woodworking shop**.

He runs **the local supermarket**.
 The church runs **a preschool program**.

I need to run **to the bank**.
 We've got to run **home** for something.
 The ferry runs **from Modoc to Ste. Genevieve and back**.

Can you run **me back to the office**?
 I will run **you over to the station**.

The festival runs **for four weeks in June**.
 The fiscal year runs **from July 1 to June 30**.
 The literature class runs **every quarter**.
 This path runs **up the bluff to the reservoir**.

We ran **electrical conduit under the floor**.
 The logging company ran **a gravel road out to the camp**.



PRESENT

I rush we rush
 you rush you rush
 he/she/it rushes they rush

• *He rushes into situations without thinking.*

PAST

I rushed we rushed
 you rushed you rushed
 he/she/it rushed they rushed

• *We rushed the shipment.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rushed

PAST PERFECT ... had rushed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rushing we are rushing
 you are rushing you are rushing
 he/she/it is rushing they are rushing

• *We are rushing your order.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rushing we were rushing
 you were rushing you were rushing
 he/she/it was rushing they were rushing

• *I was rushing to get everything done.*

FUTURE ... will rush

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rushing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rushed

PAST PASSIVE

I was rushed we were rushed
 you were rushed you were rushed
 he/she/it was rushed they were rushed

• *I was rushed to the hospital in an ambulance.*

COMPLEMENTS

rush *move/act quickly, hurry*

Take your time; don't rush.

We are late, so we will have to rush.

rush _____ *move quickly, hurry*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I rushed **after the taxi**.

Firefighters rushed **to the scene of the warehouse fire**.

Water was rushing **down the street**.

The wind was rushing **through my hair**.

The young couple rushed **into marriage**.

rush _____ *do/make quickly*

OBJECT

The printer rushed **the invitations**, and the date was wrong.

Don't rush **the job**. Make it perfect.

rush _____ *cause/force to act quickly*

OBJECT

I don't want to rush **you**, but the store is about to close.

I hate salesmen who try to rush **me**.

He wasn't rushed by the manager.

rush _____ *deliver/send quickly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

They rushed **the patient to the emergency room**.

The Red Cross rushed **workers to the flooded area**.

Can you rush **me six copies of the book**?

We will rush **you the contract** overnight.

Can you rush **six copies of the book to me**?

We will rush **the contract to you** overnight.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

rush _____ *attack suddenly*

OBJECT

Santa Anna's army rushed **the Alamo**.

Longstreet's infantry rushed **the center of the Union line**.

PHRASAL VERBS

rush around/down/in/off/out/up/etc.
move quickly in a specified direction

Volunteers rushed around making everyone comfortable.

rush SEP down/in/etc. *move [someone/something] quickly in a specified direction*

Hospitals rushed medical supplies in.

PRESENT

I satisfy we satisfy
 you satisfy you satisfy
 he/she/it satisfies they satisfy
 • *His qualifications satisfy our criteria.*

PAST

I satisfied we satisfied
 you satisfied you satisfied
 he/she/it satisfied they satisfied
 • *Her answers satisfied the examiners.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has satisfied

PAST PERFECT ... had satisfied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am satisfying we are satisfying
 you are satisfying you are satisfying
 he/she/it is satisfying they are satisfying
 • *He is not satisfying any of the critics.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was satisfying we were satisfying
 you were satisfying you were satisfying
 he/she/it was satisfying they were satisfying
 • *She was only satisfying her curiosity.*

FUTURE

... will satisfy

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be satisfying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have satisfied

PAST PASSIVE

I was satisfied we were satisfied
 you were satisfied you were satisfied
 he/she/it was satisfied they were satisfied
 • *They were satisfied with his explanation.*

COMPLEMENTS

satisfy _____ meet the needs/wishes/expectations of

OBJECT

His work satisfied **the client**.
 Was that enough food to satisfy **your hunger**?
 The design satisfied **all the requirements**.
 Only the Nobel Prize will satisfy **him**.
 This cell phone has satisfied **all my expectations**.
 The actor satisfied **the director** with his portrayal of Sinbad.

NOTE: *Satisfy* is one of the few verbs that uses *with* (instead of *by*) to introduce the passive agent.

PASSIVE

The committee was satisfied with his work.

satisfy _____ convince

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

I satisfied **myself that we were on the right track**.
 Joan satisfied **us that Harold could do the job well**.
 We have to satisfy **the press that the senator had no conflict of interest**.
 Everybody was satisfied **that he was telling the truth**.

PASSIVE

EXPRESSIONS

satisfy a/[one's] debt
 pay off a debt

The prisoner has satisfied his debt to society.

PRESENT

I save we save
 you save you save
 he/she/it saves they save
 • *He saves money by riding a bike to work.*

PAST

I saved we saved
 you saved you saved
 he/she/it saved they saved
 • *I saved my store receipt.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has saved

PAST PERFECT ... had saved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am saving we are saving
 you are saving you are saving
 he/she/it is saving they are saving
 • *I am saving cardboard for recycling.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was saving we were saving
 you were saving you were saving
 he/she/it was saving they were saving
 • *We were saving as much as we could.*

FUTURE ... will save

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be saving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have saved

PAST PASSIVE

I was saved we were saved
 you were saved you were saved
 he/she/it was saved they were saved
 • *The money was saved for just that purpose.*

COMPLEMENTS

save _____ rescue/keep from harm/danger

OBJECT

The farmers were trying to save **their animals** from the flood.
 We want to save **the old train station**.

PASSIVE

The passengers were saved by the prompt action of the crew.

WH-CLAUSE

They could only save **what they could carry**.

We will save **whatever we can**.

save _____ keep/store for future use

OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)

Save **the file** before you turn off the computer.

I am saving **room for dessert**.

We are saving **our money for a down payment on a house**.

We need to save **some time after the presentation for discussion**.

PASSIVE

The champagne is being saved **for a special occasion**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We saved **you some dinner**.

Save **me a seat**, will you?

for PARAPHRASE

We saved **some dinner for you**.

Save **a seat for me**, will you?

save _____ keep from being wasted/lost

OBJECT

We saved **money** by fixing the dishwasher ourselves.

You can save **time** with these shortcuts.

save _____ avoid/reduce [expense / use of resources]

(on) OBJECT

Carpooling saves **(on) transportation costs**.

Turning the computers off saves **(on) electricity**.

The new freeway will save **(on) commuting time**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

It will save **us a lot of trouble**.

The plan will save **the company a fortune in electric bills**.

Online deposit saves **me a trip to the bank**.

for PARAPHRASE

It will save **a lot of trouble for us**.

The plan will save **a fortune in electric bills for the company**.

(OBJECT + from) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The compact florescents save **replacing bulbs every month**.

The new trail saves **me from having to walk through town**.

My parking permit saves **me from having to park on the street**.

PRESENT

I saw we saw
 you saw you saw
 he/she/it saws they saw
 • *He saws plywood with a special blade.*

PAST

I sawed we sawed
 you sawed you sawed
 he/she/it sawed they sawed
 • *I sawed the board in half.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sawed/sawn

PAST PERFECT ... had sawed/sawn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sawing we are sawing
 you are sawing you are sawing
 he/she/it is sawing they are sawing
 • *I am sawing fence posts.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sawing we were sawing
 you were sawing you were sawing
 he/she/it was sawing they were sawing
 • *He was sawing as fast as he could.*

FUTURE ... will saw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sawing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sawed/sawn

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was sawed/sawn they were sawed/sawn
 • *The beams were sawn nearly through.*

COMPLEMENTS

saw cut using a saw

We have been sawing all afternoon.
 I will have to saw at an angle.
 Look out for nails when you saw.
 The new blade saws smoothly.

saw be cut using a saw

These pine two-by-fours saw very easily.

saw use a sawing motion

Holmes was sawing on his violin.
 When he jumped off the cliff, his arms sawed up and down.

saw _____ cut/shape using a saw
OBJECT

We are sawing **oak planks** for flooring.
 I will saw **the sheets of fiberglass** with a special blade.
 John sawed **the boards** into two-foot lengths.
 They have sawn **a lot of timber** this week.
 We were sawing **jigsaw puzzles** out of masonite.

PASSIVE

The lumber had been sawn against the grain.

PHRASAL VERBS

saw at _____ cut back and forth using a knife/bar/etc.

The prisoner was sawing at the window bars with a table knife.

saw SEP **down** cut down

The lumberjacks sawed the entire woods down.

saw SEP **off** cut off

She sawed off the branches that she could reach.

saw SEP **up** cut into pieces

Gerry sawed the board up into seven pieces of equal length.

PRESENT

I say we say
 you say you say
 he/she/it says they say
 • *He always says that he is too busy.*

PAST

I said we said
 you said you said
 he/she/it said they said
 • *She said something I couldn't understand.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has said

PAST PERFECT ... had said

PAST PASSIVE

I was said we were said
 you were said you were said
 he/she/it was said they were said
 • *They were said to be in the oil business.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am saying we are saying
 you are saying you are saying
 he/she/it is saying they are saying
 • *I am not saying anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was saying we were saying
 you were saying you were saying
 he/she/it was saying they were saying
 • *We were saying that it wouldn't be a problem.*

FUTURE ... will say

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be saying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have said

COMPLEMENTS

say _____ speak, put into words, express

OBJECT

He said **the right answer**.
 The teacher said **"hello" in Latin**.
 They said **nothing about it**.

Would you say **your name** again, slowly?

His name was said, but I didn't catch it.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

He said **to go ahead without him**.The tour guide says **to be back on the bus in 15 minutes**.The recipe said **to use only the egg whites**.Her note said **to leave the back door unlocked**.

THAT-CLAUSE

They said **that they would come back later**.The law says **that everyone is presumed to be innocent**.He said **that we should expect snow**.

WH-CLAUSE

He never said **what he meant to do about the problem**.Did he say **when they were coming**?

WH-INFINITIVE

The instructions say **how to attach the handlebars**.

DIRECT QUOTATION

"Good morning," she said. **"We're glad you're here."**

say _____ show, indicate

OBJECT

The clock says **2:15**.His expression said **it all**.

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The tone of his voice says **that he's disappointed**.My instinct says **to me that we should really be cautious**.

WH-CLAUSE

Their veto says **what they think about the proposal**.

be said _____ be commonly reported [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

INFINITIVE

She was said to be one of the best lawyers around.

He is said to take forever to make up his mind.

EXPRESSIONS

have _____ to say for yourself be able to say in one's favor/defense

say the word give a signal

say yes/no (to _____) agree/disagree (with [someone/something])

The defendant had nothing to say for himself.

What do you have to say for yourself, young man?

When I say the word, jump out and shout "Happy Birthday!"

Sarah said yes to Lucas when he proposed to her.

Just say no to drugs.

PRESENT

I search we search
 you search you search
 he/she/it searches they search
 • *The guard always searches my briefcase.*

PAST

I searched we searched
 you searched you searched
 he/she/it searched they searched
 • *The police searched the house thoroughly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has searched

PAST PERFECT ... had searched

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am searching we are searching
 you are searching you are searching
 he/she/it is searching they are searching
 • *We are searching everywhere for a stapler.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was searching we were searching
 you were searching you were searching
 he/she/it was searching they were searching
 • *They were searching the Internet for the information.*

FUTURE ... will search

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be searching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have searched

PAST PASSIVE

I was searched we were searched
 you were searched you were searched
 he/she/it was searched they were searched
 • *He was searched before he was allowed to enter.*

COMPLEMENTS

search try to find something by looking

Should we start searching?
 We need to keep searching until we find it.
 How long did the volunteers search?

search _____ try to find by looking
 for OBJECT

What are the auditors searching for?
 The teacher is searching **for the missing tests**.
 The police are searching **for clues**.

search _____ try to find [something] by examining carefully
 ADVERB OF PLACE

They searched **in the woods**.
 I searched **everywhere** but never found my keys.
 We still have to search **in the attic and garage**.
 They were searching **everybody who entered the building**.
 Did they search **the car**?
 They only searched **backpacks and handbags**.

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + for OBJECT

All of the suitcases have been searched.
 You can search **the Web for population statistics**.
 The FBI searched **his house for illegal drugs**.
 Would you search **the living room for the TV remote**?
 I searched **the report for evidence of wrongdoing**.
 The house was searched **for illegal drugs**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

search after _____ seek / look for
 [something abstract]

The philosopher is searching after the truth.

search out _____ look for and find

Donna searched out the data that Josh required.

search through _____ try to find
 something by examining the contents of

I searched through the archives.
 They even searched through my dirty laundry.

EXPRESSIONS

search high and low for _____
 try to find by looking carefully in every
 possible place

We searched high and low for the
 missing photos.

see _____ meet with, visit

OBJECT

I will see **the reporters** at 2 o'clock.

Guess **whom** I saw today?

Would you stop by and see **Aunt Tillie**?

You will be seen by the next available doctor.

PASSIVE

see _____ seek advice/information/help from

OBJECT

You should see **a doctor** about that rash.

Steve saw **a cancer specialist** today.

Alexander is seeing **his thesis advisor** on Tuesday.

see _____ find out

WH-CLAUSE

See **who's at the door**, please.

Kari will see **what the congressman wants**.

see _____ have a romantic relationship with

OBJECT

[USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

Paul is seeing **a friend of mine**.

She is finally seeing **someone that we all like**.

Are you seeing **anyone**?

see _____ accompany

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Louise saw **her guests to the door**.

Jake saw **Mallory home from the party**.

see _____ consider

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

They saw **Laura as a threat**.

I see **this as a golden opportunity**.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

We see **her as inexperienced and unreliable**.

The manager saw **his staff as eager and energetic**.

Traders will see **the economic picture as unstable**.

see _____ make sure

(to it) THAT-CLAUSE

See **(to it) that the lights are turned off before you leave**.

We asked the janitor to see **(to it) that the boxes are**

removed from the hallway.

see _____ experience

OBJECT

My hometown has seen **lots of changes**.

The price of milk has seen **a large increase**.

PHRASAL VERBS

see _____ back/down/in/out/up/etc.

accompany in a specified direction

May I see you back to your office?

The receptionist will see you out.

see about _____ take care of

My secretary will see about ordering new carpet.

see in look inside

The neighbors can see in if the drapes are open.

see _____ off accompany [to a place of departure]

I'll see you off at the train station.

see out look outside

The windows were papered over so we couldn't see out.

see through look through something

The windshield is so dirty I can't see through.

see through _____ understand the deception in

His wife finally saw through all his lies.

see **SEP** through
bring to completion

Glenda saw the project through.

see **SEP** through
help in a difficult time

An extra \$100 a week will see us through.

see to _____
take care of

Would you see to the lizard in the kitchen?

PRESENT

I see we see
 you see you see
 he/she/it sees they see
 • *He sees a physical therapist once a week.*

PAST

I saw we saw
 you saw you saw
 he/she/it saw they saw
 • *I saw Marian yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has seen

PAST PERFECT ... had seen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeing we are seeing
 you are seeing you are seeing
 he/she/it is seeing they are seeing
 • *I am seeing them at 10 o'clock.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeing we were seeing
 you were seeing you were seeing
 he/she/it was seeing they were seeing
 • *We were seeing some friends last night.*

FUTURE ... will see

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be seeing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have seen

PAST PASSIVE

I was seen we were seen
 you were seen you were seen
 he/she/it was seen they were seen
 • *The suspect was last seen fleeing the crime scene.*

COMPLEMENTS

see *understand* [something previously said]
 see *acknowledge* [something previously said]
 see *use the sense of sight*

see _____ *observe with one's eyes*
 OBJECT

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

THAT-CLAUSE

EMPHATIC PARAPHRASE
 WH-CLAUSE

see _____ *understand*
 OBJECT

OBJECT + INFINITIVE
 [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

Oh, I see! [USUALLY SPOKEN EMPHATICALLY]
 I see. [USUALLY SPOKEN IN A LEVEL OR FALLING TONE]
 You won't be able to see temporarily.
 Ray can't see anymore.

I saw **Tom** at the grocery store.
 We saw **the documentary** on TV last night.
What do you see?
 The star is best seen through a high-powered telescope.
 Sam saw **the wind rip the roof off the house**.
 Nobody saw **the suspect break into the house**.
 We saw **Charles walking to school**.
 I'm sorry. I didn't see **you standing there**.
 Mary was seen **talking to Brett**.
 Someone must have seen **the car stolen**.
 We saw **the bridge swept away in the flood**.
 I see **that you bought a new car**.
 We saw in the paper **that your son is getting married**.
You bought a new car, I see.
 I saw **what they are making for dinner**.
 Did anybody see **where the kids went**?

I see **your point**.
 Nobody saw **the magnitude of the risk**.
 We all see **the attractions of living in a big city**.
 He is widely seen **to be qualified**.
 The judge was seen **to favor the prosecution**.
 I see **that we are in big trouble**.
 Our lawyer saw **that they were on shaky legal ground**.
 I see **what we should do**.
 Nobody saw **how risky the plan was**.



PRESENT

I seek we seek
 you seek you seek
 he/she/it seeks they seek
 • *France seeks to establish trade relations.*

PAST

I sought we sought
 you sought you sought
 he/she/it sought they sought
 • *The hikers sought a safe place to camp.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sought

PAST PERFECT ... had sought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeking we are seeking
 you are seeking you are seeking
 he/she/it is seeking they are seeking
 • *We are only seeking the truth.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeking we were seeking
 you were seeking you were seeking
 he/she/it was seeking they were seeking
 • *The birds were seeking suitable nesting places.*

FUTURE ... will seek

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be seeking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sought

PAST PASSIVE

I was sought we were sought
 you were sought you were sought
 he/she/it was sought they were sought
 • *Voting rights were sought by women's groups for decades.*

COMPLEMENTS

seek _____ look for

OBJECT

Ruby was seeking a **good place for the family reunion**.
 Seek **shelter** immediately when you hear the tornado siren.
 We sought **anybody who could answer our questions**.
 A suspect in the killing is being sought by the police.

PASSIVE

seek _____ ask for

OBJECT

You need to seek **professional advice**.
 I am seeking **information about cell phones**.
 We should seek **help on this problem**.
 Technical information on wind farms is being sought.

PASSIVE

seek _____ try, attempt

INFINITIVE

We sought **to find a better solution to the problem**.
 They are seeking **to replace their old computers**.
 We never sought **to cause any problems**.
 The company has always sought **to have excellent customer relations**.

seek _____ try to get/achieve

OBJECT

The plaintiff is seeking **damages of \$2 million**.
 He sought **revenge for his brother's murder**.
 She sought **perfection in everything she did**.

PHRASAL VERBS

seek SEP out look for and find

The candidate sought out the best pollsters
 in the country.

EXPRESSIONS

Seek and ye shall find. *If you look hard enough for something, you will find it. [BIBLE]*

The farmers' market has every kind of vegetable and fruit you can think of.
 Just seek and ye shall find.

PRESENT

I seem we seem
 you seem you seem
 he/she/it seems they seem

• *It seems to be a good idea.*

PAST

I seemed we seemed
 you seemed you seemed
 he/she/it seemed they seemed

• *John seemed upset about something.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has seemed

PAST PERFECT ... had seemed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Seem is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Seem is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will seem

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have seemed

PAST PASSIVE

Seem is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

seem _____ *give the impression of being, appear*

(to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The message seems **(to be) a plea for help.**

Harry seems **(to be) a very likeable young man.**

San Francisco seems **(to be) a very civilized city.**

It seemed **(to be) a good idea** at the time.

Teenagers seem **(to be) hungry** all the time.

They seem **(to be) unhappy** with our suggestion.

Allen seemed **(to be) very professional** in his approach.

(to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

NOTE: The following uses of *seem* make the following clause less definite, direct, or confrontational.

seem _____ *appear, in the opinion of the speaker/writer*

INFINITIVE

I seem **to remember telling you to clean up that mess.**

He seemed **to think we were rude to him.**

Dorothy seemed **to dislike her new slippers.**

A groundhog seems **to have dug a burrow in the river bank.**

seem _____ *appear, in the opinion of the person addressed [USED ONLY IN QUESTIONS]*

WH + seem + INFINITIVE

Who seemed **to be the most seriously injured?**

What seems **to be the problem here?**

What seemed **to cause the landslide?**

Whatever seems **to be the matter?**

seem _____ *appear to be true*

it + seem + THAT-CLAUSE

It seemed **that we had made a big mistake.**

It seems **that they might cancel the flight.**

It may seem **that I have changed my mind.**

it + seem + as if / as though / like CLAUSE

It seems **as if you were right after all.**

It seems **as though her ideas are the ones that worked the best.**

It seems **like he didn't like her anymore.**

seem _____ *appear to exist*

there + seem + to be PREDICATE NOUN

There seems **to be a problem with the bill.**

There seems **to be some misunderstanding.**

There seemed **to be some confusion about the recommendation.**

PRESENT

I select	we select
you select	you select
he/she/it selects	they select

• *He always selects the best one for himself.*

PAST

I selected	we selected
you selected	you selected
he/she/it selected	they selected

• *Our daughter finally selected a college.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has selected

PAST PERFECT ... had selected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am selecting	we are selecting
you are selecting	you are selecting
he/she/it is selecting	they are selecting

• *He is selecting decorations for the Christmas tree.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was selecting	we were selecting
you were selecting	you were selecting
he/she/it was selecting	they were selecting

• *We were selecting a place for our vacation.*

FUTURE ... will select

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be selecting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have selected

PAST PASSIVE

I was selected	we were selected
you were selected	you were selected
he/she/it was selected	they were selected

• *We were selected to be in the final round.*

COMPLEMENTS

select _____ choose, pick out

OBJECT

Please select **one of the following options**.The committee finally selected **its new chairperson**.**Which wine** did you select?Select **the words you want to delete** by highlighting them.Click on "File," then select **"Save."**She selected **three jackets** for her husband.Teams always selected **me** last.

The cast for the play has already been selected.

Shoppers can select **from a range of colors**.Students selected **from a long list of activities**.The bride and groom can select **from seven reception dinner menus**.They selected **Lloyd as the best person for the job**.We selected **the Marriott as the convention site**.**What** did you select **as its name**?Southwest was selected **as the official airline**.We selected **you to make the presentation**.They selected **Tony's restaurant to cater the dinner**.The magazine selected **our school to be featured in the article**.Sarah Greene was selected **to be the main speaker**.

PASSIVE

from OBJECT

OBJECT + as PREDICATE NOUN

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I sell we sell
 you sell you sell
 he/she/it sells they sell
 • *Our store sells sports equipment.*

PAST

I sold we sold
 you sold you sold
 he/she/it sold they sold
 • *We sold the desk on craigslist.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sold

PAST PERFECT ... had sold

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am selling we are selling
 you are selling you are selling
 he/she/it is selling they are selling
 • *These gadgets are selling like crazy.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was selling we were selling
 you were selling you were selling
 he/she/it was selling they were selling
 • *We were selling children's clothing at half price.*

FUTURE ... will sell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be selling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sold

PAST PASSIVE

I was sold we were sold
 you were sold you were sold
 he/she/it was sold they were sold
 • *That house was sold last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

sell be a successful product/idea

I think that his new CD will really sell.
 His proposal will never sell.

sell _____ exchange for money

OBJECT

I want to sell **my old computer**.
 He finally sold **his jewelry business**.
 Should we sell **the rocking chair** or give it away?
 She sold **the lamp for \$10**.

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT

How much did you sell **the table for**?

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We sold **them some lawn furniture**.
 Jay sold **the dealer his coin collection**.

to PARAPHRASE

We sold **some lawn furniture to them**.
 Jay sold **his coin collection to the dealer**.

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

He sold **us just what we had in mind**.
 We sell **people whatever kind of car they want**.

sell _____ be given in exchange [for money]

for OBJECT

The Picasso painting sold **for \$104 million**.
 The antique rolling pin sold **for \$25**.

sell _____ offer for purchase

OBJECT

The hardware store sells **electrical and plumbing supplies**.
 Our group is selling **raffle tickets**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT

They sell **fish sandwiches** on Friday.

Gym memberships are sold by the month.

The boutique is selling **scarves for as little as \$7**.

sell _____ be offered for purchase

for OBJECT

Milk is selling **for \$3.50 a gallon**.

sell _____ successfully promote

OBJECT

John really knows how to sell **his vision for the company**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sell SEP off liquidate

We sold off our clothing division two years ago.

sell out of _____ sell all of

We sold out of French Roast coffee yesterday.

We are sold out of chocolate ice cream.

PRESENT

I send we send
 you send you send
 he/she/it sends they send

• *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

PAST

I sent we sent
 you sent you sent
 he/she/it sent they sent

• *They sent us a nice note.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sent

PAST PERFECT ... had sent

PAST PASSIVE

I was sent we were sent
 you were sent you were sent
 he/she/it was sent they were sent

• *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sending we are sending
 you are sending you are sending
 he/she/it is sending they are sending

• *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending we were sending
 you were sending you were sending
 he/she/it was sending they were sending

• *They were sending their children to a private school.*

FUTURE ... will send

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sent

COMPLEMENTS

send _____ mail, dispatch

OBJECT

They forgot to send **the letter**.

We will send **a car** to pick them up.

send _____ cause to go / be carried

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We sent **our luggage on ahead**.

I sent **the children to bed** early.

The wizard sent **Dorothy back to Kansas**.

The accident sent **a cloud of dust into the air**.

The package was sent **to the wrong office**.

Send **me your ideas**.

We sent **them a wedding present**.

Send **your ideas to me**.

We sent **a wedding present to them**.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

PHRASAL VERBS

send SEP away/back/by/down/in/out/
 over/etc. cause to go in a specified direction

send (away/back/down/off/out/up)
 for _____ summon, request

The publisher sent my manuscript back unread.

You may send the ambassador in now.

Send for the school nurse immediately.

Abby sent away for extra copies of the report.

Let's send out for pizza.

Please send your application in by December 31.

The coach sent Hopkins in for Busam.

send SEP in submit

send _____ in for put [someone] into a
 contest as a replacement for

We sent off a present to our granddaughter.

Send the children off so that we can talk privately.

send SEP off mail

The town sent the soldiers off with a parade.

send SEP off cause to go away

send SEP off say farewell to [someone
 leaving on a trip]

send SEP out issue, distribute

The company sent a press release out this morning.

send _____ out for cause [someone] to go
 on an errand to get

I sent Billie out for some more ice cream.

send SEP up/down cause to go up/down

Good economic news sent the stock market up.

PRESENT

I separate we separate
you separate you separate
he/she/it separates they separate
• *The path separates at the top of the hill.*

PAST

I separated we separated
you separated you separated
he/she/it separated they separated
• *Brian separated the yolks and egg whites.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has separated

PAST PERFECT ... had separated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am separating we are separating
you are separating you are separating
he/she/it is separating they are separating
• *Her parents are separating.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was separating we were separating
you were separating you were separating
he/she/it was separating they were separating
• *The searchers were separating to cover more ground.*

FUTURE ... will separate

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be separating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have separated

PAST PASSIVE

I was separated we were separated
you were separated you were separated
he/she/it was separated they were separated
• *The groups were separated by age and ability.*

COMPLEMENTS

separate *move/go/break apart*

Tell the girls to separate and mix with the guests.
The train tracks separate in the next town.
Orange juice will separate if you leave it too long.
We separated at the airport but agreed to meet later for dinner.
The first stage of the rocket didn't separate properly.

separate *stop living together*

The Johnstons are separating after 10 years of marriage.

separate _____ *cause to move/be apart, divide, be between*

OBJECT

The police separated **the two gangs**.
A high wooden fence separated **the two yards**.
The teacher separated **the class** into four groups.
Please separate **the invoices** into folders by month.

PASSIVE

John and Mary were separated by mutual agreement.
A lot of families were separated during the war.

OBJECT + from OBJECT

We must separate **fact from fiction**.
Separate **the bruised pears from the others**.
How do you separate **your private life from your public life?**
The dairy separates **the milk from the cream**.

PHRASAL VERBS

separate **SEP** **out (from / out of _____)** *remove (from [something])*

Separate out the milk jugs from the rest of the recycled plastic.
Electrolysis separates hydrogen out of water.

EXPRESSIONS

separate the men from the boys
show who is competent and who is not

The current economy will really separate the men from the boys.

separate the wheat from the chaff
set what is valuable apart from what is worthless

When it comes to books, our book club tries to separate the wheat from the chaff.

PRESENT

I serve we serve
 you serve you serve
 he/she/it serves they serve

• *The laser printer serves the whole office.*

PAST

I served we served
 you served you served
 he/she/it served they served

• *Grandpa served in the Navy.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has served

PAST PERFECT ... had served

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am serving we are serving
 you are serving you are serving
 he/she/it is serving they are serving

• *We are serving the guests coffee on the deck.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was serving we were serving
 you were serving you were serving
 he/she/it was serving they were serving

• *The waiter was serving another couple.*

FUTURE ... will serve

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be serving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have served

PAST PASSIVE

I was served we were served
 you were served you were served
 he/she/it was served they were served

• *Sorry, lunch was served at noon.*

COMPLEMENTS

serve perform a duty/service/obligation

He has served for many years.
 Everyone has a need to serve.

serve provide food/drink

We will start serving at five.
 We will have to hire someone to serve.

serve hit a ball over a net to begin play

The visiting team always serves first.

serve _____ perform [a duty, service, obligation] to/for

OBJECT

He has served **his country** for many years.
 How can we serve **our customers** better?
 One grocery store serves **the whole town**.
 The power company serves **Arizona and southern California**.
 He is serving **a three-year term in the state penitentiary**.
 Marilyn served **as church administrator** for 31 years.
 Mycroft Holmes served **his brother as a crime consultant**.
 I served **on a committee to eliminate waste in government**.

as OBJECT

OBJECT + as OBJECT

on OBJECT

serve _____ provide food/drink to/for

OBJECT

The restaurant cannot serve **minors** in the lounge.
 We are not able to serve **large tour groups**.
 The recipe serves **six**.

serve _____ provide [food/drink]

OBJECT

The restaurant serves **Mandarin food**.
 The school serves **waffles** on the weekend.
 Dinner is served.
 They served **the whole group lasagna**.
 The cooks served **the grateful soldiers a hot meal**.
 They served **lasagna to the whole group**.
 The cooks served **a hot meal to the grateful soldiers**.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

serve _____ hit [a ball over a net] to begin play

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Meyers serves **the ball to Larsen**.

serve _____ function, be used

as OBJECT

INFINITIVE

Our school serves **as a model of racial harmony**.
 Sweating serves **to regulate body temperature**.
 The severe penalty serves **to discourage other cheaters**.

PRESENT

I set we set
 you set you set
 he/she/it sets they set

• *The auctioneer sets a minimum bid.*

PAST

I set we set
 you set you set
 he/she/it set they set

• *I set my chair next to the window.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has set

PAST PERFECT ... had set

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am setting we are setting
 you are setting you are setting
 he/she/it is setting they are setting

• *I am setting the alarm for 6 A.M.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was setting we were setting
 you were setting you were setting
 he/she/it was setting they were setting

• *We were setting a new direction for the company.*

FUTURE ... will set

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be setting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have set

PAST PASSIVE

I was set we were set
 you were set you were set
 he/she/it was set they were set

• *The couch was set in front of the TV screen.*

COMPLEMENTS

set sink below the horizon

The sun will set at 6:43 tonight.
 The moon was just setting below the trees in the west.
 Orion was setting behind the snowy hills.

set become solid/rigid

The chocolate mousse never set properly.
 The cement in the patio was setting nicely.
 Be careful. The glue sets in just a few seconds.

set _____ put, lay

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The hunters set **their guns against the fence**.
 I set **my foot on the bottom rung of the ladder**.
 She set **the novel in postwar Canada**.

PASSIVE

The house was set **well back from the road**.
 The movie was set **in Los Angeles**.
 The album had been set **on a shelf in the living room**.

set _____ arrange, adjust

OBJECT

The doctor set **my dislocated shoulder**.
 I have set **the clock** for daylight saving time.
 I set **the volume on the radio** way too high.
 Last winter, we set **the thermostat** at 62 degrees.
 His face was set in a permanent scowl.

PASSIVE

set _____ establish, fix

OBJECT

The track team set **a record for the 400-meter relay**.
 The Hunt brothers tried to set **the price of silver**.
 Sarah and Lucas have set **the date of their wedding**.
 Graham sets **a good example for the other children**.
 We set **a fund-raising goal of \$200**.
 The real estate agent set **the price of our house** at \$235,000.

set _____ cause to be in a certain state/condition

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Lincoln set **the slaves free**.
 Grandpa always set **the dogs loose** after breakfast.

OBJECT + TO PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The speech set **us to thinking about harnessing the sun's energy**.



PHRASAL VERBS

set SEP **aside/down/forward/out/**
up/etc. *put in a specified position*

set **about** _____ *begin*

set _____ **against** *cause to disagree with*

set _____ **apart** *make distinctive*

set SEP **aside** *keep apart*

set SEP **aside** *reject, nullify*

set SEP **back** *delay*

set SEP **back** *cost [someone] [INFORMAL]*

set SEP **down** *put in writing*

set _____ **down to** *blame [something] on*

set SEP **forth** *announce, make known*

set **in** *begin*

set **off/out** *depart, start out*

set SEP **off** *make distinctive*

set SEP **off** *cause to be very emotional*

set SEP **off** *trigger, cause to make a noise*

set SEP **off** *cause to explode*

set **on/upon** _____ *attack*

set SEP **out** *display*

set SEP **out** *plant*

set **to** _____ *begin*

set _____ **to** *order to*

set SEP **up** *arrange*

set SEP **up** *build, erect*

set SEP **up** *found, establish*

set SEP **up** *prepare for use*

set SEP **up** *raise to power / a higher position / etc.*

set SEP **up** *make [someone] the target of a joke/deception*

set SEP **up with** *arrange a date for [someone] with*

The logician set the problem aside and went to lunch.

Our neighbors set scraps out for our dog.

The Scouts set about repairing the holes in the tent.

His budget policies set the president against Congress.

His honesty and sense of justice set him apart.

We set aside \$200 a month for the kids' education.

They set their differences aside and became close friends.

Congress set the issue aside for the time being.

The Supreme Court set aside the appellate court ruling.

The bad economy will set back our plans to expand.

The president's order set genetic research back six years.

How much did the new lawn tractor set you back?

The secretary has set down what was said at the executive meeting.

The boss set Hank's mistake down to inexperience and naiveté.

The church set forth its principles of equality and inclusion.

Decay has already set in.

With all the political commercials on TV, voter fatigue has set in.

Three hundred pioneers set off from St. Joseph, Missouri.

Refugees set out in overcrowded boats for the mainland.

The designer set the title off from the text below.

Be careful not to set Dolores off; she's already angry.

My husband set the metal detector off with his belt buckle.

Quarrymen set off 150 pounds of dynamite.

The citizens set upon the soldiers and beat them badly.

The store sets out its Christmas items right after Halloween.

Don't set your tomatoes out before the last frost.

Farmers set to plugging the hole in the dike.

Engineers set to work on the project.

My parents set me to vacuuming the dining room.

Let's set a meeting up with the committee chairpersons.

Gerry set up a miniature railroad in the living room.

Our group set up a web-based discussion forum.

She set her mom's computer up to do e-mail.

Adolf Hitler set himself up as dictator.

They set me up on April Fool's Day, and I fell for it.

Would you set me up with your roommate?

PRESENT

I settle we settle
 you settle you settle
 he/she/it settles they settle
 • *He always settles his bills promptly.*

PAST

I settled we settled
 you settled you settled
 he/she/it settled they settled
 • *They finally settled their argument.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has settled

PAST PERFECT ... had settled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am settling we are settling
 you are settling you are settling
 he/she/it is settling they are settling
 • *We are settling a dispute between family members.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was settling we were settling
 you were settling you were settling
 he/she/it was settling they were settling
 • *The dust was settling over the furniture.*

FUTURE ... will settle

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be settling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have settled

PAST PASSIVE

I was settled we were settled
 you were settled you were settled
 he/she/it was settled they were settled
 • *New Zealand was first settled by Polynesians.*

COMPLEMENTS

settle *come to an agreement*

The two sides will never settle.
 The judge asked them to settle before the case came to trial.

settle *sink gradually*

Wait until the tea leaves settle before you pour.
 The house has settled about two inches.
 We couldn't drive until the dust settled.

settle _____ *come to an agreement/decision [on]*

OBJECT

Will you settle **a bet** for us?

PASSIVE

The suit was settled out of court.

on OBJECT

Did she ever settle **on a wedding dress**?

settle _____ *pay [a debt, bill]*

OBJECT

You must settle **your hotel bill** before you leave.

settle _____ *cause to sink gradually*

OBJECT

A rain shower settled **the dust**.

settle _____ *make calm*

OBJECT

Ginger ale will settle **your stomach**.

settle _____ *put in a comfortable position*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Michael settled **himself behind the wheel** and started the car.
 The nurse settled **Mrs. Reems in her bed**.

settle _____ *establish a home/colony*

ADVERB OF PLACE

We eventually settled **near Portland**.
 The Greeks settled **all along the Mediterranean coast**.

settle _____ *establish a colony in*

OBJECT

English Puritans settled **New England**.

settle _____ *come to rest*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Pookie finally settled **on my lap**.
 Her arthritis settled **in her knees**.

PHRASAL VERBS

settle down *calm down*

The teacher told the rowdy kids to settle down.

settle down *establish a home*

Adam eventually settled down in south St. Louis.

settle for _____ *accept*

I'd like \$50 for the bike, but I'll settle for \$40.

PRESENT

I shake we shake
 you shake you shake
 he/she/it shakes they shake
 • *The windows shake when it's windy.*

PAST

I shook we shook
 you shook you shook
 he/she/it shook they shook
 • *I shook the umbrella before I closed it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shaken

PAST PERFECT ... had shaken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaking we are shaking
 you are shaking you are shaking
 he/she/it is shaking they are shaking
 • *My hands are shaking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaking we were shaking
 you were shaking you were shaking
 he/she/it was shaking they were shaking
 • *He was shaking his head in disbelief.*

FUTURE ... will shake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaken we were shaken
 you were shaken you were shaken
 he/she/it was shaken they were shaken
 • *Everyone was badly shaken by the earthquake.*

COMPLEMENTS

shake tremble, vibrate

His voice shakes whenever he gets excited.
 The floor shakes whenever a train goes by.
 My legs were beginning to shake from the strain of lifting the box.

shake _____ cause to move quickly up and down / back and forth / from side to side

OBJECT

The cat is shaking **its toy mouse** furiously.
 I shook **David** by the shoulder to wake him up.
 I shook **my head** vigorously, trying to get him to stop talking.
 We shook **the rugs** and put them back on the floor.
 They shook **hands** and smiled for the camera.
 Shake **the dressing** well before using.

shake _____ shock, surprise, upset

OBJECT

The news about the accident shook **us all** badly.
 The sudden increase in oil prices shook **the financial markets**.
 Her daughter's death shook **her religious faith**.
 She was visibly shaken when she returned.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

shake SEP down/off/out/up/etc. cause to move quickly in a specified direction

The gardener shook the apples down.
 Tip Top stood up and shook the dust off.

shake SEP down get money from by using threats

The politician shook down corporations for campaign contributions.

shake SEP off get away from

The car thief was unable to shake the police off.

shake SEP off get rid of

It took me a week to shake off a cold.

shake SEP out clean by shaking

We put fresh sheets on the bed and shook out the blankets.

shake SEP out straighten by shaking

Lydia shook the shirts out before hanging them up.

shake SEP up mix by shaking

I shook the salad dressing up before opening the bottle.

shake SEP up change greatly

The new department head shook up the staff with a round of hiring and firing.

PRESENT

I share we share
 you share you share
 he/she/it shares they share
 • *Thomas always shares his toys.*

PAST

I shared we shared
 you shared you shared
 he/she/it shared they shared
 • *We shared a cubicle when we were interns.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shared

PAST PERFECT ... had shared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sharing we are sharing
 you are sharing you are sharing
 he/she/it is sharing they are sharing
 • *Brandon isn't sharing!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sharing we were sharing
 you were sharing you were sharing
 he/she/it was sharing they were sharing
 • *We were sharing a cab to the airport.*

FUTURE ... will share

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sharing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shared

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was shared they were shared
 • *The profits and expenses were shared equally.*

COMPLEMENTS

share *divide something into parts for the use of two or more people*

Mommy! They aren't sharing!
 We would be happy to share; we have more than enough.
 Some kids have a hard time learning to share.
 All members of the group must share equally.

share _____ *divide into parts for the use of two or more people, have/use together*

OBJECT

Let's share **a dessert**.
 Barb and I often share **a bottle of wine** at dinner.
 Can I share **this box of donuts** with you?
 We shared **an apartment** in Pittsburgh.
 The costs must be shared by all participants equally.
 We will share **what resources we have**.
 You can't share **what you don't have**.
 Investors will share **whatever profits the company makes**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

share _____ *participate*

in OBJECT

The whole class shared **in the gift for the teacher**.
 All of us share **in my brother's happiness**.

share _____ *have in common*

OBJECT

Tim and Johanna share **a love for old movies**.
 We don't share **their enthusiasm for home-roasted coffee**.
 A dislike of snakes and spiders is shared by most cultures.

PASSIVE

share _____ *tell, express*

OBJECT

The boss shared **a story from his childhood**.
 Please share **your ideas** with us.
 The widow was unable to share **her feelings** with the support group.

PRESENT

I shave	we shave
you shave	you shave
he/she/it shaves	they shave

• *He shaves every morning.*

PAST

I shaved	we shaved
you shaved	you shaved
he/she/it shaved	they shaved

• *We shaved some soap to get thin flakes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shaved

PAST PERFECT ... had shaved

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaving	we are shaving
you are shaving	you are shaving
he/she/it is shaving	they are shaving

• *Can you get the phone? I'm shaving.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaving	we were shaving
you were shaving	you were shaving
he/she/it was shaving	they were shaving

• *He was shaving by the time he was 16.*

FUTURE

... will shave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shaving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shaved

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaved	we were shaved
you were shaved	you were shaved
he/she/it was shaved	they were shaved

• *His head was shaved every few days.*

COMPLEMENTS

shave cut off one's beard

I need to shave.

Richard Nixon had such a heavy beard that he shaved twice a day.
When was the last time you shaved?

shave _____ cut off the hair of with a razor

OBJECT

Before the surgery, a nurse shaved **my back**.
Most women shave **their legs**.

Competitive swimmers shave **their whole bodies**.

Before the makeup could be applied, his head was shaven.

PASSIVE

shave _____ cut a thin slice from

OBJECT

We shaved **dark chocolate** to get chocolate curls.

Shave **the cheese** as thin as you can.

Thin slices of prosciutto were shaved for the appetizers.

PASSIVE

shave _____ reduce slightly

OBJECT

We have to shave **our prices** to remain competitive.

The factory shaved **costs** by turning the heat down five degrees.

The store shaved **ten cents** off the regular price.

The injury shaved **the odds of our winning**.

A few seconds were shaved from the old record.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

shave SEP off cut [from]

He shaved off a little sliver from the edge
of the table with a plane.

PRESENT

I shed we shed
 you shed you shed
 he/she/it sheds they shed

• *The tree sheds its leaves all over the patio.*

PAST

I shed we shed
 you shed you shed
 he/she/it shed they shed

• *The dogs shed all over my black sweater.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shed

PAST PERFECT ... had shed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shedding we are shedding
 you are shedding you are shedding
 he/she/it is shedding they are shedding

• *They are shedding their distrust of modern ways.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shedding we were shedding
 you were shedding you were shedding
 he/she/it was shedding they were shedding

• *The animals were shedding as the days grew longer.*

FUTURE ... will shed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shedding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shed

PAST PASSIVE

I was shed we were shed
 you were shed you were shed
 he/she/it was shed they were shed

• *Our coats were shed as soon as we stepped onto the plane.*

COMPLEMENTS

shed cast off / lose fur/skin/leaves naturally

My dog sheds in the spring and autumn.
 Most reptiles shed whenever they get too big for their old skin.
 Most trees in temperate latitudes shed annually.

shed _____ cast off / lose [fur/skin/leaves] naturally

OBJECT

Most long-haired dogs shed **a lot of fur** in the spring.
 All snakes shed **their skins**.
 Most shade trees shed **their leaves**.

PASSIVE

Cat hair had been shed all over the rug.

shed _____ take off, get rid of

OBJECT

The kids shed **their clothes** and put on their bathing suits.
 I hope to shed **about ten pounds** this year.
 Many people never shed **their fear of public speaking**.
 You will have to shed **some of your low-performing stocks**.

PASSIVE

Their fear of foreign travel has never really been shed.

shed _____ cause to flow/drain/slough off

OBJECT

My new jacket sheds **water** pretty well.
 Our tent didn't seem to shed **a drop of water**.
 The roof is steep enough to shed **snow**.

shed _____ let flow

OBJECT

We shed **many tears** over her death.
 The soldier shed **a lot of blood** before a tourniquet was applied.

EXPRESSIONS

shed crocodile tears pretend that one is crying

The banks were shedding crocodile tears for depositors who lost money.

PRESENT

I shift we shift
 you shift you shift
 he/she/it shifts they shift
 • *He always shifts the blame to you.*

PAST

I shifted we shifted
 you shifted you shifted
 he/she/it shifted they shifted
 • *The mayor shifted uneasily in his chair.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shifted

PAST PERFECT ... had shifted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shifting we are shifting
 you are shifting you are shifting
 he/she/it is shifting they are shifting
 • *Be careful—the load is shifting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shifting we were shifting
 you were shifting you were shifting
 he/she/it was shifting they were shifting
 • *The campaign was shifting its advertising strategy.*

FUTURE ... will shift

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shifting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shifted

PAST PASSIVE

I was shifted we were shifted
 you were shifted you were shifted
 he/she/it was shifted they were shifted

• *The balance of power was shifted by recent events.*

COMPLEMENTS

shift *change position*

The house has shifted a bit on its foundation.
 The audience shifted uneasily during the angry exchange.
 The wind is shifting.
 Ken's eyes shifted from the café to the bank.
 Can you shift a little so I can get by?
 Political beliefs have definitely shifted.
 Consumer preferences are constantly shifting.

shift _____ *move, change*

OBJECT

Learning to shift **your balance** correctly is the key to skiing.
 They want to shift **the date of the conference**.
 Shift **the boxes** so we can get the car out of the garage.
 They were really trying to shift **the blame**.
 Let's shift **the discussion** back to economic policy.
 Young people shift **their music preferences** almost weekly.
 Advertising tries to shift **consumer brand loyalty**.
 It is nearly impossible to shift **a person's basic temperament**.
 She shifted **her gaze** to the watercolor by Édouard Manet.

PASSIVE

The guns were shifted to cover the port better.
 The cargo was shifted to keep the boat balanced.
 Political allegiances have been shifted by the economic downturn.

PRESENT

I shine we shine
you shine you shine
he/she/it shines they shine
• *The sun always shines in Arizona.*

PAST

I shone/shined we shone/shined
you shone/shined you shone/shined
he/she/it shone/shined they shone/shined
• *He shined the light right into our eyes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shone/shined
PAST PERFECT ... had shone/shined

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shining we are shining
you are shining you are shining
he/she/it is shining they are shining
• *A light is shining in the window.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shining we were shining
you were shining you were shining
he/she/it was shining they were shining
• *Their eyes were shining with excitement.*

FUTURE ... will shine
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shining
FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shone/shined

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was shone/shined they were shone/shined
• *My shoes were shined and my suit was pressed.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The irregular form *shone* is used both with and without an object, except in the sense “make bright by polishing”; the regular form *shined* is used only with an object.

shine give off / reflect light, be bright

The stars were shining brightly.
The jewels shone in the display case.
The sun, reflecting from the glass building, shone in our eyes.
Their swords and spears shone in the moonlight.
The princess’s hair shone like gold.
The lighthouse shone through the mist, guiding us to port.
Fred’s face was shining with joy as he ran to meet Rosemary.
Melissa shines in social studies.

shine have a bright appearance

shine do very well

shine _____ cause to give off light
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The guide shined **his flashlight into the back of the tomb**.
The policeman is shining **his headlights on the abandoned car**.
The newspaper shined **light on corruption at City Hall**.
Bright lights were shone **on the prisoners’ faces** all night long.

PASSIVE

shine _____ make bright by polishing
OBJECT

The jeweler shined **the gem** until it sparkled.
I shined **my shoes** carefully before the interview.

PHRASAL VERBS

shine down/in/out/up/etc.
give off light in a specified direction

The sun shone down on us as we
walked along the beach.

shine _____ down/in/out/up/etc.
cause to give off light in a specified
direction

Shine the flashlight up a little higher.

shine through be clearly shown

Her personality really shines through in her photography.

PRESENT

I shoot we shoot
 you shoot you shoot
 he/she/it shoots they shoot

• *MacInnis shoots and scores!*

PAST

I shot we shot
 you shot you shot
 he/she/it shot they shot

• *They shot several deer this fall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shot

PAST PERFECT ... had shot

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shooting we are shooting
 you are shooting you are shooting
 he/she/it is shooting they are shooting

• *The basketball team is shooting from the perimeter.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shooting we were shooting
 you were shooting you were shooting
 he/she/it was shooting they were shooting

• *They were shooting the scene in our neighborhood.*

FUTURE ... will shoot

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shooting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shot

PAST PASSIVE

I was shot we were shot
 you were shot you were shot
 he/she/it was shot they were shot

• *Up in the Air was shot in St. Louis.*

COMPLEMENTS

shoot *fire a weapon*

The police were ordered to shoot if necessary.

I picked up the bow and shot.

shoot *hit/kick/throw/strike a ball/puck toward a goal*

James shoots from the baseline. [BASKETBALL]

Beckham shoots from just outside the penalty area. [SOCCER]

Pronger shoots under the goalie's glove. [HOCKEY]

shoot *make a photograph/film*

Just point the camera and shoot.

The crew is shooting in Las Vegas.

shoot _____ *fire [a gun]*

OBJECT

Can you shoot **a rifle**?

Revelers shot **pistols** into the air on New Year's Eve.

shoot _____ *strike with a bullet/arrow*

OBJECT

An unknown assailant shot **three people**.

We were shooting **tin cans** behind the barn.

PASSIVE

Somebody has been shot.

WH-CLAUSE

You can only shoot **what is in season**.

Shoot **whatever moves**.

shoot _____ *photograph, film*

OBJECT

We want to shoot **the boats in the harbor**.

They were shooting **a video of the parade**.

PASSIVE

The dream sequence was shot in black and white.

shoot _____ *move very quickly*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car shot **through the intersection**.

Our boat shot **under the bridge**.

The song shot **straight to the top of the charts**.

PHRASAL VERBS

shoot *away/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc. move very quickly in a specified direction*

The motorcycle shot away when the light turned green.

shoot *for* _____ *have as a goal*

Eli is shooting for a Ph.D. in environmental sciences.

shoot *up* *grow quickly*

The daffodils shot up overnight.

Yu-chan is really shooting up.

PRESENT

I shout we shout
 you shout you shout
 he/she/it shouts they shout
 • *He shouts when he's angry.*

PAST

I shouted we shouted
 you shouted you shouted
 he/she/it shouted they shouted
 • *He shouted at the referees.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shouted

PAST PERFECT ... had shouted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shouting we are shouting
 you are shouting you are shouting
 he/she/it is shouting they are shouting
 • *She is shouting into her cell phone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shouting we were shouting
 you were shouting you were shouting
 he/she/it was shouting they were shouting
 • *They were shouting as loud as they could.*

FUTURE ... will shout

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shouting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shouted

PAST PASSIVE

I was shouted we were shouted
 you were shouted you were shouted
 he/she/it was shouted they were shouted
 • *Alarms were sounded and warnings were shouted.*

COMPLEMENTS

shout cry out loudly

The kids are always shouting.
 Don't shout! I can hear you just fine.
 We had to shout above the noise of the engines.
 The kids shouted with delight when Santa appeared.
 Devon shouted in pain when the nurse gave him a shot.

shout _____ say very loudly

OBJECT

They were shouting **the news**.
 Someone in the crowd was shouting **my name**.
 Instructions on how to unlock the door were shouted
 through the window.

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

I shouted **that I had won the race**.
 Marian shouted **that she was in the garden**.
 The conductor shouted **that the train was about to leave**.

shout _____ signal unmistakably

OBJECT

Her clothes shouted "**money**."
 Our accent and clothing shout "**tourists**."
 The patient's pale skin and unresponsiveness shouted "**shock**."

PHRASAL VERBS

shout SEP **down** prevent from speaking by shouting

Protesters shouted the speaker down.

PHRASAL VERBS

show SEP **around/away/down/in/out/up/etc.** *lead/guide in a specified direction*

show SEP **off** *display, exhibit*

show off *do something to attract attention*

show up *arrive*

show up *appear*

show up *be easily seen*

show SEP **up** *outmatch, humble*

Sam was showing the White House visitors around.

A guide showed us down to the cafeteria.

The bride-to-be showed off her wedding gown.

Ronny was always showing off in front of the girls.

Ozzie showed up just in time for dinner.

The Republican ratings show up as the red line on your screen.

His thinning hair really shows up in this photo.

Fred showed everybody up at the math contest.

EXPRESSIONS

show [one's] face *make an appearance*

show [one's] hand *reveal one's intentions*

show [one's] teeth *act in a threatening manner*

show signs of _____ *give indications of*

show [someone] the ropes *show [someone] how to do something*

show [one's] true colors *show what one is really like*

I wonder if Todd will show his face at the party tonight.

He never showed his hand while discussing free trade.

Boyd showed his teeth whenever someone criticized his girlfriend.

The patient shows signs of bipolar disorder.

The student is showing signs of fatigue.

Don't worry; the secretary who's retiring will show you the ropes.

The boss showed his true colors when he laughed about firing three employees right before Christmas.

PRESENT

I show we show
 you show you show
 he/she/it shows they show
 • *The picture shows a vase of sunflowers.*

PAST

I showed we showed
 you showed you showed
 he/she/it showed they showed
 • *He showed no emotion as he spoke.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shown

PAST PERFECT ... had shown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am showing we are showing
 you are showing you are showing
 he/she/it is showing they are showing
 • *I am showing some friends around the garden.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was showing we were showing
 you were showing you were showing
 he/she/it was showing they were showing
 • *The movie was showing at a theater downtown.*

FUTURE

... will show

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be showing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have shown

PAST PASSIVE

I was shown we were shown
 you were shown you were shown
 he/she/it was shown they were shown
 • *The theory was shown to be seriously flawed.*

COMPLEMENTS

show *be visible/present/presented/displayed*

The house's age is obviously showing.
 The buds are just beginning to show.
 Nothing showed on the X-rays.
 The wine stain doesn't show.
 Our visitors never showed.
 When is the movie showing?
 He never lets his feelings show.

show _____ *lead, guide*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

May I show **you to your seats**, ladies?
 The receptionist will show **us to the conference room**.

show _____ *display*

OBJECT

You must show **your ID card** before you can enter.
 The car showed **signs of having been in an accident**.
 Her paintings have been shown all over the world.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Show **me the money**.
 The realtor showed **some prospective buyers the house**.
 They always showed **their employees real consideration**.

to PARAPHRASE

Show **the money to me**.
 The realtor showed **the house to some prospective buyers**.
 They always showed **real consideration to their employees**.

show _____ *demonstrate*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

John showed **himself to be an excellent landscaper**.
 The plans showed **the home to be smaller than we had been told**.
 The results were shown **to be faked**.

PASSIVE

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The concert will show **that Louise has made enormous progress**.
 We showed **them that we were fully prepared to do the job**.

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE

The results showed **just what we had expected**.
 Janet showed **me how much we could save on insurance**.

(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE

The chart showed **how much to invest**.
 The manual shows **you what to do**.
 Lou will show **them where to park**.



PRESENT

I shrink we shrink
 you shrink you shrink
 he/she/it shrinks they shrink
 • *Wool shrinks if washed in hot water.*

PAST

I shrank we shrank
 you shrank you shrank
 he/she/it shrank they shrank
 • *The architect shrank the house by a third.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shrunk**PAST PERFECT** ... had shrunk**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am shrinking we are shrinking
 you are shrinking you are shrinking
 he/she/it is shrinking they are shrinking
 • *Our margin of error is shrinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shrinking we were shrinking
 you were shrinking you were shrinking
 he/she/it was shrinking they were shrinking
 • *The laundry was always shrinking my shirts.*

FUTURE ... will shrink**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be shrinking**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have shrunk**PAST PASSIVE**

I was shrunk we were shrunk
 you were shrunk you were shrunk
 he/she/it was shrunk they were shrunk
 • *The deficit was shrunk significantly in the third quarter.*

COMPLEMENTS**shrink** *become smaller*

Hot metal shrinks as it cools.
 Our budget is shrinking by the minute.
 Average take-home pay has shrunk over the last five years.
 Arctic sea ice is shrinking more every summer.
 My waist has shrunk a bit, thanks to my diet.

shrink _____ *cause to become smaller*

OBJECT

He shrank **the wool sweaters** by using water that was too hot.
 We waterproofed the wet barrels by shrinking **them** in the sun.
 We are trying to shrink **our inventory of unsold goods**.
 Our profits have been shrunk by rising costs.

PASSIVE

shrink _____ *try to avoid*

from OBJECT

Most actors don't shrink **from the limelight**.
 The president does not shrink **from his role as commander-in-chief**.

from PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Reggie won't shrink **from telling the truth on the witness stand**.
 Scientists don't shrink **from examining all the data**.

PHRASAL VERBS

shrink away/back (from _____)
draw back (from [someone/something]),
 as in fear

The children shrank away from the
 homeless man.
 The cats shrank back at the sight of the dogs.

PRESENT

I shut we shut
 you shut you shut
 he/she/it shuts they shut
 • *Sandy shuts the store by 8 P.M.*

PAST

I shut we shut
 you shut you shut
 he/she/it shut they shut
 • *He shut himself in his office.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shut

PAST PERFECT ... had shut

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shutting we are shutting
 you are shutting you are shutting
 he/she/it is shutting they are shutting
 • *Hurry! The ushers are shutting the doors.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shutting we were shutting
 you were shutting you were shutting
 he/she/it was shutting they were shutting
 • *The highway patrol was shutting the roads.*

FUTURE ... will shut

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shutting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shut

PAST PASSIVE

I was shut we were shut
 you were shut you were shut
 he/she/it was shut they were shut
 • *The gates were shut by the guard.*

COMPLEMENTS

shut close

The door is shutting behind him.
 The gate shut with a loud crash.
 My eyes slowly shut and I fell asleep.
 The lid shut on my fingers.
 We heard the trap shut with a snap.
 All government offices shut at five.

shut _____ cause to close

OBJECT

I shut **the windows** and drew the curtains.
 President Roosevelt shut **all the banks** temporarily to prevent failures.
 He shut **the book** and returned it to the shelf.
 The Navy is going to shut **the entire shipyard**.
 Once inside, I shut **the umbrella**.

PASSIVE

The entrance was shut after the last worker arrived.

shut _____ confine, pen

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We always shut **the animals in the barn** at night.
 The blockade shut **the enemy fleet inside the port**.
 The prisoners were shut **inside a makeshift jail**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

shut SEP **down** close permanently

Producers shut the play down after only 10 performances.
 The car manufacturer shut down three automotive plants.

shut SEP **in** surround, enclose

The cowboys shut the cattle in.

shut off stop operating

The motor shut off 15 minutes ago.

shut SEP **off** turn off

They shut off the gas before leaving on vacation.

shut SEP **off** stop movement into and out of

Police shut the street off during the standoff.
 Authorities shut off the downtown area because of a bomb threat.

shut SEP **out** exclude

The manager shut us out of the decision making.

shut up stop talking [INFORMAL]

Would you shut up and listen to me?

shut SEP **up** lock up

Guards shut the prisoners up in their cells.

PRESENT

I sign we sign
 you sign you sign
 he/she/it signs they sign
 • *The sheriff signs all the release forms.*

PAST

I signed we signed
 you signed you signed
 he/she/it signed they signed
 • *The governor signed the bill yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has signed

PAST PERFECT ... had signed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am signing we are signing
 you are signing you are signing
 he/she/it is signing they are signing
 • *We are signing the contract tomorrow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was signing we were signing
 you were signing you were signing
 he/she/it was signing they were signing
 • *She was signing books for the entire class.*

FUTURE ... will sign

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be signing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have signed

PAST PASSIVE

I was signed we were signed
 you were signed you were signed
 he/she/it was signed they were signed

• *The Treaty of Versailles was signed on June 28, 1919.*

COMPLEMENTS

sign write one's name

Where should I sign?
 Sign here, please.

sign formally agree to the terms of a contract/agreement

The players for next season have all signed.
 All participating countries must sign.

sign communicate in sign language

Do you know how to sign?
 She has been hired to sign at the convention.
 The hospital needs people who can sign.

sign _____ write one's name on

OBJECT

Be sure to sign and date **the document**.
 The president himself signed **the note**.
 The actress was signing **autographs** for her fans.
 The get-well card had been signed by everyone in the office.

PASSIVE

sign _____ formally accept the terms of [a contract, an agreement]

OBJECT

The union finally signed **the new contract**.
 The government never actually signed **the trade agreement**.
 The copyright agreement was signed by all parties.

PASSIVE

sign _____ hire with a contract

OBJECT

The team's management signed **all of its veteran players**.
 The city signed **the company** to provide trash collection.
 Our conductor was signed for another three seasons.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

sign in/out indicate one's arrival/departure by recording one's name

Members must sign in between 8 and 9 A.M.
 Be sure to sign out as you leave.

sign off on _____ formally agree to by signing

The president signed off on the proposed labor policies.

sign on/off begin/stop broadcasting

The disc jockey signed on at 6 A.M.
 When do you sign off tonight?

sign on/up join by signing

The entire committee signed on for another two-year term.
 Dozens of people signed up for the Great Books series.

sign SEP up record an agreement with [someone] to join

The company signed up 22 software engineers at the job fair.
 We hope to sign up 50 volunteers for Habitat for Humanity.

PRESENT

I sing we sing
 you sing you sing
 he/she/it sings they sing
 • *He sings in the church choir.*

PAST

I sang we sang
 you sang you sang
 he/she/it sang they sang
 • *She sang several songs by Bellini.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sung

PAST PERFECT ... had sung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am singing we are singing
 you are singing you are singing
 he/she/it is singing they are singing
 • *The birds are singing in the trees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was singing we were singing
 you were singing you were singing
 he/she/it was singing they were singing
 • *The group was singing around the campfire.*

FUTURE ... will sing

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be singing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sung

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was sung they were sung
 • *The opera was sung in English.*

COMPLEMENTS

sing *make musical sounds with one's voice*

Do you like to sing?
 Everybody can learn to sing.
 She sings beautifully.
 Jeff sang at his and Susan's wedding.
 The birds are already singing by 5:30.

sing *make musical sounds, hum, buzz, whistle*

The engine's vibration was making some metal part sing.
 The telephone wires were singing in the wind.
 The teakettle began to sing.

sing _____ *perform [a piece of vocal music]*

OBJECT

The choir sang **several traditional Christmas carols**.
 The Beatles sang **their own compositions**.
 Herbie sang **1960s hits** at the class reunion.

PASSIVE

The national anthem is sung before every baseball game.

PHRASAL VERBS

sing along *sing together*

Everyone at the party sang along with the music.

EXPRESSIONS

sing a different tune *have changed one's opinion*

He used to favor the death penalty; now he's singing a different tune.

sing [someone's] praises *say good things about [someone]*

Your English teacher is singing your praises.

sing the praises of _____ *say good things about [someone/something]*

The whole office is singing the praises of the new copier.

sing _____ *to sleep put to sleep by singing*

The babysitter was able to sing the baby to sleep.

PRESENT

I sink we sink
 you sink you sink
 he/she/it sinks they sink
 • *Productivity sinks in the summer.*

PAST

I sank we sank
 you sank you sank
 he/she/it sank they sank
 • *The stock market sank again today.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sunk

PAST PERFECT ... had sunk

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sinking we are sinking
 you are sinking you are sinking
 he/she/it is sinking they are sinking
 • *Oil production is gradually sinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sinking we were sinking
 you were sinking you were sinking
 he/she/it was sinking they were sinking
 • *Our spirits were sinking by the minute.*

FUTURE ... will sink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sunk

PAST PASSIVE

I was sunk we were sunk
 you were sunk you were sunk
 he/she/it was sunk they were sunk
 • *The boat was sunk in 50 feet of water.*

COMPLEMENTS

sink go below the surface

The ship sank in less than an hour.
 My boots were sinking in the soft mud.
 The wheels sank into the snowdrift.

sink go down gradually

The hot air balloon was sinking to the earth.
 Tired and hungry, the travelers sank to their knees.
 The sun was sinking in the west.
 The temperature sank as night fell.
 Senator Blather's poll numbers were steadily sinking.
 The value of our portfolio has sunk by 20%.

sink become weaker

My heart sank when I heard the bad news.
 The patient in Room 413 is sinking rapidly, Doctor.

sink _____ cause to go below the surface

OBJECT

An explosion in the engine room sank **the fishing boat**.
 I sank **a shovel** into the wet ground.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The barges were sunk by the storm.
 We sank **the screws into the wood**.
 The ship sank **its anchor into the sandy bottom of the bay**.
 The dog sank **its teeth into my leg**.

PASSIVE

The steel supports were sunk **in five feet of concrete**.

sink _____ go gradually [into a certain state/condition]

into OBJECT

The family sank **into poverty**.
 The once-proud company sank **into oblivion**.
 His widow and orphans sank **into despair**.

sink _____ ruin

OBJECT

These awful rumors could sink **the company**.
 The defeat sank **all our hopes for the championship**.
 The plans for expansion were sunk by the economic downturn.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

sink back lean back and relax

After work, I poured a drink and sank
 back on the sofa.

sink in be understood

Has Trina's desperate situation sunk in yet?
 The teacher's explanation will sink in eventually.

PRESENT

I sit we sit
 you sit you sit
 he/she/it sits they sit
 • *The cat always sits by the window.*

PAST

I sat we sat
 you sat you sat
 he/she/it sat they sat
 • *We sat on a park bench in the sun.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sat

PAST PERFECT ... had sat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sitting we are sitting
 you are sitting you are sitting
 he/she/it is sitting they are sitting
 • *I'm just sitting here, waiting for somebody.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sitting we were sitting
 you were sitting you were sitting
 he/she/it was sitting they were sitting
 • *We were sitting by the fireplace.*

FUTURE ... will sit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sat

PAST PASSIVE

Sit is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sit *be seated*

Never stand when you can sit.

The plane can't take off until you sit and fasten your seat belt.

I can't sit very long before my legs start to hurt.

We trained the dog to sit on command.

sit *be in session, meet*

[OF A GOVERNMENTAL BODY]

By law, the Supreme Court sits on the first Monday in October.

The budget committee is sitting this afternoon.

The state legislature does not normally sit during the summer.

sit _____ *be seated/located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

I sat **next to him** at dinner.

The flock of birds sat **on a telephone wire**.

We are sitting **on the runway**, waiting to take off.

The statue sits **in the center of the town square**.

When I got to the office, a new computer was sitting **on my desk**.

My briefcase was sitting **by the chair**, right where I had left it.

sit _____ *have enough seats for*

OBJECT

Our dining room table sits **eight**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sit **around** *spend time idly*

We're just sitting around listening to music.

sit **back** *relax*

We sat back and enjoyed the show.

sit **back/by** *not be involved*

I refuse to sit back and do nothing when people's lives are in danger.

sit **SEP down** *cause to be in a sitting position*

Momma sat us kids down and told us that Grandma had died.

sit **in for** _____ *replace*

The sports editor sat in for the regular news anchor last night.

sit **in (on _____)** *attend ([an event])*

The board meeting is tomorrow morning, and I'd like to sit in. Would it be okay if I sat in on your Language and Culture class?

sit **on** _____ *be a member of*

She sat on the jury that convicted my neighbor. Senator Blather sits on the Committee on Appropriations.

sit **on** _____ *delay in revealing*

The reporter is sitting on a story about the president's health.

sit **SEP out** *not participate in*

I'm going to sit this dance out.

sit **through** _____ *attend all of*

Do we have to sit through another boring lecture?

sit **up** *sit upright*

Sit up! Slouching is bad for your posture.

sit **up** *not go to bed*

Kristen sat up knitting half the night.

sit **up** *become suddenly alert*

Cassie sat up suddenly and looked at the door.

PRESENT

I sleep we sleep
 you sleep you sleep
 he/she/it sleeps they sleep

• *He usually sleeps seven hours a night.*

PAST

I slept we slept
 you slept you slept
 he/she/it slept they slept

• *The kids slept in a tent in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slept

PAST PERFECT ... had slept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sleeping we are sleeping
 you are sleeping you are sleeping
 he/she/it is sleeping they are sleeping

• *I am not sleeping very well lately.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sleeping we were sleeping
 you were sleeping you were sleeping
 he/she/it was sleeping they were sleeping

• *Our guests were sleeping in the downstairs bedroom.*

FUTURE ... will sleep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sleeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slept

PAST PASSIVE

Sleep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sleep *not be awake*

We all need to sleep.
 I slept through the storm.
 He only slept a few hours last night.
 Be quiet; the baby is sleeping.

sleep *be inactive*

New York never sleeps.
 The surveillance system never sleeps.
 The security force never sleeps.

sleep _____ *take as a place for sleeping*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The children sleep **in their own bedrooms**.
 We usually sleep **at a motel** when we visit my grandparents.
 When we go camping, we sleep **in an ultralight tent**.
 If I get home late, I sleep **downstairs** so I don't wake anybody.

sleep _____ *provide sleeping accommodations for*

OBJECT

The suite sleeps **four adults** comfortably.
 The studio apartments only sleep **two people**.
 The lodge will be able to sleep **our entire family**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sleep **in** *sleep after one's normal time to rise*

Sorry, I slept in this morning.
 What's for lunch?

sleep **SEP** **off** *recover from while sleeping*

Sherri drank too much at the party and had to sleep it off.

sleep **on** _____ *delay a decision on*

I'll sleep on the matter and give you an answer tomorrow.

sleep **through** _____ *be asleep and unaware of*

Our neighbors slept through the thunderstorm.

EXPRESSIONS

sleep **a wink** *sleep briefly*
 [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

I didn't sleep a wink last night.

sleep **like a baby/log** *sleep long and well*

I played two hours of tennis last evening and slept like a log.

PRESENT

I slide we slide
 you slide you slide
 he/she/it slides they slide
 • *The glass door slides easily now.*

PAST

I slid we slid
 you slid you slid
 he/she/it slid they slid
 • *The car slid into the ditch.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slid

PAST PERFECT ... had slid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sliding we are sliding
 you are sliding you are sliding
 he/she/it is sliding they are sliding
 • *Look out! The car is sliding.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sliding we were sliding
 you were sliding you were sliding
 he/she/it was sliding they were sliding
 • *The kids were sliding down Prosser Hill.*

FUTURE ... will slide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sliding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slid

PAST PASSIVE

I was slid we were slid
 you were slid you were slid
 he/she/it was slid they were slid
 • *The logs were slid down the hill.*

COMPLEMENTS

slide slip, shift, drop

Hang on to me—I'm sliding.
 The bag of groceries slid from my hand.
 Make sure the load doesn't slide.

slide gradually become worse

His reputation is beginning to slide.
 Our once-strong financial position was sliding.

slide _____ move/glide smoothly over a surface

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car slid **into a snowbank**.
 I slid **behind the wheel**.
 The canoes slid **into the water**.
 The truck in front of us was sliding **all over the road**.
 The drawer slides **on side-mounted tracks**.

slide _____ gradually go/move [into a worse condition]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The patient was sliding **into a coma**.
 The company gradually slid **into mediocrity**.
 The quality of dental care was sliding **downhill**.
 The temperature slid **into the twenties** overnight.

slide _____ put/push/move smoothly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

She slid the **keys into her purse**.
 I slid **my hands** gently **under the kitten** and lifted it up.
 Just slide **your paper under my office door**.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The refrigerator was slid **into place**.
 The suspect slid **the detective his driver's license**.
 The cook slid **me a bowl of soup**.

to PARAPHRASE

The suspect slid **his driver's license to the detective**.
 The cook slid **a bowl of soup to me**.

PHRASAL VERBS

slide around/back/down/off/out/under/up/etc. slide in a specified direction

We slid back down several times.
 Her shawl slid off.
 The window easily slides up and down.

slide SEP **around/back/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** cause to slide in a specified direction

The goalie slid the puck back to a defenseman.
 The locksmith can't slide the bolt in and out.
 The roofer lost his balance and slid off.

slip _____ go/move [from one state/condition to another]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The patient was slipping **in and out of consciousness**.

slip _____ gradually go/move [into a worse condition]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The company's profits were slipping to **record lows**.
The riots were slipping **into total chaos**.

PHRASAL VERBS

slip away/back/by/down/in/out/past/under/up/etc. go without being noticed / shift in a specified direction

Time is slipping away.
We slipped away when they turned their backs.
Their anniversary slipped by without our remembering it.
My glasses slipped down again.
The key slipped out and fell on the floor.
Hilary and DJ slipped off to spend time in Caliban's.

slip SEP away/back/by/down/in/out/past/under/up/etc. cause to slide/shift in a specified direction

The dock worker slipped the rope back on the pulley.
The carpenter slipped the bolt in and out.

slip into / out of _____ put on / take off [clothing]

Gloria slipped into jeans and a sweatshirt.
Nate slipped out of his pajamas and into the shower.

slip SEP on/off put on / take off [clothing]

Bridget slipped a jacket on.
Greg slipped his sweater off.

slip out be said in error

I didn't mean to say it; the words just slipped out.

EXPRESSIONS

let it slip reveal something, usually unintentionally

The press secretary let it slip that the president would travel to the Mideast soon.

slip between/through the cracks be neglected/forgotten

Veterans' benefits slipped between the cracks in the military budget.
These proposals will slip through the cracks if we don't write them down.

slip one over on _____ fool, deceive

Debbie slipped one over on her boss and didn't get caught.

slip [someone's] mind be forgotten by [someone]

This afternoon's meeting completely slipped my mind.

slip through [someone's] fingers avoid capture by / elude [someone]

The bank robbers slipped through our fingers again.
She almost figured out the problem, but the solution slipped through her fingers.

PRESENT

I slip we slip
 you slip you slip
 he/she/it slips they slip
 • *The transmission slips when in reverse.*

PAST

I slipped we slipped
 you slipped you slipped
 he/she/it slipped they slipped
 • *I slipped on the ice.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slipped

PAST PERFECT ... had slipped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slipping we are slipping
 you are slipping you are slipping
 he/she/it is slipping they are slipping
 • *The candidate's approval ratings are slipping.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slipping we were slipping
 you were slipping you were slipping
 he/she/it was slipping they were slipping
 • *The wheels were slipping on the icy road.*

FUTURE

... will slip

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be slipping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slipped

PAST PASSIVE

I was slipped we were slipped
 you were slipped you were slipped
 he/she/it was slipped they were slipped
 • *The usher was slipped a few dollars and we got really good seats.*

COMPLEMENTS

slip lose traction / one's grip,
 fall accidentally

slip make a mistake
slip gradually become worse

slip _____ slide, shift, drop
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

slip _____ go without being noticed
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

slip _____ slide, put/push/move smoothly (often unobtrusively)
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

slip _____ be released/freed from
 OBJECT

Tom slipped and fell off the ladder.
 He slipped and fell to his hands and knees.
 The rear tires slipped and the car slid off the road.
 The rope slipped and the load crashed to the floor.
 The gears are slipping badly.
 Her boss slipped and told her she was getting a raise.
 Grandpa's memory is really slipping.
 Our control over events was slipping.
 The senator's ability to shape the story was slipping.

The book slipped **from her hand**.
 She slipped **on the icy sidewalk**.
 The wrench was constantly slipping **off the bolt**.
 Events were slipping **out of our grasp**.

We slipped **out of the noisy room**.

I slipped **the gun into my pocket**.
 He slipped **the ring onto her finger**.
 A letter had been slipped **under my door**.
 I slipped **the cab driver a ten-dollar bill**.
 My mother always slips **her grandchildren little treats**.
 The senator slipped **the reporters some information**.
 I slipped **a ten-dollar bill to the cab driver**.
 My mother always slips **little treats to her grandchildren**.
 The senator slipped **some information to the reporters**.

The ship slipped **its mooring** and set sail.
 The hounds slipped **their leashes** and
 raced ahead.
 "Cry 'Havoc,' and let slip **the dogs of war**."
 [SHAKESPEARE]



PRESENT

I smile we smile
 you smile you smile
 he/she/it smiles they smile
 • *He always smiles when he sees us.*

PAST

I smiled we smiled
 you smiled you smiled
 he/she/it smiled they smiled
 • *I smiled as pleasantly as I could.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has smiled

PAST PERFECT ... had smiled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am smiling we are smiling
 you are smiling you are smiling
 he/she/it is smiling they are smiling
 • *He is always smiling.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was smiling we were smiling
 you were smiling you were smiling
 he/she/it was smiling they were smiling
 • *Everybody was smiling when they returned.*

FUTURE

... will smile

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be smiling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have smiled

PAST PASSIVE

Smile is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

smile *make the corners of one's mouth turn up to show amusement/happiness/pleasure*

Keep smiling!

Babies smile when people smile at them.

Americans automatically smile when they meet someone.

Can you smile for the camera?

smile _____ *convey with a smile*

OBJECT

The queen smiled **her appreciation for the gift**.The boss smiled **his approval**.**smile** _____ *give [a smile of a certain type]*

OBJECT

The little girl smiled **a bashful little smile**.The villain in old movies always smiled **a sneering leer**.I smiled **a self-conscious, stupid grin** when my name was called.

PHRASAL VERBS

smile on _____ *be favorable to*

Fortune smiles on the brave. [PROVERB]

Fate smiled on Napoleon at Austerlitz.

PRESENT

I sneak we sneak
you sneak you sneak
he/she/it sneaks they sneak
• *He sneaks a candy bar at bedtime.*

PAST

I sneaked we sneaked
you sneaked you sneaked
he/she/it sneaked they sneaked
• *We sneaked out of the meeting early.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sneaked

PAST PERFECT ... had sneaked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sneaking we are sneaking
you are sneaking you are sneaking
he/she/it is sneaking they are sneaking
• *The prisoners are sneaking past the guards.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sneaking we were sneaking
you were sneaking you were sneaking
he/she/it was sneaking they were sneaking
• *I was sneaking a quick snack in the kitchen.*

FUTURE ... will sneak

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sneaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sneaked

PAST PASSIVE

I was sneaked we were sneaked
you were sneaked you were sneaked
he/she/it was sneaked they were sneaked
• *Food was sneaked out of the cafeteria.*

COMPLEMENTS

sneak _____ move quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

They were trying to sneak **into the game**.
We had to sneak **back into the dorms** after curfew.
Apparently, the prisoners had sneaked **over the wall**.
Someone had sneaked **into the coffee room** and eaten
all the donuts.

sneak _____ take/bring quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I sneaked **a recorder into the meeting**.
The kids had sneaked **some cookies out of the kitchen**.
They had sneaked **some friends into the hotel pool**.
Something had been sneaked **out of the secure area**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

sneak along/around/away/in/out/
up/etc. sneak in a specified direction

sneak _____ along/away/in/out/
up/etc. sneak [someone/something]
in a specified direction

sneak up on _____ approach quietly
and secretly

Nobody likes people who sneak around.
The kids sneaked away with a bag of candy.

I wasn't invited, but my friends sneaked me in.

We sneaked up on Dad while he was working the crossword
puzzle.
Sandy sneaked up on me and tapped me on the shoulder.

PRESENT

I solve we solve
 you solve you solve
 he/she/it solves they solve
 • *Sherlock always solves the mystery.*

PAST

I solved we solved
 you solved you solved
 he/she/it solved they solved
 • *I finally solved the equation.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has solved**PAST PERFECT** ... had solved**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am solving we are solving
 you are solving you are solving
 he/she/it is solving they are solving
 • *The police are solving about half their cases.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was solving we were solving
 you were solving you were solving
 he/she/it was solving they were solving
 • *My students were solving 90% of the math problems.*

FUTURE ... will solve**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be solving**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have solved**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
 — —
 it was solved they were solved
 • *The murder case was solved.*

COMPLEMENTS**solve** _____ find the answer to [a mystery, problem, puzzle]**OBJECT**

In books, the detective always solves **the crime**.
 My students haven't learned to solve **quadratic equations** yet.
 No one has solved **the mystery of inflation**.
 She can solve the **Rubik's Cube** in three minutes.
 Oedipus solved **the riddle of the Sphinx**.
 We finally solved **Tim's crossword puzzle in yesterday's New York Times**.
 Many mathematicians have tried to solve **Goldbach's conjecture**.
Which problem were you trying to solve?

PASSIVE

A good puzzle can only be solved by several people working together.

PRESENT

I sound we sound
 you sound you sound
 he/she/it sounds they sound
 • *An alarm sounds when the door opens.*

PAST

I sounded we sounded
 you sounded you sounded
 he/she/it sounded they sounded
 • *He sounded pretty worried about it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sounded

PAST PERFECT ... had sounded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sounding we are sounding
 you are sounding you are sounding
 he/she/it is sounding they are sounding
 • *His voice is sounding hoarse.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sounding we were sounding
 you were sounding you were sounding
 he/she/it was sounding they were sounding
 • *The news was sounding pretty bad.*

FUTURE

... will sound

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be sounding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have sounded

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was sounded they were sounded
 • *A bell was sounded at the start of the final lap.*

COMPLEMENTS

sound make a noise

The bell sounds every 15 minutes.
 My alarm sounds like the crack of doom.
 The buzzer sounded before he shot the ball.
 Behind them in the forest, a horn was sounding.

sound _____ make a noise by blowing on/into

OBJECT

The huntsmen sounded **the horn** to call the hounds.
 Sound **the car horn** to tell them to open the garage door.

The truck sounded **its horn** to warn the car in front of it.

The trumpets were sounded and the procession began.

PASSIVE

sound _____ give an audible signal/warning

OBJECT

The captain sounds **three blasts** when the ship leaves the dock.

The bell sounds **the hour**.

The whistle sounds **the shift change at the factory**.

sound _____ seem, appear

(like) PREDICATE NOUN

Donna sounded **(like) a perfect fit for the job**.

It sounded **(like) a reasonable idea to us**.

His proposal sounded **(like) a huge gamble**.

Harry sounds **a little strange**.

The violin sounded **off-key to me**.

It doesn't sound **right** that it should take so long to fix the car.

His story sounded **improbable**.

It sounds **as if Vince wants to come to the party**.

It sounds **as though we'll have to leave tomorrow**.

It sounded **like Beth had lost her purse again**.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

it + sound + as if / as though / like CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

sound off complain, often loudly

Citizens were sounding off
 about traffic congestion on Mulberry Street.

PRESENT

I speak we speak
 you speak you speak
 he/she/it speaks they speak
 • *He speaks really well.*

PAST

I spoke we spoke
 you spoke you spoke
 he/she/it spoke they spoke
 • *They spoke about website design.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spoken

PAST PERFECT ... had spoken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speaking we are speaking
 you are speaking you are speaking
 he/she/it is speaking they are speaking
 • *I am speaking at the luncheon this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speaking we were speaking
 you were speaking you were speaking
 he/she/it was speaking they were speaking
 • *They were speaking French at the time.*

FUTURE ... will speak

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be speaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spoken

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was spoken they were spoken
 • *English was spoken everywhere they traveled.*

COMPLEMENTS

speak talk, say words

Are you hurt? Can you speak?
 Most children start speaking before their second birthday.
 He was so upset he couldn't speak.

speak have a conversation

They need to find a place where they can speak privately.
 They were speaking in whispers.

speak make a public presentation

After their argument, they weren't speaking for months.
 Everybody at the conference wants to hear her speak.
 It takes a lot of practice to speak in public.
 I am not used to speaking without notes.

speak _____ say, express

OBJECT

They are speaking **the truth about what happened**.
 He spoke **gentle words of wisdom**.

speak _____ have a conversation with

TO OBJECT

We spoke **to the police** about the break-in.
 Have you spoken **to your mother**?
 May I speak **to Mr. Huntleigh**?

speak _____ talk in [a specific language]

OBJECT

She can speak **German and Dutch** pretty well.
How many languages do you speak?
 Both English and French were spoken at the conference.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

speak for _____ say something on behalf of

I am speaking only for myself.
 The candidate spoke for lowering taxes.
 "I speak for the trees, for the trees have no tongues."
 [DR. SEUSS]

speak for _____ ask for

I'd like to speak for the last slice of cheesecake.
 The last copy of the book is already spoken for.
 Grandpa spoke of hardships during the Great Depression.

speak of _____ speak about

speak out express one's opinion

Thomas speaks out at every meeting he attends.

speak up speak more loudly

Speak up! We can't hear you in the back row.

speak up for _____ speak in support of

She always speaks up for military families.

PRESENT

I speed	we speed
you speed	you speed
he/she/it speeds	they speed

• *He speeds when he gets on the freeway.*

PAST

I sped	we sped
you sped	you sped
he/she/it sped	they sped

• *The sailboat sped before the wind.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sped

PAST PERFECT ... had sped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speeding	we are speeding
you are speeding	you are speeding
he/she/it is speeding	they are speeding

• *She is already speeding away.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speeding	we were speeding
you were speeding	you were speeding
he/she/it was speeding	they were speeding

• *We got pulled over because we were speeding.*

FUTURE ... will speed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be speeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sped

PAST PASSIVE

Speed is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

speed *go/move fast*

The dogs sped across the roadway.
The skiers sped down the slope toward the lodge.
The horses are speeding around the final turn.
The rescuers were speeding to the scene of the accident.

speed *drive faster than the legal limit*

If you speed, you could lose your driver's license.
He was speeding in a construction zone and had to pay a huge fine.

speed _____ *cause to go/move faster*

OBJECT

We changed the rules to speed **the approval process**.
Some men will try anything to speed **hair growth**.
Trying to speed **an entrenched bureaucracy** is next to impossible.

PHRASAL VERBS

speed along/away/down/over/past/up/etc. *go fast in a specified direction*

An ambulance sped past with its siren blaring.
Teens were speeding up and down Main Street.
The manager tried to speed the process along.
The delivery service sped the package over.

speed _____ **along/away/down/over/past/up/etc.** *cause to go faster in a specified direction*

speed up *go/move faster*

Ricky sped up when he saw the police car.
We tend to speed up going downhill.

speed SEP **up** *cause to go/move faster*

We really need to speed up the production line.

PRESENT

I spend we spend
 you spend you spend
 he/she/it spends they spend

• *He spends too much when he eats out.*

PAST

I spent we spent
 you spent you spent
 he/she/it spent they spent

• *We spent some time with my parents.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spent

PAST PERFECT ... had spent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spending we are spending
 you are spending you are spending
 he/she/it is spending they are spending

• *We are spending too much time on this project.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spending we were spending
 you were spending you were spending
 he/she/it was spending they were spending

• *We were spending a week in Phoenix.*

FUTURE

... will spend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spent

PAST PASSIVE

I was spent we were spent
 you were spent you were spent
 he/she/it was spent they were spent

• *A fortune was spent trying to fix the problem.*

COMPLEMENTS

spend *pay out money*

They just love to spend.
 We can't keep spending at this rate.
 They spend and spend until they are broke.

spend _____ *pay [money]*

OBJECT

We will spend **a lot** fixing our roof.
 They spend **over half their income** on housing.
 You have to spend **money** to make money.
 The insurance settlement had already been spent.

PASSIVE

spend _____ *be occupied for [a period of time]*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I will spend **all of next week in Chicago**.
 The kids spent **half the summer at camp**.
 We spent **all week working on the budget**.
 A horse spends **three hours a day sleeping**.
 Last weekend was spent **cleaning out the garage**.

PASSIVE

spend _____ *exhaust, use up*

OBJECT

The storm finally spent **itself** during the night.
 General Lee had already spent **all his reserves**.
 Your talent would be better spent writing textbooks.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I spill we spill
 you spill you spill
 he/she/it spills they spill
 • *The coffee spills if you fill the cup too full.*

PAST

I spilled we spilled
 you spilled you spilled
 he/she/it spilled they spilled
 • *I spilled tea on my sweater.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spilled

PAST PERFECT ... had spilled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spilling we are spilling
 you are spilling you are spilling
 he/she/it is spilling they are spilling
 • *Look out—you're spilling your drink.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spilling we were spilling
 you were spilling you were spilling
 he/she/it was spilling they were spilling
 • *The water in the tub was spilling over the top.*

FUTURE ... will spill

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spilling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spilled

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was spilled they were spilled
 • *Some of the soup was spilled, so I cleaned it up.*

NOTE: The past form *spilled* may also be spelled *spilt*.

COMPLEMENTS

spill *flow over the edge of a container*

Careful! The milk is spilling.
 The water was spilling over the dam in a great torrent.
 Blood spilt from the soldier's abdominal wound.
 Tears spilled from my mother's eyes.
 The tools were spilling out of the chest.

spill _____ *be emptied [onto a surface]*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The sugar spilled **all over the tablecloth**.
 The pencils and books spilled **across the desk**.
 The concertgoers spilled **onto the street**.
 The kids' toys spilled **onto the playroom floor**.

spill _____ *cause to flow over / run out*

OBJECT

Careful! You're spilling **the wine**.
 The tanker spilled **diesel oil** into the harbor.
 Gasoline had been spilled down the side of our car.

PASSIVE

spill _____ *cause to be emptied [onto a surface]*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I spilled **rice all over the kitchen floor**.
 I spilled **the contents of the suitcase across the bed**.
 Wreckage from the airplane crash had been spilled **over several miles**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

spill over *overflow*

The teakettle boiled and spilled over.
 The revolt in Boston spilled over into the countryside.

EXPRESSIONS

spill the beans *reveal a secret/surprise*

The producers won't spill the beans on who will star in the film.

PRESENT

I spin we spin
 you spin you spin
 he/she/it spins they spin
 • *The disk spins at a high speed.*

PAST

I spun we spun
 you spun you spun
 he/she/it spun they spun
 • *I spun the wool to make yarn.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spun

PAST PERFECT ... had spun

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spinning we are spinning
 you are spinning you are spinning
 he/she/it is spinning they are spinning
 • *The senator's office is spinning the story.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spinning we were spinning
 you were spinning you were spinning
 he/she/it was spinning they were spinning
 • *Our wheels were spinning on the ice.*

FUTURE ... will spin

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spinning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spun

PAST PASSIVE

I was spun we were spun
 you were spun you were spun
 he/she/it was spun they were spun

• *The bets were placed and the roulette wheel was spun.*

COMPLEMENTS

spin whirl around quickly

The altimeter was spinning fast.
 The dryer is still spinning.
 Your wheels will spin in this slush.
 The earth spins on a 23.4-degree axis.
 The policeman spun when he heard the shot.

spin seem to be whirling around quickly, as if to make someone dizzy

I have to sit down; my head is spinning.
 The news was enough to make your head spin.

spin _____ cause to whirl around quickly

OBJECT

I spun **the propeller** to get the engine started.
 The drivers were spinning **their wheels** in the soft ground.
 I showed the kids how to spin **their new top**.
 The server spun **the ball** so that it bounced at an odd angle.
 The wheel was spun by the next contestant.

PASSIVE

spin _____ draw out and twist into yarn

OBJECT

My daughter spins **wool fleece** into yarn.
 The cashmere yarn had been spun by hand.

PASSIVE

spin _____ make a web [OF SPIDERS]

OBJECT

Spiders had spun **webs** in every corner.**spin** _____ interpret in a way favorable to oneself

OBJECT

The aides were busily spinning **the election results**.
 He was trying to spin **the news** to minimize the damage.
 The story was spun until it was unrecognizable.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

spin away/off/out/etc. spin in a specified direction

The Frisbee is spinning away into the air.

spin SEP **away/off/out/etc.** cause to spin in a specified direction

He spun himself away from the computer.

spin off separate and fly away from something that is spinning

The fan blade may spin off if you don't tighten it.

spin SEP **off** create a separate company from part of an existing one

The chemical company spun off its herbicide division.

PRESENT

I spit we spit
you spit you spit
he/she/it spits they spit
• *Our cat spits when she sees a dog.*

PAST

I spit/spat we spit/spat
you spit/spat you spit/spat
he/she/it spit/spat they spit/spat
• *He coughed and spit into his handkerchief.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spit/spat

PAST PERFECT ... had spit/spat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spitting we are spitting
you are spitting you are spitting
he/she/it is spitting they are spitting
• *The victim is spitting blood.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spitting we were spitting
you were spitting you were spitting
he/she/it was spitting they were spitting
• *They were spitting watermelon seeds.*

FUTURE

... will spit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spit/spat

PAST PASSIVE

I was spit/spat we were spit/spat
you were spit/spat you were spit/spat
he/she/it was spit/spat they were spit/spat
• *The words were spat in utter contempt.*

COMPLEMENTS

spit *force something [often, saliva] from one's mouth*

spit *be very angry*

spit *rain/snow lightly*

spit _____ *force from one's mouth*
OBJECT

spit _____ *throw out [liquid, fire]*
OBJECT

spit _____ *say/express angrily*
OBJECT

Rinse out your mouth and spit, please.
People who chew tobacco have to spit constantly.
I have such a bad taste in my mouth that I'm spitting all the time.

He was spitting angrily.
The defendant was spitting with sudden rage.
It's spitting outside; you'd better wear a raincoat.

The diner spit a **chicken bone** across the table.
Aaron accidentally spit a **mouthful of soda** all over the floor.

The engine was spitting **oil**.
The pan was so hot that it spit **cooking oil** on my hand.
The bonfire was spitting **sparks** high into the night air.

The man spit **abuse** at the crowd.
He spat **an oath** and slammed the door.
The man spat **an incoherent warning** at the children.

PRESENT

I split	we split
you split	you split
he/she/it splits	they split

• *Pine always splits along the grain.*

PAST

I split	we split
you split	you split
he/she/it split	they split

• *We split the cost equally.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has split

PAST PERFECT ... had split

PAST PASSIVE

I was split	we were split
you were split	you were split
he/she/it was split	they were split

• *The prize was split among the winning contestants.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am splitting	we are splitting
you are splitting	you are splitting
he/she/it is splitting	they are splitting

• *The couple next door is splitting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was splitting	we were splitting
you were splitting	you were splitting
he/she/it was splitting	they were splitting

• *I was splitting enough wood to last all winter.*

FUTURE ... will split

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be splitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have split

COMPLEMENTS

split separate/divide into parts

My lips were splitting from the sun.
The ice was heaving and splitting.
The trail splits at the top of the ridge.
The class split into three groups.

split end a marriage/relationship

My cousin and his wife are splitting after five years.
Jayne got into a fight with her boyfriend and they decided to split.
Do you think they will split after what happened?
This issue could cause the Republican Party to split.

split _____ cause to separate/divide into parts

OBJECT

We split the **logs** for firewood.
Would you split **the English muffins** and toast them?
They split **the searchers** into small groups so they could cover more ground.

PASSIVE

Diamonds are still split by hand.
The atom was first split in 1932.

split _____ share/divide among participants

OBJECT

We need to split **the workload** more fairly.
Investors will split **the profits** in proportion to the size of their investment.
Rhonda split a **pizza** with Stan.
If we get the winning ticket, we will split **the prize** equally.
Overtime hours must be split among all workers.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

The group split **what they had earned**.
We will split **whatever we win**.
They decided to split **however much money they get**.

PHRASAL VERBS

split **SEP** up (into _____) divide (into [groups, etc.])

He split the class up into three groups according to height.

split **SEP** off separate

The forum moderator split the topic off from the main thread.

split off (from _____) separate (from [someone/something])

Icebergs are splitting off from glaciers at an alarming rate.

PRESENT

I spoil we spoil
 you spoil you spoil
 he/she/it spoils they spoil
 • *He spoils the party for everyone else.*

PAST

I spoiled we spoiled
 you spoiled you spoiled
 he/she/it spoiled they spoiled
 • *The food spoiled due to a power outage.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spoiled

PAST PERFECT ... had spoiled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spoiling we are spoiling
 you are spoiling you are spoiling
 he/she/it is spoiling they are spoiling
 • *I can do it myself. You're spoiling me!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spoiling we were spoiling
 you were spoiling you were spoiling
 he/she/it was spoiling they were spoiling
 • *The potato salad was spoiling in the hot sun.*

FUTURE ... will spoil

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spoiling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spoiled

PAST PASSIVE

I was spoiled we were spoiled
 you were spoiled you were spoiled
 he/she/it was spoiled they were spoiled
 • *The children were hopelessly spoiled by their parents.*

NOTE: The past form *spoiled* may also be spelled *spoilt*.

COMPLEMENTS

spoil *rot, become inedible/undrinkable* The food will spoil unless we refrigerate it right away.
 We had lunch in the shade so the egg salad wouldn't spoil.
 The wine had spoiled because of bad corks.

spoil _____ *ruin, make useless/worthless*
OBJECT A tacky housing development completely spoiled **the view**.
 Too many cooks spoil **the broth**. [PROVERB]
 Their desserts are spoiling **my diet**.
 The scandal could spoil **the senator's chances for re-election**.
PASSIVE The wedding was nearly spoiled by those obnoxious photographers.
WH-CLAUSE Jefferson could spoil **what his father has built**.
 The hotel totally spoiled **whatever beauty the beach had**.
 The poor publicity spoiled **whatever chance the movie had**.

spoil _____ *raise with too little discipline*
OBJECT Martha, you are spoiling **that child!**
 They have spoiled **their dogs**. They are completely out of control.

spoil _____ *treat very well*
OBJECT Uncle Bill spoils **his nieces and nephews** on their birthdays.
 She spoiled **me** with a gift card from the local bakery.
PASSIVE Children are often spoiled by their grandparents.

PRESENT

I spread	we spread
you spread	you spread
he/she/it spreads	they spread

• *He spreads peanut butter on his bagels.*

PAST

I spread	we spread
you spread	you spread
he/she/it spread	they spread

• *We spread a blanket on the grass.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spread

PAST PERFECT ... had spread

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spreading	we are spreading
you are spreading	you are spreading
he/she/it is spreading	they are spreading

• *The city is spreading into the valley.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spreading	we were spreading
you were spreading	you were spreading
he/she/it was spreading	they were spreading

• *They were spreading rumors about the senator.*

FUTURE ... will spread

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spreading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spread

PAST PASSIVE

I was spread	we were spread
you were spread	you were spread
he/she/it was spread	they were spread

• *The seeds were spread by a mechanical applicator.*

COMPLEMENTS

spread *move/extend outward*

Bad news spreads like wildfire.
The floodwater was spreading by the minute.
Violence is spreading in much of the world.

spread _____ *extend [over/to an area]*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The ripples spread **across the pond**.
Elm disease has spread **through the upper Midwest**.
The impact of deflation spread **throughout the economy**.
The city is spreading **in all directions**.
The forest fire spread **to several hilltop villages**.

spread _____ *cause to move/expand outward*

OBJECT

He is always spreading **rumors**.
The senator hopes to spread **the blame for the mistake**.
Malaria is spread by one type of mosquito.

PASSIVE

spread _____ *open/stretch out*

OBJECT

The bird spread **its wings**.spread _____ *distribute*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He spread **the map across the hood of the car**.
Spread **the jam on every corner of the bread**.
The eruption spread **dust over hundreds of square miles**.
They spread **the payments over five years**.
Protective cloths had been spread **across the floor**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

spread SEP around *publicize*

They spread the news around that
her campaign staff had been fired.

spread out *scatter*

The rescuers spread out to search the mountainside.

EXPRESSIONS

spread it on thick *exaggerate praise/blame*

The car salesman was really spreading it on thick.

spread [oneself] too thin *do too many things at once*

Between work and volunteer activities, Emma has spread herself too thin.

PRESENT

I spring we spring
you spring you spring
he/she/it springs they spring
• *He springs out of bed in the morning.*

PAST

I sprang we sprang
you sprang you sprang
he/she/it sprang they sprang
• *The door sprang open.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sprung

PAST PERFECT ... had sprung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am springing we are springing
you are springing you are springing
he/she/it is springing they are springing
• *Crocuses are springing up everywhere.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was springing we were springing
you were springing you were springing
he/she/it was springing they were springing
• *Dolphins were springing out of the water.*

FUTURE

... will spring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be springing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have sprung

PAST PASSIVE

I was sprung we were sprung
you were sprung you were sprung
he/she/it was sprung they were sprung
• *The trap was sprung by a raccoon.*

COMPLEMENTS

spring _____ jump/move suddenly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I sprang **out of my chair** and ran to the door.
The soldiers sprang **up** when the captain came into the room.
We sprang **to the ropes** before the boat could pull away.
The car sprang **forward**, nearly hitting us.
The car door sprang **open** and Fred jumped out.

spring _____ suddenly appear

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A dog suddenly sprang **out of the fog**.
Jack sprang **out the front door** and greeted us warmly.
The robbers sprang **out of nowhere**.
Tears sprang **from his eyes**.
A cry sprang **from her throat**.

spring _____ cause to snap shut

OBJECT

An opossum sprang **the trap**.

PHRASAL VERBS

spring for _____ pay for

spring up begin, be started

spring up begin to grow

I'll spring for a new coat for you.

A wonderful friendship sprang up between us.

A new fast-food restaurant sprang up on the corner.

Flowers and weeds are springing up in the garden.

EXPRESSIONS

spring a leak begin to leak

spring into action become suddenly active

spring to mind be thought of

Our boat sprang a leak in the middle of the lake.

After Amber read his letter, she sprang into action.

Which president springs to mind when I say "father of our country"?

stand _____ tolerate, endure [USUALLY USED IN QUESTIONS OR NEGATIVE STATEMENTS]

OBJECT

How do you stand **the pressure**?

I can't stand **the suspense**.

No one can stand **his superior attitude**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

How can you stand **listening to that nonsense**?

Wine grapes can't stand **being in poorly drained soil**.

I can't stand **not knowing what happened**.

stand _____ be of a specified height

OBJECT

Tim stands **six foot four**.

The horse stands **15 hands at the withers**.

PHRASAL VERBS

stand apart/aside/back/off/etc.

stand in a specified position

Max stood aside and let the medics by.

We stood back so that we wouldn't get hurt.

stand around loiter, be idle

The teenagers stood around with their hands in their pockets.

stand at _____ be at a specified amount/
number

The bid stands at \$250.

Our team's record stands at 11–4.

stand by be near and ready if needed

He asked me to stand by in case his car wouldn't start.

stand by stand near but not involve oneself

Three people stood by and watched the robbery take place.

stand by _____ support, defend

She stood by her husband throughout his illness.

stand for _____ represent

"U.S.A." stands for "United States of America."

stand for _____ tolerate [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

We won't stand for your nonsense any longer.

stand in for _____ take the place of, act for

Would you stand in for me at next Tuesday's meeting?

stand out be distinctive

Because of his height, Don really stands out in a crowd.

stand over _____ keep close watch on

I can't get any work done if you're standing over me.

stand up prove to be true/good

This idea won't stand up under scrutiny.

stand SEP up fail to keep a date with

Lori stood him up again.

stand up for _____ support, defend

When Nancy was criticized, her coach stood up for her.

My parents always stood up for immigrants' rights.

stand up to _____ resist, refuse to be
treated badly by

The candidate stood up to the lies on talk radio.

EXPRESSIONS

stand a chance (of _____) have a chance of

Does your team stand a chance of winning?

stand corrected admit that one is wrong

I stand corrected; there are two *m*'s in *recommend*.

stand head and shoulders above _____
be far superior to

Their book stood head and shoulders above the competition.

stand in [someone's] way oppose/obstruct
[someone]

She beat every candidate who stood in her way to the nomination.

stand on [one's] own two feet
be independent, not need anyone's help

Son, it's time for you to get your own apartment and stand on your own two feet.

stand [one's] ground
maintain one's position
while being attacked

The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.

stand still for _____
tolerate [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

Senator Blather won't stand still for criticism of his immigration policy.

stand to reason
be sensible/reasonable

It stands to reason that interest rates are low in a recession.

PRESENT

I stand we stand
 you stand you stand
 he/she/it stands they stand
 • *The treasurer stands by the CEO.*

PAST

I stood we stood
 you stood you stood
 he/she/it stood they stood
 • *We all stood for the national anthem.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stood

PAST PERFECT ... had stood

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am standing we are standing
 you are standing you are standing
 he/she/it is standing they are standing
 • *I am standing in the checkout lane.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was standing we were standing
 you were standing you were standing
 he/she/it was standing they were standing
 • *We were standing for hours at the reception.*

FUTURE ... will stand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be standing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stood

PAST PASSIVE

I was stood we were stood
 you were stood you were stood
 he/she/it was stood they were stood
 • *The pictures were all stood along the wall.*

COMPLEMENTS

stand *be/get in an upright position*

Please stand.
 Everyone stood when the funeral procession went by.
 By the end of the game, we were all standing and cheering.

stand *remain undisturbed*
 [OF FOOD, LIQUID]

Let the tea leaves stand for a few minutes.
 The custard needs to stand until it is at room temperature.
 The mixture should stand until all the liquid is absorbed.

stand *remain as is*

The committee's original recommendation stands.
 The judge let the lower court's ruling stand.
 That tradition has stood since the school began.

stand _____ *cause to be in an upright position*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

She stood **the dolls against the dresser**.
 The librarian stood **the books on the shelf**.
 Stand **the children in front of a mirror**.
 Stand **the rugs in the corner**, please.
 We stood **the flagstaff in a big pot**.
 The palm plants were stood **along the garden wall**.

PASSIVE

stand _____ *be located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The church stands **at the corner of Waterman and Kingshighway**.
 A rake and hoe stood **against the fence**.
 The train is standing **at the station**.
 He was standing **just outside the door**, waiting for us.
 The town stands **on a little hill overlooking the bay**.

stand _____ *step to and remain [in a certain place]*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Stand **over there**, please.
 I stood **to the side** and let them pass.
 We all stood **on the grass** so that the ambulance could get by.

stand _____ *be [in a certain condition]*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He stood **firm in his opposition to the plan**.
 I stand **ready to help**.
 The house stood **empty** for many years.



PRESENT

I stare	we stare
you stare	you stare
he/she/it stares	they stare

• *He stares whenever someone talks to him.*

PAST

I stared	we stared
you stared	you stared
he/she/it stared	they stared

• *I stared in disbelief at the television.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stared

PAST PERFECT ... had stared

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am staring	we are staring
you are staring	you are staring
he/she/it is staring	they are staring

• *You are staring off into space again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was staring	we were staring
you were staring	you were staring
he/she/it was staring	they were staring

• *Everyone was staring at his ridiculous costume.*

FUTURE ... will stare

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be staring

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stared

PAST PASSIVE

I was stared	we were stared
you were stared	you were stared
he/she/it was stared	they were stared

• *We were stared at by the other hotel guests.*

COMPLEMENTS

stare look steadily with one's eyes open, often in awe/fear/stupidity/surprise

The dead soldiers lay there, staring with empty eyes.

I just stood there, staring in astonishment.

The news stunned Robert. He stared with his mouth open and his face blank.

stare _____ look steadily with one's eyes open

at OBJECT

I stared **at my broken cell phone** in dismay.

We stared **at the unexpected results**.

The kids stared **at the broken window** in amazement.

PASSIVE

We were always stared at when we held our knives and forks in the American style.

at WH-CLAUSE

They stared **at what they had done**.

The kids were staring **at what Uncle Matt had brought them**.

People were staring **at whoever had just come in**.

PHRASAL VERBS

stare SEP **down** stare at another person until he/she looks away

The batter stared the umpire down after the called third strike.

stare out gaze outward

The farmer stared out across his fields of wheat.

EXPRESSIONS

stare _____ **in the face** be obvious to [someone]

His keys were staring him in the face the whole time.

stare (off) into space look straight ahead without seeing anything in particular

After the indictment, he stared off into space and sighed.

PRESENT

I start we start
 you start you start
 he/she/it starts they start
 • *The meeting starts promptly at nine.*

PAST

I started we started
 you started you started
 he/she/it started they started
 • *They started a restaurant near Portland.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has started

PAST PERFECT ... had started

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am starting we are starting
 you are starting you are starting
 he/she/it is starting they are starting
 • *We are starting now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was starting we were starting
 you were starting you were starting
 he/she/it was starting they were starting
 • *The snow was starting to build up on the roofs.*

FUTURE ... will start

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be starting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have started

PAST PASSIVE

I was started we were started
 you were started you were started
 he/she/it was started they were started
 • *The fire was started by campers.*

COMPLEMENTS

start *begin*

Hurry up! The program is starting.
 Go ahead and start without me.
 My English class starts at 8:30 A.M.
 The desert starts just beyond the coastal range.

start *begin operating*

The engine started with a roar.
 Our car doesn't start easily on cold mornings.

start *move/jump/jerk suddenly in alarm/surprise*

The horses start at any unusual sound or movement.
 He is so upset that he starts at the slightest noise.
 We never know what will cause the baby to start.

start _____ *begin*

OBJECT

Harry will start **kindergarten** in the fall.
 I started **my new job** this week.

PASSIVE

The restoration of the old train station was started today.

INFINITIVE

It started **to rain** this morning.
 I started **to vacuum the living room rug**.
 We started **to read the newspaper**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

It started **raining** this morning.
 I started **vacuuming the living room rug**.
 We started **reading the newspaper**.

start _____ *cause to happen/operate*

OBJECT

I started **the car** and pulled back onto the highway.
 Apparently, the fire was started by lightning.

PASSIVE

The incident started **me thinking about what happened**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The tax incentives started **them considering using solar power**.

start _____ *originate, establish*

OBJECT

Steven started **the argument**.
 We started **our business** in 1977.

PHRASAL VERBS

start off/out *begin [an action, trip]*

The Lewis and Clark Expedition started off in August 1803.
 We started out walking, then we began to run.
 Rick started out as a pitcher, but now he's an outfielder.

PRESENT

I state we state
 you state you state
 he/she/it states they state
 • *He always states the obvious.*

PAST

I stated we stated
 you stated you stated
 he/she/it stated they stated
 • *She stated that we needed to delay our trip.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stated

PAST PERFECT ... had stated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stating we are stating
 you are stating you are stating
 he/she/it is stating they are stating
 • *I am stating what I believe to be the truth.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stating we were stating
 you were stating you were stating
 he/she/it was stating they were stating
 • *They were stating their side of the argument.*

FUTURE ... will state

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stated

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was stated they were stated

• *The facts were stated in a clear and simple manner.*

COMPLEMENTS

state _____ report, express in a definite and formal manner

OBJECT

Everyone stated **their opinions about what we should do.**Just state **the facts**, please.I stated **our options** as I saw them.The teacher stated **the classroom rules** on the first day of school.The secretary stated **the time and date of the next meeting.**

PASSIVE

Her recommendations were stated in no uncertain terms.

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

He stated **that his car had been stolen.**The report will state **that driving deaths have declined by 15% this year.**I can confidently state **that my client is completely innocent.**I stated **to the salesmen that we could not pay their expenses.**We stated **to the driver that we had to return to the hotel.**The aide stated **to us that we would need to come back the next day.**

WH-CLAUSE

The reporter won't state **who gave her the information.**You should only state **what you are absolutely sure about.**Please state **where you live.**

EXPRESSIONS

state the obvious express
what people already knowThe treasurer stated the obvious: The company
will lose money this year.

PRESENT

I stay we stay
 you stay you stay
 he/she/it stays they stay
 • *He stays with friends when he's in town.*

PAST

I stayed we stayed
 you stayed you stayed
 he/she/it stayed they stayed
 • *Charlotte stayed remarkably calm.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stayed

PAST PERFECT ... had stayed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am staying we are staying
 you are staying you are staying
 he/she/it is staying they are staying
 • *I am staying at the Hilton.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was staying we were staying
 you were staying you were staying
 he/she/it was staying they were staying
 • *Were the kittens staying warm?*

FUTURE

... will stay

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be staying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have stayed

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was stayed they were stayed
 • *The court's decision was stayed.*

COMPLEMENTS

stay remain in a place

Can you stay for minute?
 Please stay; I want to ask you something.
 I'd like to stay and talk, but I'm in a hurry.
 "What is truth?" said jesting Pilate, and would not stay
 for an answer." [FRANCIS BACON]

stay _____ remain [in a place]

ADVERB OF PLACE

I stay **at home** when it rains.
 Can you stay **on the phone** while I take another call?

stay _____ live for a while, usually as a guest

ADVERB OF PLACE

We are going to stay a few days **with my sister and her family**.
 I am just staying **there** for the weekend.
 We can't stay **where we are** for more than a week.

stay _____ remain [in a certain state/condition]

PREDICATE NOUN

They stayed **good friends** all their lives.
 He stayed **a bachelor** for as long as I knew him.
 I stayed **a private** the whole time I was in the army.
 Stay **calm**—everything is going to be all right.
 The cuttings need to stay **damp** until they are planted.
 The deer stayed **perfectly motionless** until we made a noise.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

stay _____ stop/delay [a formal action]

OBJECT

The judge issued an order to stay **the execution**.
 The chair can stay **any committee action**.
 The sentence was stayed by court order.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

stay away/back/behind/down/in/
 out/etc. remain in a specified position

He asked the children to stay away
 while he finished working on the speech.

stay off _____ avoid

Thank goodness our children stayed off drugs.

stay on remain at a job

Marilyn said she would stay on until we hire a replacement.

stay out remain away from home

Allison stayed out all night partying.

stay out of _____ not involve oneself in

You should stay out of their argument.

stay up remain out of bed

The kids are going to stay up and watch a movie.

PRESENT

I steal we steal
 you steal you steal
 he/she/it steals they steal

• *Our dog steals food from the cats' dishes.*

PAST

I stole we stole
 you stole you stole
 he/she/it stole they stole

• *Someone stole my wallet at the gym.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stolen

PAST PERFECT ... had stolen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stealing we are stealing
 you are stealing you are stealing
 he/she/it is stealing they are stealing

• *I am stealing an idea from you—okay?*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stealing we were stealing
 you were stealing you were stealing
 he/she/it was stealing they were stealing

• *They were stealing into the kitchen for cookies.*

FUTURE ... will steal

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stealing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stolen

PAST PASSIVE

I was stolen we were stolen
 you were stolen you were stolen
 he/she/it was stolen they were stolen

• *The car was stolen right out of the garage.*

COMPLEMENTS

steal take something that doesn't belong to one without paying for it / without permission

steal _____ take without paying for / without permission

OBJECT

PASSIVE

steal _____ take/borrow while acknowledging the fact [OFTEN USED HUMOROUSLY]

OBJECT

steal _____ move quietly/secretly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

steal _____ get/win in a tricky manner

OBJECT

steal _____ take secretly and slyly

OBJECT

“Thou shalt not steal.” [BIBLE]

Fagin forced the children to steal.

Even though he was starving, Oliver refused to steal.

Somebody stole **my son's bicycle**.

He claimed that they had stolen **his idea**.

iPods are stolen out of backpacks every day.

Can I steal **your husband** for a few minutes?

I need to steal **a few minutes of your time**.

Can I steal **your chair**?

The thieves stole **into the garage** and took some tools.

We stole **into the boss's office** for a surprise birthday party.

The cavalry stole **behind Union lines** and attacked from the rear.

Sam felt that Bob had stolen **Martha's affections**.

He managed to steal **a look at the classified documents**.

I stole **a kiss** when we had driven for a mile.

PHRASAL VERBS

steal away/down/in/out/up/etc. move quietly/secretly in a specified direction

My aunt stole away and cried.

EXPRESSIONS

steal [someone's] thunder say/do what [someone else] intended to say/do, thereby lessening his/her impact

Her opponent stole her thunder by appearing on TV an hour before she did.

steal the show receive more attention than anyone else at an event

A young tap dancer named Dulé Hill stole the show.

PRESENT

I step we step
 you step you step
 he/she/it steps they step
 • *He steps aside so other people can pass.*

PAST

I stepped we stepped
 you stepped you stepped
 he/she/it stepped they stepped
 • *He stepped back from the curb.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stepped

PAST PERFECT ... had stepped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stepping we are stepping
 you are stepping you are stepping
 he/she/it is stepping they are stepping
 • *Everyone is stepping over the broken glass.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stepping we were stepping
 you were stepping you were stepping
 he/she/it was stepping they were stepping
 • *The hikers were stepping from stone to stone.*

FUTURE ... will step

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stepping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stepped

PAST PASSIVE

Step is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

step _____ *walk a short distance*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Jason stepped **out of the garage** and used his cell phone.
 I had to step **around the large dog sleeping in the middle of the path.**

We stepped **down from the deck.**

Please step **over here.**

Could you step **into my office** for a minute?

Please step **out of the boat**, sir.

PHRASAL VERBS

step aside/away/back/down/in/off/out/over/past/under/etc. *walk in a specified direction*

step aside/down *leave one's job*

step forward *offer information*

step in *become involved*

step SEP off *measure by taking steps*

step SEP up *increase*

Would you all please step back?

We stepped out for a breath of fresh air.

The senior forward stepped aside for a talented freshman.
 Our club's secretary stepped down after six years on the job.

A stranger stepped forward and identified the robber.

Do you think the president will step in to settle the dispute?

The appraiser stepped off all the rooms in the house.

The club has stepped up pressure on members who haven't paid their dues.

The factory stepped production up when war was declared.

EXPRESSIONS

step on it / step on the gas *hurry up*

step on [someone's] toes *offend [someone]*

step out of line *misbehave*

We'll have to step on it if we want to be on time.

I don't want to step on anyone's toes, but this report has lots of misspellings.

Steve stepped out of line and got scolded by Sister Mary.

PRESENT

I stick we stick
 you stick you stick
 he/she/it sticks they stick
 • *The store sticks labels on fruit.*

PAST

I stuck we stuck
 you stuck you stuck
 he/she/it stuck they stuck
 • *A nurse stuck a bandage on Lynda's knee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stuck

PAST PERFECT ... had stuck

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sticking we are sticking
 you are sticking you are sticking
 he/she/it is sticking they are sticking
 • *The glue isn't sticking very well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sticking we were sticking
 you were sticking you were sticking
 he/she/it was sticking they were sticking
 • *My shoes were sticking to the floor.*

FUTURE ... will stick

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sticking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stuck

PAST PASSIVE

I was stuck we were stuck
 you were stuck you were stuck
 he/she/it was stuck they were stuck
 • *A note was stuck on my door while I was gone.*

COMPLEMENTS

stick remain fixed in place

The drawer is still sticking.
 Our wheels stuck in the soft earth.
 I'm afraid the proposal is stuck in committee.
 The transmission has stuck in first gear.
 If you throw enough dirt at somebody, some of it will stick.
 Snow was sticking on the ground.
 Our pants were sticking to the plastic seats.

stick _____ attach, fasten, fix

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We stuck **a patch on the tire**.
 I stuck **some pictures on the wall**.
 They stuck **the interns in a dingy basement office**.
 He was stuck **in a dead-end job**.

PASSIVE

stick _____ poke, pierce, thrust

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The nurse stuck **a thermometer in his mouth**.
 The cowboy stuck **a cigarette behind his ear**.
 The little boy stuck **a pin into the balloon**.
 The workers stuck **their hands in their pockets**.
 Political signs had been stuck **on the lawn**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

stick down/in/out/up/etc. extend in a specified position

My toes were sticking out from under the quilt.
 The lid was sticking up on the jewelry box.

stick SEP away/back/down/in/on/out/up/etc. thrust/attach in a specified location

Margaret stuck the report back in the drawer.
 I'll stick the stamps on at the post office.
 He stuck his tongue out at the teacher.

stick around remain nearby

I asked Barb to stick around until I started my car.

stick by _____ remain loyal to

Sara stuck by him through thick and thin.

stick out be distinctive

That lime green shirt of his really sticks out.

stick SEP out endure

Bob quit his new job after a week; he couldn't stick it out.

stick to _____ adhere to

Everyone should stick to the point being discussed.

stick SEP up rob

Two masked men stuck up a gas station last night.

stick up for _____ defend

Mom always stuck up for us kids.

PRESENT

I sting we sting
 you sting you sting
 he/she/it stings they sting
 • *That antiseptic really stings.*

PAST

I stung we stung
 you stung you stung
 he/she/it stung they stung
 • *The smoke from the grill stung our eyes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stung

PAST PERFECT ... had stung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stinging we are stinging
 you are stinging you are stinging
 he/she/it is stinging they are stinging
 • *My hands are still stinging.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinging we were stinging
 you were stinging you were stinging
 he/she/it was stinging they were stinging
 • *Sweat bees were stinging everyone at the picnic.*

FUTURE ... will sting

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stung

PAST PASSIVE

I was stung we were stung
 you were stung you were stung
 he/she/it was stung they were stung
 • *The swimmers were stung by jellyfish.*

COMPLEMENTS

sting hurt by pricking/piercing the skin

Wasps will sting if you get too close to their nest.

Careful—those plants sting if you even brush them. The insects sting when the wind dies down.

sting feel a sharp tingling/burning pain

My skin is stinging.
 Our throats were stinging from the exhaust.
 My hands stung from the vibrations.

sting cause emotional pain

His criticisms stung at first.
 Malicious gossip stings terribly.
 Man, what he said really stings!

sting _____ cause a sharp tingling/burning pain to

OBJECT

A bee just stung **me**.
 The medicine stung **my throat**.
 The sunblock stung **my eyes**.
 The cold stung **my ears and hands**.
 The kids who were playing in the sandbox were stung by ants.

sting _____ cause emotional pain to

OBJECT

Unjust criticism stings **a writer**.
 Being ridiculed would sting **anyone**.
 I was stung by her malicious attack.
 We were stung by how quickly they reacted.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I stink	we stink
you stink	you stink
he/she/it stinks	they stink

- *The barn really stinks.*

PAST

I stank/stunk	we stank/stunk
you stank/stunk	you stank/stunk
he/she/it stank/stunk	they stank/stunk

- *The whole economic situation stank.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stunk**PAST PERFECT** ... had stunk**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am stinking	we are stinking
you are stinking	you are stinking
he/she/it is stinking	they are stinking

- *The durian is stinking and I can't take it on the bus.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinking	we were stinking
you were stinking	you were stinking
he/she/it was stinking	they were stinking

- *The dead skunk was stinking to high heaven.*

FUTURE ... will stink**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be stinking**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have stunk**PAST PASSIVE***Stink* is never used in the passive voice.**COMPLEMENTS****stink** *give off a strong, unpleasant smell*

The alley stank like an open sewer.
When tissue swells and stinks, it may be a sign of gangrene.
His breath stank from cheap tobacco.
You need to take out the garbage before it starts to stink.

stink *be worthless / very bad*

The movie stinks. No one liked it.
The proposed merger stinks and will probably end up in court.
I think the plan stinks and should be junked.
The company's reputation stinks because of what they did.

PHRASAL VERBS**stink** SEP **up** *fill with a strong, unpleasant smell*

Will hamsters stink up the house?

EXPRESSIONS**stink up the joint/place** *perform very badly*

Our team really stunk up the joint tonight.

stink to high heaven *give off an extremely unpleasant smell*

When broccoli goes bad, it stinks to high heaven.

PRESENT

I stop we stop
 you stop you stop
 he/she/it stops they stop
 • *The train stops there for 10 minutes.*

PAST

I stopped we stopped
 you stopped you stopped
 he/she/it stopped they stopped
 • *My watch just stopped.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stopped

PAST PERFECT ... had stopped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stopping we are stopping
 you are stopping you are stopping
 he/she/it is stopping they are stopping
 • *We are stopping for lunch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stopping we were stopping
 you were stopping you were stopping
 he/she/it was stopping they were stopping
 • *The police were stopping all traffic on the Interstate.*

FUTURE ... will stop

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stopping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stopped

PAST PASSIVE

I was stopped we were stopped
 you were stopped you were stopped
 he/she/it was stopped they were stopped
 • *The game was stopped by the referee.*

COMPLEMENTS

stop halt

The rain has stopped.
 The train stopped between stations.
 We stopped to stretch our legs and take a few pictures.
 The laughing stopped abruptly.

stop cease functioning

The engine stops whenever I step on the gas.
 My watch has stopped. What time is it?

stop _____ cause to halt

OBJECT

Stop **the car!**
 The drugs should stop **the infection.**
 The opposition will try to stop **the bill's passage.**
 Don't try to stop **me.**
 The bank stopped **payment on the check.**

PASSIVE

OBJECT + (from) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The attack must be stopped.
 I can't stop **you (from) going ahead with your plan.**
 We must stop **him (from) hurting himself.**

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

Luckily, he was stopped **(from) investing in the crazy scheme.**
 The guard will stop **whoever tries to enter after hours.**
 The plastic will stop **whatever water leaks through the roof.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The children stopped **giggling** and began to listen.
 I couldn't stop **laughing at what he had said.**
 The factory stopped **producing that model last year.**

stop _____ pause

INFINITIVE

Has he stopped **to think how many people depend on him?**
 Mario doesn't stop **to consider the effect on the environment.**

PHRASAL VERBS

stop by/in/off visit briefly, often on one's way to another place

Senator Blather stopped by my office on his way to Capitol Hill.
 Aunt Luella stopped in for a few minutes this morning.

stop over stay at a place before continuing a trip

We usually stop over in Memphis on our way to New Orleans.

stop SEP **up** plug, clog

The plumber stopped the leak up with putty.
 The kitchen sink drain is stopped up.

PRESENT

I stress	we stress
you stress	you stress
he/she/it stresses	they stress

• *The company always stresses safety.*

PAST

I stressed	we stressed
you stressed	you stressed
he/she/it stressed	they stressed

• *I stressed that papers were due by Friday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stressed**PAST PERFECT** ... had stressed**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am stressing	we are stressing
you are stressing	you are stressing
he/she/it is stressing	they are stressing

• *You are stressing yourself needlessly.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stressing	we were stressing
you were stressing	you were stressing
he/she/it was stressing	they were stressing

• *The schools were stressing math skills.*

FUTURE ... will stress**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be stressing**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have stressed**PAST PASSIVE**

I was stressed	we were stressed
you were stressed	you were stressed
he/she/it was stressed	they were stressed

• *The importance of exercise was stressed in health class.***COMPLEMENTS**

stress *become extremely tense/anxious* You shouldn't stress like this. It's not good for you.
It's okay. No one is stressing.

stress _____ *emphasize*

OBJECT

I can't stress enough **the need to be accurate in your work**.
The doctor stressed **the importance of taking your medication**.

PASSIVE

The actor stressed **every word in his farewell speech**.

THAT-CLAUSE

Stress **the second syllable of "record"** when it's used as a verb.

Keeping costs under control was always stressed.

Please stress **that we expect quite cold weather on the trip**.

I stressed **that the kids really need to be patient during dinner**.

WH-CLAUSE

We stressed **that we haven't got much time**.

He stressed **what he wanted us to accomplish**.

Politicians always stress **how patriotic they are**.

I can't stress enough **how much this means to us**.

stress _____ *strain, put physical/emotional pressure on*

OBJECT

Weight lifting can really stress **your knee joints**.

The unusually heavy snow has stressed **the roof trusses**.

PASSIVE

Our communication system has been stressed to the point of collapse.

Everyone has been stressed by money concerns.

PRESENT

I stretch we stretch
 you stretch you stretch
 he/she/it stretches they stretch
 • *He always stretches before he runs.*

PAST

I stretched we stretched
 you stretched you stretched
 he/she/it stretched they stretched
 • *The cat stretched in front of the fireplace.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stretched

PAST PERFECT ... had stretched

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stretching we are stretching
 you are stretching you are stretching
 he/she/it is stretching they are stretching
 • *The sweater is stretching out of shape.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stretching we were stretching
 you were stretching you were stretching
 he/she/it was stretching they were stretching
 • *We were already stretching the budget.*

FUTURE

... will stretch

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be stretching

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have stretched

PAST PASSIVE

I was stretched we were stretched
 you were stretched you were stretched
 he/she/it was stretched they were stretched
 • *The canvas was stretched over the wooden frame.*

COMPLEMENTS

stretch extend, become larger

My sweater stretched in the laundry.
 These pants are stretching badly.
 Will this material stretch?

stretch warm up one's muscles

You need to stretch before exercising.
 If you don't stretch, you can pull a muscle.

stretch extend one's limbs

The cat was stretching in the sun.
 I couldn't stretch enough to reach the top shelf.

stretch _____ cause to extend, cause to become larger/longer

OBJECT

I stretched **the sweater** over my head and went out for a walk.
 The Scouts stretched **the rope** between two trees.
 We stretched **the canvas** over the frame.

PASSIVE

The rubber band was stretched until it nearly broke.

stretch _____ extend [one's limbs]

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

The student yawned and stretched **his arms and legs**.
 Melanie stretched **her arms toward the puppies**.

stretch _____ extend the length/amount of

OBJECT

The bank has stretched **their payments** over a longer period.
 I stretched **the main dish** by adding more noodles.
 They decided to stretch **their vacation** a few more days.
 Our finances were already stretched to the limit.

PASSIVE

stretch _____ extend/spread

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Their ranch stretches **for fifty miles**.
 The military base has stretched **into the desert**.
 The long hours of the night stretched **before me**.

PHRASAL VERBS

stretch down/out/up extend one's limbs in a specified direction

Can you stretch down and touch your toes?

stretch out be prolonged

Anne stretched out on the living room floor.

stretch SEP **out** prolong

How long will this concert stretch out?

My boss stretches staff meetings out forever.

PRESENT

I stride	we stride
you stride	you stride
he/she/it strides	they stride

• *He strides in like he is on a mission.*

PAST

I strode	we strode
you strode	you strode
he/she/it strode	they strode

• *The cowboys strode into the town square.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stridden

PAST PERFECT ... had stridden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striding	we are striding
you are striding	you are striding
he/she/it is striding	they are striding

• *The horses are striding along at a fast clip now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striding	we were striding
you were striding	you were striding
he/she/it was striding	they were striding

• *They were striding as though they were on parade.*

FUTURE

... will stride

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be striding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stridden

PAST PASSIVE

Stride is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

stride *walk with long steps*

He doesn't walk, he strides.

The boys were pretending to stride like soldiers.

He was striding so fast that he was almost running.

stride _____ *walk briskly*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He strode **across the room** in two quick steps and jerked open the door.They strode angrily **down the street and into the mayor's office**.The delegation strode **past us**, grim faced, not looking to the left or right.

PHRASAL VERBS

stride **along/away/down/in/out/up**/etc. *stride in a specified direction*

He was striding along, muttering to himself.

Leon glared at the boss, then strode away.

The captain strode up and shook my hand.

PRESENT

I strike we strike
you strike you strike
he/she/it strikes they strike
• *The idea strikes us as promising.*

PAST

I struck we struck
you struck you struck
he/she/it struck they struck
• *She struck her foot on a chair.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has struck

PAST PERFECT ... had struck

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striking we are striking
you are striking you are striking
he/she/it is striking they are striking
• *The flu is striking everyone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striking we were striking
you were striking you were striking
he/she/it was striking they were striking
• *The union was striking at midnight.*

FUTURE

... will strike

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be striking

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have struck

PAST PASSIVE

I was struck we were struck
you were struck you were struck
he/she/it was struck they were struck
• *He was suddenly struck by a brilliant idea.*

COMPLEMENTS

strike attack, cause sudden damage/injury

An earthquake struck this morning in northern California.
Disaster struck when the ferry capsized in heavy seas.
The killer has struck again.
Many snakes hiss before they strike.

strike refuse to work until one's demands are met

The maintenance workers voted to strike.
We will strike if our demands are not met.
They are striking for better health benefits.

strike _____ hit forcefully

OBJECT

A falling tree limb struck **me** on the shoulder.
The van struck **several parked cars**.
He struck **the ball** with his head.
Sunshine struck **the mirror**, temporarily blinding me.
The Pinkston family was struck by tragedy today.
We were all struck by the coincidence.

PASSIVE

strike _____ occur to

OBJECT

A great idea just struck **me**.
The solution to the problem struck **him**.
It struck **us that our problem had been solved**.
It strikes **me that you are taking an unnecessary risk**.
It struck **everyone that it was getting very late**.

it + strike + OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

NOTE: The predicate noun refers to the subject, not the object.

He struck **her as an honest man**.
The attack struck **the policeman as a suicide bombing**.
The proposal struck **us as an idiotic idea**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

NOTE: The predicate adjective refers to the subject, not the object.

Thomas struck **her as nice but a little strange**.
The proposal struck **me as promising**.
Their children struck **us as well-behaved**.

strike _____ reach/achieve [an agreement, compromise]

OBJECT

The two sides finally struck **a deal**.
You must strike **the right balance between compassion and assertiveness**.

PASSIVE

A compromise on the budget was finally struck.

PHRASAL VERBS

strike back/down/out attack in a specified direction

The hero struck back with his mighty sword.

strike SEP **back/down/out** hit in a specified direction

Roger struck Steve down with a blow to the head.

strike SEP **down** invalidate [a law]

The Supreme Court struck down the gay marriage ban as unconstitutional.

strike SEP **off** remove

The secretary struck off the names of those who hadn't paid dues.

strike off/out (for _____) set out (to [someplace])

Thousands struck out for California in search of gold.

strike on _____ realize suddenly

The author struck on the idea of setting the novel in colonial America.

strike out fail

Brandy struck out trying to convince the boss to give her a raise.

strike SEP **up** begin

Ben struck up a conversation with the receptionist. Sadie and Sally struck up a friendship at school.

EXPRESSIONS

strike a balance (between _____) compromise (between [two things])

She manages to strike a balance between her work and her family.

strike a bargain/deal reach agreement

The union and the company struck a bargain at the eleventh hour.

strike a chord (with _____) sound familiar to [someone]

Those words strike a chord with me; what song are they from?

strike a happy medium find a satisfactory compromise

She speaks French and I speak English, so we struck a happy medium and watched a French film with English subtitles.

strike a nerve cause a strong negative reaction

Your insensitive comment about immigration really struck a nerve.

strike _____ funny seem humorous/odd to

It strikes me funny that they dropped charges against the politician.

strike home make sense

His advice to save for a rainy day really strikes home.

strike it rich become suddenly wealthy

They struck it rich in the real estate business.

strike [one, two, ... twelve / midnight] [OF A CLOCK] indicate the hour by a certain number of sounds

The clock struck one, and the mouse ran down. [NURSERY RHYME]

strike pay dirt become suddenly successful

The Mars rover has struck pay dirt: It has discovered evidence of water on the planet.

strike [someone's] fancy appeal to [someone]

Miss Elizabeth Bennet struck Mr. Darcy's fancy.

strike while the iron is hot do something while one has the opportunity

The economy is booming, and the board recommends that the company strike while the iron is hot.

PRESENT

I string	we string
you string	you string
he/she/it strings	they string

• *He strings Christmas lights in the trees.*

PAST

I strung	we strung
you strung	you strung
he/she/it strung	they strung

• *I strung the bows for the children.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has strung

PAST PERFECT ... had strung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stringing	we are stringing
you are stringing	you are stringing
he/she/it is stringing	they are stringing

• *The kids are stringing beads.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stringing	we were stringing
you were stringing	you were stringing
he/she/it was stringing	they were stringing

• *We were stringing shells for a wall hanging.*

FUTURE

... will string

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have strung

PAST PASSIVE

I was strung	we were strung
you were strung	you were strung
he/she/it was strung	they were strung

• *My tennis racket was strung too tight.*

COMPLEMENTS

string _____ hang/stretch [in a line]

OBJECT

We used to string **popcorn and cranberries** on our Christmas tree.

The fishermen strung **lines** in the channel.

The decorating committee wanted to string **lanterns** in the hall.

A trip wire had been strung across the path.

PASSIVE

string _____ thread (on a line/cord)

OBJECT

Kids love to string **different shapes of uncooked pasta**.

When we catch fish, we string **them** on a line.

The beads were strung to make simple necklaces.

PASSIVE

string _____ put strings on [a racket, bow, musical instrument]

OBJECT

You can't string **a tennis racket** by hand.

It takes a great deal of strength to string **a powerful bow**.

The instruments were all strung by a professional musician.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

string SEP **along** keep [someone] hoping for romance / a reward

Jenny strung Reggie along for several months before telling him to get lost.

He strings employees along by promising raises that they never get.

string SEP **out** prolong

The professor was stringing out his lecture on quantum gravity.

string SEP **up** hang by the neck

An angry mob strung the cattle thieves up in the town square.

PRESENT

I strive	we strive
you strive	you strive
he/she/it strives	they strive

- *He strives to do his very best.*

PAST

I strove	we strove
you strove	you strove
he/she/it strove	they strove

- *We strove to get the job finished on time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has striven**PAST PERFECT** ... had striven**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am striving	we are striving
you are striving	you are striving
he/she/it is striving	they are striving

- *He is striving to succeed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striving	we were striving
you were striving	you were striving
he/she/it was striving	they were striving

- *Everyone was striving to beat the deadline.*

FUTURE ... will strive**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be striving**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have striven**PAST PASSIVE***Strive* is never used in the passive voice.**COMPLEMENTS****strive** _____ *make a great effort, try very hard*

INFINITIVE

You must always strive **to improve yourself**.We always strove **to get the kids to school on time**.Successful companies constantly strive **to make their products better**.If you don't strive **to succeed**, you will surely fail in the long run.The whole team was striving **to be the best in the league**.**strive** _____ *fight, struggle*

for OBJECT

We strive **for peace and freedom**.

against OBJECT

The activists are striving **against poverty and injustice**.

PRESENT

I study we study
 you study you study
 he/she/it studies they study
 • *He studies two hours every morning.*

PAST

I studied we studied
 you studied you studied
 he/she/it studied they studied
 • *I studied Latin and Classical Greek.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has studied

PAST PERFECT ... had studied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am studying we are studying
 you are studying you are studying
 he/she/it is studying they are studying
 • *Don't bother her now—she's studying.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was studying we were studying
 you were studying you were studying
 he/she/it was studying they were studying
 • *The class was studying the Civil War.*

FUTURE ... will study

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be studying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have studied

PAST PASSIVE

I was studied we were studied
 you were studied you were studied
 he/she/it was studied they were studied
 • *The proposal was studied from every angle.*

COMPLEMENTS

study *spend time learning* It seems like all I do is study.
 He really needs to study harder.
 I can't study when it's so noisy.
 Nobody likes to study all the time.

study _____ *spend time learning in preparation*
 for OBJECT Laurie is studying **for her midterm exams**.
 John is studying **for his driver's test**.

study _____ *take one or more courses in*
 OBJECT I plan to study **Chinese** next year.
 He hopes to study **geology** when he gets to college.
 She is studying **voice and piano** at the conservatory.
 PASSIVE Latin is still studied in some high schools.

study _____ *thoroughly investigate*
 OBJECT I have been studying **the railroad timetable**, and I still don't
 understand it.
 The police have been studying **the suspect's movements** that day.
 The reporter studied **his notes** before answering.
 PASSIVE The grant applications were carefully studied.

study _____ *visually examine carefully*
 OBJECT The school board studied **the architect's drawings**.
 The dermatologist studied **every inch of my face and hands**.
 He anxiously studied **the faces of the passengers**.
 PASSIVE The plans for the new house were studied and debated endlessly.

PHRASAL VERBS

study up on _____ *learn a lot about in a short time* We need to study up on when to plant tomatoes.
 You need to study up on French culture before your trip to Paris.

PRESENT

I submit we submit
 you submit you submit
 he/she/it submits they submit
 • *He submits his dissertation this semester.*

PAST

I submitted we submitted
 you submitted you submitted
 he/she/it submitted they submitted
 • *I submitted the additional evidence.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has submitted

PAST PERFECT ... had submitted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am submitting we are submitting
 you are submitting you are submitting
 he/she/it is submitting they are submitting
 • *I am submitting my resignation on Friday.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was submitting we were submitting
 you were submitting you were submitting
 he/she/it was submitting they were submitting
 • *We were submitting ourselves to additional costs.*

FUTURE ... will submit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be submitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have submitted

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was submitted they were submitted
 • *The paperwork was submitted in March.*

COMPLEMENTS

submit *surrender, yield*

The opposition will not submit without a fight.
 Without reinforcements, the castle will have to submit.
 The employers got a court order that forced the strikers to submit.

submit _____ *subject [to a process/treatment]*

OBJECT + to OBJECT

We submitted **the bone fragment to DNA testing**.
 I submitted **myself to a body search**.
 The parties submitted **the issue to binding arbitration**.

submit _____ *formally present [a document]*

OBJECT

You have to submit **your application** three weeks in advance.
 I will submit **my grant proposal** next week.
 He is going to submit **his resignation** tomorrow.
 The defense lawyer was allowed to submit **additional evidence**.
 The request must be submitted in writing.

PASSIVE

submit _____ *formally present/argue*

THAT-CLAUSE

Mr. Smith submits **that he is totally innocent of all charges**.
 In the indictment, they submit **that you left the scene of the accident**.
 In his testimony, Dr. Brown will submit **that the defendant is not competent to stand trial**.

PRESENT

I succeed we succeed
you succeed you succeed
he/she/it succeeds they succeed
• *That magic trick always succeeds.*

PAST

I succeeded we succeeded
you succeeded you succeeded
he/she/it succeeded they succeeded
• *He succeeded in ending the war.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has succeeded

PAST PERFECT ... had succeeded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am succeeding we are succeeding
you are succeeding you are succeeding
he/she/it is succeeding they are succeeding
• *We are succeeding pretty well with the fund-raiser.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was succeeding we were succeeding
you were succeeding you were succeeding
he/she/it was succeeding they were succeeding
• *The new ad campaign was finally succeeding.*

FUTURE

... will succeed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be succeeding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have succeeded

PAST PASSIVE

I was succeeded we were succeeded
you were succeeded you were succeeded
he/she/it was succeeded they were succeeded
• *Henry VIII was succeeded by his son Edward.*

COMPLEMENTS

succeed *perform/happen as planned/desired*

You can't succeed unless you try.
The pilot test succeeded beyond our expectations.
They succeeded more by luck than design.
Jerry succeeded as a trial lawyer.
It seemed that Barry succeeded at nearly everything he tried.
Nicole succeeded in her role as Virginia Woolf.

succeed _____ *achieve [a goal]*
in PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They succeeded **in getting the contract**.
I hope to succeed **in finding the right job**.
We have succeeded **in recruiting an excellent staff**.

succeed _____ *follow [into a job/office]*
OBJECT

John Adams succeeded **George Washington** in 1797.
Roger will succeed **his father** as head of the company.

PASSIVE

Roberta was succeeded by Terry as chair of the committee.

PRESENT

I suffer	we suffer
you suffer	you suffer
he/she/it suffers	they suffer

• *His family suffers when he works late.*

PAST

I suffered	we suffered
you suffered	you suffered
he/she/it suffered	they suffered

• *We suffered a major setback yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has suffered

PAST PERFECT ... had suffered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am suffering	we are suffering
you are suffering	you are suffering
he/she/it is suffering	they are suffering

• *She is suffering from severe headaches.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was suffering	we were suffering
you were suffering	you were suffering
he/she/it was suffering	they were suffering

• *I was suffering a terrible cold at the time.*

FUTURE ... will suffer

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be suffering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have suffered

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was suffered	they were suffered

• *Severe losses were suffered in the attack.*

COMPLEMENTS

suffer *feel physical/emotional pain/loss*

In war, it is always the civilians who suffer.
The economic downturn has caused many people to suffer.
Too many patients were suffering unnecessarily.
Our profit margin has suffered since the merger.
The kids' grades suffered because we moved so often.
Concerns about mad cow disease have caused beef prices to suffer.

suffer *become worse*

suffer _____ *experience, undergo* [pain/loss/damage/unpleasantness]

OBJECT

She has suffered **migraine headaches** all her life.
We expect to suffer **a small loss** this quarter.
Mom suffered **a stroke** when she was 70.
The team suffered **two losses** on its recent road trip.
The police department suffered **a total breakdown in its communication system**.
We suffered **a setback** on our way to financial independence.
Only minor injuries were suffered in the accident.
Our team suffers **from too many mental errors**.
Nancy has suffered **from arthritis for decades**.
The wounded soldier was suffering **from shock**.

PASSIVE

from OBJECT

suffer _____ *tolerate* [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

OBJECT

The country will not suffer **such an attack** without retaliation.
Senator Blather won't suffer **criticism**.

EXPRESSIONS

suffer fools gladly *tolerate stupidity in others*

Our professor does not suffer fools gladly.

PRESENT

I suggest we suggest
you suggest you suggest
he/she/it suggests they suggest
• *He suggests that we come back after lunch.*

PAST

I suggested we suggested
you suggested you suggested
he/she/it suggested they suggested
• *I suggested lunch at a Mexican restaurant.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has suggested

PAST PERFECT ... had suggested

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am suggesting we are suggesting
you are suggesting you are suggesting
he/she/it is suggesting they are suggesting
• *I am suggesting that we take a break.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was suggesting we were suggesting
you were suggesting you were suggesting
he/she/it was suggesting they were suggesting
• *The dark clouds were suggesting a storm.*

FUTURE

... will suggest

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be suggesting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have suggested

PAST PASSIVE

I was suggested we were suggested
you were suggested you were suggested
he/she/it was suggested they were suggested
• *The idea was suggested in April.*

COMPLEMENTS

suggest _____ recommend, mention for consideration

OBJECT

The waiter suggested **the salmon**.
I suggested **a gift certificate** for her birthday.
The designer suggests **a different typeface** for the text.
Several candidates were suggested and discussed.

PASSIVE

(to OBJECT +) BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

No one is suggesting **that we give up**.
I suggested **to my son that we have pancakes for breakfast**.

The committee suggested **to the board that Susan be named president**.

The senator suggested **to his staff that they ignore all questions from the press**.

WH-CLAUSE

I suggested **whom they might contact in Madrid**.
Can you suggest **where we should go next**?

The guidebook suggested **how much we should expect to pay for a hotel there**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The people at the next table suggested **what to order**.
Some friends suggested **where to stay**.
Tony suggested **how to proceed next**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Jan suggested **renting some movies for the kids**.
The consultant suggested **reducing our overhead costs**.
I suggested **just redoing the kitchen and leaving everything else alone**.

suggest _____ bring to mind as similar/connected to

OBJECT

The perfume is designed to suggest **a tropical forest**.
Her paintings suggest **the work of Georgia O'Keeffe**.
The crime suggests **a revenge killing**.

suggest _____ imply, say indirectly

THAT-CLAUSE

Nick is suggesting **that the package was never delivered**.
A recent study suggests **that red wine may make your heart healthier**.
Are you suggesting **that no one wants me at the party**?

PRESENT

I supply we supply
 you supply you supply
 he/she/it supplies they supply
 • *The farm supplies vegetables to restaurants.*

PAST

I supplied we supplied
 you supplied you supplied
 he/she/it supplied they supplied
 • *Wikipedia supplied most of the answers.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has supplied

PAST PERFECT ... had supplied

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am supplying we are supplying
 you are supplying you are supplying
 he/she/it is supplying they are supplying
 • *We are supplying most of the manpower.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was supplying we were supplying
 you were supplying you were supplying
 he/she/it was supplying they were supplying
 • *The publicity committee was supplying the brochures.*

FUTURE ... will supply

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be supplying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have supplied

PAST PASSIVE

I was supplied we were supplied
 you were supplied you were supplied
 he/she/it was supplied they were supplied
 • *Lunch was supplied by a local caterer.*

COMPLEMENTS

supply _____ furnish, provide

OBJECT

Ralph's Pretty Good Grocery will supply **everything for your picnics.**

Robbery seemed to supply **the motive for the break-in.**

The union will supply **extra workers** if they are needed.

Sunshine does not always supply **an adequate amount of vitamin D.**

About half of our power is supplied by wind and solar.

PASSIVE

supply _____ take care of the needs of

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The Ordnance Corps supplies **the troops ammunition.**

I supplied **them the information they wanted.**

His firm supplies **our company technical support.**

TO PARAPHRASE

The Ordnance Corps supplies **ammunition to the troops.**

I supplied **the information they wanted to them.**

His firm supplies **technical support to our company.**

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The Ordnance Corps supplies **the troops with ammunition.**

I supplied **them with the information they wanted.**

His firm supplies **our company with technical support.**

OBJECT + (with) WH-CLAUSE

He supplied **the children (with) whatever art supplies they needed.**

She supplies **the manager (with) whatever reports he requests.**

PRESENT

I support we support
you support you support
he/she/it supports they support
• *The senator supports the bill.*

PAST

I supported we supported
you supported you supported
he/she/it supported they supported
• *Dad supported his family on \$400 a week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has supported

PAST PERFECT ... had supported

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am supporting we are supporting
you are supporting you are supporting
he/she/it is supporting they are supporting
• *Whom are you supporting in the election?*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was supporting we were supporting
you were supporting you were supporting
he/she/it was supporting they were supporting
• *The fans were supporting the underdogs.*

FUTURE ... will support

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be supporting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have supported

PAST PASSIVE

I was supported we were supported
you were supported you were supported
he/she/it was supported they were supported
• *The bridge was supported by two huge piers.*

COMPLEMENTS

support _____ carry (the weight of), hold up

OBJECT

Two rotting wooden posts supported **the sagging porch**.
His knees can't support **his weight** anymore.

PASSIVE

The wounded soldier was supported by his comrades.

support _____ advocate, approve of, agree with

OBJECT

Senator Blather supports **farm subsidies and fully funded crop insurance**.

WH-CLAUSE

Our organization has supported **civil rights legislation** for decades.
We support **Jack Eberhardt** for commissioner.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can't support **what you are doing**.
The senator will support **whomever his party nominates**.
The government has supported **growing corn for ethanol**.
We supported **Jane's starting her own business**.
I supported **his going to school out of state**.

support _____ provide a living for

OBJECT

People cannot support **a family** on the minimum wage.

PASSIVE

Doris has always been supported by her family.

support _____ sustain

OBJECT

The island could no longer support **vegetation** after the volcano erupted.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The company cannot support **carrying such a high level of debt**.

support _____ help to prove

OBJECT

The new research supports **our hypothesis**.
A recent study supports **the value of using alternative energy sources**.

support _____ be compatible with

OBJECT

Will the new computer support **all of our old applications**?

WH-CLAUSE

The computer will support **whatever programs you need to run**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The operating system supports **having 256 windows open at the same time**.

PRESENT

I suppose we suppose
 you suppose you suppose
 he/she/it supposes they suppose
 • *He supposes that the worst will happen.*

PAST

I supposed we supposed
 you supposed you supposed
 he/she/it supposed they supposed
 • *I supposed him to be a visitor.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has supposed

PAST PERFECT ... had supposed

PAST PASSIVE

I was supposed we were supposed
 you were supposed you were supposed
 he/she/it was supposed they were supposed
 • *He was supposed to be at the airport.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am supposing we are supposing
 you are supposing you are supposing
 he/she/it is supposing they are supposing
 • *We are supposing that you can get the job done right.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was supposing we were supposing
 you were supposing you were supposing
 he/she/it was supposing they were supposing
 • *I was supposing that we might not make the flight.*

FUTURE ... will suppose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be supposing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have supposed

COMPLEMENTS

suppose *make assumptions*

Don't suppose so much.
 He is only supposing.

suppose _____ *think of as true/possible without really knowing*

OBJECT

The defense is supposing **facts that are not in the evidence**.
 His idea supposes **a long chain of unlikely events**.
 Some interpretations of quantum mechanics suppose
the existence of parallel universes.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

Quinn supposed **them (to be) loyal supporters**.
 The agent supposed **the house (to be) a rental property**.
 The coach supposed **the other team (to be) a weak opponent**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I supposed **the strange man (to be) delusional**.
 Everyone supposed **the house (to be) mortgaged to the hilt**.
 We supposed **the children (to be) ready for bed**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Everyone supposed **the family to have a fortune**.

PASSIVE

Children were supposed **to know how to behave**.
 Until the 19th century, diseases were supposed **to be caused
 by an imbalance of humours**.

it + be supposed + INFINITIVE

It's supposed **to rain today and tomorrow**.

THAT-CLAUSE

Suppose **that you are right**. What would you do next?
 Let's suppose **that money is no object**.
 Suppose **that you were in my shoes**.

suppose _____ *guess, believe*

THAT-CLAUSE

I suppose **that the accident happened sometime during
 the night**.

Do you suppose **that the flight was delayed**?

I suppose **that it is time to quit**.

be supposed _____ *be expected/obliged/allowed [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]*

INFINITIVE

I am supposed to give you this message.

The children are not supposed to go to the park alone.

We are supposed to meet someone at the airport.

PRESENT

I surprise	we surprise
you surprise	you surprise
he/she/it surprises	they surprise

• *He surprises us with his bizarre ideas.*

PAST

I surprised	we surprised
you surprised	you surprised
he/she/it surprised	they surprised

• *I surprised Mary when I came home early.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has surprised

PAST PERFECT ... had surprised

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am surprising	we are surprising
you are surprising	you are surprising
he/she/it is surprising	they are surprising

• *They are surprising him with a new workbench.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was surprising	we were surprising
you were surprising	you were surprising
he/she/it was surprising	they were surprising

• *He was surprising her with symphony tickets.*

FUTURE ... will surprise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be surprising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have surprised

PAST PASSIVE

I was surprised	we were surprised
you were surprised	you were surprised
he/she/it was surprised	they were surprised

• *Everyone was surprised by Bill's early retirement.*

COMPLEMENTS

surprise _____ cause mild astonishment/shock to

OBJECT

The announcement surprised **everyone**.
The children surprised **us** with a trip to Hawaii.
We surprised **some deer** when we were walking in the woods.
Was anybody surprised by what happened?

PASSIVE

surprise _____ attack/encounter suddenly/unexpectedly [NOT USED IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

OBJECT

The Japanese Navy surprised **the U.S. fleet at Pearl Harbor**.
The security guard surprised **the shoplifter**.
Mom surprised **us** in the middle of a video game.

PASSIVE

Union forces were surprised by Stonewall Jackson's corps at Chancellorsville.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The police surprised **them stealing scrap metal**.
The principal surprised **some students smoking in the gym**.
We surprised **the dogs sleeping on the couch again**.

PRESENT

I surround we surround
 you surround you surround
 he/she/it surrounds they surround
 • *The garden surrounds the house.*

PAST

I surrounded we surrounded
 you surrounded you surrounded
 he/she/it surrounded they surrounded
 • *A fence surrounded the original factory.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has surrounded

PAST PERFECT ... had surrounded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am surrounding we are surrounding
 you are surrounding you are surrounding
 he/she/it is surrounding they are surrounding
 • *The police are surrounding the building.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was surrounding we were surrounding
 you were surrounding you were surrounding
 he/she/it was surrounding they were surrounding
 • *The floodwater was surrounding the hill.*

FUTURE ... will surround

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be surrounding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have surrounded

PAST PASSIVE

I was surrounded we were surrounded
 you were surrounded you were surrounded
 he/she/it was surrounded they were surrounded
 • *I was surrounded by noise.*

COMPLEMENTS

surround _____ form a circle/ring around, enclose, envelop

OBJECT

A ring of forts completely surrounded **the city**.
 The children surrounded **us**, asking endless questions.
 The empty prairie surrounded **our camp** from horizon to horizon.

PASSIVE

The village was completely surrounded by high mountains.
 The rock star was surrounded by screaming fans.

surround _____ dominate the environment of

OBJECT

Controversy surrounded **everything he did**.
 A cloud of suspicion surrounded **the courtroom**.
 Confusion and uncertainty surrounded **them** like fog.

PASSIVE

He felt that he was surrounded by fools.

PRESENT

I survive we survive
 you survive you survive
 he/she/it survives they survive
 • *He survives one crisis after another.*

PAST

I survived we survived
 you survived you survived
 he/she/it survived they survived
 • *The bank barely survived the Depression.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has survived

PAST PERFECT ... had survived

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am surviving we are surviving
 you are surviving you are surviving
 he/she/it is surviving they are surviving
 • *I am only surviving day to day.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was surviving we were surviving
 you were surviving you were surviving
 he/she/it was surviving they were surviving
 • *The army was surviving on half rations.*

FUTURE ... will survive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be surviving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have survived

PAST PASSIVE

I was survived we were survived
 you were survived you were survived
 he/she/it was survived they were survived
 • *He was survived by a daughter and two grandchildren.*

COMPLEMENTS

survive *continue to live/exist*

Against all odds, the baby survived.
 The shipwrecked crew clung to the raft, hoping to survive.
 People can survive under the most adverse conditions.
 Very few fossils from that period survive.
 The old French custom survives today.

survive *continue to live/exist*
 [USED HUMOROUSLY/IRONICALLY]

Oh, I think we might survive after all.
 I'm sure the kids will survive.
 The economy will probably survive despite our best efforts to ruin it.

survive _____ *continue to live/exist in spite of*

OBJECT

The duke survived **the assassination attempt**.
 His family survived **a terrible ordeal in the earthquake**.
 Senator Blather survived **a political scandal involving illegal campaign contributions**.

PASSIVE

The fire was survived by two children.

survive _____ *live longer than [a close relative]*

OBJECT

He survived **his wife** by only two months.
 Private Ryan survived **his three brothers**.
 Donald survived **his son** by eight years.

PASSIVE

He is survived by his wife and three children.
 Mrs. Brown is survived by her lovely daughter.

PRESENT

I suspect we suspect
 you suspect you suspect
 he/she/it suspects they suspect

• *He suspects that a circuit malfunctioned.*

PAST

I suspected we suspected
 you suspected you suspected
 he/she/it suspected they suspected

• *The doctor suspected a low-grade infection.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has suspected

PAST PERFECT ... had suspected

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Suspect is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Suspect is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will suspect

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have suspected

PAST PASSIVE

I was suspected we were suspected
 you were suspected you were suspected
 he/she/it was suspected they were suspected

• *A gas leak was suspected as the cause of the explosion.*

NOTE: The verb *suspect* is stressed on the second syllable, like *inspect*.
 The noun *suspect* is stressed on the first syllable.

COMPLEMENTS

suspect _____ *believe to be guilty of / the fault of*

OBJECT

The police suspect **a local gang**.

You have no reason to suspect **him**.

The garage mechanic suspects **the car's oxygen sensor**.

PASSIVE

A faulty power supply is suspected.

OBJECT + *of* OBJECT

No one would suspect **her of drug abuse**.

The cops suspect **him of murder**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I suspected **John to be the cause of the delay**.

Doctors suspect **inflammation to increase the risk of heart attacks**.

George suspected **Donald to have leaked the memo to the press**.

OBJECT + *of* PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We suspect **a neighbor of trampling our flower bed**.

Who would suspect **Grandma of hiding candy around her house?**

suspect _____ *consider likely/true*

OBJECT

Researchers suspect **a link between diabetes and Alzheimer's disease**.

The investigator suspected **fraud**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I suspect **that you are right**.

We suspected **that the builder was overcharging us**.

The doctor suspected **that Kathy might have torn the cartilage in her knee**.

No one could have suspected **that the loans were so risky**.

PRESENT

I swear we swear
 you swear you swear
 he/she/it swears they swear

• *He swears that he knew nothing about it.*

PAST

I swore we swore
 you swore you swore
 he/she/it swore they swore

• *The witness swore to tell the truth.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sworn

PAST PERFECT ... had sworn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swearing we are swearing
 you are swearing you are swearing
 he/she/it is swearing they are swearing

• *They are swearing that they are innocent.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swearing we were swearing
 you were swearing you were swearing
 he/she/it was swearing they were swearing

• *The soldiers were swearing and yelling at us.*

FUTURE

... will swear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be swearing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have sworn

PAST PASSIVE

I was sworn we were sworn
 you were sworn you were sworn
 he/she/it was sworn they were sworn

• *The appropriate oaths were sworn during the ceremony.*

COMPLEMENTS

swear use offensive language, usually in anger

He swore under his breath.
 Please don't swear around the children.
 It was enough to make one swear!

swear _____ promise, vow, pledge, state very seriously

OBJECT

He swore **the oath of office**.
 I swore **a solemn promise**.
 Peter swore **his undying love to Héloïse**.
 The nobles all swore **their allegiance to the king**.
 The oath was sworn and witnessed.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

I swear **to do it**.
 Criminals always swear **to never commit another crime**.
 He swears **to mend the error of his ways**.
 "I swear **to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth**." [COMMON COURTROOM OATH]

THAT-CLAUSE

I swear **that we were not the cause of the accident**.
 The defendant swore **that he only shot in self-defense**.
 The kids all swore **that they didn't let the dog out**.
 "I do solemnly swear **that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States...**" [OATH OF OFFICE]

PHRASAL VERBS

swear at _____ curse at

He swore at me when I told him to leave the room.

swear by _____ have great faith in

Trudy swears by yoga.

swear SEP **in** administer an oath to

The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court swears in the President of the United States.
 The witness was sworn in by the bailiff.

swear off _____ promise to quit

Randi has sworn off dieting.

EXPRESSIONS

swear _____ to secrecy cause to promise not to repeat a secret

Annette swore me to secrecy about her background.

swear to it be absolutely certain about something [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

I wouldn't swear to it, but I think Elvis is still alive.

PRESENT

I sweat	we sweat
you sweat	you sweat
he/she/it sweats	they sweat

• *He sweats heavily when he exercises.*

PAST

I sweated	we sweated
you sweated	you sweated
he/she/it sweated	they sweated

• *They sweated so much they felt faint.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sweated/sweat

PAST PERFECT ... had sweated/sweat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweating	we are sweating
you are sweating	you are sweating
he/she/it is sweating	they are sweating

• *I am really sweating tomorrow's exam.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweating	we were sweating
you were sweating	you were sweating
he/she/it was sweating	they were sweating

• *We were all sweating by the time we finished.*

FUTURE ... will sweat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sweating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sweated/sweat

PAST PASSIVE

I was sweated	we were sweated
you were sweated	you were sweated
he/she/it was sweated	they were sweated

• *The wrestlers were sweated until they got down to 190 pounds.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweat perspire

Everyone in the hot office was sweating like crazy.

sweat form drops of water on its surface

I always sweat when I work out.
He sweats so much that he has to change his clothes after lunch.
The bottles of water began to sweat.
The plaster walls were actually sweating in the humid air.
The cheese is sweating and needs to be refrigerated.

sweat be worried/nervous

The police let him sweat overnight.
Don't sweat. Everything will be okay.
They are going to make him sweat until he tells what happened.

sweat _____ cause to perspire through exertion

OBJECT

The coach wants to sweat **the football players** at every practice.
The training session had sweat **everybody**.

PASSIVE

The horses were sweat by the trainers and then allowed to slowly cool off.

sweat _____ be worried/nervous about

OBJECT

Noel was sweating **the job interview**.
Everyone sweats **the final exam**.

OVER OBJECT

Maureen sweated **over her English literature grade**.
Ruth was sweating **over the upcoming conference in Montreal**.

sweat _____ work very hard on

OVER OBJECT

The candidate sweated **over the wording of his acceptance speech**.
Jeffrey sweated all day **over his essay**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweat SEP off lose [an amount of weight] by exercising

Angie sweated off 22 pounds in two months.

EXPRESSIONS

sweat blood work very hard

She was willing to sweat blood for a spot on the Olympic team.

sweat bullets be extremely worried/nervous

Poor Leroy was sweating bullets outside the principal's office.

PRESENT

I sweep we sweep
 you sweep you sweep
 he/she/it sweeps they sweep
 • *He sweeps the leaves into the gutter.*

PAST

I swept we swept
 you swept you swept
 he/she/it swept they swept
 • *The Giants swept the three-game series.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swept

PAST PERFECT ... had swept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweeping we are sweeping
 you are sweeping you are sweeping
 he/she/it is sweeping they are sweeping
 • *She is sweeping the front porch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweeping we were sweeping
 you were sweeping you were sweeping
 he/she/it was sweeping they were sweeping
 • *The incoming tide was sweeping across the bay.*

FUTURE ... will sweep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sweeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swept

PAST PASSIVE

I was swept we were swept
 you were swept you were swept
 he/she/it was swept they were swept
 • *The room was swept this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweep _____ clean with a broom/brush

OBJECT

You need to sweep **the kitchen floor**.
 I'll sweep **the carpet** in the entryway.
 The garage has already been swept.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ clear away

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The archaeologist carefully swept **dirt from the bones**.
 The waiter swept **the crumbs onto a tray**.
 The trash had been swept **into a pile in the corner**.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ carry along in a continuous motion

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The cook swept **a greasy cloth over the lunch counter**.
 The current swept **the boat onto the rocks**.
 The mud slide swept **the house off its foundation**.
 We were swept **out to sea** by the offshore winds.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ pass over in a continuous motion

OBJECT

The guard's eyes swept **the room**.
 The politician's glance swept **the crowd**.

sweep _____ move quickly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The rumor swept **through the crowd**.
 A gust of rain swept **down the empty street**.

sweep _____ search

OBJECT

The volunteers swept **the woods**, looking for the lost children.
 Technicians swept **the office** for hidden electronic devices.
 The crime scene has already been swept.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ win all that can be won in

OBJECT

Our party swept **the fall election**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweep along/down/in/off/out/past/up/etc. sweep in a specified direction

The queen swept in with all her attendants.
 The motorcade swept past.

sweep SEP along/aside/away/back/in/off/out/past/up/etc. sweep [something] in a specified direction

The Russian revolution swept the old system away overnight.
 His election swept in a host of governmental reforms.
 The tornado swept up everything in its path.

PRESENT

I swell	we swell
you swell	you swell
he/she/it swells	they swell

• *My ankles swell if I stand too long.*

PAST

I swelled	we swelled
you swelled	you swelled
he/she/it swelled	they swelled

• *The sails swelled in the wind.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swelled

PAST PERFECT ... had swelled

PAST PASSIVE

I was swollen	we were swollen
you were swollen	you were swollen
he/she/it was swollen	they were swollen

• *The river was swollen by weeks of rain.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swelling	we are swelling
you are swelling	you are swelling
he/she/it is swelling	they are swelling

• *The wood is swelling from all the moisture.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swelling	we were swelling
you were swelling	you were swelling
he/she/it was swelling	they were swelling

• *Naturally, her parents were swelling with pride.*

FUTURE ... will swell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swelling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swelled

COMPLEMENTS

swell <i>become larger/stronger, expand</i>	My hands swelled from the heat. The crowd in front of the gate was swelling by the minute. The orchestra music was swelling and the lights dimmed. The balloon swelled and began to lift.
swell _____ <i>cause to become larger/stronger, cause to expand</i>	
OBJECT	The snowmelt had swollen all the lakes . The bad news swelled the rumors about layoffs . The pump quickly swelled the balloons to full size. My lymph nodes were swollen.
PASSIVE	
swell _____ <i>become filled [with an emotion]</i>	
with OBJECT	Ebenezer's heart swelled with the Christmas spirit . Tiny Tim swelled with gratitude . The cyclist was swelling with confidence after winning the Tour de France.

PRESENT

I swim we swim
 you swim you swim
 he/she/it swims they swim
 • *He swims three times a week.*

PAST

I swam we swam
 you swam you swam
 he/she/it swam they swam
 • *I swam competitively in college.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swum

PAST PERFECT ... had swum

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swimming we are swimming
 you are swimming you are swimming
 he/she/it is swimming they are swimming
 • *The kids are swimming in the pool.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swimming we were swimming
 you were swimming you were swimming
 he/she/it was swimming they were swimming
 • *My head was swimming from her perfume.*

FUTURE ... will swim

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swimming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swum

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was swum they were swum
 • *The English Channel was first swum in 1875.*

COMPLEMENTS

swim travel through water by moving one's arms and legs

Look at me! I'm swimming.
 Do you know how to swim?
 I could swim before I could ride a bicycle.

swim be dizzy

The cocktails make my head swim.
 After the accident, my head swam and my ears rang.
 They gave me so many different directions that my head was swimming.

swim _____ travel through water by moving one's arms and legs
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Let's swim **out to the reef**.
 The fish swam **into the net**.
 We had swum **clear across the lake**.
 The kids like to swim **under the dock**.

swim _____ cross by swimming
 OBJECT

Salmon can swim **most of the Columbia River**.
 A few people have swum **the Strait of Messina**.
 The kids are trying to swim **the length of the pool** under water.

swim _____ seem to be whirling
 ADVERB OF PLACE

After he drank the punch, the room swam **before his eyes**.

swim _____ be completely covered with [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]
 ADVERB OF PLACE

The lettuce was practically swimming **in salad dressing**.

PHRASAL VERBS

swim along/around/away/in/off/out/up/etc. swim in a specified direction

The kids were swimming around in the pond.
 After we fed the dolphins, they swam off.

EXPRESSIONS

sink or swim fail or succeed

Donna has a new job, and we are wondering if she will sink or swim.

swim against the current/tide act in a way opposite to others

I swam against the tide in high school—and often got punished for it.

PRESENT

I swing we swing
 you swing you swing
 he/she/it swings they swing
 • *Watch out—the door swings toward you.*

PAST

I swung we swung
 you swung you swung
 he/she/it swung they swung
 • *He swung his racket and missed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swung

PAST PERFECT ... had swung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swinging we are swinging
 you are swinging you are swinging
 he/she/it is swinging they are swinging
 • *You are swinging the bat too late.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swinging we were swinging
 you were swinging you were swinging
 he/she/it was swinging they were swinging
 • *The kids were swinging on vines.*

FUTURE ... will swing

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swung

PAST PASSIVE

I was swung we were swung
 you were swung you were swung
 he/she/it was swung they were swung
 • *The heavy beam was swung into place.*

COMPLEMENTS

swing *sway/rock back and forth*

The gate was swinging in the wind.
 The earthquake caused the chandeliers to swing.
 The dancers were swinging in time to the music.

swing *change suddenly*

The storm winds swung crazily from one direction to another.
 His moods were swinging more and more wildly.
 Opinion polls were swinging all over the map.

swing *strike at something in a sweeping motion*

The batter swings and misses.
 The tired boxers were swinging wildly.
 A good golfer swings with his hips, not just with his arms.

swing _____ *move ([something]) in a sweeping motion*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The cowboy swung **into the saddle**.
 The children swung **onto the wagon**.
 I swung **into the driver's seat**.

OBJECT

He swung **the bat** and drove the ball into left field.
 The player swung **a punch** when the referee wasn't looking.
 He swung **the golf club** and topped the ball.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I swung **my leg over the top rail** and jumped.
 Larry swung **his suitcase onto the bed**.
 She swung **her arm around my shoulder**.
 The kids swung **the rope over a limb**.

swing _____ *influence decisively*

OBJECT

The senator thought his ad could swing **the election**.
 We hoped to swing **enough undecided voters** to win.

PHRASAL VERBS

swing **around/down/in/off/out/etc.**
swing *in a specified direction*

The cowboy swung down from the saddle.
 The path swings off to the right at the top of the hill.

swing **SEP around/down/in/off/out/etc.**
swing *[something] in a specified direction*

The knight swung his sword around, and everyone stepped back.

swing **by/over** *visit briefly*

Susan will swing by if she has a chance.

swing **by/over** _____ *visit briefly*

I'll swing by Grandma's on the way to the store.

Can you swing over to the drugstore and buy some aspirin?

PRESENT

I take we take
 you take you take
 he/she/it takes they take
 • *He always takes the bus to work.*

PAST

I took we took
 you took you took
 he/she/it took they took
 • *Someone took the last cup of coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has taken

PAST PERFECT ... had taken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am taking we are taking
 you are taking you are taking
 he/she/it is taking they are taking
 • *He is taking a long time.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was taking we were taking
 you were taking you were taking
 he/she/it was taking they were taking
 • *We were taking the bus to New York.*

FUTURE

... will take

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be taking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have taken

PAST PASSIVE

I was taken we were taken
 you were taken you were taken
 he/she/it was taken they were taken
 • *All of the seats were already taken.*

COMPLEMENTS

take _____ grasp, take possession of

OBJECT

PASSIVE

He took **his daughter's hand**.

Our ID cards were taken by the police.

take _____ get, obtain

OBJECT

Frank took **a job at the radio station**.

Gerry took **a jar of olives** from the refrigerator.

take _____ carry, transport

OBJECT

You should always take **your passport** when you travel.

Take **an umbrella** in case it rains.

Can you take **the kids** with you?

I usually take **my lunch**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Would you take **these books to the library?**

Amos took **the package to the post office**.

This bus takes **riders to the stadium**.

take _____ bring, lead

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Bill is taking **Fran to the dance**.

This path takes **you to the top of Buttimer Hill**.

take _____ travel by [a vehicle, route]

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

We can take **the elevator or the stairs**—you choose.

My parents once took **the Queen Mary**.

Let's take **the scenic route**.

We took **Route 66 from Chicago to Los Angeles**.

The kids took **a shortcut through the woods**.

They took **the bus home**.

take _____ move to [a position]

OBJECT

Gentlemen, please take **your seats**.

The two teams are taking **the field**.

take _____ engage in [an activity]

OBJECT

Let's take **a 10-minute break**.

Thomas always takes **an afternoon nap**.

We took **a nice walk in the park**.

Bill took **a class in income tax preparation**.



take _____ eat, drink, swallow

OBJECT

take _____ capture, win

OBJECT

take _____ subscribe to, rent

OBJECT

take _____ steal

OBJECT

take _____ require, use up

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

take _____ endure, suffer

OBJECT

take _____ photograph

OBJECT

take _____ interpret

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I'll take **a black coffee and two donuts**, please.
I took **an aspirin** for my headache.

After a brief fight, the soldiers took **the fort**.
The Cardinals took **three out of four games** from the Mets.

They take **several newspapers and magazines**.
We took **an apartment in the city**.

Somebody took **my wallet**.
People often take **newspapers** without paying for them.

It took **a long time to repair the leak**.
It takes **\$50 to fill the truck with gas**.
They took **two days to drive to Dallas**.
It takes **a lot of courage to go skydiving**.

Football players take **a lot of physical punishment**.
I can't take **this heat and humidity**.

Uncle Cecil took **pictures** during the family reunion.

She took **my joke seriously**.

PHRASAL VERBS

take SEP **along/aside/away/down/in/out/up/etc.** bring/carry/lead/transport in a specified direction

take SEP **down** write down, record

take SEP **down** dismantle

take _____ **for** mistake for

take **in** _____ attend, visit

take SEP **in** give shelter to

take **off** leave, depart

take **off** become very active/successful

take SEP **off** remove [clothing, etc.]

take SEP **off** deduct

take SEP **on** hire

take SEP **on** undertake

take SEP **out** remove

take SEP **over**
begin managing

take **to** _____
become fond of

take **up** _____
fill, occupy

take SEP **up**
become interested in

Grandmother took us along to the store.
The elevator takes you down to the parking garage.

The officer took down his address and phone number.
Volunteers took the political signs down after the election.
Betty took me for my older brother.

We could eat at Lombardo's and take in a movie.
Today we'll take in the zoo and the art museum.

My husband takes in stray cats from the neighborhood.
Our plane will take off at 3:05 P.M.

Sales of used cars have taken off like a rocket.

The players took off their helmets.

The dealer took 50% off because the table was scratched.

My company took 30 new employees on in March.

Sorry, I just can't take on another project.

The surgeon took Dad's gallbladder out.

A recent college graduate took over the programming department.

Khalil has really taken to calligraphy.
Susan has taken to Leonard in a big way.

Your printing presses are taking up the whole basement!
Meetings took up the governor's entire afternoon.

Stephanie has taken up knitting.

PRESENT

I talk we talk
 you talk you talk
 he/she/it talks they talk
 • *He talks when he should be listening.*

PAST

I talked we talked
 you talked you talked
 he/she/it talked they talked
 • *They talked for the first time in years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has talked

PAST PERFECT ... had talked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am talking we are talking
 you are talking you are talking
 he/she/it is talking they are talking
 • *Can you turn the TV down? We're talking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was talking we were talking
 you were talking you were talking
 he/she/it was talking they were talking
 • *They were talking on the phone.*

FUTURE ... will talk

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be talking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have talked

PAST PASSIVE

I was talked we were talked
 you were talked you were talked
 he/she/it was talked they were talked
 • *The problem was talked over before the committee met.*

COMPLEMENTS

talk say words, speak

After his stroke, he couldn't talk.
 When do children first learn to talk?
 The ability to talk is uniquely human.

talk converse

We have to talk.
 My kids spend all their time talking on their cell phones.

talk gossip

The whole school was talking.
 Be careful, or you will have people talking.

talk reveal secret/confidential information

I don't believe he would ever talk.
 We can't afford to let him talk.

talk _____ use [a particular language] in speaking
 (in) OBJECT

The waiters are talking in **Italian**.
 They were talking **a language I did not know**.

talk _____ discuss
 OBJECT

Let's talk **business**.

talk _____ communicate the significance of [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]
 OBJECT

They were talking **big money**.
 He was talking **a major crisis** in the near future.
 I am talking **big losses** here.

talk _____ convince [to do / not to do]
 OBJECT + into PRESENT PARTICIPLE
 OBJECT + out of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The staff talked **Sam into running for Congress**.
 Dad talked **me out of enlisting in the Army**.

PHRASAL VERBS

talk [someone] down _____ convince
 [someone] to sell for [less money]

She talked the salesman down \$1,700.

talk SEP out/over/through discuss fully

The engineers talked the difficulties over.
 You need to talk this through with your teacher.

talk [someone] through _____ explain
 the steps of to [someone]

The receptionist talked me through the application form.

talk SEP up promote

She is talking up her plan to help families pay for college.

PRESENT

I teach we teach
 you teach you teach
 he/she/it teaches they teach

• *He teaches computer science.*

PAST

I taught we taught
 you taught you taught
 he/she/it taught they taught

• *I taught in Spain for a year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has taught

PAST PERFECT ... had taught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am teaching we are teaching
 you are teaching you are teaching
 he/she/it is teaching they are teaching

• *I am teaching Introduction to Physics again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was teaching we were teaching
 you were teaching you were teaching
 he/she/it was teaching they were teaching

• *They were teaching him to play baseball.*

FUTURE

... will teach

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be teaching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have taught

PAST PASSIVE

I was taught we were taught
 you were taught you were taught
 he/she/it was taught they were taught

• *English was taught beginning in the earliest grades.*

COMPLEMENTS

teach instruct professionally

I have been teaching for ten years.
 Her sister teaches at Osaka University.
 I would like to teach.

teach _____ provide training/instruction in [a skill, topic]

OBJECT

He teaches **martial arts**.
 I would like to teach **English**.
 Experience teaches **moderation in all things**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

She taught **them the names of the constellations**.
 He taught **first-year students world history**.
 I taught **myself the basics of geometry**.

TO PARAPHRASE

She taught **the names of the constellations to them**.
 He taught **world history to first-year students**.
 I taught **the basics of geometry to myself**.

teach _____ provide training/instruction to

OBJECT

Kathy teaches **seventh graders**.
 She only teaches **graduate students**.
 He teaches **management trainees**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I taught **the kids to drive**.
 The army taught **them to be disciplined**.

PASSIVE

(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE

We were taught **to think for ourselves**.
 Their religion teaches **how to act**.
 The class teaches **students how to write a resume**.
 The book taught **investors what to look for in a stock**.

teach _____ provide [a particular philosophy/knowledge] to

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

History teaches **that the pen is mightier than the sword**.
 My parents taught **us that hard work never hurt anyone**.
 The instructor taught **the class that a 60-40 mixture of stocks and bonds is best**.

EXPRESSIONS

teach _____ a lesson show [someone] the correct way to behave

His mother taught him a lesson on the value of money by making him work for his allowance.

PRESENT

I tear we tear
 you tear you tear
 he/she/it tears they tear

• *He tears stamps off envelopes.*

PAST

I tore we tore
 you tore you tore
 he/she/it tore they tore

• *The ligament tore with a “popping” sound.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has torn

PAST PERFECT ... had torn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am tearing we are tearing
 you are tearing you are tearing
 he/she/it is tearing they are tearing

• *Be careful—you’re tearing your shirt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was tearing we were tearing
 you were tearing you were tearing
 he/she/it was tearing they were tearing

• *The kids were tearing into the chocolate brownies.*

FUTURE ... will tear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be tearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have torn

PAST PASSIVE

I was torn we were torn
 you were torn you were torn
 he/she/it was torn they were torn

• *A huge hole was torn in the building by the explosion.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *care*, is presented here. The regular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *deer*, means “to cry.”

COMPLEMENTS

tear *rip, come apart*

Darn it! My new jeans are tearing.
 The canvas will tear if there is a high wind.

tear _____ *cause to rip / come apart*

OBJECT

I tore **the envelope** trying to open it.
 A big gust of wind tore **our only sail**.
 The documents had been torn in shipping.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *make/punch [a hole, opening] in*

OBJECT

The artillery fire tore **a huge gap** in our right flank.
 A hole was torn in his shield by a spear.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *move with force/speed*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids tore **out of the room**.
 The horses tore **around the last curve**.

tear _____ *damage [a muscle, ligament] by overstretching*

OBJECT

Dirk tore **his rotator cuff** playing tennis.
 Soccer players often tear **muscles in their knees**.
 His shoulder was torn lifting weights.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *damage greatly [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]*

OBJECT

The country was torn by war and famine.

PHRASAL VERBS

tear around/away/down/off/out/etc.
move with force/speed in a specified direction

The limousine tore away from the curb.
 The neighbor’s dog always tears out after moving cars.

tear SEP **apart/away/down/off/out/up/**
etc. pull in a specified direction

Tear the coupons apart and organize them.
 Carpenters tore up the old carpet.

tear into _____ *begin to do/eat/etc. forcefully*

Jackie is tearing into remodeling the kitchen.
 The girls really tore into the peanut butter.

tear into _____ *scold severely*

The boss tore into an employee who was late.

tear SEP **up** *reject*

The manager tore up the singer’s contract and offered her 10 times the money.

PRESENT

I tell we tell
 you tell you tell
 he/she/it tells they tell

• *He tells people what they want to hear.*

PAST

I told we told
 you told you told
 he/she/it told they told

• *I told the truth.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has told

PAST PERFECT ... had told

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am telling we are telling
 you are telling you are telling
 he/she/it is telling they are telling

• *I'm telling the whole world that I love you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was telling we were telling
 you were telling you were telling
 he/she/it was telling they were telling

• *We were just telling them what happened.*

FUTURE ... will tell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be telling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have told

PAST PASSIVE

I was told we were told
 you were told you were told
 he/she/it was told they were told

• *The children were told that they could stay up late.*

COMPLEMENTS

tell reveal secret/confidential information

Please don't tell.

I will never tell.

tell have a definite effect

The long hours are beginning to tell.

The constant battering by the artillery was starting to tell.

tell know the outcome/result [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES]

Who can tell?

I certainly can't tell.

tell _____ put into words, express

OBJECT

I told **the truth**, but he was telling a **flat-out lie**.

He told **a story about growing up in Greece**.

I told **the kids a ghost story**.

Who wants to tell **them the bad news**?

I told **a ghost story to the kids**.

Who wants to tell **the bad news to them**?

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

tell _____ inform

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

We need to tell **them that the trip has been canceled**.

I told **everyone that we were engaged**.

The press had been told **that the senator was ill**.

The consultant told **us what we should do**.

I told **them how much it would cost**.

The taxi driver told **us where to go**.

The staff was told **what to expect**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

tell _____ order, command

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I told **her to return the book as soon as she could**.

They had been told **to stay inside during the storm**.

PASSIVE

tell _____ recognize, determine with certainty [USUALLY WITH can OR could]

THAT-CLAUSE

I couldn't tell **that anything had happened**.

Can you tell **that we remodeled the kitchen**?

Can you tell **who it is**?

I can't tell **what went wrong**.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

tell SEP off scold, criticize

She told my brother off for not keeping his room clean.

PRESENT

I tend	we tend
you tend	you tend
he/she/it tends	they tend

• *John tends to worry about everything.*

PAST

I tended	we tended
you tended	you tended
he/she/it tended	they tended

• *He tended to get jumpy if he ate chocolate.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has tended

PAST PERFECT ... had tended

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am tending	we are tending
you are tending	you are tending
he/she/it is tending	they are tending

• *We are tending to eat out less often.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was tending	we were tending
you were tending	you were tending
he/she/it was tending	they were tending

• *They were tending west along the river.*

FUTURE ... will tend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be tending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have tended

PAST PASSIVE

Tend is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

tend _____ *be likely*

INFINITIVE

We all tend **to favor our dominant hand**.

He tends **to get rattled** when he has to speak in public.

That jacket always tends **to ride up in back**.

I tend **to get a headache** if I work at the computer too long.

Most right-handed golfers tend **to pull the ball to the right**.

We tend not **to trust politicians**.

tend _____ *go/move in a certain way*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The river tends **southward** as it crosses the plain.

Richard tends **toward an urban lifestyle**.

Valerie's taste tends **toward avant-garde**.

PRESENT

I test we test
 you test you test
 he/she/it tests they test

• *The school tests every incoming student.*

PAST

I tested we tested
 you tested you tested
 he/she/it tested they tested

• *I tested the antenna's reception.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has tested

PAST PERFECT ... had tested

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am testing we are testing
 you are testing you are testing
 he/she/it is testing they are testing

• *We are testing the latest software.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was testing we were testing
 you were testing you were testing
 he/she/it was testing they were testing

• *The vet was testing the cattle for mad cow disease.*

FUTURE ... will test

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be testing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have tested

PAST PASSIVE

I was tested we were tested
 you were tested you were tested
 he/she/it was tested they were tested

• *My patience was severely tested by his rambling phone calls.*

COMPLEMENTS

test administer examinations

I will be testing all afternoon.
 How often do we need to test?

test _____ check the quality/suitability/performance/condition of

OBJECT

They tested **the paint** for traces of lead.
 You should always test **the temperature of the water in the kids' bath.**
 The state tests **each fourth, eighth, and twelfth grader.**
 The doctor tested **my reflexes.**
 I tested **the brakes** before we started down the mountain.
 We tested **all drug addicts** for HIV infection.
 Every qualifying runner will be tested for drugs.

PASSIVE

test _____ put under extreme stress

OBJECT

Carol would test **the patience of a saint.**
 Such behavior would test **any marriage.**
 The series of defeats severely tested **the army's resolve.**
 Even his good nature was tested by their rudeness.

PASSIVE

EXPRESSIONS

test the water(s) determine the level of support/approval for a new product/plan/proposal

We were testing the water with an online version of the dictionary.
 Senator Blather is testing the waters for a possible presidential bid.

PRESENT

I thank we thank
 you thank you thank
 he/she/it thanks they thank
 • *The senator always thanks the voters.*

PAST

I thanked we thanked
 you thanked you thanked
 he/she/it thanked they thanked
 • *I thanked them again for helping us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thanked

PAST PERFECT ... had thanked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thanking we are thanking
 you are thanking you are thanking
 he/she/it is thanking they are thanking
 • *They are thanking all the volunteers.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thanking we were thanking
 you were thanking you were thanking
 he/she/it was thanking they were thanking
 • *We were thanking the sponsors.*

FUTURE ... will thank

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be thanking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thanked

PAST PASSIVE

I was thanked we were thanked
 you were thanked you were thanked
 he/she/it was thanked they were thanked
 • *We were thanked for the flowers we sent.*

COMPLEMENTS

thank _____ express gratitude to

OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)

PASSIVE

OBJECT (+ for PRESENT PARTICIPLE)

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

thank _____ blame [USED IRONICALLY]

OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)

Please thank **them** on behalf of all of us.

I would like to thank **you for all your help.**

We thanked **our friends for all their work.**

Whom should we thank **for the lovely gift?**

I have **my teachers** to thank **for my success.**

Our hosts must be properly thanked.

The president thanked **us for volunteering our time.**

The group will be thanked **for donating time and money to the project.**

I would like to thank **whoever arranged the meeting.**

They thanked **whoever could take a minute to talk to them.**

We will thank **whomever you got to help my parents.**

Look at this mess! I guess I can thank **you**, kids.

We have **Greg** to thank **for the mix-up.**

You can thank **my parents for choosing a Bambi party theme.**

EXPRESSIONS

thank [one's] lucky stars be grateful
 for one's luck

Gretchen should thank her lucky stars.

thank God/goodness/heaven(s)
 I/we are grateful

Thank goodness I had an extra computer battery.

Thank heavens that winter is over.

PRESENT

I think we think
 you think you think
 he/she/it thinks they think

• *He thinks that the movie begins at 7:45.*

PAST

I thought we thought
 you thought you thought
 he/she/it thought they thought

• *I thought long and hard about it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thought

PAST PERFECT ... had thought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thinking we are thinking
 you are thinking you are thinking
 he/she/it is thinking they are thinking

• *Don't rush me—I'm thinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thinking we were thinking
 you were thinking you were thinking
 he/she/it was thinking they were thinking

• *They were thinking that the worst had happened.*

FUTURE ... will think

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be thinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thought

PAST PASSIVE

I was thought we were thought
 you were thought you were thought
 he/she/it was thought they were thought

• *The accident was thought to have been caused by pilot error.*

COMPLEMENTS

think use one's mind, reason

Think twice before you do anything.

"I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES]

think _____ believe, expect

THAT-CLAUSE

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy.**

Do they think **that the flight will leave on time?**

think _____ consider, judge

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The reviewer thought **the book (to be) a bit of a dud.**

The public thought **Clark (to be) a dashing hero.**

At first, Truman was thought **(to be) a failed president.**

PASSIVE

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Everyone thought **Thomas (to be) promising.**

They thought **the idea (to be) ready to present to the board.**

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The car was thought **(to be) quite overpriced.**

I thought **him to have more sense than that.**

PASSIVE

think _____ remember [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES, OFTEN WITH CAN OR COULD]

of OBJECT

I can't think **of the girl's name.**

INFINITIVE

Did you think **to lock the back door?**

WH-CLAUSE

Who thought **to bring some insect repellent?**

We couldn't think **what his name was.**

WH-INFINITIVE

I couldn't think **where we were supposed to meet the group.**

I couldn't think **what to say.**

Aunt Polly couldn't think **where to turn next.**

think _____ contemplate, consider

of/about OBJECT

The board was thinking **of Rex for secretary.**

She thinks **about him** all the time.

of/about PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Anne was thinking **of asking Wentworth to the concert.**

We were thinking **about ordering Chinese for dinner.**

PHRASAL VERBS

think SEP over consider carefully

I need to think your proposal over before making a decision.

think SEP up invent, plan

We thought up a better way to manage inventory.

They thought up a clever way to trick Bartholomew and Jacob.

PRESENT

I threaten	we threaten
you threaten	you threaten
he/she/it threatens	they threaten

• *He threatens to quit about once a week.*

PAST

I threatened	we threatened
you threatened	you threatened
he/she/it threatened	they threatened

• *He threatened us with extra homework.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has threatened

PAST PERFECT ... had threatened

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am threatening	we are threatening
you are threatening	you are threatening
he/she/it is threatening	they are threatening

• *The union is threatening to strike.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was threatening	we were threatening
you were threatening	you were threatening
he/she/it was threatening	they were threatening

• *He was threatening a lawsuit.*

FUTURE

... will threaten

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be threatening

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have threatened

PAST PASSIVE

I was threatened	we were threatened
you were threatened	you were threatened
he/she/it was threatened	they were threatened

• *Our plans were threatened by the economic downturn.*

COMPLEMENTS

threaten _____ state one's intention to harm/punish / perform a harmful/punitive act

OBJECT

The gang threatened **the shop owners**.

PASSIVE

The pirates were threatening **the shippers**.

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The students were threatened by the vice principal.

The police threatened **that they would use tear gas**.

The sergeant threatened **the recruits that they would do guard duty**.

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The treasurer threatened **the company that he would not approve the loan**.

OBJECT + with PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The sergeant threatened **the recruits with guard duty**.

INFINITIVE

The principal threatened **the students with suspension**.

We threatened **the kids with unplugging the TV**.

The outraged patient threatened **to sue the hospital**.

I threatened **to take my business elsewhere**.

The renters threatened **to stop paying the landlord** unless the leaks were repaired.

threaten _____ endanger

OBJECT

The weather was threatening **our plans for a picnic**.

The broken finger threatened **his career as a pianist**.

PASSIVE

The recession threatened **the entire economy**.

His health had been threatened by years of smoking.

threaten _____ seem likely [to cause harm]

INFINITIVE

The virus threatened **to spread to other villages**.

The storm threatened **to cut off the only road across the mountains**.

The freeze threatened **to ruin the peach crop**.

throw _____ put suddenly [in a place, condition]

OBJECT + into OBJECT

The sheriff threw **the suspects into jail**.
His remarks threw **the audience into hysteria**.

PHRASAL VERBS

throw SEP **around/aside/back/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** toss/hurl in a specified direction

throw SEP **around** spend [money] freely

throw SEP **away** discard, get rid of

throw SEP **in** interject

throw SEP **in** add as an extra

throw SEP **off** mislead, fool

throw SEP **on** put on in haste

throw SEP **out** discard, get rid of

throw SEP **out** expel

throw SEP **out** reject

throw SEP **out** offer

throw SEP **together** put together in haste

throw up vomit

throw SEP **up** build quickly

The players were throwing a Frisbee around.

Would you throw the ball back?

He threw his head back and laughed.

He threw his book bag down.

He throws money around like it grows on trees.

Don't throw the lamp away; I'm going to fix it.

Jan threw in the idea of working at a soup kitchen.

They will throw in a medium pizza for free.

His foreign accent threw the police off.

I'll throw on a jacket and be ready to go.

We won't throw the plastic out; we'll recycle it instead.

The teacher threw him out for using profanity.

The judge will throw the convict's testimony out.

Dave is always throwing out suggestions.

We can throw together some pasta for supper.

Our engineering department can throw a scale model together in a week.

He threw up on the way home from the ballpark.

A developer threw up a flimsy apartment building on the corner.

EXPRESSIONS

throw _____ a curve surprise [someone]

throw a fit/tantrum display anger

throw [a lot of / some] light on _____ clarify, give details about

throw cold water on _____ discourage

throw _____ for a loop shock/confuse [someone]

throw good money after bad waste even more money on something

throw in the sponge/towel quit, give up

throw [one's] hands up quit in despair

throw [one's] weight around use one's power excessively

throw [oneself] into _____ involve oneself in [something] eagerly

throw the book at _____ charge [someone] with as many crimes as possible

The company threw us a curve

by switching medical insurance plans.

Johnny throws a fit when I ask him to wash his hands.

Scientists threw some light on the human genome.

The committee threw cold water on our ideas for reducing waste.

The program glitch threw the programmers for a loop.

Frank threw good money after bad by buying 100 more shares of the worthless stock.

The firm is throwing in the towel after losing its three biggest customers.

After losing eight straight Solitaire games, Dad threw his hands up and decided to read the newspaper.

Mid-level managers love to throw their weight around when the boss is gone.

Paul threw himself into basketweaving.

The district attorney threw the book at the alleged child molester.

PRESENT

I throw we throw
 you throw you throw
 he/she/it throws they throw
 • *He throws great parties.*

PAST

I threw we threw
 you threw you threw
 he/she/it threw they threw
 • *I threw another log on the fire.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thrown

PAST PERFECT ... had thrown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am throwing we are throwing
 you are throwing you are throwing
 he/she/it is throwing they are throwing
 • *I am throwing an informal reception for them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was throwing we were throwing
 you were throwing you were throwing
 he/she/it was throwing they were throwing
 • *He was throwing rocks into the pond.*

FUTURE

... will throw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be throwing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have thrown

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrown we were thrown
 you were thrown you were thrown
 he/she/it was thrown they were thrown
 • *A rope was thrown to the people in the canoe.*

COMPLEMENTS

throw toss/hurl a projectile

He doesn't throw with much force.
 I couldn't throw because I had injured my shoulder.
 If you want to play baseball, you have to learn how to throw.

throw _____ toss, hurl

OBJECT

Kids love to throw **rocks**.
 The mob started throwing **bricks**.
 The pitcher could throw **the ball** sidearm.
 My sister threw **her coat on the sofa**.
 Josh threw **the report on my desk**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

throw _____ propel suddenly and forcefully

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The explosion threw **me to the ground**.
 Someone threw **a chair against the wall**.
 The cook threw **the pizza dough high into the air**.
 The driver was thrown **into the ditch**.

PASSIVE

throw _____ direct, cast

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The actor threw **a dirty look at the people talking in the front row**.
 The lantern threw **light around the barn**.
 All of our resources were thrown **into the project**.

PASSIVE

throw _____ toss, give

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

He threw **the dog a bone**.
 Throw **me that notebook**, will you?
 He threw **a bone to the dog**.
 Throw **that notebook to me**, will you?

to PARAPHRASE

throw _____ host [an event]

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The church threw **a potluck dinner**.
 We threw **my sister an engagement party**.
 They are going to throw **us a going-away party**.
 We threw **an engagement party for my sister**.
 They are going to throw **a going-away party for us**.

for PARAPHRASE



PRESENT

I thrust we thrust
 you thrust you thrust
 he/she/it thrusts they thrust

• *He thrusts the note in his pocket and sighs.*

PAST

I thrust we thrust
 you thrust you thrust
 he/she/it thrust they thrust

• *I thrust through the crowd frantically.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thrust

PAST PERFECT ... had thrust

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrust we were thrust
 you were thrust you were thrust
 he/she/it was thrust they were thrust

• *A gun was thrust into my hand.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thrusting we are thrusting
 you are thrusting you are thrusting
 he/she/it is thrusting they are thrusting

• *Someone is always thrusting a petition at you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thrusting we were thrusting
 you were thrusting you were thrusting
 he/she/it was thrusting they were thrusting

• *A rodent was thrusting through the undergrowth.*

FUTURE ... will thrust

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be thrusting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thrust

COMPLEMENTS

thrust _____ *push forward suddenly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

thrust _____ *move forward forcefully*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

thrust _____ *jut, extend out*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The soldier thrust **a sword** *through his shield*.
 Batman thrust **his elbow** *into the villain's stomach*.
 The host thrust **the children** *into the limelight*.
 My head was thrust *into a barrel of water*.
 Fame had been thrust **on her** at an early age.

A tugboat was thrusting **through the waves**.
 Her scream thrust **through the still night air**.

A long wharf thrust **into the river**.
 A diving board thrust **over the water**.

PHRASAL VERBS

thrust back/down/in/out/up/etc.
move forcefully in a specified direction

thrust **SEP** *aside/away/back/down/in/out/up/etc.*
push suddenly in a specified direction

The boy's tongue thrust out as he sighted down the barrel.
 Daffodils were thrusting up on the first warm day of spring.
 The police thrust the protesters aside.
 He opened his briefcase and thrust the report in.

PRESENT

I tie we tie
 you tie you tie
 he/she/it ties they tie
 • *A hospital gown ties in the back.*

PAST

I tied we tied
 you tied you tied
 he/she/it tied they tied
 • *I tied my shoelaces before going out.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has tied

PAST PERFECT ... had tied

PAST PASSIVE

I was tied we were tied
 you were tied you were tied
 he/she/it was tied they were tied
 • *The deaths were tied to a faulty space heater.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am tying we are tying
 you are tying you are tying
 he/she/it is tying they are tying
 • *We are tying bows for the Christmas tree.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was tying we were tying
 you were tying you were tying
 he/she/it was tying they were tying
 • *They were tying the load so it wouldn't move.*

FUTURE ... will tie

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be tying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have tied

COMPLEMENTS

tie *be fastened by string/cord/rope/etc.*

The apron ties in front.
 These shoes don't tie; they fasten with Velcro.

tie *have the same score/rank*

At this point, the best we could do is tie.
 We want to win, not just tie.
 Mary Kay tied with Jill for first place.
 Mary Kay and Jill tied for first place.

tie _____ *fasten/bind/fix with string/cord/rope/etc.*

OBJECT

Grayson just learned to tie **his own shoes**.
 Can you help me tie **this package**?

PASSIVE

The old box was tied with heavy twine.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

They tied **his hands behind him**.

PASSIVE

We tied **the dresser on the back of the truck**.

tie _____ *form [into a knot/bow]*

OBJECT

The kids tied **the wagon to the bicycle**.

The volleyball net was tied **between two trees**.

He tied **a perfect square knot**.

The kids were tying **ribbons**.

Can you tie **a bowtie**?

tie _____ *connect, relate*

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

Experts tie **many cancer deaths to secondhand smoke**.

PASSIVE

All currencies are tied **to the U.S. dollar**.

Our economic future is tied **to the global market**.

PHRASAL VERBS

tie SEP *down/in/off/together/up/etc. fasten/bind/fix in a specified position*

The campers tied the tent down.
 The robbers tied up all of the hostages.

tie SEP *down/up limit the freedom of, cause to be busy, block*

The new puppy tied them down on weekends.
 I am tied down all day tomorrow.
 Meetings will tie me up all morning.
 The boss will be tied up until 4 P.M.
 We were tied up in rush-hour traffic.

tie in (with _____) *be related/connected (to [something])*

Your story ties in with what the police already know.

PRESENT

I touch we touch
 you touch you touch
 he/she/it touches they touch

• *This problem touches everyone.*

PAST

I touched we touched
 you touched you touched
 he/she/it touched they touched

• *He touched a button and the door closed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has touched

PAST PERFECT ... had touched

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am touching we are touching
 you are touching you are touching
 he/she/it is touching they are touching

• *The tree branches are touching the roof.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was touching we were touching
 you were touching you were touching
 he/she/it was touching they were touching

• *The hem of her skirt was touching the ground.*

FUTURE ... will touch

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be touching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have touched

PAST PASSIVE

I was touched we were touched
 you were touched you were touched
 he/she/it was touched they were touched

• *Everyone was touched by her performance.*

COMPLEMENTS

touch *come into contact*

The two boats touched with a bump.
 The wires must have touched, causing a short circuit.
 Their hands touched briefly.

touch _____ *place one's hand / body part on*

OBJECT

He touched **Jerry's shoulder** and whispered something in his ear.
 He was so tall he could reach up and touch **the ceiling**.
 Don't touch **the wet paint on the cabinet**.
 My knees were touching **the back of the seat in front of me**.

touch _____ *consume, handle, disturb* [OFTEN NEGATIVE]

OBJECT

I haven't touched **a drink** in years.
 You have hardly touched **your dinner**.
 She told her little sister not to touch **her stuff**.
 No contractor would touch **that job**.
 We haven't touched **a penny of our retirement fund**.
 Don't touch **a single paper on my desk**.
 Gang members can't be touched by the police.

touch _____ *make physical contact with* [OF INANIMATE OBJECTS]

OBJECT

A downed electrical wire touched **the automobile** and sparked.
 Don't let the flag touch **the ground**.

touch _____ *affect*

OBJECT

His music really touches **me**.
 The recession has touched **every business in the county**.
 They were touched by his loyalty.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

touch down *land* [OF A PLANE]

Our flight will touch down in
 Cincinnati at 8:05 P.M.

touch off _____ *cause, ignite*

Bad banking practices touched off a financial crisis.
 A spark from an electric motor touched off the explosion.

touch SEP up *improve the appearance of*

We need to touch up the paint on this table.

touch (up)on _____ *mention briefly*

The speaker barely touched on the need for stricter regulations.

PRESENT

I train we train
 you train you train
 he/she/it trains they train
 • *He trains at least three times a week.*

PAST

I trained we trained
 you trained you trained
 he/she/it trained they trained
 • *Ralph trained his staff really well.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has trained

PAST PERFECT ... had trained

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am training we are training
 you are training you are training
 he/she/it is training they are training
 • *I am training to run my first marathon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was training we were training
 you were training you were training
 he/she/it was training they were training
 • *We were training in the old gym.*

FUTURE

... will train

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be training

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have trained

PAST PASSIVE

I was trained we were trained
 you were trained you were trained
 he/she/it was trained they were trained
 • *The dogs were trained to assist handicapped people.*

COMPLEMENTS

train *prepare for a profession/job*

My doctor trained at Johns Hopkins School of Medicine.
 The football players train all summer.
 Even superior athletes must train.
 If you want to get better, you have to train harder.

train _____ *teach, coach*

OBJECT

I train **dogs**.
 The camp trains **track and field athletes**.
 The school specializes in training **young singers**.
 Her tutor trained **her in the art of public speaking**.
 I trained **my dad on the computer**.

OBJECT + *in/on* OBJECT

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The circus trains **animals to do tricks**.
 The class will train **dogs to obey a set of commands**.

PASSIVE

When Amber was a puppy, she was trained **to stay off the street**.

OBJECT + *WH*-INFINITIVE

I trained **my children where to go to get help if they needed it**.
 The Coast Guard trains **people how to use their boats safely**.

PASSIVE

The dogs were never trained **how to search for drugs**.

train _____ *rear, develop the character of*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We trained **our daughters to be nice**.
 The school trains **its students to respect authority**.

EXPRESSIONS

train [one's] sights on _____ *focus on*

The candidate trained his sights on his opponent.
 Blanche trained her sights on getting a college scholarship.

PRESENT

I travel we travel
 you travel you travel
 he/she/it travels they travel
 • *Anne travels a lot in her current job.*

PAST

I traveled we traveled
 you traveled you traveled
 he/she/it traveled they traveled
 • *We traveled to Cambodia and Vietnam.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has traveled

PAST PERFECT ... had traveled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am traveling we are traveling
 you are traveling you are traveling
 he/she/it is traveling they are traveling
 • *I am traveling all week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was traveling we were traveling
 you were traveling you were traveling
 he/she/it was traveling they were traveling
 • *They were traveling when they got the news.*

FUTURE ... will travel

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be traveling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have traveled

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was traveled they were traveled
 • *The old road was traveled by a lot of people.*

COMPLEMENTS

travel *make a trip/journey*

When we retire, we want to travel.
 They travel every chance they get.

travel _____ *make a trip/journey*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
 (+ ADVERB OF TIME)

The boat travels **from Athens to Genoa**.
 The convoy traveled **from Washington to San Francisco**.
 We plan to travel **to Southeast Asia this winter**.
 They will travel **home after Christmas**.
 My boss always travels **first-class**.
 Vivian has learned to travel **like a pro**.

ADVERB OF MANNER

travel _____ *make a trip/journey in/on/through*

OBJECT

We always travel **the back roads**, if we have a choice.
 My parents have traveled **the length of the Amalfi Coast**.
 The Australian outback is rarely traveled by tourists.

PASSIVE

travel _____ *move through time/space*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

ADVERB OF MANNER

The pain traveled **across his chest and down his left arm**.
 Light waves travel **faster than sound waves**.

travel _____ *be transported*

ADVERB OF MANNER

Many local wines travel **poorly**.
 The coal is traveling **by barge** on the Mississippi River.

travel _____ *spread, be passed*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The news of General Lee's surrender traveled **slowly**.
 Rumors travel **at lightning speed**.

PHRASAL VERBS

travel *along/around/down/over/*
up/etc. travel in a specified direction

We traveled around in search of
 historic sites.
 The tour group traveled down to Lisbon.

PRESENT

I treat we treat
 you treat you treat
 he/she/it treats they treat
 • *He treats his employees very well.*

PAST

I treated we treated
 you treated you treated
 he/she/it treated they treated
 • *I treated my sore finger as best I could.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has treated

PAST PERFECT ... had treated

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am treating we are treating
 you are treating you are treating
 he/she/it is treating they are treating
 • *I am treating everyone to an ice cream cone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was treating we were treating
 you were treating you were treating
 he/she/it was treating they were treating
 • *The medical staff was treating a gunshot wound.*

FUTURE ... will treat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be treating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have treated

PAST PASSIVE

I was treated we were treated
 you were treated you were treated
 he/she/it was treated they were treated
 • *The most seriously injured patients were treated first.*

COMPLEMENTS

treat *pay for someone's food/entertainment*

Put your money away! I'm treating.
 He never treats, even when it's his turn.
 Grandparents love to treat.

treat _____ *pay for / provide [the food/entertainment] of, reward*

OBJECT

He treated **the whole office**.
 The coach treated **the team** after every game.
 Children with birthdays were always treated by their classmates.
 My best friend treated **me to some sushi**.
 Can I treat **you to lunch**?
 The teacher treated **us to chocolate chip cookies**.
 Jane treated **herself to a day at the spa**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + to OBJECT

treat _____ *act toward, deal with*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

The children treated **their pets gently**.
 Most cultures treat **visitors with great respect**.
 The staff treated **the information very seriously**.
 The civilians were treated **quite roughly** by the soldiers.

PASSIVE

treat _____ *try to cure/heal*

OBJECT

By law, emergency rooms must treat **all persons requiring care**.
 A nurse treated **my burned hand**.
 Unusual skin rashes should be treated by a dermatologist.

PASSIVE

treat _____ *discuss in writing*

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF MANNER)

Her book treats **the period from August to October 1914**.
 His book treats **the issue of global warming with seriousness and urgency**.
 Health care reform was treated **very superficially** in that article.

PASSIVE

treat _____ *add a cleaning/preserving substance to*

OBJECT (+ with OBJECT)

Dave treats **his deck** every other year.
 We treat **the deck** every spring **with a waterproof sealant**.
 Treat **the ketchup stain with warm soapy water**.
 The swimming pool water is treated **with chlorine**.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I trust we trust
 you trust you trust
 he/she/it trusts they trust
 • *John trusts people more than he should.*

PAST

I trusted we trusted
 you trusted you trusted
 he/she/it trusted they trusted
 • *Everyone trusted Bernard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has trusted

PAST PERFECT ... had trusted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am trusting we are trusting
 you are trusting you are trusting
 he/she/it is trusting they are trusting
 • *I am trusting you to do a good job.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was trusting we were trusting
 you were trusting you were trusting
 he/she/it was trusting they were trusting
 • *At the time, no one was trusting anybody else.*

FUTURE ... will trust

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be trusting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have trusted

PAST PASSIVE

I was trusted we were trusted
 you were trusted you were trusted
 he/she/it was trusted they were trusted
 • *Successful Civil War generals were trusted by their soldiers.*

COMPLEMENTS

trust believe in someone's/something's
 truth/reliability/ability

Trust, but verify. [RUSSIAN PROVERB]
 Dishonest people take advantage of the human tendency
 to trust.
 Abused children have to learn to trust again.

trust _____ believe in the truth/reliability/ability of

OBJECT

We all trusted **their assessment of the project's risk**.
 Children inherently trust **their parents**.

PASSIVE

Gold is trusted when paper currencies fail.

in OBJECT

The general is trusting **in his infantry**.

WH-CLAUSE

Vineyard owners were trusting **in the weather**.

Trust **what you see with your own eyes**, not **what you hear**.
 You can't always trust **what brokers tell you**.
 You can trust **whomever they recommend**.

trust _____ depend/rely on

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We trust **you to deliver the message**.

You can always trust **people to act in their own self-interest**.

PASSIVE

Can you be trusted **to babysit your little brother this afternoon?**

trust _____ hope, expect [AS A POLITE FORM OF IMPLIED QUESTION, USUALLY WITH RISING INTONATION]

THAT-CLAUSE

I trust **that you had pleasant trip**.

We trust **that everything will turn out all right**.

I trust **that the children are well**.

I trust **that your parents and all your sisters are well**.

trust _____ put in the care of, allow to use

OBJECT + with OBJECT

She trusted **the hotel manager with her jewelry**.

I don't trust **Grandpa with the car** anymore.

PRESENT

I try we try
 you try you try
 he/she/it tries they try
 • *He always tries to do his best.*

PAST

I tried we tried
 you tried you tried
 he/she/it tried they tried
 • *I tried to call them earlier.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has tried

PAST PERFECT ... had tried

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am trying we are trying
 you are trying you are trying
 he/she/it is trying they are trying
 • *I'm trying to finish the report.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was trying we were trying
 you were trying you were trying
 he/she/it was trying they were trying
 • *We were trying to exchange our tickets.*

FUTURE ... will try

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be trying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have tried

PAST PASSIVE

I was tried we were tried
 you were tried you were tried
 he/she/it was tried they were tried
 • *The Dover case was tried in U.S. District Court.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: When the verb *try* is used in the past tense in the sense “attempt,” it implies that the attempt did not succeed.

try attempt / make an effort to do something

He tried really hard.
 “If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again. Then quit.”
 [COMEDIAN W.C. FIELDS]

try _____ attempt, make an effort
 INFINITIVE

I tried **to call you last night**.
 We will try **to see them** when we are in Los Angeles.
 He tried **to talk them out of it**.
 I tried **calling you last night**.
 We will have to try **borrowing the keys from the janitor**.
 They tried **fixing the porch light**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

try _____ attempt to use, test
 OBJECT

I tried **his number**, but no one answered.
 We tried **the engine** again, and this time it worked.
 Try **the door** to see if it’s unlocked.
 You should try **the white wine**. You’ll like it.
 Everything we could think of had already been tried.

PASSIVE

try _____ conduct [a trial]
 OBJECT

Justice Brown tried **the case**.
 The Illinois Appellate Court tried **the appeal**.
 The case was tried by a three-person judicial panel.

PASSIVE

try _____ put on trial
 OBJECT

The court first tried **Mr. Coleman** in 2005.
 The suspect was tried and convicted.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

try SEP **on** put on [clothing] to see how it looks and fits

Hilary tried on seven pairs of shoes before she found a pair she liked.
 Try this dress on; the color will look good on you.

try out for _____ compete for a position/role

Elizabeth tried out for the marching band.
 Elton tried out for the role of Macbeth.

turn _____ *change in condition/color/form*

OBJECT + into OBJECT

PASSIVE

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

When will they turn **the book into a movie**?

The genie turned **Cotton into a monkey**.

Cinderella's coach was turned **into a pumpkin** at midnight.

Eventually, of course, his luck turned **bad**.

The milk turned **sour** when the refrigeration failed.

Charles turned **pale** and swallowed hard.

Oak leaves turn **yellow and orange** in the fall.

PHRASAL VERBS

turn aside/around/away/back/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc.

turn in a specified direction

turn SEP aside/around/away/back/down/out/up/etc.

turn [someone/something] in a specified direction

turn against _____ *defy, stop supporting*

turn [someone] against _____ *cause [someone] to defy / stop supporting*

turn SEP down *decrease the quantity/volume of*

turn SEP down *reject*

turn in *go to bed [INFORMAL]*

turn SEP in *submit, hand over*

turn SEP off *shut/switch off*

turn SEP off *make [someone] bored/annoyed [INFORMAL]*

turn on _____ *attack*

turn SEP on *switch on*

turn SEP on *make [someone] happy/excited [INFORMAL]*

turn out *develop, transpire, end*

turn out (for _____) *attend ([an event])*

turn SEP out *switch off*

turn SEP out *produce*

turn SEP over *hand over*

turn to _____ *begin work on*

turn to _____ *ask for help*

turn up *arrive*

turn up *appear, be found*

turn SEP up *increase the quantity/volume of*

turn SEP up *discover*

We should turn around now because

it is getting dark.

Everyone turned away when my brother entered the room.

She turned the card over so she could write on the back.

Security guards turned the protesters away.

The secretary turned the box over.

The politician turned against the voters who elected him.

The 1939 Stalin-Hitler pact turned him against totalitarianism of any kind.

You should turn the heat down when you're not at home.

Will someone turn the radio down? I'm on the phone.

We turned down Jack's offer to drive.

Every publisher turned his manuscript down—except one!

I think I'll turn in early tonight.

Turn in your homework at the beginning of class.

The sink is full; turn off the water.

Turn the lights off when you leave.

Her constant criticism really turns us off.

The lion turned on the zoo handler.

Turn the heat on; it's cold in here.

Reggae music really turns me on.

"How did your weekend turn out?" "It turned out fine."

She turned out to be his long-lost sister.

More than four hundred people turned out for Randy Pausch's last lecture.

Turn out the lights; the party's over.

The school turns out very talented musicians.

The factory will turn out 1,000 wind turbines a month.

The guard told us to turn over our wallets and belts.

The staff turned to organizing the packages for delivery.

The flood victims turned to the government for shelter.

Aunt Edith finally turned up at suppertime.

Did your other sock ever turn up?

You could turn the heat up if you're cold.

Would you please turn up the music?

The reporter turned up evidence of fraud.

PRESENT

I turn we turn
 you turn you turn
 he/she/it turns they turn
 • *The road turns south at the river.*

PAST

I turned we turned
 you turned you turned
 he/she/it turned they turned
 • *He turned pale when he heard the results.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has turned

PAST PERFECT ... had turned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am turning we are turning
 you are turning you are turning
 he/she/it is turning they are turning
 • *We are turning here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was turning we were turning
 you were turning you were turning
 he/she/it was turning they were turning
 • *The leaves were just turning when we were there.*

FUTURE ... will turn

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be turning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have turned

PAST PASSIVE

I was turned we were turned
 you were turned you were turned
 he/she/it was turned they were turned
 • *The boat was turned south into the bay.*

COMPLEMENTS

turn rotate, revolve, move around
 an axis

The big wheel slowly began to turn.
 His head turned when I called his name.
 I turned so I could slip through the narrow opening.

turn change direction

The tide will turn at dusk.
 The senator could feel public opinion beginning to turn.
 General Blake could sense that the battle was turning.

turn _____ cause to rotate/revolve

OBJECT

The helmsman turned **the wheel**.
 I turned **my head** to see who was calling my name.
 The millstone is turned by a waterwheel.

PASSIVE

turn _____ change direction/position

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car turned **into the last driveway on the left**.
 Turn **left** at the next corner.
 The sailboat turned **downstream**.
 The crowd all turned **toward the new speaker**.
 The birds turned **into the wind**.

turn _____ cause to change direction

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

The captain turned **the boat into the wind**.
 The water was turned **into the canal**.

turn _____ cause the other side of to be visible

OBJECT

I turned **the pages on the calendar**.
 He turned **the page** and began to read.

turn _____ change the setting of

OBJECT + TO OBJECT

He turned **the TV to the Weather Channel**.
 Turn **the oven to 350 degrees** after 15 minutes.

turn _____ perform by moving in a circle

OBJECT

Little Leslie can turn **a somersault**.
 The cheerleaders turned **cartwheels** on the gym floor.

turn _____ reach, pass

OBJECT

Juan's brother turned **18** yesterday.
 My car's odometer just turned **12,000 miles**.



PRESENT

I understand we understand
 you understand you understand
 he/she/it understands they understand
 • *He understands the situation perfectly.*

PAST

I understood we understood
 you understood you understood
 he/she/it understood they understood
 • *They understood only a few words.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has understood

PAST PERFECT ... had understood

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am understanding we are understanding
 you are understanding you are understanding
 he/she/it is understanding they are understanding
 • *We are understanding each other better now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was understanding we were understanding
 you were understanding you were understanding
 he/she/it was understanding they were understanding
 • *They weren't understanding his Italian very well.*

FUTURE ... will understand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be understanding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have understood

PAST PASSIVE

I was understood we were understood
 you were understood you were understood
 he/she/it was understood they were understood
 • *The tour guide was easily understood.*

COMPLEMENTS

understand *know the meaning of something*

Do you understand?
 He is too young to understand.

understand _____ *comprehend, know the meaning of*

OBJECT

The doctor understood **the nature of the patient's symptoms**.
 Do you understand **this equation**?

PASSIVE

Nobody could understand **the cockney slang used in the movie**.

WH-CLAUSE

The assembly instructions must not have been understood.

WH-INFINITIVE

I understood **what he was trying to say**.

Did you understand **where we were going**?

We need to understand **how much this is going to cost**.

Do you understand **whom to call if you have a problem**?

I understand **what to do**.

Do you understand **where to pick up your passengers**?

understand _____ *know what makes [something] work/happen*

OBJECT

It takes students a long time to really understand **evolution**.

Does anyone understand **the stock market**?

Almost no one understands **credit and default swaps**.

PASSIVE

The role of washing hands to control disease was not understood at the time.

WH-CLAUSE

Do you understand **what drives the global economy**?

Even third graders understand **why the sun seems to rise in the east and set in the west**.

understand _____ *know and be sympathetic to the feelings/attitudes of*

OBJECT

My boyfriend doesn't understand **me**.

I don't think the director understood **Lady Macbeth** very well.

Older people never understand **the younger generation**.

understand _____ *get the idea/notion [OFTEN AS A POLITE FORM OF IMPLIED QUESTION]*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I understand **you to be a student at Santa Cruz**.

We understand **them to be having lunch with us**.

I understand **the apartment to be available**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I understand **that you are applying for a job with us**.

We understand **that the flight may be delayed**.

It is understood **that the parents will have joint custody**.

PRESENT

I unite we unite
 you unite you unite
 he/she/it unites they unite

• *The treaty unites the two warring factions.*

PAST

I united we united
 you united you united
 he/she/it united they united

• *Italy united under Victor Emmanuel II.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has united

PAST PERFECT ... had united

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am uniting we are uniting
 you are uniting you are uniting
 he/she/it is uniting they are uniting

• *The denominations are uniting to form a new church.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was uniting we were uniting
 you were uniting you were uniting
 he/she/it was uniting they were uniting

• *Rebel forces were uniting under a single leader.*

FUTURE ... will unite

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be uniting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have united

PAST PASSIVE

I was united we were united
 you were united you were united
 he/she/it was united they were united

• *Farmers were united in opposition to the proposed regulations.*

COMPLEMENTS

unite join together for a common purpose

Many small rural school districts
 have been forced to unite.

He called on the party to unite.

“Workers of the world, unite.” [KARL MARX AND
 FRIEDRICH ENGELS]

The divided enemy forces were unable to unite.

The community unites in the spring to celebrate Earth Day.

The country united against the threats to its citizens.

Cells unite to form tissues.

unite _____ combine, join/put together to make one

OBJECT

Einstein tried to unite **electromagnetism and gravity**
 in a unified field theory.

He was able to unite **theory and practice** in his work.

Charlotte and John were united in marriage on March 23.

Scotland and England were united in 1707 to form the

Kingdom of Great Britain.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I uphold	we uphold
you uphold	you uphold
he/she/it upholds	they uphold

• *The firm upholds its tradition of service.*

PAST

I upheld	we upheld
you upheld	you upheld
he/she/it upheld	they upheld

• *The court upheld the lower court ruling.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has upheld

PAST PERFECT ... had upheld

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upholding	we are upholding
you are upholding	you are upholding
he/she/it is upholding	they are upholding

• *The Marine Corps is upholding centuries of tradition.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upholding	we were upholding
you were upholding	you were upholding
he/she/it was upholding	they were upholding

• *We were upholding our end of the bargain.*

FUTURE ... will uphold

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be upholding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have upheld

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was upheld	they were upheld

• *The ruling was upheld by the appellate court.*

COMPLEMENTS

uphold _____ confirm/support [a decision, opinion]

OBJECT

The courts will usually uphold **lower court rulings** unless there is a demonstrable error of fact or law.

The whole committee upheld **the ruling of the subcommittee**.

The Supreme Court upheld **the plaintiff** in *Brown v. Board of Education*.

PASSIVE

The decision was upheld unanimously by the appeals court.

uphold _____ maintain [a custom, practice]

OBJECT

John upheld **the family tradition** by joining the Navy.

Sadly, the school has not been able to uphold **its superior image**.

The new CEO vowed to uphold **the company's reputation for fiscal responsibility**.

PASSIVE

The honor of the Corps had been upheld.

PRESENT

I upset we upset
 you upset you upset
 he/she/it upsets they upset
 • *The new development upsets all our plans.*

PAST

I upset we upset
 you upset you upset
 he/she/it upset they upset
 • *The president's decision upset the voters.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has upset

PAST PERFECT ... had upset

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upsetting we are upsetting
 you are upsetting you are upsetting
 he/she/it is upsetting they are upsetting
 • *I'm sorry that I'm upsetting you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upsetting we were upsetting
 you were upsetting you were upsetting
 he/she/it was upsetting they were upsetting
 • *The weather was upsetting all of our arrangements.*

FUTURE

... will upset

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be upsetting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have upset

PAST PASSIVE

I was upset we were upset
 you were upset you were upset
 he/she/it was upset they were upset
 • *Naturally, we were quite upset by what happened.*

COMPLEMENTS

upset _____ knock over

OBJECT

The dogs upset **some potted plants** on the patio.
 The waiter upset **a bottle of wine** as he was clearing the table.
 A whole gallon of paint had been upset.

PASSIVE

upset _____ cause to be disturbed/worried/unhappy

OBJECT

The hotel clerk's rudeness really upset **us**.
 Thunderstorms upset **the dogs** terribly.
 Spicy food always upsets **my stomach**.
 He delights in upsetting **the administrators**.
 The parents were upset at the news of the school's closure.

PASSIVE

upset _____ disturb the order/working of

OBJECT

The kids are really good at upsetting **my daily routine**.
 The rain upset **our plans for a trip to the beach**.
 Global warming is upsetting **many delicate ecosystems**.
 The collapse of the credit market has upset **the normal balance of supply and demand for housing**.
 The orderly transfer of power was totally upset by the prince's unexpected death.

PASSIVE

upset _____ win a surprising victory over

OBJECT

The Jets upset **the Colts** in Superbowl III.
 Harry Truman upset **Thomas Dewey** in the 1948 presidential election.

EXPRESSIONS

upset the apple cart ruin something

Grady upset the apple cart by telling Louise about the surprise party.

PRESENT

I urge	we urge
you urge	you urge
he/she/it urges	they urge

• *She urges us to read Jane Austen's novels.*

PAST

I urged	we urged
you urged	you urged
he/she/it urged	they urged

• *We urged them to come for dinner.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has urged

PAST PERFECT ... had urged

PAST PASSIVE

I was urged	we were urged
you were urged	you were urged
he/she/it was urged	they were urged

• *A thorough investigation was urged by the committee.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am urging	we are urging
you are urging	you are urging
he/she/it is urging	they are urging

• *The mayor is urging everyone to remain calm.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was urging	we were urging
you were urging	you were urging
he/she/it was urging	they were urging

• *The police were urging drivers to stay off the roads.*

FUTURE ... will urge

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be urging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have urged

COMPLEMENTS

urge _____ recommend, advocate strongly

OBJECT

Our financial advisor urged **patience**.
The captain urged **a dawn attack on the enemy's right flank**.
Parental discretion is strongly urged.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The doctor urged **my mom to see a specialist**.
The lawyers urged **the judge to give the defendant a new trial**.

BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE

The doctor urged **that my mom see a specialist**.
The lawyers urged **that the judge give the defendant a new trial**.

urge _____ encourage

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I urged **them to speak up about what had happened**.
He urged **us to keep our options open at this point**.
My parents urged **my sister to move closer to them**.
The speakers urged **the city council to provide better snow removal**.

PASSIVE

The driver was repeatedly urged **to slow down**.

urge _____ encourage/force to move

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We urged **the children inside**.
The coach urged **the players onto the field**.
The police urged **the crowd away from the accident**.
The passengers were urged **to the rear of the bus**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

urge SEP away/back/etc. encourage to move in a specified direction

The ushers urged the spectators back.

urge SEP on encourage

The candidate urged her supporters on by viciously attacking her opponent.
The lieutenant urged his troops on through the rain.

PRESENT

I use we use
 you use you use
 he/she/it uses they use

• *She uses a taxi to go to the airport.*

PAST

I used we used
 you used you used
 he/she/it used they used

• *I used the elevator instead of the stairs.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has used

PAST PERFECT ... had used

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am using we are using
 you are using you are using
 he/she/it is using they are using

• *No one is using this chair.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was using we were using
 you were using you were using
 he/she/it was using they were using

• *They were using too much salt on their food.*

FUTURE ... will use

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be using

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have used

PAST PASSIVE

I was used we were used
 you were used you were used
 he/she/it was used they were used

• *A computer was used to map the best route.*

NOTE: The verb *use* ends in a /z/ sound, rhyming with *lose*.
 The noun *use* ends in an /s/ sound, rhyming with *goose*.

COMPLEMENTS

use _____ employ, put into service

OBJECT

I can use a **stick shift**.

Do you know how to use **chopsticks**?

PASSIVE

The printer can't be used until we get a new ink cartridge.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

Use **your troops well** and they will not fail you.

You can finish it if you use **your time carefully**.

PASSIVE

The paint remover should be used **with extreme caution**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We used **an architect to remodel the kitchen**.

I used **my shoulder to push open the heavy gate**.

PASSIVE

The National Guard was used **to help clear the roads**.

use _____ exploit, treat badly

OBJECT

He's using **us** to get a promotion.

It's obvious now: He used **family connections** to get the job.

PASSIVE

We were being used.

use _____ consume, exhaust the supply of

OBJECT

Don't use **all the hot water**—save some for me.

We used **all the spaghetti sauce** at lunch.

PASSIVE

All of the allocated funds have been used.

use _____ need [WITH can OR could]

OBJECT

These walls could use **a fresh coat of paint**.

used to _____ did at an earlier time [HELPING VERB INTRODUCING AN HABITUAL ACTION/STATE IN THE PAST]

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

I used to **live in Chicago**.

We used to **have a little cabin on the lake**.

She used to **play the viola professionally**.

be/get used to _____ be/get accustomed to / familiar with

OBJECT

You will get used to **David's strange sense of humor**.

I am not used to **daylight saving time** yet.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I will never get used to **driving on the left side of the road**.

We are used to **getting up pretty early**.

The animals are not used to **having strangers around**.

PRESENT

I vary we vary
 you vary you vary
 he/she/it varies they vary
 • *Seafood prices vary from day to day.*

PAST

I varied we varied
 you varied you varied
 he/she/it varied they varied
 • *The temperature never varied.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has varied

PAST PERFECT ... had varied

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was varied they were varied

• *The courier's route was varied for greater security.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am varying we are varying
 you are varying you are varying
 he/she/it is varying they are varying
 • *I am varying my exercise routine.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was varying we were varying
 you were varying you were varying
 he/she/it was varying they were varying
 • *We were varying our diet as much as we could.*

FUTURE ... will vary

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be varying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have varied

COMPLEMENTS

vary *change, differ in size/amount/degree*

At the equator, the length of day
 varies only slightly.

Your mileage may vary.

The terms of the contracts can vary quite a lot.

The amount of rainfall varies enormously from year to year.

Opinions vary about the impact of global warming.

The nutritional value of fruits and vegetables varies
 according to climate and soil conditions.

vary _____ *change to be less uniform/predictable*

OBJECT

The conductor never varied **the tempo**, making the piece
 sound too mechanical.

Don't vary **the format of the reports** without a good reason.

He never varied **his comedy act**, and it eventually failed.

You should vary **your reading**; all those romance novels
 can't be good for you.

PASSIVE

The activities at camp were always varied, so we never
 got bored.

PRESENT

I view we view
 you view you view
 he/she/it views they view
 • *He always views the parade with his son.*

PAST

I viewed we viewed
 you viewed you viewed
 he/she/it viewed they viewed
 • *The inspector viewed the office wiring.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has viewed

PAST PERFECT ... had viewed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am viewing we are viewing
 you are viewing you are viewing
 he/she/it is viewing they are viewing
 • *They are viewing the gardens.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was viewing we were viewing
 you were viewing you were viewing
 he/she/it was viewing they were viewing
 • *Detectives were viewing a surveillance video.*

FUTURE ... will view

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be viewing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have viewed

PAST PASSIVE

I was viewed we were viewed
 you were viewed you were viewed
 he/she/it was viewed they were viewed
 • *The new rules were not viewed favorably by the staff.*

COMPLEMENTS

view _____ examine, inspect

OBJECT

The owner of the building viewed **the water damage**.
 The governor viewed **the flood damage** from a helicopter.

view _____ look at carefully

OBJECT

People from all over the world come to view **the fall foliage in New England**.
 Whenever there is an automobile accident, drivers slow down to view **the wreck**.
 We got up in the middle of the night to view **the northern lights**.

PASSIVE

The exhibit was viewed by nearly 100,000 visitors.
 Our website is viewed by 4,000 people a day.

WH-CLAUSE

They wanted to view **what was left of the shipwreck**.
 Our tour group hopes to view **where the first atomic device was detonated in the New Mexico desert**.

view _____ consider, regard

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

Most politicians viewed **Senator Blather with utter contempt**.
 The farmers viewed **the restrictions on the use of pesticides with conflicting emotions**.

PASSIVE

The proposal was viewed **with alarm**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

The committee views **smoking as a health and ethics issue**.
 Brutus viewed **Caesar as a threat to republican rule**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Experts view **the economic downturn as temporary**.
 The opposition viewed **the proposal as shortsighted**.

view _____ watch [a movie, TV program]

OBJECT

Forty percent of children viewed **the first episode**.

PASSIVE

The Nixon-Kennedy debate was viewed by more than 66 million people.

PRESENT

I visit we visit
 you visit you visit
 he/she/it visits they visit
 • *He visits our office when he's in town.*

PAST

I visited we visited
 you visited you visited
 he/she/it visited they visited
 • *They visited some old friends in Dallas.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has visited

PAST PERFECT ... had visited

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am visiting we are visiting
 you are visiting you are visiting
 he/she/it is visiting they are visiting
 • *She is visiting her grandmother.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was visiting we were visiting
 you were visiting you were visiting
 he/she/it was visiting they were visiting
 • *We were visiting someone in the neighborhood.*

FUTURE ... will visit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be visiting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have visited

PAST PASSIVE

I was visited we were visited
 you were visited you were visited
 he/she/it was visited they were visited
 • *We were visited by the Bennets recently.*

COMPLEMENTS

visit talk briefly with each other

They visited during the intermission.
 We visited for a few minutes at the grocery store.
 We don't often get a chance to visit without being interrupted by the children.

visit _____ talk briefly
with OBJECT

I visited **with Brian** during the afternoon break.
 She visits **with her niece** on the phone every morning.

visit _____ come/go to see socially
OBJECT

We visit **Kevin and Janet** whenever we can.
 No one ever visits **them**.
 My parents were visited by some old college friends this weekend.

visit _____ go to [a place] as a tourist
OBJECT

We visited **the Lake District** for a few days.
 I'd like to visit **the ruins of the Roman Forum**.
 Everyone who visits **Australia** wants to go again.
 Hawaii is visited by millions of tourists every year.

visit _____ go to [a place] for a certain reason
OBJECT

The cargo ship visits **every major trading port in the Mediterranean**.
 We visited **the clinic** to get Thomas a flu shot.
 Ten thousand customers a day visit **our website**.
 A food inspector visits **the restaurant** periodically.
 Every nursing home is visited by state inspectors at least twice a year.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I vote we vote
 you vote you vote
 he/she/it votes they vote
 • *He always votes early in the day.*

PAST

I voted we voted
 you voted you voted
 he/she/it voted they voted
 • *I voted by mail this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has voted

PAST PERFECT ... had voted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am voting we are voting
 you are voting you are voting
 he/she/it is voting they are voting
 • *I am not voting in this election.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was voting we were voting
 you were voting you were voting
 he/she/it was voting they were voting
 • *People were voting in record numbers.*

FUTURE ... will vote

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be voting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have voted

PAST PASSIVE

I was voted we were voted
 you were voted you were voted
 he/she/it was voted they were voted
 • *He was voted the new chair of the committee.*

COMPLEMENTS

vote cast a ballot

Let's vote.
 Are you registered to vote?
 I have already voted.
 "Vote early and vote often." [A CHICAGO MAYOR]

vote _____ indicate [a choice] by ballot / other expression of choice

OBJECT

He always votes **Republican**.
 A "yellow dog Democrat" is a voter who would vote **Democratic** even if the candidate were a yellow dog.
 Congress voted **stricter limits on campaign contributions**.
 A straight party ticket is not voted as often as it used to be.
 Our representative is voting **against the free trade proposal**.
 The school board voted **for new social studies textbooks**.
Whom will you vote **for** in the mayoral election?

PASSIVE

against OBJECT

for OBJECT

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The public voted **our restaurant (to be) the best in town**.
 The House voted **Nancy (to be) the next speaker**.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

In college, he was voted **(to be) the most likely to succeed**.
 They voted **to go on strike**.
 The kids voted **to have pizza tonight**.
 The board voted **to fire the CEO**.

PHRASAL VERBS

vote SEP **down** defeat, reject

The Senate voted the amendment down.

vote SEP **in** elect

They voted him in by 348 votes.

vote SEP **out** defeat

My brother wants to vote all the incumbents out.

EXPRESSIONS

vote with [one's] feet indicate dissatisfaction by leaving a business without purchasing anything

The restaurant didn't have vegetarian options, so we voted with our feet.

vote with [one's] wallet/pocketbook decide on the basis of one's financial interest

I voted with my wallet and bought the product online: free shipping and no sales tax.

PRESENT

I wait	we wait
you wait	you wait
he/she/it waits	they wait

• *He waits to hear what everyone else says.*

PAST

I waited	we waited
you waited	you waited
he/she/it waited	they waited

• *I waited at the station for you.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has waited

PAST PERFECT ... had waited

PAST PASSIVE

I was waited	we were waited
you were waited	you were waited
he/she/it was waited	they were waited

• *We were finally waited on.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am waiting	we are waiting
you are waiting	you are waiting
he/she/it is waiting	they are waiting

• *We are waiting for a taxi.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was waiting	we were waiting
you were waiting	you were waiting
he/she/it was waiting	they were waiting

• *They were waiting to speak to someone.*

FUTURE ... will wait

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be waiting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have waited

COMPLEMENTS

wait *stay in a place or do nothing until a certain event occurs*

Come on! We can't wait forever.
Hurry up—the Nelsons are waiting.
I can't stand waiting like this.

wait *be delayed until later*

The report will have to wait until tomorrow.
The job can't wait; do it now.

wait _____ *stay [in a place], remain ready*

ADVERB OF TIME

I can only wait **until 3 o'clock**.
Wait **until the light turns green**.
Wait **10 minutes** before removing the cake from the pan.

ADVERB OF PLACE

Please wait **here**.
A limo will be waiting **at the station**.
Please tell our guests to wait **in the garden**.
Where do you want us to wait?

for OBJECT

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

We're waiting **for Hilary and DJ**, and then we'll go to Gullifty's.
The driver was waiting **for the rain to stop**.
They are waiting **to take the elevator**.
Are you waiting **to use the copier**?

wait _____ *delay [USUALLY NEGATIVE]*

INFINITIVE

I can't wait **to meet them**.
Don't wait **to get started**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wait on _____ *serve/assist [a customer]*

Have you been waited on yet, sir?
I'm waiting on customers in the automotive department.
It takes forever to get waited on here.

wait SEP **out** *defeat by waiting*

The company waited him out, and he eventually signed the contract.

wait up *delay going to bed*

Don't wait up for us; we won't be home until midnight.

EXPRESSIONS

wait on _____ **hand and foot** *serve [someone] extremely well*

She waits on him hand and foot—
how awful!

PRESENT

I wake we wake
 you wake you wake
 he/she/it wakes they wake
 • *He usually wakes at seven.*

PAST

I woke we woke
 you woke you woke
 he/she/it woke they woke
 • *I woke just before the alarm went off.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has woken/waked
 PAST PERFECT ... had woken/waked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am waking we are waking
 you are waking you are waking
 he/she/it is waking they are waking
 • *He's waking the neighborhood with his lawn mower.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was waking we were waking
 you were waking you were waking
 he/she/it was waking they were waking
 • *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*

FUTURE ... will wake
 FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be waking
 FUTURE PERFECT ... will have woken/waked

PAST PASSIVE

I was woken we were woken
 you were woken you were woken
 he/she/it was woken they were woken
 • *We were woken in the middle of the night by a dog barking.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Wake* and *waken* have the same meanings and the same general uses. They are similar to *awake/awaken* (verb No. 49), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake*, *awaken*, and *waken* are not.

wake quit sleeping

We need to be quiet because the children wake so easily.
 The patient began wakening from the anesthetic.
 In the springtime, I wake long before I need to get up.

wake _____ arouse from sleeping

OBJECT

Wake **the children** at eight if they are not up already.
 Don't wake **me** unless it is an emergency.
 His snoring would wake **the dead**.
 I was woken by the sound of dripping water.
 The thunderstorm woke **whoever was sleeping**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

wake _____ stir up

OBJECT

Spring woke **the slumbering land**.
 The injustice woke **a feeling of outrage in the entire community**.
 His good fortune wakened **feelings of envy in the little village**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wake up become aware of what is happening

I hope he wakes up before it's too late.
 Fritz woke up after the heart attack and started exercising and eating right.

wake SEP up cause to become aware of what is happening

The advisor woke the mayor up to the danger of rising water.
 This report will wake citizens up to the importance of alternative energy sources.

EXPRESSIONS

wake up and smell the coffee become aware of what is happening

The world has changed, and we must wake up and smell the coffee.

PRESENT

I walk we walk
 you walk you walk
 he/she/it walks they walk

• *He always walks to work.*

PAST

I walked we walked
 you walked you walked
 he/she/it walked they walked

• *We walked about three miles this morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has walked

PAST PERFECT ... had walked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am walking we are walking
 you are walking you are walking
 he/she/it is walking they are walking

• *We are walking to the store for ice cream.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was walking we were walking
 you were walking you were walking
 he/she/it was walking they were walking

• *They were walking the kids to school.*

FUTURE ... will walk

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be walking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have walked

PAST PASSIVE

I was walked we were walked
 you were walked you were walked
 he/she/it was walked they were walked

• *The horses were walked after they were ridden.*

COMPLEMENTS

walk *move on foot at a normal speed*

walk *abandon/withdraw from negotiations*
 [INFORMAL]

walk *be released from jail, escape prosecution for a crime* [INFORMAL]

walk _____ *go on foot*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

walk _____ *move in/on/over/through on foot*

OBJECT

walk _____ *exercise [an animal]*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

walk _____ *push [a bicycle, motorcycle] on foot*

OBJECT

walk _____ *go with / guide on foot*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

After I broke my hip, I couldn't walk for months.
 Children first start walking at about the age of one year.

If we don't get a better offer, we'll walk.

The merger talks are not succeeding; I think the other company is going to walk.

If the police can't find more evidence, he will walk.

He's going to walk after just two months in jail.

They walked **to the barn**.

We walked **home** after the movie.

I don't like the suburbs; you can't walk **anywhere**.

I've walked **this street** every morning for years.

We walked **two miles**, then turned around.

You will have to walk **the dogs** twice a day.

Have the horses been walked?

He had to walk **his mountain bike** back to the car.

She walked **her bike** while talking to us.

The usher walks **the wedding guests to their seats**.

I need to walk **my mother home**.

Prisoners must be walked **to the gate** by a guard.

PHRASAL VERBS

walk around/back/forth/in/off/out/over/
 etc. *walk in a specified direction*

walk _____ **around/back/over/etc.** *take/deliver on foot*

walk in on _____ *interrupt by entering a room*

walk out on _____ *leave, abandon*

Guess who walked in just now.

Pam screamed at me, then walked off.

Matt walked Emily back to her dorm room.

Would you walk this package over to the post office?

He walked in on a meeting of the board of directors.

We're nearly finished; you can't walk out on us now.

PRESENT

I want we want
 you want you want
 he/she/it wants they want
 • *He wants to know if you are free for lunch.*

PAST

I wanted we wanted
 you wanted you wanted
 he/she/it wanted they wanted
 • *The kids wanted pizza for lunch.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wanted

PAST PERFECT ... had wanted

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wanting we are wanting
 you are wanting you are wanting
 he/she/it is wanting they are wanting
 • *He is wanting to go to Paris next summer.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wanting we were wanting
 you were wanting you were wanting
 he/she/it was wanting they were wanting
 • *We were wanting to go out for dinner tonight.*

FUTURE

... will want

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be wanting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have wanted

PAST PASSIVE

I was wanted we were wanted
 you were wanted you were wanted
 he/she/it was wanted they were wanted
 • *The murderer was wanted by the FBI.*

COMPLEMENTS

want _____ need, wish, desire

OBJECT

Our daughter wants **her own cell phone**.

Do you want **fries** with that?

We want **a driver who knows the area**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We want **a table by the window**.

Security wants **a guard at every entrance**.

The decorator wants **a rug in the entryway**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The doctor wants **you to take it easy for a while**.

I just want **them to leave us alone**.

We want **a cab to take us to the airport at four**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The boss wants **them working on the landscaping project**.

I don't want **you staying out too late**.

He doesn't want **anybody finding out about our plans**.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

I want **the job finished by noon**.

The sheriff wants **him placed under arrest**.

We want **lunch served in the conference room**.

INFINITIVE

The kids want **to go home soon**.

I want **to set the record straight**.

Does anyone want **to take notes**?

WH-CLAUSE

We all want **what is best for you**.

He wants **whoever left the message for him**.

I want **whatever she's having**.

want _____ desire to capture

OBJECT

The police want **him** for armed robbery.

PASSIVE

He is wanted by the police in three states.

PHRASAL VERBS

want down/in/out/up/etc. desire to be in a specified position

The baby's squirming; he wants down.

want out desire to be freed of a responsibility

I think the cat wants in.

The hours are too long, the work is too hard, and I want out.

PRESENT

I warn we warn
 you warn you warn
 he/she/it warns they warn

• *The sign warns people to stay away.*

PAST

I warned we warned
 you warned you warned
 he/she/it warned they warned

• *I warned them to be careful.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has warned

PAST PERFECT ... had warned

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am warning we are warning
 you are warning you are warning
 he/she/it is warning they are warning

• *I am warning you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was warning we were warning
 you were warning you were warning
 he/she/it was warning they were warning

• *The police were warning drivers to stay off the roads.*

FUTURE ... will warn

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be warning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have warned

PAST PASSIVE

I was warned we were warned
 you were warned you were warned
 he/she/it was warned they were warned

• *We were warned about hitchhikers along prison property.*

COMPLEMENTS

warn _____ caution, alert, inform [about a danger, threat]

OBJECT

We warned **the hikers**, but they paid no attention.

I am warning **you**: Don't do it.

PASSIVE

All of the race participants have been warned.

OBJECT + about/of OBJECT

The company warned **doctors about a vaccine shortage**.

Gerry warned **her students about plagiarism**.

Spies warned **the government of a terrorist plot**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The guide warned **us to watch out for pickpockets**.

I warned **the children to stay on the paths**.

Police warned **the crowd not to enter the building**.

Mom warned **us not to eat too much before swimming**.

PASSIVE

We had been warned **to drink only bottled water**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

We warned **them that it could snow**.

The Coast Guard warned **boaters that the winds in the channel would be dangerous**.

PASSIVE

Everyone was warned **that there was a risk of cholera in the area**.

OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE

He warned **us what to expect**.

The guidebook warned **us which places to stay away from**.

PASSIVE

The visitors were warned **what topics to avoid**.

warn _____ issue a general caution

THAT-CLAUSE

The Surgeon General has warned **that smoking is dangerous to your health**.

The sign warned **that violators would be prosecuted**.

PHRASAL VERBS

warn SEP off tell [someone] to keep out

The farmer warned the hunters off as soon as they got out of their truck.

PRESENT

I wash we wash
 you wash you wash
 he/she/it washes they wash
 • *He washes his car every weekend.*

PAST

I washed we washed
 you washed you washed
 he/she/it washed they washed
 • *I washed and dressed the wound.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has washed

PAST PERFECT ... had washed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am washing we are washing
 you are washing you are washing
 he/she/it is washing they are washing
 • *The kids are washing the dog in the backyard.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was washing we were washing
 you were washing you were washing
 he/she/it was washing they were washing
 • *We were washing dishes when we heard the news.*

FUTURE ... will wash

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be washing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have washed

PAST PASSIVE

I was washed we were washed
 you were washed you were washed
 he/she/it was washed they were washed
 • *The clothes were washed in hot water.*

COMPLEMENTS

wash *clean/bathe oneself*

Go back and wash!
 How often does he wash?
 Be sure to wash behind your ears.
 I can't wash; there isn't any water.

wash _____ *clean with a liquid and (usually) a cleansing agent*

OBJECT

I washed and dried **my hands**.
 We need to wash **the curtains**.
 I washed **five loads of laundry** after our camping trip.
 Use a baking soda solution to wash **the chrome**.
 The metal is first washed in an acid bath.

PASSIVE

wash _____ *splash, sweep, flow*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The waves were washing **over the dock**.
 Water was washing **along the deck of the ship**.
 Tears washed **down her face**.

wash _____ *carry away by the action of water*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The tide had washed **our little boat back onto the beach**.
 The storm had washed **debris across the road**.
 Sand and mud had been washed **onto our patio**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

wash away/down/in/off/out/up/etc. *be carried in a specified direction by the action of water*

The Gummersheimer home washed away in the floodwater.
 A dead whale washed up on the Oregon coast.

wash SEP away *remove by the action of water*

The incoming tide washed away the sandcastle we had built.
 The bridge was washed out at Maecystown.

wash SEP away/off/out *clean [dirt, etc.] from*

Pam washed off the patio chairs.

wash SEP away/out *ruin*

Her injury washed away any chance of winning the match.

wash SEP down *take a drink in order to help swallow [food]*

She washed the cookies down with a glass of milk.

wash SEP up *exhaust, finish*

With the drug conviction, Bubba is all washed up as a player.

PRESENT

I watch we watch
 you watch you watch
 he/she/it watches they watch
 • *He only watches sports on TV.*

PAST

I watched we watched
 you watched you watched
 he/she/it watched they watched
 • *We watched our daughter's soccer game.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has watched

PAST PERFECT ... had watched

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am watching we are watching
 you are watching you are watching
 he/she/it is watching they are watching
 • *He is really watching his weight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was watching we were watching
 you were watching you were watching
 he/she/it was watching they were watching
 • *They were watching our house for us.*

FUTURE ... will watch

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be watching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have watched

PAST PASSIVE

I was watched we were watched
 you were watched you were watched
 he/she/it was watched they were watched
 • *The program was watched by millions of people.*

COMPLEMENTS

watch look at something carefully

The movie was too scary for me to watch.
 I don't know what happened; I wasn't watching.

watch _____ look at, observe

OBJECT

Everybody watched **the folk dancers**.
 Does anybody like to watch **his home movies**?
 It felt like somebody was watching **us**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

The game will be watched by all our friends.
 They watched **the car in front of them slide off the icy road**.
 The fans watched **their team lose its third game in a row**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We all watched **the men working on the power line**.
 The children watched **the seaplanes landing on the water**.
 We watched **the bluebirds building their nests**.

WH-CLAUSE

Watch **what happens next**.
 I wasn't watching **which key he used to open the door**.

watch _____ monitor, pay careful attention to

OBJECT

I am really trying to watch **my weight**.
 A financial advisor will watch **your portfolio balance**.
 The government is watching **the situation in Iran** closely.

WH-CLAUSE

Watch **what you are doing!**
 Watch **where you are driving**.
 You need to watch **how much you are spending on nonessentials**.

watch _____ take care of, protect

OBJECT

Grandma watched **the children** while I was at the store.
 Watch **my purse** for me, will you?

PHRASAL VERBS

watch for _____ look for [someone/ something that one expects to see]

We can watch for Doris from the window.
 Astronomers were watching for planets in other solar systems.

watch out be careful

Watch out! There's a snake!

watch out for / over _____ protect, take care of

The teachers were watching out for the pupils.
 Our Great Pyrenees dog was watching over the sheep.

PRESENT

I wear we wear
 you wear you wear
 he/she/it wears they wear
 • *He always wears a coat and tie.*

PAST

I wore we wore
 you wore you wore
 he/she/it wore they wore
 • *She wore her little black dress to the party.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has worn

PAST PERFECT ... had worn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wearing we are wearing
 you are wearing you are wearing
 he/she/it is wearing they are wearing
 • *I am wearing a skirt and sweater to the concert.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wearing we were wearing
 you were wearing you were wearing
 he/she/it was wearing they were wearing
 • *What were they wearing?*

FUTURE ... will wear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have worn

PAST PASSIVE

I was worn we were worn
 you were worn you were worn
 he/she/it was worn they were worn
 • *In those days, white was never worn after Labor Day.*

COMPLEMENTS

wear remain in good condition after much use

That fabric won't wear very well.
 The carpet in the hall will wear for years.

wear _____ have/carry on one's body
 OBJECT

The kids wear **jeans** most of the time.
 Politicians felt it necessary to wear **flag pins**.
 Men are required to wear **ties** when meeting with clients.
 Mary wears **bifocals** now.

PASSIVE
 WH-CLAUSE

Casual clothing is worn nearly everywhere.
 The tribe only wore **what they themselves produced**.
 I give up; wear **whatever you want to**.

wear _____ have [a certain hairstyle]
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

She wore **her hair off the shoulder**.
 He wore **his hair in a ponytail**.
 Her hair was worn **in a huge Afro**.

PASSIVE

wear _____ have [a certain facial expression]
 OBJECT

He was wearing **a silly grin** when he made the announcement.
 His face wears **a permanent scowl**.
 Why are you wearing **such a sad face**?

wear _____ damage/erode gradually, usually by friction
 OBJECT

Wagon wheels wore **ruts** along the Oregon Trail.
 The Mississippi River wore **a new channel** east of Kaskaskia.
 A path had been worn through the forest.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

wear SEP down make weak/tired

The 12-hour days are wearing the staff down.

wear off go away gradually

The effects of the painkiller wore off after a few hours.

wear on continue, pass

The meeting wore on into the early hours of the morning.
 It got more cloudy as the day wore on.

wear out become exhausted/useless

The tires have worn out on my pickup truck.

wear SEP out use until exhausted

Our son has worn out his winter coat.

wear SEP out exhaust, tire out

Shopping all day with his wife wore him out.

PRESENT

I weave we weave
you weave you weave
he/she/it weaves they weave

• *She weaves baskets from birch bark.*

PAST

I wove we wove
you wove you wove
he/she/it wove they wove

• *The spider wove a web across the doorway.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has woven

PAST PERFECT ... had woven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weaving we are weaving
you are weaving you are weaving
he/she/it is weaving they are weaving

• *The children are weaving simple placemats.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weaving we were weaving
you were weaving you were weaving
he/she/it was weaving they were weaving

• *They were weaving a wool rug.*

FUTURE ... will weave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be weaving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have woven

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was woven they were woven

• *These wall hangings were woven by hand.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The regular past form *weaved* is used only in the sense “move in and out / side to side”; *wove* and *woven* are used in all other senses.

weave *pass threads/strips/etc. over and under one another to form something*

They are teaching the students how to weave.
Children learn by watching their mothers weave.
In some cultures, only men weave.

weave *move in and out / side to side*

A red SUV weaved through the bridge traffic.

weave _____ *pass [threads/strips/etc.] over and under one another [to form something]*

OBJECT

They wove **palm fronds** to make a thatched roof.
I wove **my fingers** to make a step for her.
We wove **the reeds** into a simple boat.

weave _____ *form by passing threads/strips/etc. over and under one another*

OBJECT

The mill wove **beautiful linen tablecloths**.
Every society on earth has woven **some kind of basket**.
The women wove **a crown from flowers they had picked**.
A crude filter was woven from plant stalks.

PASSIVE

weave _____ *combine to make a whole*

OBJECT

A good story weaves **a number of plot lines**.
The poem weaves **the themes of love and loss in 19th-century England**.

weave _____ *make by combining into a whole*

OBJECT

“Oh! what a **tangled web** we weave
When first we practice to deceive.” [SIR WALTER SCOTT]
Wagner’s operas are woven from many musical themes.

PASSIVE

weave _____ *form [a web] [OF A SPIDER]*

OBJECT

A spider wove **a beautiful web** between those two trees.

PRESENT

I wed we wed
you wed you wed
he/she/it weds they wed

• *His opera weds two different traditions.*

PAST

I wed we wed
you wed you wed
he/she/it wed they wed

• *They wed as soon as they graduated.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wed

PAST PERFECT ... had wed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wedding we are wedding
you are wedding you are wedding
he/she/it is wedding they are wedding

• *The composer is wedding folk and rock music.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wedding we were wedding
you were wedding you were wedding
he/she/it was wedding they were wedding

• *He was wedding the design to other brochures.*

FUTURE ... will wed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wedding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wed/wedded

PAST PASSIVE

I was wed we were wed
you were wed you were wed
he/she/it was wed they were wed

• *The couple was wed by her family's minister.*

COMPLEMENTS

wed marry

When did they wed?

John and Marcia wed after a tumultuous engagement.
My parents wed in Hawaii when Dad was in the Navy.

wed _____ marry

OBJECT

She wed **her childhood sweetheart**.

Whom did she finally wed?

My father wed **my mother** in 1982.

wed _____ perform the marriage ceremony for

OBJECT

I have wed **hundreds of people** over the years.

Reverend Gerry wed **your parents**.

They were wed in the garden, if I remember correctly.

PASSIVE

wed _____ unite, join closely

OBJECT

Fusion cuisine weds **cooking styles from all over the world**.

The building weds **Spanish and modernist styles**.

His art weds **realism and postmodernism**.

PRESENT

I weep we weep
 you weep you weep
 he/she/it weeps they weep
 • *He always weeps at weddings.*

PAST

I wept we wept
 you wept you wept
 he/she/it wept they wept
 • *They wept when they heard the news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wept

PAST PERFECT ... had wept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weeping we are weeping
 you are weeping you are weeping
 he/she/it is weeping they are weeping
 • *She is weeping uncontrollably.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weeping we were weeping
 you were weeping you were weeping
 he/she/it was weeping they were weeping
 • *The children were all weeping.*

FUTURE ... will weep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be weeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wept

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was wept they were wept
 • *No tears were wept for him.*

COMPLEMENTS

weep shed tears, cry

You have to take time to weep.
 The whole family was weeping during the service.
 She wept every time she thought of the accident.

weep give off drops of liquid

The walls were weeping in the humid air.
 Aloe plants weep if you cut them.
 The damp air weeps when it comes into contact with the cold metal.

weep _____ shed [tears]

OBJECT

Weep **no tears** for me.
 He wept **bitter tears** for what he had done.

PASSIVE

Endless tears were wept over such a senseless death.

PRESENT

I wet	we wet
you wet	you wet
he/she/it wets	they wet

• *She always wets her lips before she speaks.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wetting	we are wetting
you are wetting	you are wetting
he/she/it is wetting	they are wetting

• *She is wetting her hair to keep it from blowing.*

PAST

I wet/wetted	we wet/wetted
you wet/wetted	you wet/wetted
he/she/it wet/wetted	they wet/wetted

• *He wet his fingers before taking the ball.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wetting	we were wetting
you were wetting	you were wetting
he/she/it was wetting	they were wetting

• *They were wetting the canvas to make the tent cooler.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wet/wetted

PAST PERFECT ... had wet/wetted

FUTURE

... will wet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be wetting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have wet

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was wet/wetted	they were wet/wetted

• *Once the insulation was wetted by the storm, it was useless.*

COMPLEMENTS

wet _____ moisten, dampen

OBJECT

The barber always wets **my hair** before he cuts it.
 You should wet **the cork** before putting it back in the bottle.
 Lightly wet **the metal** with oil so the engine won't smoke.
 The oily pavement had been wet by the mist, making it slippery.

PASSIVE

wet _____ urinate in/on

OBJECT

The baby always wets **his diaper** at the most inconvenient time.
 We will need to change his pajamas; he wet **them** again.
 One of the kids wet **the bed**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wet SEP down put water on

After every game, they wet the infield down.

EXPRESSIONS

wet [one's] whistle take a drink

Thirsty? Here's some lemonade for you to wet your whistle.

PRESENT

I win we win
 you win you win
 he/she/it wins they win
 • *He wins most card games he plays.*

PAST

I won we won
 you won you won
 he/she/it won they won
 • *I won first place in the math contest.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has won

PAST PERFECT ... had won

PAST PASSIVE

I was won we were won
 you were won you were won
 he/she/it was won they were won
 • *The election was won by superior organization.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winning we are winning
 you are winning you are winning
 he/she/it is winning they are winning
 • *We're winning!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winning we were winning
 you were winning you were winning
 he/she/it was winning they were winning
 • *They were winning most of their games.*

FUTURE ... will win

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be winning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have won

COMPLEMENTS

win be victorious in a contest/competition

I never win.
 They could win if they played their very best.
 Who's winning?

win _____ be victorious in [a contest, competition]

OBJECT

Alice and Albert won **the dance competition**.
 Barack Obama won **the 2008 presidential election**.
 Heather always wins **the argument**.
 The game was won in the last minute.

PASSIVE

win _____ receive as the result of a contest/conflict/bet

OBJECT

We won **a week's vacation in Hawaii**.
 After bitter fighting, they finally won **the fortress**.
 They hope to win **the Rose Bowl** this year.
 I almost won **the jackpot in last week's Lotto**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

You could win **yourself a prize**.
 The victory won **us a little more time**.
 Excellent coaching won **them the championship**.
 You could win **a prize for yourself**.
 The victory won **a little more time for us**.
 Excellent coaching won **the championship for them**.

for PARAPHRASE

win _____ gain [affection, support, admiration, etc.]

OBJECT

Ministers have to win **a congregation's respect**.
 The comedian won **the audience's applause**.
 Their goal was to win **the hearts and minds of the people**.
 Faint heart never won **fair lady**. [PROVERB]

PHRASAL VERBS

win out be finally victorious

It took six months, but our proposal
 won out.

win SEP over convert, persuade

The president won congressional leaders over to his point
 of view.

PRESENT

I wind we wind
 you wind you wind
 he/she/it winds they wind
 • *The path winds across the hills for miles.*

PAST

I wound we wound
 you wound you wound
 he/she/it wound they wound
 • *She wound the cloth around her head.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wound

PAST PERFECT ... had wound

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winding we are winding
 you are winding you are winding
 he/she/it is winding they are winding
 • *The press conference is winding down.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winding we were winding
 you were winding you were winding
 he/she/it was winding they were winding
 • *She was winding the clock with a key.*

FUTURE ... will wind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be winding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wound

PAST PASSIVE

I was wound we were wound
 you were wound you were wound
 he/she/it was wound they were wound
 • *The rope was wound around a tree trunk.*

NOTE: The verb *wind*, which rhymes with *kind*, is presented here; its irregular past form *wound* rhymes with *sound*. The regular verb *wind*, which rhymes with *sinned* and means “to make out of breath,” is rarely used.

COMPLEMENTS

wind _____ coil, move in twists and turns

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We wound **in and out through the trees**.
 The path wound **around the hill**.
 Vines wound **around the old oak tree**.
 The river winds **through a maze of canyons**.
 The wire wound **across the ceiling and out the window**.

wind _____ wrap, cover by circling

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

To make an electromagnet, wind **wire around an iron core**.
 He wound **his shirt over his fist** and broke the window.
 I wound **the rope around my waist** and began to climb down.
 She wound **her arms around her daughter** and consoled her.
 Her long hair had been wound **into a coil on her head**.

PASSIVE

wind _____ tighten the spring of

OBJECT

Did you remember to wind **the clock**?
 Wind **the top** and put it on the floor.
 In old cars, the starter was wound by hand.

PASSIVE

wind _____ wrap around a center/core

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We wound **the videotape to where the game started**.
 She is winding **the yarn into a center-pull ball**.
 The film had been wound **to the end of the reel**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

wind along/around/down/up/etc.
twist in a specified direction

The creek winds along for several miles.

wind down come slowly to an end

The party was winding down by midnight.

wind down relax

Mike was beginning to wind down after a hectic day at work.

wind up end

The conference is scheduled to wind up at noon.

The acrobat wound up in the hospital with a broken leg.

They wound up living in Paris for the rest of their lives.

wind SEP **up** bring to an end

Let's wind this meeting up, okay?

PRESENT

I wish we wish
 you wish you wish
 he/she/it wishes they wish
 • *He wishes to be alone for a while.*

PAST

I wished we wished
 you wished you wished
 he/she/it wished they wished
 • *I wished that I had done it differently.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wished

PAST PERFECT ... had wished

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wishing we are wishing
 you are wishing you are wishing
 he/she/it is wishing they are wishing
 • *You are wishing for too much.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wishing we were wishing
 you were wishing you were wishing
 he/she/it was wishing they were wishing
 • *We were all wishing for better weather.*

FUTURE ... will wish

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wishing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wished

PAST PASSIVE

I was wished we were wished
 you were wished you were wished
 he/she/it was wished they were wished
 • *I was wished a happy birthday by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

wish long for / desire something

Dorothy closed her eyes and wished.
 Don't wish, act!

wish _____ desire/want [something that cannot or probably will not happen]

THAT-CLAUSE

I wish **that I were more prepared.**
 We wished **that the rain would stop before we got to Pittsburgh.**
 Little Bo Peep wished **that she had taken better care of her sheep.**
 Szymie wished **that Cotton was a monkey.**
 I wish **that I were a rich man.**

wish _____ have/express a desire

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE NOUN

We all wished **the play to be a smash hit.**

OBJECT + to be PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

I wished **the winter to be a mild one.**

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I just wished **the project to be ready on time.**We all wished **the young couple to be happy.**They wished **the evaluation to be favorable.**We wished **him a pleasant flight.**Everyone wished **the graduates successful careers.**The doctor wished **his patient a swift recovery.**

for OBJECT

He was wishing **for a quick response from the company.****What** are you wishing for?

(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

They wished **for more time to complete the project.**I didn't wish (for) **them to go to so much trouble.**Do you wish (for) **the caterer to prepare a new menu?**We wished (for) **a taxi to be here at seven.**

INFINITIVE

She wishes **to say a few words.**They wish **to make a reservation for dinner.**We wish **to apologize for being so late.**

PHRASAL VERBS

wish _____ on [someone] want
 [something bad] to happen to [someone]
 [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

I wouldn't wish cancer on my worst
 enemy.

PRESENT

I wonder we wonder
 you wonder you wonder
 he/she/it wonders they wonder
 • *He wonders if you would like to join us.*

PAST

I wondered we wondered
 you wondered you wondered
 he/she/it wondered they wondered
 • *I wondered what had happened to you.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wondered

PAST PERFECT ... had wondered

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wondering we are wondering
 you are wondering you are wondering
 he/she/it is wondering they are wondering
 • *We're wondering whether it is going to rain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wondering we were wondering
 you were wondering you were wondering
 he/she/it was wondering they were wondering
 • *They were wondering whom to call in an emergency.*

FUTURE

... will wonder

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be wondering

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have wondered

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was wondered they were wondered

• *His unexpected success was much wondered at.*

COMPLEMENTS

wonder _____ want / be curious to know

about OBJECT

We were wondering **about the price of gas.**
 Did you wonder **about the car's safety features?**
 The boss was wondering **about Elaine's ability to do the job.**

WH-CLAUSE

I wonder **who she is.**
 Everyone wondered **what went wrong.**
 John is wondering **where he left his car keys.**
 I wonder **why she never answered my e-mail.**
 We wondered **how much it was going to cost.**

WH-INFINITIVE

My parents were wondering **what to do while the grandkids were at school.**
 Janet was wondering **when to break the news.**

if/whether CLAUSE

I wondered **how to respond to such an awkward question.**
 I wonder **if we can afford a new car.**
 I wonder **if Holly is coming home for Christmas.**
 I wonder **whether we will arrive on time.**

if/whether CLAUSE [USED TO INTRODUCE A POLITE QUESTION]

I wonder **if you would like to have dinner with me.**
 I wonder **if that was a good idea.**
 I wonder **whether we would be more comfortable indoors.**
 I wonder **whether we should call.**

wonder _____ be surprised, marvel

at OBJECT

We wondered **at his reluctance to attend the meeting.**
 Others wondered **at Arianna's conversion to liberalism.**

THAT-CLAUSE

I don't wonder **that he would be so upset.**
 We didn't wonder **that it was such a big deal for them.**
 Do you wonder **that they canceled their vacation?**
 I don't wonder **that she would feel that way.**

work _____ cause to function at/near capacity

OBJECT

The coach really worked **the defense** today.
We worked **the pump** as hard as we could, getting all the water out of the basement.
During an emergency, your job is to work **the phones**.

work _____ knead, massage, cause to move by manipulation

OBJECT

Work **the clay and water** until it is a smooth paste.
The dentist worked **the tooth** back and forth to loosen it.
I worked **my calf muscle** until it stopped cramping.

PHRASAL VERBS

work around _____ avoid [a problem, situation] without eliminating it

We can work around your busy schedule.

work at/on _____ try to do [something] better

The linebacker needs to work at running backward.
Jimmy needs to work on his spelling.

work away continue to work hard

Carl worked away at the translation for years.

work SEP **down** reduce

Dad worked his weight down to 190.
She worked the debt down to \$500.

work for _____ work as a replacement for

I'm working for Janey this week; she's on vacation.

work SEP **in** make time available for

We can work you in to see the doctor at 3:45.

work SEP **in** include, put in

The author worked in a reference to her cat.

work SEP **off** get rid of through effort

She worked off the last of her student loans.
Mike worked off 20 pounds in three months.

work on _____ have the desired effect on

This drug doesn't work on all allergy sufferers.

work on _____ try to persuade

I'll work on Eli to attend the conference.

work on _____ be engaged in producing

The designer is working on a new website.

work on _____ tinker with, repair

Artie is working on his old Ford truck.

work out exercise

Don works out at the gym three days a week.

work out happen, develop

How did the job interview work out?

work SEP **out** develop, agree on

They worked out a plan to repay the loan.

work out to _____ amount to

The bill works out to \$8.53 for each of us.

work SEP **up** excite, arouse
[OFTEN PASSIVE]

Don't work yourself up over nothing.
The speaker got the crowd all worked up.

work SEP **up** stimulate, develop

Go grocery shopping if you want to work up an appetite.
Will Lennie work up the courage to ask Barbara out?

work SEP **up** prepare, often quickly

Donna, can you work up the unemployment figures?

work up to _____ advance to, reach

My son worked up to assistant manager in two years.

EXPRESSIONS

work [one's] way along/into/out of/over/through/up/etc. _____ move/proceed in a specified direction

The mountaineer worked his way along the cliff's edge.
Jimmy worked his way up to DC-9 captain.

work it/things out solve one's problems

We hope that the young couple can work things out.

work like a beaver/dog/horse work very hard

Gordon works like a horse, even on weekends.

work like a charm function perfectly

The new page layout software works like a charm.

work [one's] fingers to the bone work very hard

She's working her fingers to the bone so her children have enough to eat.

PRESENT

I work we work
 you work you work
 he/she/it works they work
 • *He works at home one day a week.*

PAST

I worked we worked
 you worked you worked
 he/she/it worked they worked
 • *The phone worked the last time I used it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has worked

PAST PERFECT ... had worked

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am working we are working
 you are working you are working
 he/she/it is working they are working
 • *I'm working late tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was working we were working
 you were working you were working
 he/she/it was working they were working
 • *He was working the night shift.*

FUTURE ... will work

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be working

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have worked

PAST PASSIVE

I was worked we were worked
 you were worked you were worked
 he/she/it was worked they were worked
 • *The dough was worked until it was smooth and elastic.*

COMPLEMENTS

work labor, toil

work function properly [OF A MACHINE]

work succeed [OF A PLAN, STRATEGY]

work _____ labor, toil, have [a job]

ADVERB OF TIME

ADVERB OF PLACE

ADVERB OF MANNER

OBJECT

as OBJECT

work _____ operate [a machine]

OBJECT

work _____ solve [a puzzle, problem]

OBJECT

Don't bother us—we're working.

The printer was finally working.

Cell phones won't work here in the valley.

I couldn't get the snow blower to work this morning.

Are the lights working?

The new marketing campaign seems to have worked.

Our redesigned kitchen works really well.

His get-rich-quick schemes never work.

My boyfriend works **from nine to five**.

How many hours do you work in an average week?

Christopher works **in book publishing**.

Jean is still working **at a lawyer's office**.

I worked **on a farm** when I was younger.

They have been working **pretty hard**.

The sculptor works **in wood and metal**.

She works **two jobs** to make ends meet.

Joe and Frank were working **the day shift** out of homicide.

Danny worked **as a waiter** in college.

Frederic was working **as a type designer**.

I couldn't use his car because I can't work **a stick shift**.

Do you know how to work **an abacus**?

Can you work **this DVD player**?

The warehouse job involves working **a forklift**.

I couldn't work **my daughter's algebra problems**.

Do you like to work **crossword puzzles**?

Tim works **Sudoku puzzles** during his lunch hour.



PRESENT

I worry we worry
 you worry you worry
 he/she/it worries they worry
 • *He worries too much.*

PAST

I worried we worried
 you worried you worried
 he/she/it worried they worried
 • *We worried that we were late for the movie.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has worried

PAST PERFECT ... had worried

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am worrying we are worrying
 you are worrying you are worrying
 he/she/it is worrying they are worrying
 • *If you aren't worrying, you aren't paying attention.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was worrying we were worrying
 you were worrying you were worrying
 he/she/it was worrying they were worrying
 • *We were worrying because you didn't call.*

FUTURE

... will worry

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be worrying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have worried

PAST PASSIVE

I was worried we were worried
 you were worried you were worried
 he/she/it was worried they were worried
 • *I was worried by his odd response.*

COMPLEMENTS

worry *be anxious/concerned*

There is good reason to worry.

I never worry.

“Don't Worry, Be Happy.” [BOBBY MCFERRIN SONG]

worry _____ *cause to be anxious/concerned*

OBJECT

The financial news is worrying **everyone**.Please don't worry **your mother** now.The approaching storm front worried **all of us**.

PASSIVE

The doctor was worried by his patient's high fever.

worry _____ *be anxious/concerned*

about OBJECT

Floyd worries **about his retirement fund**.They are worried **about the neighbor's pit bull**.We were worried **about roof damage after the storm**.

about PRESENT PARTICIPLE

She worries **about having colon cancer**.He's always worried **about doing the right thing**.We are worried **about being able to afford health care**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I worry **that we have overcommitted ourselves**.Nobody worries **that they have too much money**.She's worried **that their horses aren't getting enough exercise**.

PRESENT

I wrap we wrap
 you wrap you wrap
 he/she/it wraps they wrap
 • *He always wraps gifts on Christmas Eve.*

PAST

I wrapped we wrapped
 you wrapped you wrapped
 he/she/it wrapped they wrapped
 • *I wrapped duct tape around the pipe.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wrapped

PAST PERFECT ... had wrapped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wrapping we are wrapping
 you are wrapping you are wrapping
 he/she/it is wrapping they are wrapping
 • *We are wrapping presents in the spare bedroom.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wrapping we were wrapping
 you were wrapping you were wrapping
 he/she/it was wrapping they were wrapping
 • *They were wrapping the children in blankets.*

FUTURE ... will wrap

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wrapping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wrapped

PAST PASSIVE

I was wrapped we were wrapped
 you were wrapped you were wrapped
 he/she/it was wrapped they were wrapped
 • *His swollen ankle was tightly wrapped.*

COMPLEMENTS

wrap cover something by winding/folding material around it

Don't wrap so tight; the paper is tearing.
 We can wrap after the kids go to bed.

wrap _____ cover by winding/folding material around it

OBJECT

We need to wrap **all of the wine glasses**.
 I'll wrap **the baby** while you get the car.
 I wrapped **my sore wrist** as well as I could.

PASSIVE

The letters had been neatly wrapped in a lacy pink handkerchief.

PHRASAL VERBS

wrap around _____ go around

The line of ticket holders went down the street and wrapped around the corner.

wrap SEP **up** complete, finalize

The director has wrapped up the shooting of his latest film.
 They don't know when they can wrap the job up.

wrap [someone] up in _____ engross/absorb [someone] in

Angela is wrapped up in a detective novel.
 He got wrapped up in his design project and missed dinner.

EXPRESSIONS

wrap [one's]/the [vehicle] around _____ drive into, usually at high speed

Derek wrapped his SUV around a tree.

wrap [someone] around [one's] (little) finger have total control over

Delilah had Samson wrapped around her finger.
 His granddaughter can wrap him around her little finger.

PRESENT

I write we write
 you write you write
 he/she/it writes they write

• *He never writes anymore.*

PAST

I wrote we wrote
 you wrote you wrote
 he/she/it wrote they wrote

• *Jane Austen wrote Emma before 1816.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has written

PAST PERFECT ... had written

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am writing we are writing
 you are writing you are writing
 he/she/it is writing they are writing

• *I am writing as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was writing we were writing
 you were writing you were writing
 he/she/it was writing they were writing

• *He was writing a letter to Georgiana.*

FUTURE

... will write

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be writing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have written

PAST PASSIVE

I was written we were written
 you were written you were written
 he/she/it was written they were written

• *The letter was written to a family friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

write form letters/words with a pen/
pencil/etc.

write compose and send a letter

write _____ compose and send [a letter]

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
TO PARAPHRASE

write _____ compose [a text, work]

OBJECT

write _____ put in writing

OBJECT

write _____ express/communicate in written form

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE

DIRECT QUOTATION

His arthritis made it hard for him to write.

Please write neatly.

The kids promised to write from camp as soon as they could.

People don't write nearly as much as they used to.

John and Abigail Adams wrote **each other** frequently.

John wrote **Marcia a touching letter**.

John wrote **a touching letter to Marcia**.

Donizetti apparently wrote **The Elixir of Love** in three weeks.

Mark Twain wrote **hilariously funny letters to the editor**.

I wrote **a check for \$40**.

The doctor wrote **a prescription for an antibiotic**.

Please write **your name and address** in the space provided.

Darwin wrote **that species evolve over the course of generations through natural selection**.

He wrote **me that they might move back to California**.

She wrote **how the product should be introduced**.

Teddy wrote **his parents what he thought of the camp food**.

"There was never a good war," wrote Benjamin Franklin,
"or a bad peace."

PHRASAL VERBS

write SEP down make a note/record of

write SEP off give up on, cancel

write SEP off consider lost, hopeless,
etc.

write SEP off deduct from one's taxes

write SEP out spell out [a number,
abbreviation]

The secretary wrote down everything she said.

The bank wrote off the \$8,000 loan.

The hotel manager wrote off the missing towels.
Many fans write the Cubs off before September.

We wrote the computer off as an itemized deduction.

Write out "621" as "six hundred twenty-one."

PRESENT

I yield we yield
 you yield you yield
 he/she/it yields they yield
 • *The trees yield a good crop every year.*

PAST

I yielded we yielded
 you yielded you yielded
 he/she/it yielded they yielded
 • *I yielded the point.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has yielded

PAST PERFECT ... had yielded

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am yielding we are yielding
 you are yielding you are yielding
 he/she/it is yielding they are yielding
 • *The army is slowly yielding ground.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was yielding we were yielding
 you were yielding you were yielding
 he/she/it was yielding they were yielding
 • *The government was yielding to pressure.*

FUTURE ... will yield

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be yielding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have yielded

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was yielded they were yielded
 • *The Illinois Country was yielded to the British in 1763.*

COMPLEMENTS

yield give up, surrender

The defenders will never yield.
 Lack of food and water will force them to yield.
 The senators opposed to the vote finally yielded.

yield give way under force/pressure

If there is much flooding, our temporary dike will yield.
 I put my shoulder against the door and pushed until it yielded.

yield _____ produce [an agricultural product]

OBJECT

The soil yields a **good harvest of wheat and barley**.
 The olive press yields **up to 50 gallons of oil an hour**.
 Young trees won't yield **much fruit** for the first five years.

yield _____ give [a result, finding]

OBJECT

The survey yielded **some surprising attitudes**.
 Searching the DNA database yielded **two possible matches**.
 Different statistical methods can yield **very different results**.

yield _____ generate [a financial return]

OBJECT

This bond will yield **its face value at the end of 10 years**.
 This security has yielded **a constant dividend throughout the company's history**.
 The CD will yield **two percent above the prime rate**.

yield _____ give as the result of a search

OBJECT

A search of the suspect's car yielded **hair from the victim**.
 A second search of her purse yielded **the missing cell phone**.
 An afternoon spent panning for gold yielded **two small flakes worth about 50 cents**.

yield _____ give up, surrender, grant

OBJECT

(OBJECT +) TO OBJECT

He yielded **the argument** gracefully.
 Will the speaker yield **the floor**?
 The owners yielded **to the worker's demands**.
 I finally yielded **to my craving for ice cream**.
 The commandant yielded **the fort to the British**.
 Cars entering the intersection must yield **the right of way to any cars already in the intersection**.
 Senator Blather has yielded **his seat to a younger, smarter, more energetic politician**.

Irregular Verb Form Index

This index includes all irregular forms of the 152 irregular verbs in this book: the irregular past forms, as well as the irregular third-person singular present forms used by a few verbs. The past forms of some regular verbs have irregular spellings, and these forms are also included.

A form followed by an asterisk (*) is a past form that is spelled like the base form of the verb; except for *read*, the past form is also pronounced like the base form.

- am **be** 52
are **be** 52
arisen **arise** 34
arose **arise** 34
ate **eat** 169
awoke **awake** 49
awoken **awake** 49
- bade **bid** 61
beat* **beat** 54
beaten **beat** 54
became **become** 55
become* **become** 55
been **be** 52
began **begin** 56
begun **begin** 56
bent **bend** 59
bet* **bet** 60
bid* **bid** 61
bidden **bid** 61
bit **bite** 63
bitten **bite** 63
bled **bleed** 64
blew **blow** 66
blown **blow** 66
bore **bear** 53
born **bear** 53
borne **bear** 53
bought **buy** 74
bound **bind** 62
broadcast* **broadcast** 70
broke **break** 68
broken **break** 68
brought **bring** 69
built **build** 71
burnt **burn** 72
burst* **burst** 73
- came **come** 95
cast* **cast** 78
caught **catch** 79
chose **choose** 84
chosen **choose** 84
clung **cling** 90
come* **come** 95
- cost* **cost** 121
crept **creep** 125
cut* **cut** 128
- dealt **deal** 131
did **do** 161
does **do** 161
done **do** 161
dove **dive** 159
drank **drink** 165
drawn **draw** 162
dreamt **dream** 163
drew **draw** 162
driven **drive** 166
drove **drive** 166
drunk **drink** 165
dug **dig** 152
- eaten **eat** 169
- fallen **fall** 197
fed **feed** 200
fell **fall** 197
felt **feel** 201
fit* **fit** 209
fled **flee** 211
flow **fly** 214
flown **fly** 214
flung **fling** 212
forbade **forbid** 216
forbidden **forbid** 216
forgave **forgive** 219
forgiven **forgive** 219
forgot **forget** 218
forgotten **forget** 218
fought **fight** 202
found **find** 206
froze **freeze** 221
frozen **freeze** 221
- gave **give** 227
given **give** 227
goes **go** 228
gone **go** 228
got **get** 226
- gotten **get** 226
grew **grow** 231
ground **grind** 230
grown **grow** 231
- had **have** 239
has **have** 239
heard **hear** 241
held **hold** 246
hid **hide** 243
hidden **hide** 243
hit* **hit** 245
hung **hang** 236
hurt* **hurt** 250
- is **be** 52
- kept **keep** 273
knelt **kneel** 275
knew **know** 278
knit* **knit** 276
known **know** 278
- laid **lay** 282
lain **lie** 290
lay **lie** 290
leapt **leap** 285
led **lead** 283
left **leave** 287
lent **lend** 288
let* **let** 289
lit **light** 292
lost **lose** 301
- made **make** 304
meant **mean** 309
met **meet** 311
- overcame **overcome** 330
overcome* **overcome** 330
- paid **pay** 338
pled **plead** 346
proven **prove** 367
put* **put** 374

quit* **quit** 376ran **run** 421rang **ring** 417read* **read** 381rid* **rid** 415ridden **ride** 416risen **rise** 418rode **ride** 416rose **rise** 418run* **run** 421rung **ring** 417said **say** 426sang **sing** 450sank **sink** 451sat **sit** 452saw **see** 428sawn **saw** 425seen **see** 428sent **send** 433set* **set** 436shaken **shake** 438shaven **shave** 440shed* **shed** 441shone **shine** 443shook **shake** 438shot **shoot** 444shown **show** 446shrank **shrink** 447shrunk **shrink** 447shut* **shut** 448slept **sleep** 453slid **slide** 454snuck **sneak** 457sold **sell** 432sought **seek** 429spat **spit** 465sped **speed** 461spent **spend** 462spilt **spill** 463spit* **spit** 465split* **split** 466spoilt **spoil** 467spoke **speak** 460spoken **speak** 460sprang **spring** 469spread* **spread** 468sprung **spring** 469spun **spin** 464stank **stink** 479stole **steal** 475stolen **steal** 475stood **stand** 470stricken **strike** 484stridden **stride** 483striven **strive** 486strode **stride** 483strove **strive** 486struck **strike** 484strung **string** 485stuck **stick** 477stung **sting** 478stunk **stink** 479sung **sing** 450sunk **sink** 451swam **swim** 503sweat* **sweat** 500swept **sweep** 501swollen **swell** 502swore **swear** 499sworn **swear** 499swum **swim** 503swung **swing** 504taken **take** 505taught **teach** 507thought **think** 513threw **throw** 515thrown **throw** 515thrust* **thrust** 516told **tell** 509took **take** 505tore **tear** 508torn **tear** 508understood **understand** 525upheld **uphold** 527upset* **upset** 528was **be** 52wed* **wed** 544went **go** 228wept **weep** 545were **be** 52wet* **wet** 546woke **wake** 536woken **wake** 536won **win** 547wore **wear** 542worn **wear** 542wound **wind** 548wove **weave** 543woven **weave** 543written **write** 554wrote **write** 554

The Big Book of English Verbs Exercise and Self-Assessment CD-ROM is a unique program that will help you improve your English verb skills.

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

This product should be installed on your computer so the CD-ROM need not be present in your drive to work. It is designed to run on a single standalone computer.

PC

To start: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. The CD-ROM installation should launch automatically once it is inserted. If the installation does not launch automatically, do the following: Double-click MY COMPUTER. Find and open your CD-ROM disk drive. Double-click on SETUP or SETUP.EXE.

The installer will copy all necessary files to your hard drive, as well as create a Program Group with access to the main application. No system modifications are made other than the file copy and program group processes described above.

Once the program files are installed, click on the Big Book icon on your desktop or use the START menu and select Programs/McGraw Hill/English Verbs.

Apple Macintosh

To start: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. A window will open, showing the contents of the CD. Drag the program icon to your Applications folder. For easy access, create an alias of the program on your desktop or on your dock.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

PC

Microsoft Windows 2000, XP, Vista

Intel Pentium III processor (450 MHz recommended) or better

256 MB RAM

Display capable of 800 × 600 resolution and 16-bit color

Windows-compatible sound card

Apple Macintosh

Mac OS X 10.3.9, 10.4.x, 10.5.x

Power PC processor (G3 or higher recommended), any Intel Processor

256 MB RAM

This CD-ROM is intended for use by a single student on a standalone computer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

If you have any difficulties with this product, please go to the McGraw-Hill Technical Support website at <http://mhp.softwareassist.com>.

Note to users who receive the error message “The error ELNTECASTEROOR in module. Interface not supported”

Issue: This error message is displayed when attempting to execute a Zinc Projector. This occurs because Zinc Projectors require the Microsoft MDAC drivers to be present on the user's system to function correctly. The MDAC Drivers are used by the Projector to evoke Database Connectivity. (They are still required even if your Projector does not use Database functionality.)

Solution: The MDAC drivers are installed by default across 99.9% of systems from Win98SE upward. In very rare cases, however, some OEM licenses do not include them. In this case, they can be downloaded and installed, completely free, from the Microsoft website.

Note to Windows 2000 users

If you receive an installation error, please update your Windows Installer. To update the Windows Installer, please go to <http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?displaylang=en&FamilyID=4B6140F9-2D36-4977-8FA1-6F8A0F5DCA8F>.

COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Copyright © 2009 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.